Bevezetés


A jelen idő

1. A létige (1) (I am..., I am not...)
2. A létige (2) (Am I...?, Are you...?)
3. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a létige használata (1–2. fejezet)
4. Az egyszerű jelen – Present Simple (1) (I know, I don't know)
5. Az egyszerű jelen – Present Simple (2) (Do you drive?)
6. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Simple (4–5. fejezet)
7. A folyamatos jelen – Present Continuous (1) (I'm eating, I'm not eating)
8. A folyamatos jelen – Present Continuous (2) (Am I writing?)
9. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Continuous (7–8. fejezet)
10. Present Simple (I work) vagy Present Continuous (I'm working)
11. A felszólító mód – Imperative (Go, Don't go)

A múlt idő

12. A létige egyszerű múlt ideje (I was, I wasn't. Was I...?)
13. Az egyszerű múlt – Past Simple (I played, I didn't play, Did you play?)
15. A folyamatos múlt – Past Continuous (I was waiting, Was I waiting?)
16. Past Simple (I waited) vagy Past Continuous (I was waiting)
17. Present Perfect (1) (I have seen, I haven't seen)
18. Present Perfect (2) (ever, never, gone és been)
19. Present Perfect (3) (just, already, yet, still)
20. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Perfect (17–19. fejezet)
21. Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (1) (I lived / I have lived)
22. Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (2) (for, since, ago)
23. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (21–2. fejezet)
24. Present Perfect Continuous (I've been cooking)
25. Present Perfect Simple (I've done) és Present Perfect Continuous (I've been doing)
26. Past Perfect (I had finished)
27. Past Simple (I saw) vagy Past Perfect (I had seen)
28. Used to
29. Past Perfect Simple (I had eaten) vagy Past Perfect Continuous (I had been eating)
30. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: igeistők (12–29. fejezet)

A jövő idő

31. A jövőre vonatkozó szándék – be going to
32. Will / shall (I will do it, Shall we go?)
33. A jövő kifejezése – Present Continuous és Present Simple
34. Will vagy be going to, Present Continuous vagy be going to
35. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jövő kifejezése (31–4. fejezet)
36. When, as soon as, until stb. és a jelen idő
37. A jövő kifejezése más szerkezetekkel
38. Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jövő kifejezése (31–7. fejezet)
Mondatszerkezet és kérdő alakok

39 Szófajok (ige, főnév, melléknév stb.)
40 Szórend (alany, állítmány, tárgy)
41 A kiegészítendő kérdés – kérdőszók
42 A kiegészítendő kérdés – How long? How far? How often? How many?
   How much? How old?
43 A kiegészítendő kérdés – alanyra és tárgyra vonatkozó kérdések
44 Milyen? – What... like? (What’s she like?)
45 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a kiegészítendő kérdés (41–4. fejezet)
46 Rövid válasz – short answers (Yes, I am; Yes, I do)
47 Utókérdés – question tags (It’s cold, isn’t it?)
48 Én is, én sem (so am I, I am too; neither am I, I’m not either)

Módbeli segédigék

49 Képesség és lehetőség kifejezése (can, can’t, could, couldn’t, be able to)
51 Utasítás, tanács, tiltás (must, mustn’t)
52 Kell, nem kell (have to, don’t have to)
53 Must vagy have to; mustn’t vagy don’t have to
54 Bizonyára, bizonyára nem, talán (must, can’t, may, might, could)
55 Múltra utaló módbeli segédigék (must have seen, can’t have done)
56 Kellene, nem kellene (should, shouldn’t)
57 Kellene, jobban tenné, ha... – should, ought to, had better
58 Szükséges, nem szükséges – need, needn’t
59 Kellett, kellett volna – had to do, should have done
60 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: módbeli segédigék (49–59. fejezet)

Igék

61 A birtoklás kifejezése – have és have got
62 Make, do és get
63 Make és let
64 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: have, make, do, get, let (61–3. fejezet)
65 Speak és talk; borrow és lend; take és bring; carry és fetch
66 Állapotot jelentő, ’statikus’ igék
67 Igel kifejezések – phrasal verbs (1) (go with, put on, get up)
68 Igel kifejezések – phrasal verbs (2) (get over, call off, grow up)

Névelők, főnevek, névmások stb.

69 A főnevek többes száma – plural nouns (cats, men); one / ones
70 Megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek – countable és uncountable nouns
71 A névelő (1) – articles (a, an, the)
72 A névelő (2) – articles (a, an, the)
73 A/an, some, any, no, none
74 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: névelők és főnevek (69–73. fejezet)
75 A személyes névmás alanyi és tárgyi alakja – I és me
76 A birtokos névmás – possessive pronouns (my, your; mine, yours)
77 A mutató névmás – demonstrative pronouns (this, that, these, those)
78 Much, many; how much? how many?; more
79 Határozatlan névmások – a lot of, a little, a few
80 All, most, some, none
81 Határozatlan névmások – something, anybody, nothing
82 Tárgy és részeshatározó – direct and indirect object (She gave him a book.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Hungarian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>A visszaható névmás – reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself stb.)</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>Van, vannak – there is, there are</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Melléknevek és határozószók</strong></td>
<td><strong>Melléknevek and Determiners</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>A melléknév – adjectives (new, big, wonderful, American stb.)</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>A számnév – numbers (three, third)</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Melléknevek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>A melléknév fokozása: középfok – comparative adjectives (older, more famous)</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>A melléknév fokozása: felsőfok – superlative adjectives (the oldest, the most famous)</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Melléknevek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs (quick, quickly); a határozószók fokozása (more carefully)</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>Összehasonlítás – comparison (as ... as)</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>Imséltő gyakorlatok: a melléknév fokozása (88–91. fejezet)</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>-ed vagy -ing végű melléknevek (frightened, frightening)</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Tulajdonságoz, eléggé – too, enough (too big, big enough)</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>Gyakoriságot kifejező határozószók – adverbs of frequency (always, never stb.)</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Határozószók (hely, irány, sorrend stb.) – adverbs of place, direction, order etc.</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>A határozó helye a mondatban</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Ilyen, olyan – so, such</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Előljárószók</strong></td>
<td><strong>Prepositions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Helyet jelölő előljárószók – prepositions of place (in, on, under stb.)</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Időt jelölő előljárószók – prepositions of time (in, on, at stb.)</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Mozgást és irányt jelölő előljárószók – prepositions of motion and place (in, out of stb.)</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Imséltő gyakorlatok: előljárószók (99–101. fejezet)</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Előljárószók – prepositions (in, with, by)</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Ige + előljárószó (wait for, listen to stb.)</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Melléknév + előljárószó – adjective + preposition (angry with, afraid of)</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Kifejezések előljárószókkal – phrases with prepositions (at first, by post stb.)</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Imséltő gyakorlatok: előljárószók (99–106. fejezet)</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A szenvedő szerkezet</strong></td>
<td><strong>The passive voice</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (1); Present Simple és Past Simple</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (2); igeidők</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (3); ige + két tárgy</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>A műveltő szerkezet – causative (have something done)</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Imséltő gyakorlatok: a szenvedő és a műveltő szerkezet (108–111. fejezet)</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A főnévi igenév és az -ing alak</strong></td>
<td><strong>The noun base and the -ing form</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Ige + -ing – verb + -ing (I like dancing)</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>A főnévi igenév – infinitive (I want to go, I can go)</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Ige + to vagy -ing – verb + to or -ing (I love to dance, I love dancing)</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>Imséltő gyakorlatok: ige + to vagy -ing (113–15. fejezet)</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Mire való? (What's it for? – It's for making bread.)</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév (I asked her to come)</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A feltételes móds

119 A feltételes mondat 1. típusa – first conditional (If I am...)
120 A feltételes mondat 2. típusa – second conditional (If he was...)
121 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a feltételes mondat 1. és 2. típusa (119–20. fejezet)
122 A feltételes mondat 3. típusa – third conditional (If he had been...)
123 Kívánság – wish (I wish he was... , I wish he had been...)
124 Ismétlő gyakorlatok – a feltételes mondat (119–23. fejezet)

A függő beszéd

125 A függő beszéd – reported speech (1) (say/said, tell/told)
126 A függő beszéd – reported speech (2) (névmások és határozószók)
127 A függő beszéd – reported speech (3) (kérés, utasítás stb.)
128 A függő kérdés – reported questions (She asked if...)
129 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a függő beszéd (125–8. fejezet)

Szóképzés és mondatszerkesztés

130 (Both) ... and, but, however, although, so
131 Both (... and); either (... or); neither (... nor)
132 Since, for, ago; first, last
133 Because, in case, so, so that
134 A kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat – defining relative clauses (1)
135 A kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat – defining relative clauses (2)
136 Az értelmező jelzői mellékmondat – non-defining relative clauses
137 Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jelzői mellékmondat (134–6. fejezet)
138 Előtagok – prefixes (im-, dis-, over-)
139 Képzők – suffixes (-able, -less, -ian)

Morfológiail táblázatok

A táblázat A főnév többes száma
B táblázat Megszámlálhatatlan főnevek
C táblázat Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)
D táblázat Az igék -ing-es alakja
E táblázat Szabályos igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett mellékénévi igenév
F táblázat Rendhagyó igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett mellékénévi igenév
G táblázat A melléknév közép- és felsőfoka
H táblázat Határozószók

Tárgymutató

Megoldókulcs

376
A létige (1) (I am..., I am not...)

1 A be (van) létige jelen idejű alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALLITÁS</th>
<th>TELJES ALAK</th>
<th>OSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EGYES SZÁM</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I’m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are</td>
<td>You’re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it is</td>
<td>He’s/she’s/it’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÖBBES SZÁM</td>
<td>We are</td>
<td>We’re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are</td>
<td>You’re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are</td>
<td>They’re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TAGADÁS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALLITÁS</th>
<th>TELJES ALAK</th>
<th>OSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EGYES SZÁM</td>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>I’m not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are not</td>
<td>You aren’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it is not</td>
<td>He/she/it isn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÖBBES SZÁM</td>
<td>We are not</td>
<td>We aren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are not</td>
<td>You aren’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are not</td>
<td>They aren’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Néhány példa a létige (be) egyszerű jelen idejű használatára:

This is my brother. He’s ten years old.
I’m a student. These are my books.
They aren’t at home. They’re at the theatre.

3 A beszélt nyelvben általában az összevont alakot használjuk:

She’s my sister. He’s my brother.
I’m from Hungary. They’re German.

4 A be létigét akkor használjuk, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy

- valaki kicsoda:
  I’m Steve and this is my friend Bill. We’re from Scotland.
  I’m Janet and these are my sisters. This is Sandra and this is Patricia. Sandra and Patricia are doctors.

- milyen az idő:
  It’s cold today. It’s a beautiful day.
  It isn’t very warm today.

- mennyi az idő:
  It’s ten o’clock. It’s half past four.
  You’re late!

- valaki vagy valami hol van:
  Milan is in the North of Italy.
  John and Mary are in Yorkshire.

- valaki mennyi idős:
  My sister is six (years old).

Figyelem: Az angol nyelvben a mondat állítmánya mindig ige.
Főnév, melléknév stb. csak a be létigével együtt lehet a mondat állítmány.

My father is a teacher. My sister is pretty.
(= Apám tanár.) (= A nővérem csinos.)

Gyakorlatok

A Maria Braziliából jött. Saját magáról és a családjáról ír. Írjuk be a mondatokba a be ige megfelelő alakját.

0 I ……………………… a student from Brazil.
0 My parents ………………. (not) rich.
1 My father ……………….. a teacher.
2 My mother ………………. (not)
   Brazilian.
3 She ……………………. from America.

4 I ……………………. twenty years old.
5 My little brother …………. twelve.
6 My older brothers …………. (not)
   students.
7 They …………………… in the army.
8 It ……………………. often very hot in Brazil.

B Írjuk be a hiányzó szavakat. Használjuk a be ige összevont alakjait.

0 I …………………….. a doctor.
0 I …………………….. (not) a bank manager.
1 She ……………………. (not) a teacher.
2 He …………………… a student.
3 They ……………………… at home.
4 They ……………………. (not) in the park.

5 It ……………………. (not) cold today.
6 It ……………………. very hot.
7 We ……………………. from Paris.
8 We ……………………. (not) from Bordeaux.
9 You ……………………. (not) twenty-one.
10 I ……………………. twenty-four.
Feri és Susie egy yorki nyelviskolában ismerkedett meg Linggel és Carlossal. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott szavakkal. (Amikor bemutatnak valakinek, gyakran használjuk a ‘Pleased to meet you’ kifejezést.)

FERI: Hello, I’m Feri. 0 I’m……… from Eger. It’s in the north of Hungary.
CARLOS: Pleased to meet you. I’m Carlos.
FERI: Oh, yes. 1………… from Spain.
CARLOS: No, I’m 2………… Spanish. I’m from Mexico. This is my friend, Ling. She’s from Harbin, near Beijing.
LING: Harbin 3………… very near Beijing, Carlos! China is a very big country.
FERI: Pleased to meet you. 4………… is my wife, Susie.
SUSIE: Hi! I’m from London, but I live in Eger now.
FERI: Susie and I 5………… doctors.
LING: Really? My brother is a doctor. But 6………… a businesswoman. I have three restaurants in China.
SUSIE: That’s interesting. Carlos, I’m sure you 7………… a doctor or a businessman. I think you’re an artist!
CARLOS: No, I’m 8………… an artist. I’m a photographer.
SUSIE: Photographers are artists! Anyway, it’s a beautiful evening, and we’re in the north of England and it 9………… cold!
LING: You’re right. 10…………… lucky!

Válasszuk ki a megadott szavak közül a megfelelőt, és írjuk be a hiányzó helyre.

He’s She’s They’re It’s (x 3) are is We isn’t

0 My parents live in Scotland. They’re……… teachers.
2 Paul ……………….. from Germany. ……………….. German.
3 My sister is a doctor. ……………….. thirty years old.
4 ……………….. six o’clock! ……………….. are late.
5 ……………….. very cold today. Let’s stay at home.
6 Look at the time! Chris and Mary ……………….. late.
A léttige (2) (Am I...?; Are you...?)

1. Kérdő szerkezet a be igével jelen időben:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Egyes Szám</th>
<th>Am</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>Late?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Többes Szám</th>
<th>Are</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>Late?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. A be igét akkor használjuk, amikor:
   - arról beszélünk, hogy érezzük magunkat:
     I'm happy. They're sad.
     They're bored. She's tired.
     We're hungry. I'm thirsty.
     He isn't afraid. They're cold.
   - üdvözléskor udvariásan megkérdezzük, hogy valaki hogy van:
     Bill: Hello. How are you?
     Jane: I'm fine thanks. How are you?
   - elnézést kérünk:
     Mary: I'm sorry I'm late.
     Chris: It doesn't matter.
   - elmondjuk, hogy valami milyen:
     It isn't expensive.
     It's an old film. It isn't very good.
     These photos are bad.

(A be igé használataira vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók az 1. fejezetben találhatók.)

3. Gyakran használjuk a there + be (pl. there is, there are) szerkezetet, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy valami hol van:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Egyes Szám</th>
<th>There's a supermarket in this street.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Többes Szám</td>
<td>There are some good cafés in the centre of the town.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A there + be szerkezetet akkor is használjuk, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy valami mikor történik:

- There is a bus to London at six o'clock.
- There are taxis, but there aren't any buses on Sunday.
- There isn't another train to Manchester today.

4. A következő kérdésekben a be ige összes alakját megtalálhatjuk:

- Am I late for the film?
- Are you twenty years old?
- Is he at home now?
- Is she French or Italian?
- Is it time to go home?
- Are we ready to leave?
- Are you both at university?
- Are they in London today?

Gyakorlatok

A megadott szavak segítségével tegyünk fel kérdésekét a képen látható személyekkel kapcsolatban. Használjuk a He/She/They névmásokat és a be ige egyszerű jelen idejű (Present Simple) alakját.
Használjuk a **there + be** szerkezetet, és írjuk le, mi található és mi nem található Smallwood városában.

0 (a cinema: ✓) **There's** a cinema.
0 (a river: X) **There isn't** a river.
0 (restaurants: 10) **There are** ten restaurants.
0 (any museums: X) **There aren't** any museums.
1 (a castle: X) a castle.
2 (baker's shops: 2) two baker's shops.
3 (many tourists: X) many tourists.
4 (banks: 6) six banks.
5 (a luxury hotel: ✓) a luxury hotel.
6 (a theatre: X) a theatre.
7 (newsagent's: 6) six newsagent's.
8 (a zoo: ✓) a zoo.

Írjunk kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavak megfelelő sorrendbe rendezésével.

0 (thirsty/you/are) **Are you thirsty?**
1 (a teacher/you/are) ..........................................................
2 (they/bored/are) ..........................................................
3 (is/afraid/he) .................................................................
4 (she/tired/is) .................................................................
5 (are/you/how) ..............................................................
6 (cold today/it/is) ..........................................................
7 (she/English/is) ............................................................
8 (they/from London/are) ................................................

A diákok megpróbálják kitalálni, milyen híres ember szerepébe bújt Frank. Írjunk kérdéseket a zárójelben található szavak és a be ige megfelelő alakjainak felhasználásával.

0 **Are you American** ......................................................? FRANK: Yes, I am.
1 (you/American) ............................................................
2 (your parents/famous) ...................................................
3 (they/politicians) ........................................................
4 (your father/a film star) ..............................................
5 (your mother/a film star) .............................................
6 (she/a singer) ............................................................
7 (your father/Kirk Douglas) .........................................
8 (you/Michael Douglas) ..............................................

Írjuk be a be ige megfelelő alakját az alábbi párbeszédekbe.

STEVE: This 0 **is** Ann, my sister.

TOM: Hello, Ann. 1 ................. you a student?

ANN: No, I 2 ................. a dentist. I work in Brighton.

MIKE: How are you, Sally?

SALLY: I 3 ................. fine, thanks.

MIKE: 4 ................. you hungry?

SALLY: Yes, 5 ................. there a good restaurant near here?

MIKE: Yes. There 6 ................. a restaurant in Wellington Street.

The food is good and it 7 ................. very cheap.
A Mrs Lockwood a Victoria Pályaudvaron várja őket. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavak felhasználásával.

MRS LOCKWOOD: Hello, Bence. It's good to see you again. How are you?
BENCE: Hello, Mrs Lockwood. fine, thanks. And you?
MRS LOCKWOOD: Oh, I'm very well, thank you.
BENCE: This my friend Pierre. His parents French but they live and work in Budapest. in the same class at school.
MRS LOCKWOOD: Hello, Pierre. Pleased to meet you.
PIERRE: I'm glad to meet you too.
BENCE: We sorry we're late.
MRS LOCKWOOD: No problem. It not your fault.
PIERRE: I'm glad you here.
MRS LOCKWOOD: So we!

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben található szavakból alkotott mondatokkal.

MRS LOCKWOOD: (you/hungry?/Are)
BENCE: (not/No./hungry./thirsty./but/I'm/I'm)
PIERRE: (too./am/I)
MRS LOCKWOOD: Well, let's get something to drink. Look over there. (a/bar./There's/coffee)
I'm sure they sell soft drinks too. Let's go. (cold/It's/here.)
PIERRE: (it's/in Budapest/cold/Yes./too./but/very)
MRS LOCKWOOD: Really?
PIERRE: (a cold month/is/Oh yes./at home./January)
Mrs Lockwood, Bence és Pierre egy pizzéria előtt áll az utcán. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetésüket a megadott szavakkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is</th>
<th>it isn't</th>
<th>we're</th>
<th>there's</th>
<th>it's</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>isn't</th>
<th>Are</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There's</td>
<td>It's</td>
<td>there are</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mrs Lockwood: 0 It's nearly four o'clock. 1 ............... you ready?
Bence: 2 ............... five to five.
Pierre: No, 3 ............... ! Five to five 4 ............... Hungarian time.
Bence and Pierre: Oh, of course. Yes, 5 ............... ready. Thanks for the coke.
Mrs Lockwood: It's a pleasure. Now, 6 ............... no bus or direct train from here. But 7 ............... taxis outside the station. It isn't far, so it's not very expensive. 8 ............... sure your bags 9 ............... heavy.
Bence: Look! 10 ............... a taxi.
Pierre: No, it 11 ............... . It isn't black!
Mrs Lockwood: Bence is right. Some London taxis 12 ............... red or yellow or white these days.

Mrs Lockwood, Bence és Pierre a taxiban ül, és a londoni látványokról beszélget. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben található szavakkal és mondatokkal. Használjuk a be ige egyszerű jelen idejű alakjait.

Pierre: (that/the River Thames)
0 Is that the River Thames?
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes, that's right.
Bence: (And/that/Tower Bridge)
1 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes.
Bence: (it/an old bridge)
2 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: It's a hundred years old.
Pierre: (we/in the centre of London)
3 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes. This is Westminster.
Bence: (we/near to your house)
4 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: Not very far. About twenty minutes.
Pierre: (easy/to travel/in London)
5 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: Not always. Sometimes there are a lot of cars and buses.
Bence: (cheap/to travel/by taxi)
6 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: No! We normally travel by tube or bus.
Pierre: (a tube station/near/your house)
7 ..................................................
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes. It's only about two minutes' walk.
Fordítsuk le az alábbi mondatokat.

LONDON

Londón két fontos része a City és a West End. A City a város üzleti központja. Ott találhatók a legfontosabb bankok, a tőzsde, a biztosító társaságok, de a Szent Pál-székesegyház is. A City mindig nagyon forgalmas.

A West Enden sok-sok áruház van, például a Harrods, de vannak múzeumok, mozik, színházak, kiállítóteremek és számos vendéglő, francia, olasz, japán és kínai is. A Buckingham Palace és a Parlament is a West Enden található.

De Anglia több, mint London! Sok szép régi város és gyönyörű táj van még Angliában, Skóciában, Walesben és Irországban.
0  Where is Glasgow?
   *It's in the west of Scotland.*

1  Where is Dublin?

2  Where are Winchester and Southampton?

3  Where are Boston and Lincoln?

4  Where is Thurso?

5  Where is Newcastle-upon-Tyne?

6  Where is Cardiff?

7  Where is Belfast?

8  Where are Leeds and Bradford?
1 Egyszerű jelenben a következő igealakokat használjuk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>I know.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/she/it knows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÖBBES SZÁM</td>
<td>We know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They know.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_I know_ the answer.
_She starts_ work at 9.30 a.m.

Egyes szám harmadik személyben, a he/she/it után az ige **-s** személyragot kap:

I start — he starts  I live — she lives

Ha az ige utolsó betűje  **-ch, -o, -sh, -x** vagy **-ss**, a személyrag **-es**:

I watch — he watches  they go — it goes
we finish — she finishes  you do — he does
you fix — he fixes    I miss — he misses

Ha az ige mássalhangzóra (b, c, d stb) + y-ra végződik (pl.: study), egyes szám harmadik személyben az **-ies** alakot használjuk:

I study — he studies  I fly — it flies

(További példák a 361 oldalon, a táblázatban találhatók.)

2 Így tagadjuk az ígét:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
<th>OSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I do not know</td>
<td>I don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You do not know</td>
<td>You don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it does not know</td>
<td>He doesn’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We do not know</td>
<td>We don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You do not know</td>
<td>You don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They do not know</td>
<td>They don’t know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I don’t like that music.
_HIT doesn’t listen_ to his teacher.

Figyelem: Egyes szám harmadik személyben a _does_ alakot használjuk. Az ige ilyenkor nem kap **-s** ragot.

_He does not know._ (NEM: _He does not knows._)

3 Az egyszerű jelen akkor használjuk, amikor

> valamilyen ténnyt állapítunk meg:
_She comes from France._ (= _She is French._)
Greengrocers sell vegetables.
_I don’t speak_ Chinese.

> olyasmiről beszélünk, ami rendszeresen történik:

_He gets up at eight o’clock every day._
_He plays_ golf every day.

> a mondatban gyakoriságot kifejező határozószó szerepel (pl. _twice a week, often_):
_We watch TV every evening._
_Tom practises the piano three times a week._

Figyeljük meg, hogy a gyakoriságot kifejező határozószó mindig a főige előtt (pl. _go, visit_), de a _be_ létige után áll.

_I never go to bed after midnight._
_I don’t often visit my grandparents._
_He is usually late for school._

---

_Gyakorlatok_

A következő cikk a skót életvitelről szól. Pótoljuk az ígek **-s** vagy **-es** végződését, ahol szükséges. A hibátlan mondatokat pipáljuk ki.

Sally and Mike Pitts 0 live ............... in Edinburgh. Sally 0 work ............... in a bank. Mike 1 teach ............... Spanish at a local school. They 2 start ............... work at 9 o’clock. Mike 3 go ............... to work by bus, but Sally 4 walk ............... to the bank. Mike 5 finish ............... work at 4 o’clock, and he often 6 watch ............... TV in the evening. After work, Sally sometimes 7 do ............... yoga. They usually 8 play ............... tennis together on Saturday.
Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott ígék megfelelő alakjával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>forget</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>live (x2)</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>try</th>
<th>visit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Sally’s mother 0 ............... lives in Switzerland, and she 1 ............... to Edinburgh four times a year to visit Sally and Mike. Mike 2 ............... his parents twice a year. They 3 ............... in Ireland. He 4 ............... to phone his mum twice a week, but sometimes he 5 ...............!

Sally says: ‘I 6 ............... chocolate! But I 7 ............... a lot of fruit and vegetables too, and I 8 ............... yoga every week. Mike often 9 ............... beer, but we 10 ............... sports together in the park three times a week.’

Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben lévő ígék megfelelő tagadó alakjával.

Mike 0 ............... doesn’t like (like) films, so Sally goes to the cinema with her friend Gill. Sally 1 ............... (eat) meat, so Mike and Sally often have different meals. They 2 ............... (live) in a very big house, but they’ve got a nice garden. Sally 3 ............... (speak) Spanish, but Mike’s Spanish friends all speak English. Sally and Mike both work hard, so they 4 ............... (get up) early on Sunday morning! Mike 5 ............... (go) to bed before midnight.

A táblázat segítségével egészítsük ki a diákok szabadidejéről szóló mondatokat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Steve</th>
<th>Jane</th>
<th>Carol</th>
<th>Emma</th>
<th>Alan</th>
<th>Tony</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go to discos?</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play sports?</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help in the house?</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play computer games?</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch sports on TV?</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to church?</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play a musical instrument?</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Steve 0 ............... doesn’t play sports but he 0 ............... sports on TV.
0 Jane and Emma 0 ............... don’t go to church.
1 Emma 1 ............... sports but she 1 ............... sports on TV.
2 Steve and Alan 2 ............... to discos but they 2 ............... a musical instrument.
3 Alan 3 ............... computer games but he 3 ............... in the house.
4 Tony 4 ............... to church.
5 Carol and Alan 5 ............... to church but they 5 ............... in the house.
6 Jane 6 ............... a musical instrument but she 6 ............... to discos.
7 Carol 7 ............... a musical instrument.
8 Tony 8 ............... computer games but he 8 ............... sports on TV.
9 Emma and Tony 9 ............... computer games but they 9 ............... to discos.
Az egyszerű jelen – Present Simple (2) (Do you drive?)

1 Az egyszerű jelen (Present Simple) alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>I/you</td>
<td>Do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>know?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Az I/you/we/they elé tesszük a do segédigét:
Do you speak Spanish? ~ Yes, I do.
Do they know the answer?
A he/she/it előtt a does alakot használjuk:
Does he walk to work?
Does Steve enjoy his job?
Does she play the piano?

Figyelem:
Does he walk? (NEM: Does he walks?)

2 A kérdőszó (when/where/why stb.) megelőzi
a do/does segédigét.
Where do you work?
A How often kérdőszót használjuk, ha azt
szeretnénk megtudni, milyen gyakran történik
valami.
How often do you play tennis?

Gyakorlatok

A Nyaralás közben bemegyünk az utazási irodába. Tegyünk fel kérdéseket a megadott
mondatok segítségével.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A Do</th>
<th>B you</th>
<th>C stop at the railway station?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>the sports centre</td>
<td>finish before eleven p.m.?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>all the banks</td>
<td>start here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the number 38 bus</td>
<td>sell maps of the city?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the restaurants</td>
<td>change tourists’ money into pounds?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the concert</td>
<td>sell souvenirs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the sightseeing tour</td>
<td>have a swimming pool?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the museum</td>
<td>serve typical English food?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0   Do you sell maps of the city?
1   .................................................. the sports centre ..................................................
A következő interjúban Mary Woods a férjére és saját magára vonatkozó kérdésekre válaszol. Fogalmazzuk meg a kérdéseket. Használjuk a megadott ötleteket.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like films</th>
<th>read books</th>
<th>listen to the radio</th>
<th>live in London</th>
<th>smoke</th>
<th>watch TV</th>
<th>play a musical instrument</th>
<th>play golf</th>
<th>like pop music</th>
<th>go to the theatre</th>
<th>drive a car</th>
<th>drink coffee</th>
<th>like dogs</th>
<th>speak any foreign languages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0. **Do you live in London?**
   - Yes, I live in north London.

1. **Does John play golf??**
   - No, but he plays tennis.

2. **Yes, I speak French.**

3. **Yes, I like all the programmes on TV.**

4. **Yes, he listens to the radio in the morning.**

5. **No, but he loves cats.**

6. **No, I don't like films.**

7. **Yes, he has two cups in the morning.**

8. **No, but I have a bicycle.**

9. **Yes, he plays the piano.**

10. **No, I prefer classical music.**

11. **Yes, I love musicals.**

12. **Yes, I read one book every week.**

   ~ No, he doesn't like cigarettes.

C. Írjunk mondatokat Johnról és Maryról. (✓ = szereti, ✔️ = nagyon szereti, X = nem szereti, ✗= utálja)

0. (tennis ✗) **He doesn't like tennis.**

1. (coffee ✔) **He...**

2. (films ✔) **She...**

3. (reading books ✔️) **He...**

4. (dogs ✗) **She...**

5. (classical music ✔) **He...**

6. (cigarettes ✗) **She...**

D. Írjunk kérdéseket az alábbi szavak helyes sorrendbe rendezésével.

0. (do/does/films/horror/like/you)

1. (cousin/do/does/live/where/your)

2. (a/cup/do/does/of/tea/they/want)

3. (do/does/Ellen/play/tennis/where)

4. (cats/do/does/like/milk/why)

5. (do/does/classical/music/play/she)

6. (CD/do/does/he/his/like/new)

7. (do/does/she/start/when/work)

8. (do/does/English/how/Kate/often/practise)

**Do you like horror films?**
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Simple (4–5. fejezet)

A
Irjuk be a mondatokba a zárójelben lévő ige egyszerű jelen idejű állító vagy tagadó alakját. Használjuk a don’t, doesn’t alakokat.

0. Tom, catches (catch) the bus to school at about nine o’clock.
1. It often (rain) at this time of the year.
2. I (not/drive) to work. I go by bus.
3. She usually (have) lunch at about one o’clock.
4. He (not/earn) much money in his job.
5. This problem (not/happen) very often.
6. My father (fly) to the USA regularly.
7. Trains to Oxford (leave) every hour in the morning.
8. You (not/do) your work carefully enough.
9. She (read) a newspaper every day.
10. We (not/listen) to the radio very often.
11. He often (arrive) at work late.
12. They (go) to a lot of concerts.

B
Egészítsük ki az alábbi párosrészeket. Használjuk az egyszerű jelen időt.

A: _Does Alan use_ a computer?
B: Yes, Alan uses a computer.

1. A: _Where_ in an office?
B: No, Carol works in a factory.

2. A: Where _your games?_
B: We play our games in the local park.

3. A: _the bus to school?_
B: Yes, I take the bus to school every morning.

4. A: _?_
B: The shops close at five o’clock in the afternoon.

5. A: _abroad on holiday every year?_
B: Yes, we go abroad every year.

6. A: _?
B: He drives an old German car.

C
Alkossunk kérdéseket és válaszokat az alábbi szavak felhasználásával.

0. (you/TV/watch/every/do/evening)
   (watch/every/TV/evening/we)
1. (dinner/do/have/time/what/you)
   (at/dinner/have/eight o’clock/we)
2. (breakfast/do/have/where/you)
   (breakfast/have/in/kitchen/the/we)
3. (coffee/do/drink/in/morning/the/you)
   (coffee/drink/we)

Do you watch TV every evening?
No, we don’t watch TV every evening.
D) Irajuk be a mondatokba a zárójelben található igék megfelelő egyszerű jelen idejű alakját.

0  Jane **reads** (read) the Guardian newspaper, but I **read** (read) The Independent.

1  Fred ............... (cycle) to work, but his wife ............... (go) by car.

2  Mark ............... (say) he ............... (do) a lot of fishing, but he never ............... (catch) anything.

3  Jeff ............... (buy) his food in small shops, but Jane ............... (do) all her shopping at the supermarket.

4  Diana ............... (like) physics, chemistry and biology; she always ............... (get) good marks in her science exams.

5  Susan ............... (live) in Leeds, but she ............... (work) in Bradford.

6  I ............... (leave) work at six o’clock, but John ............... (finish) work at five o’clock.

7  Mary ............... (ride) her bike to school and her father ............... (carry) her books.

8  For breakfast, Ann ............... (eat) cereal with milk.

E) Fogalmazzuk meg a kérdéseket és a válaszokat a zárójelben található szavakból. Használjunk egyszerű jelen időt.

0  *(President of the USA/live in New York?)*

**Does the President of the USA live in New York?**

~ *(No, he/live in Washington.)*

1  *(modern trains/use/coal?)*

~ *(No, they/use/electricity.)*

2  *(The Queen/wear/a crown?)*

~ *(No, she/usually wear/a hat.)*

3  *(wine/come/from oranges?)*

~ *(No, it/come/from grapes.)*

4  *(Sri Lanka/export/coffee?)*

~ *(No, it/export/tea.)*

5  *(potatoes/grow/on bushes?)*

~ *(No, they/grow/in the ground.)*

F) Alakítsuk át az E gyakorlat mondatait tagadó mondatokká.

0  **The President of the USA doesn’t live in New York.**

1  

2  

3  

4  

5  

21
G Irjunk állító illetve tagadó mondatokat a zárójelben található szavak felhasználásával.
0 (The sun/rise/in the east) The sun rises in the east.
0 (The sun/rise/in the west) The sun doesn’t rise in the west.
1 (Ice/float/on water) .........................................................
2 (Lions/live/in the Arctic) ......................................................
3 (Winter/come/after spring) ....................................................
4 (Austrians/speak/German) ..................................................
5 (Cotton/come/from sheep) ..................................................

H Irjuk be a párbeszéd hiányzó szavait. Használjuk a megadott igéket, de mindegyiket csak egyszer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>leave</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>brush</th>
<th>stop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTERVIEWER: How do you start the day, Jim?
JIM: Well, I 0. get up at six o’clock. I get washed and dressed, and I have breakfast at seven o’clock. I 1. toast and marmalade. After breakfast, I 2. my teeth. I 3. to work at eight.

INTERVIEWER: When do you get to work?
JIM: I usually 4. at my office at about half past eight. First I 5. a cup of coffee, and then I 6. work at a quarter to nine.

INTERVIEWER: Where do you work?
JIM: I 7. in a bank. I am a computer operator. I 8. my job. It’s very interesting.

INTERVIEWER: When do you eat lunch?
JIM: I 9. work and I have lunch at one o’clock. I 10. tea at half past three.

INTERVIEWER: When do you finish work?
JIM: I 11. the office at six o’clock. I eat dinner when I get home. Then I 12. TV for an hour or two.

I Keressük meg a kérdésekhez a megfelelő választ.
0 How often do you eat chocolate? a As late as possible.
1 When does Ben do his homework? b Two or three times a day.
2 Where does your mother work? c Because I love it!
3 When do you get up on Sundays? d To her grandmother’s house.
4 How often do you brush your teeth? e Because he always oversleeps.
5 Where does Angela go after school? f About once a week.
6 Why do you play tennis every day? g As soon as he gets home.
7 Why does Tony always get to school late? h In a bank.

0 f 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Döntsük el, melyik mondat helyes és melyik nem. Ha helyes a mondat, tegyük pipát (✔)
a kockába, ha helytelen a mondat, jelöljük ✗-szel, és írjuk le a mondatot helyesen.

0  I like not that music. ✗ I don’t like that music
0  Mary knows the answer. ✔
1  Go they to bed after midnight? □
2  We watch TV every evening. □
3  Where your sister works? □
4  She playses tennis every Saturday. □
5  Carlos and Maria works in Mexico City. □
6  What do elephants eat? □
7  Philip doesn’t want a cup of tea. □
8  The shops closes at five o’clock. □
9  She don’t comes from France. □

A meghatározás alapján válasszuk ki a megfelelő fogalmaozást, és mondatba foglalva
írjuk a kipontozott vonalra.

dentist  pop star  artist  doctor  footballer  photographer

0  We often see him on TV. When he scores a goal the crowd goes crazy.
   He’s a footballer.
1  He works at the hospital. He looks after sick children.

2  She takes pictures for one of the top fashion magazines.

3  She always says to her patients, ‘Open your mouth, please!’

4  We sometimes go to see her band. She sings and plays lead guitar.

5  He paints wonderful pictures. I love the way he uses colour.

Írjuk le, mit csinál Robert egy átlagos napon. Használjuk az egyszerű jelen időt.

Megfürdik, feloltózik, utána reggelizik.
Reggeliére (általában) tejet iszik és vajas, lekváros piritóst eszik. Reggeli után fogat mos.
Fél kilenckor indul el az iskolába.
Az iskola előtt találkozik a barátaival. Egyenruhát nem kell viselniük, (általában)
farmert hordanak és edzőcipőt. Kicsit beszéletnek, aztán bemennek az iskolába.
A tanítás nyolc óra ötven perc kor kezdődik. Minden nap hat órájuk van. Ma történelem,
földrajz és francia órájuk van, matematika és fizika nincs. Fél egykor kezdődik az
Robert hazamegy, és készül a másnapí órákra.
A szülei hatig dolgoznak, és általában hét körül érnek haza. Este Robert tévét néz, vagy
a számítógépén játszik. Gyakran találkozik a barátaival. Este tízre szokott hazaérni.
A folyamatos jelen – Present Continuous (1)
(I’m eating, I’m not eating)

1. A folyamatos jelenben a következő szerkezetet használjuk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be + -ing alak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A folyamatos jelen idő alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TELJES ALAK</th>
<th>OSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am eating</td>
<td>I’m eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are eating</td>
<td>You’re eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it is eating</td>
<td>He/she/it’s eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are eating</td>
<td>We’re eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are eating</td>
<td>You’re eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are eating</td>
<td>They’re eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Az -ing alakot úgy képezzük, hogy az ige főnévi igenévi alakjához hozzákapcsoljuk az -ing végződést.

- listen → listening
- work → working
- play → playing
- read → reading

3. Figyeljük meg a következő -ing végződéssel ellátott igék helyesírását:

- win → winning
- shop → shopping
- swim → swimming
- dance → dancing
- give → giving
- get → getting
- sit → sitting
- travel → travelling
- write → writing

Az -ing végződéssel ellátott igék helyesírására vonatkozó magyarázatok a 361. oldalon találhatók.

4. A folyamatos jelen időt akkor használjuk, amikor:

- olyan cselekvésről beszélünk, amely épben folyamatban van a beszélgetés idején:

  ![Image of a bus and people with the phrase "The bus is coming"]

- olyan cselekvésről beszélünk, amely mostanában történik, de nem feltétlenül a beszéd pillanatában:

  ![Image of a person learning Spanish and the phrase "What are you doing these days?"]

- elmeséljük, mi történik egy képen vagy fényképen:

  "Look! In this photo John’s playing volleyball.

Gyakorlatok

A megadott szavak felhasználásával írjuk le, mit csinálnak a képeken látható emberek. Használjunk folyamatos jelent.

0. He’s drinking..... (He/drink) a cup of coffee.
1. ................................ (They/carry) their suitcases.
2. ................................ (She/take) a photograph.
3. ................................ (They/sit) on a bench.
Sheila és Tommy régi barátok, hosszú ideje nem találkoztak. Egészítsük ki a szöveget folyamatos jelen használatával. (Három helyen tagadó alakot kell használnunk.)

**Sheila:** Tommy! How are you? How's work?

**Tommy:** I'm fine thanks, but I'm not teaching (teach) at the moment. I'm taking (take) a two-year break. What about you?

**Sheila:** 1. I ... (work) at the travel agent's as usual, but 2. I .......... (live) in my flat in Camden. 3. I .......... (stay) with my mum. She's ill, and 4. I .......... (look) after her. Anyway, what are you doing in your break?

**Tommy:** 5. I .......... (study) Chinese, but 6. I .......... (learn) very fast! I want to work in China next year.

**Sheila:** Great! And how are Maddy and the new baby?

**Tommy:** They're fine. Of course, 7. we .......... (sleep) much at the moment. The baby wakes up every hour! She 8 .......... (grow) fast, though.

---

A következő beszélgetés egy londoni karneváról szól. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott ígérek és folyamatos jelen használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>talk</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>dance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Good morning, 1. I'm standing ... in the street with hundreds of people. 2. A steel band .........., and 2. two girls .......... to the music. At the moment,

3. I .......... to Miranda and Martin.

'Miranda, where are you from?'

'I'm from Mexico. 4. I .......... in London for two weeks.'

'Is this your first visit to the Carnival?'

'Yes, 5. I .......... the music and the food. At the moment 6. I .......... a lamb curry.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>take</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>throw</th>
<th>wear</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>come</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

'Thank you, Miranda. So, Martin, are you enjoying the Carnival?'

'Yes, 7. I .......... to some really good new music and 8. I .......... some fruit juice.'

'And you've got a camera, so 9. you .......... a lot of photographs.'

'Of course. It's a very colourful day!'

Now, 10. another float .......... 11. The people on the float .......... sports clothes.

12. They .......... balls. I think they're from a basketball team.

---

Egészítsük ki az alábbi képeslapot. Használjunk folyamatos jelen idejű teljes alakokat (pl.: is sitting).

Jenny and I 0. are staying (stay) here for a week. The sun 1. .......... (shine) and it's very hot. We 2. .......... (sit) on the beach and I 3. .......... (drink) an orange juice. We 4. .......... (not swim) because we're both tired. We 5. .......... (watch) the boats on the sea at the moment. They 6. .......... (travel) fast, but I can see fifteen or sixteen. Jenny 7. .......... (read) her book, and I 8. .......... (write) all the postcards!
1 Kérdő szerkezet folyamatos jelenben:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBБES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am I winning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you winning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is she/he/it winning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are we winning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you winning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are they winning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Néhány példamondat:

*Is he watching TV at the moment?*
*Are they working hard?*
*Are you listening to me? ~ Yes, I am.*

(További példák a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 Az alábbi, folyamatos jelen idejű kérdések mind ugyanazt jelentik: „Hogy vagy?”

*How’s it going?*
*How are you getting on?*
*How are you doing?*

![Image](https://example.com/image)

3 A folyamatos jelent akkor használjuk, ha

- valamilyen változásról vagy folyamatról beszélünk. Ilyenkor általában a *nowadays*, *these days* időhatározókat tesszük a mondatba.

*The earth’s climate is getting warmer.*

(*= A Föld éghajlata melegszik.)*

*These days, more and more people are going abroad for their holidays.*

(*= Manapság egyre több ember megy külföldre nyaralni.)*

- azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy valami túl gyakran történő esemény zavar bennünket.

Ilyenkor az *always* határozószót használjuk. Figyeljük meg az *always* helyét a mondatban!

*Tom is always asking stupid questions.*

(*= Tamás állandóan butaságokat kérdezi.)*

*They’re always telephoning me at home.*

(A folyamatos jelen használatára vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók a 7. fejezetben találhatók.)

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Alkossunk kérdéseket a zárójelben található szavak helyes sorrendbe állításával.

0 (enjoying/your work/you/are/?)
1 (she/having lunch/is/?)
2 (you/are/feeling sick/?)
3 (playing football/are/they/?)
4 (the cat/sleeping/is/?)
5 (relaxing/are/you/?)
6 (the sun/is/shining/?)
7 (he/is/coming/to the cinema/?)
8 (listening/are/they/?)
9 (eating/at the moment/she/is/?)
10 (it/raining hard/is/?)
11 (I/getting better/at tennis/am/?)
12 (are/winning the match/we/?)

Are you enjoying your work?
Keressük meg a kérdésekhez tartozó helyes válaszokat, és írjuk a megfelelő betűt a kérdés száma mellé.

0 Is she enjoying her new job?
1 Is she working in Peru this year?
2 Why are you cycling to school these days?
3 Is Peter in the bathroom?
4 Is David working in a bar this summer?
5 Are they listening to the radio?
6 Are you studying English this year?
7 Are they living in Madrid at the moment?
8 Why is Julie working so much at the moment?

a Yes, we’re working hard.
b No, they’re playing CDs.
c Because she’s trying to earn more money.
d Because I’m trying to get fit.
e Yes, they’re learning Spanish.
f No, he’s working in a restaurant.
g Yes, she’s always talking about it!
h Yes, he’s having a bath.
i No, she’s studying in Mexico.

become  breathe  build  drive  get  go  have  increase  live  smoke  work

REPORTER: What do you think are the good things and the bad things in Europe today?
SZABÓ: Well, I think it is very positive that medical treatment is becoming more effective and this means that, in Europe, people longer these days. But, of course, more and more women outside the home and so parents smaller families. The effect of this is that, in general, the age of the population .

REPORTER: What are some of the negative things?
SZABÓ: Well, one big problem is that young people more, and this is bad for their health. Another negative point, especially in big towns, is that more and more people to work, so although we more roads, traffic is a big problem. Cars also affect the air, of course. Nowadays, we air that more and more polluted. Another thing is that many young people can’t find a place to live. Governments cannot stop inflation and house prices up all the time.

A zárójelben található szavak felhasználásával válaszoljunk a kérdésekre. Mindegyik válaszban használjuk az always szót.

0 A: Why don’t you like Adam?
B: (tell/stupid stories)

1 A: Why are you annoyed with Mary?
B: (ask/me for money)

2 A: Why don’t you like Pam and Paul?
B: (argue/in public)

3 A: Why are you annoyed with Susan?
B: (borrow/my CDs)

4 A: Why don’t you like Mark?
B: (phone/me late at night)

Because he’s always telling stupid stories.
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Continuous (7–8. fejezet)

A A megadott igék felhasználásával írjuk le, mi történik a képeken. A mondatok alanya 
He/She/It/They legyen, és használjunk folyamatos jelent.

0 They're walking
1 after a ball.
2 a picture.
3 a baby.
4 some fish.
5 over a wall.

B Egészítsük ki a kérdéseket a megfelelő személyes névmással (I/you/he stb). Használjunk folyamatos 
jelent.

0 A: What ................................ (watch) on the TV?
   B: I'm watching a programme about wildlife in Africa.
1 A: What ................................ (do) at the moment?
   B: He's reading a book.
2 A: ........................................ (listen) to me?
   B: Yes, of course I'm listening to you.
3 A: Where ................................. (go)?
   B: I'm going to the shops.
4 A: What ................................. (cook)?
   B: He's cooking an Italian meal.
5 A: Where ...................... (stay)?
   B: She's staying with some friends.
6 A: ........................................ (wait) for the number 36 bus?
   B: No, I'm waiting for a different bus.
7 A: ........................................ (rain) at the moment?
   B: No, it's quite sunny now.
8 A: What ................................. (read)?
   B: I'm reading a very interesting novel.
Egésztsük ki a párbeszédet. Használjunk folyamatos jelent.

PAUL: Hi, Steve! What are you doing?
STEVE: 0. *I'm going* (I/go) to the bank. What are you doing?
PAUL: 1................................ (I/shop), 2................................. (I/look) for a new tennis racket. 3................................. (I/play) a lot of tennis at the moment, and I need a new racket.
STEVE: Where is Jackie? Do you know?
PAUL: Yes. She isn't in England at the moment. 4............................... (She/work) in France for a month.
STEVE: What 5............................... (she/do) in France?
PAUL: 6............................... (She/sing) in a night-club.
STEVE: Really? What about Fred and Sue? What 7............................... (they/do)?
PAUL: 8............................... (They/study) for an exam. They're always in the library at the moment.
STEVE: How is your sister? Is she all right?
PAUL: Yes, she's fine, but she's tired. 9............................... (We/paint) the living-room. It's hard work.
STEVE: Can I help you?
PAUL: No, it's OK. My father 10............................... (help).
STEVE: Well, I hope you find a good racket.

Irjuk le, mit csinálnak (✓) és mit nem csinálnak (X) a képen látható személyek.

0 (George/eat/breakfast)  x  George isn't eating breakfast.
(George/sleep) ✓ George is sleeping.
1 (They/work) 
(They/sit/in the garden)
2 (I/study/music)
(I/learn/Japanese)
3 (He/play/tennis)
(He/win)
4 (We/spend/a day/at the seaside)
(The sun/shine)
Hello, \textit{how's it going}? You’re Paul’s son, aren’t you?

That’s right.

I’m Julia, Elaine’s niece. at Elaine’s house at the moment.

That’s right. I’m helping her. and the dining room at the moment. It’s a nice wedding, isn’t it? your dad?

Yes. the disco with my uncle Max. Can I get you some more wine?

No, thanks. wine, actually. This is water.

So or working at the moment?

Japanese. Elaine has got an old friend in Tokyo. I’m going to visit him in September.

That’s interesting. My sister speaks Japanese. a Japanese bank in London at the moment. She’s over there by the window.

my little nephew, John.

He’s very sweet. Look, at us!
How are you getting on?

JOHN: Hello, Steve. How are you getting on?

STEVE: I’m fine, thanks.

JOHN: I’ve got a job in that new office on Green Street.

STEVE: I’m working in the advertising department. It’s quite interesting. What about you?

JOHN: Well, I’m studying music at college.

STEVE: Really? What kind of music?

JOHN: All kinds! But this year.

STEVE: I can’t, I’m afraid.

JOHN: Oh, I see. How is she?

STEVE: Fine, thanks.

Mit csinálnak az emberek egy átlagos reggel Londonban?


1. Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)

Egyszerű jelen használunk, amikor valamilyen általános igazságot, tényt állapítunk meg:

Anna speaks good Spanish.
Journalists write newspaper articles.
I come from Norway. (= Norvég vagyok.)

Present Continuous (folyamatos jelen)

A folyamatos jelen azt fejezi ki, hogy a megnevezett cselekvés a beszéd pillanatában tart:

Anna's busy. She's speaking on the phone.
What are you writing? ~ A letter to Jane.
Look! The bus is coming.

2. Egyéb jelen

Egyszerű jelen használunk a usually, often és every szavakkal:

We usually go out to dinner at weekends.
I often go to football matches on Sundays.
The buses leave every hour.

Mike works for an advertising company. He lives in Paris. (= Párizs az otthona.)
Jane travels a lot in her job. I do a lot of sport.

3. Az igék bizonyos csoportját általában csak egyszerű jelenben használjuk. Ezek a gondolkozzással kapcsolatos igék, az érzelmeiket és érzéseket vagy véleményt, illetve a bitorklást kifejező igék, pl. know, remember, understand, like, want, hate, have.

Figyelem: Ezeket az igéket nem használjuk folyamatos jelenben!
I know someone who lives in Venice. NEM: I’m knowing ...
I have a house by the sea. NEM: I’m having ...

A statikus igék használatalára vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók a 66. fejezetben találhatók.

Gyakorlatok

A. Tegyük a zárójelben lévő igéket egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelenbe.

1. are you doing

0. A: What ................................................. (you/do)?
   B: I’m finishing ........................................... (finish) my homework.

1. A: How ................................................. (your sister/travel) to work every day?
   B: She ..................................................... (take) the bus.

2. A: What ................................................. (you/eat)?
   B: An apple. It’s delicious! I ................................................. (love) apples.

3. A: Look! It ................................................. (snow).
   B: It ..................................................... (snow) every year in my country.
Dear David,
I live in a large flat in Rome. I'm having two sisters. They are called Rosa and Maria. We are getting up at seven o'clock every morning, and we have coffee and a small breakfast. I leave the flat at eight and walk to the university. I am finishing classes at five every day, and I arrive home at six. This month I work very hard for my first exams.

At the moment, I eat breakfast in the kitchen of our flat; my mother drinks coffee, and my sisters are reading magazines.

On Saturday afternoons I am playing tennis with my friends, or I go to the cinema. Today, I'm going to see a new English film! Sometimes I am watching American films on TV, but I'm not understanding the words! Are you liking films?

With best wishes,
Anna

Irjunk mondatokat a zárójelben található szavak felhasználásával. Használjuk az egyszerű vagy a folyamatos jelent.

0 (Usually she/work/at the office, but this week she/work/at home)

Usually she works at the office, but this week she's working at home.

1 (You/not/eat/very much at the moment. Are you ill?)

2 (She/know/three words in Italian!)

3 (I/take/the bus to work this week, but usually I/walk)

4 (I/study/Japanese this year. It's very difficult.)

5 (you/watch/the television at the moment?)

6 (I/not/remember/the name of the hotel)

7 (She/speak/three languages)

8 (The sun/shine./It's a beautiful day!)
ROBERT: (Hello./you/wait/for the same train as me?)
   0 Hello. Are you waiting for the same train as me?

PAUL: (I/not/now. I/wait/for the 6.15 to Brussels. And you?)
   1

ROBERT: (Yes, me too./you/live/in Brussels?)
   2

PAUL: (No. I come from Brussels, but I/study/at university in Paris at the moment.)
   3

ROBERT: (Oh yes? What course/you/do?)
   4

PAUL: (I/do/a two-year course in business management.)
   5

ROBERT: (So why/you/go/to Brussels?)
   6

PAUL: (All my friends/live/there, and I/often/go/there at weekends.)
   7

   (I/not/now/many people in Paris. What about you?/you/often/go/to/Brussels?)
   8

ROBERT: (Yes, on business. I/go/to a meeting there today.)
   9

PAUL: (Oh yes. What kind of job/you/do?)
   10

ROBERT: (I/work/in the Marketing Department of a small company, and I/often/travel/to different
towns and cities for meetings.)
   11

PAUL: (What/your company/sell?)
   12

ROBERT: (It/make/clocks.)
   13

PAUL: (Oh look! The train/come.)
   14

**E** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen megfelelő alakjával.

0 1. leave ............... (leave) home at seven o'clock every morning.

1 She usually ............... (work) in the Sales Department in London, but at the moment
   she ............... (do) a training course in Bristol.

2 Linda ............... (wash) her hair every day.

3 He ............... (try) very hard in every game that he ............... (play).

4 Excuse me. I think that you ............... (sit) in my seat.

5 ............... (you/listen) to the radio very often?
Don’t talk to me now. I .................. (write) an important letter.

Why......................... (they/drive) on the left in Britain?

It......................... (not/get) dark at this time of year until about 10 o’clock.

It......................... (rain) here a lot, but it ..................... (not/rain) now.

A: What are you doing?

B: I ..................... (bake) a cake. Why ..................... (you/smile)?

..................... (I/do) something wrong?

Good morning, Lincoln. This is Penny Stanton with the morning interview programme.

Today I 0 ................. (have) a visitor from Italy. Her name is Cecilia and she
0, is sitting ........... (sit) here in the studio with me. Good morning, Cecilia.

1 ..................... (you/sit) comfortably?

Yes, thank you. I’m fine.

I 2 .................. (know) you are Italian, but where 3 .................. (you/live) in Italy?

I 4 ..................... (live) in Pisa.

Ah, in England everybody 5 .................. (remember) that Pisa 6 ..............

(have) a famous leaning tower.

Yes, here in Lincoln everybody 7 .................. (want) to ask me about it.

And when people 8 .................. (ask) you about the tower, what 9 ..................

(you/say)?

I 10 ..................... (tell) them that I 11 .................. (see) it every day.

And now you 12 .................. (stay) in Lincoln – my home town. 13 ..............

(you/like) Lincoln?

14 ..................... (you/want) my honest opinion?

Of course.

Well, I 15 .................. (stay) with a wonderful family and everybody is very kind to me,
so I 16 .................. (love) the people. But I 17 .................. (not/like) the weather. It
18 ..................... (always/rain).

Well, just now the sun 19 .................. (shine).

Yes, but it 20 .................. (not/shine) very often. I 21 .................. (not/want) to
talk about the weather.

All right. Why are you in Lincoln? What 22 .................. (you/do) here?

I’m here with my brother, Giovanni. We 23 .................. (study) English.

But your English is very good! You 24 .................. (speak) English very well, and you
25 ................. (understand) everything. 26 .................. (your brother/speak) very
good English?

No, he 27 .................. (not/speak) English very well.

And where is Giovanni now? What 28 .................. (he/do)? 29 ..................
(you/ know)?

Yes, he 30 .................. (sit) with the family. They 31 .................. (listen) to this interview.
A felszólító mód – Imperative (Go, Don’t go)

1 Felszólító módban minden személyben az ige to nélküli főnévi igenévi alakja áll. Az egyes és többes számu, illetve a tegező és magazó alakok között nincs különbség.

Így használjuk a felszólító módot:

Come in. Have a cup of tea. (= Gyere be! Igyál egy csésze teát!)
Turn left at the post office.
Don’t touch! It’s hot. (= Ne érintsd meg! Forró.)
Maga a felszólító mód egyetlen szóból áll, de a mondatot gyakran egészítjük ki még egy-két szóval:
Help!
Help me! (= Segíts nekem!)
Help me with my suitcase.

Ha udvariasabban akarjuk kifejezni magukat, a please (= légy szíves/legyen szíves) szót tesszük a mondat végére:

Help me with my suitcase, please.
Hurry up, please. We’re late.
Come here, please.
Listen to me, please.

2 Tiltáskor a Do not vagy Don’t (= Ne) kerül az ige elé:
Do not forget your books!
Don’t be late!
Don’t wait for me!

Rendszerint az összevont alakot használjuk:
A: Is it all right if I take a sandwich?
B: No, don’t!

3 A felszólító módot akkor használjuk, ha:

► útbaigazítást vagy utasítást adunk:
Turn right at the corner.
Don’t forget your passport.

► figyelmeztetünk valakit valamire:
Look out! There’s a car coming.
Be careful! That box is very heavy.

► tanácsot adunk:
Have a rest. You look tired.
Take a coat. It’s cold today.
Don’t see that film. It’s terrible!

► kérünk valakit valamire:
Come in, please, and sit down.
Listen to this song. It’s wonderful.
Pass the butter, please.

► kinálunk vagy ajánlunk valamit:
Have another orange juice.
Make yourself a cup of coffee.

► jókvánságunkat fejezzük ki:
Have a good trip!
Have a nice holiday!

Gyakorlatok

Fordítsuk le a felszólító mondatokat a megadott igék használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>close</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>put</th>
<th>forget</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>touch</th>
<th>wait</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 Jöjjön be, kérem!
0 Ne várij rám!
1 Ne nyúlj a lámpához!
2 Vigyetek magatokkal esernyőt!
3 Úljön le egy percre!
4 Most ne állj meg!
5 Kérem, ne felejtsék el a könyveket!
6 Hallgasd meg ezt az új CD-t!
7 Nyisd ki az ablakot, légy szíves!
8 Tegye a táskát az asztalra, kérem!
9 Írd ide a neved!
10 Ne csukjátok be az ajtó!

Come in, please. .................................................................
Don’t wait for me. .................................................................

.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
Dear Paul,

0. **Come** ........ and see me next weekend. I’m staying in a house by the sea.

1. .................. to bring your swimming costume with you! It isn’t difficult to find the house. When you get to the crossroads in the town, 2. .................. right and drive to the end of the road. 3. .................. careful because it’s a dangerous road! 4. .................. some warm clothes with you because it is cold in the evenings here. If I’m not at home when you arrive, 5. .................. for me. The key to the house is under the big white stone in the garden. 6. .................. the front door and 7. .................. yourself a cup of tea in the kitchen. 8. .................. a good journey!

Best wishes,

Steven
1 A létige egyszerű múlt idejű alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLITÁS</th>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>You were</td>
<td>We/you/they were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it was</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
<th>TELJES ALAK</th>
<th>OSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was not</td>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You were not</td>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it was not</td>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÖBBES SZÁM</td>
<td>We/you/they were not weren’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Was I</td>
<td>Were you</td>
<td>Were we/you/they right?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A rövid válaszokat lásd a 46. fejezetben.)

2 Néhány példa a was és were használatára:

* I was in New York last week.
* We weren’t at home yesterday evening.
* Was it a good film? – Yes, it was.
* Last year there was a pop festival here.
* There were four runners in the race.

3 A was/were alakot akkor használjuk, ha olyan tényt vagy eseményt közlünk, amely a múltban volt igaz, illetve akkor történt:

* John F. Kennedy was an American president.
* Our first house was in the centre of town.
* A: Were your answers correct?
  B: No, they were all wrong! Paula wasn’t the first person at the party.
  (= Nem Paula érkezett elsőként a buliba)

A was/were + born jelentése:

* I was born in 1975. (= 1975-ben születtem.)

A was/were után gyakran megmondjuk, hogy valami hol és mikor történt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELY</th>
<th>IDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We were</td>
<td>in Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She wasn’t</td>
<td>at home</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

George and Joanna weren’t in London at the weekend. They were in Brighton.
Steve and Mary were here at six o’clock.

Gyakori a was/were + melléknév szerkezet:

* It was cold yesterday.
* They were tired after the journey.
* The train was late again this morning.
* Were your exams easy? – The first exam was easy, but the second one wasn’t.

Gyakorlatok

A Anthony a szülővárosától beszél egy dokumentumfilmében. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a hiányzó személyes névmással (it, they) vagy a there névmással és a létige megfelelő alakjával (was/were).

These days there are houses on the hills outside town, but thirty years ago 0 there were trees. Now, many people in town are managers and travel agents and teachers, I suppose, but when I was young, 1 farmers. Today the town centre is full on Sunday morning, but when I was a boy 2 empty, because all the shops were shut. I don’t like the change. I think Sunday should be a quiet day. There are cars everywhere nowadays - of course, 3 cars when I was young, too, but not so many. Today it’s difficult to cross the road, but thirty years ago 4 easy, because there was no traffic. And of course, this is my house. It’s very expensive now, but 5 cheap when my parents bought it. I was born in this house. Nowadays, of course, people are born in hospitals, but in the past 6 born at home. Finally, there’s no snow in winter these days! When I was a boy 7 snow every year in February.
Mary a múlt hét végén Madridban járt. Tegyünk fel neki kérdéseket a létige megfelelő múlt idejű alakjaival (was/were).

0 (your hotel good?) Was your hotel good? ..................................................
1 (your room comfortable?) ......................................................................
2 (the weather nice?) ..................................................................................
3 (the streets full of people?) ......................................................................
4 (the shops expensive?) .............................................................................
5 (the city exciting at night?) ......................................................................
6 (the museums interesting?) ......................................................................
7 (the people friendly?) ............................................................................... 
8 (your flight OK?) ......................................................................................

George és Sally ötven éve házasok; most az első lakásukról beszélgetnek. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal, valamint a was vagy were használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>new</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>big</th>
<th>green</th>
<th>cheap</th>
<th>cool</th>
<th>bad</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 GEORGE: The house was warm.
SALLY: No, it wasn't warm, it was cold.

1 GEORGE: The garden was small.
SALLY: No, it ..............................................

2 GEORGE: The neighbours were French.
SALLY: No, they ...........................................

3 GEORGE: The living-room was red.
SALLY: No, it ..............................................

4 GEORGE: Our first chairs were expensive.
SALLY: No, they ...........................................

5 GEORGE: The kitchen was old.
SALLY: No, it ..............................................

6 GEORGE: The local shops were good.
SALLY: No, they ...........................................

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a was/wasn't/were/weren't használatával.

PETER: 0 Was Paul at work today?
JULIE: No, he 1 ............... in the office. I think he's sick.
HENRY: 2 ............... you in South America last year?

STEVE: Yes, I 3 ............... in Bolivia on business, and then my wife and I
4 ............... in Brazil for a holiday.

PAULA: Philip and I 5 ............... at home in London last week. We 6 ............... at Mike's house in Cornwall. It was lovely there. Do you know Mike?

JANE: Yes, I 7 ............... at his party in Oxford in the summer.
8 ............... you there?

PAULA: No, we weren't there. Philip and I 9 ............... in Portugal in the summer.
1 A következő mondatokban az igék egyszerű múlt idejű alakjai szerepelnek:

We worked hard last week.
I didn’t watch TV last night.
Where did you go at the weekend?

2 Az egyszerű múlt alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTÁS</th>
<th>I /you</th>
<th>He /she /it</th>
<th>We /you /they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I /you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did not walk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>I /you</th>
<th>He /she /it</th>
<th>We /you /they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A rövid válaszokat lásd a 46. fejezetben.)

3 A szabályos igék múlt idejű alakja -ed-re végződik:

walk → walked  play → played

cry → cried  stop → stopped

(További információ a 362. oldalon található.)

Bizonyos igék múlt idejű alakját nem a szabályos -ed végződéssel képezzük, ezek a rendhagyó igék:

come → came  do → did
have → had  go → went

(A rendhagyó igék a 363. oldalon találhatók.)

4 Az egyszerű múlt időt akkor használjuk, ha:
> olyan cselekvésről vagy eseményről beszélünk, ami a múltban történt és már befejeződött. Az ilyen mondatokban gyakran használunk múltá utaló időhatározót, pl.: two years ago, last month, yesterday, at four o’clock, when?:
I went to Spain two years ago.
She left her job last year.

A: When did you win the cup?
B: We won the cup in 1993.

> valami a múltban egy bizonyos ideig tartott:
I lived in Rome for two years. (= Két évig éltem Rómában.) Then I went to work in Japan.
A: How long did the Second World War last?
(Mennyi ideig tartott a II. világháború?)
B: It lasted for six years.

> valami a múltban rendszeresen fordult elő:

When George was young, he always walked to school. (= Amikor George kicsi volt, mindig gyalog ment iskolába.)

> múltban játszódó történetet mondunk el. Ilyenkor egy újabbi mondatot vagy bekezdést gyakran vezetünk be az after that, then vagy next szavakkal:
We left home early on Saturday morning.
Then we drove without stopping to the Scottish border. We crossed the border. After that, we stopped in a little village and had something to eat. Next we put the second part of our plan into action.
A

Olvassuk el a Robert Louis Stevensonról szóló szöveget. Pipáljuk ki a helyesen használt múlt idejű ígéket, a hibás alakokat pedig húzzuk át, és írjuk le a helyes megoldást.

The Scottish writer Robert Louis Stevenson was born in 1850 in Edinburgh, and he became one of Scotland's most famous writers. He studied law at Edinburgh University, but he never worked as a lawyer. He met an American woman, Fanny Osbourne, and married her in 1880. A few years later, he wrote his first famous book, 'The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde', about a doctor who discovered a special drink that changed a normal man into a monster. Stevenson traveled to Samoa for the first time in 1888. He lived the last five years of his short life on Samoa with his wife. He died in 1894.

B

Egészítsük ki a következő levelet a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

Dear Jenny,

Dave, Joe and I went (go) to Scotland last week for a short holiday. We arrived home yesterday. Dave and I drive (drive), but Joe decide not to drive because he like (not like) the narrow roads. We visit Edinburgh, of course, and we see (see) the castle, and some of the Edinburgh Festival. We go to see a play, and listen to a lot of world music. After Edinburgh, we take the road north to Loch Ness. We meet hundreds of other tourists, but not 'Nessie' the monster.

Pete

C

Sonia vidéki nyaralása alkalmával kísérteties hangot hallott az egyik éjszaka. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a megadott igék múlt idejű alakjával. Három esetben használjunk tagadó szerkezetet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eat</th>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>here</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

SONIA: After a long walk on the beach, I had an ice cream by the sea and then back to the cottage in my car. I at the house at about nine o'clock. I the front door and went into the kitchen, because I was hungry.

MAX: you... anything to eat?

SONIA: Yes, there was some soup in a cupboard. But it, because the voice of a little girl upstairs.

MAX: Wow! you... upstairs?

SONIA: Yes. I looked in all the bedrooms, but anything. I went to bed, but at all! I heard the voice again, and in the same room as me!

MAX: Oh dear... you... in the house after that?

SONIA: No, I left immediately and drove home.
A következő párbeszédben a nagymama két unokájával beszélget a múltruól. Tegyük az igéket múlt időbe.

FENNY: Granny, tell us what things \( \text{were} \) (be) like when you were young. Where \( \text{did you live} \) (you/live)?

GRANNY: Well, I \( 1 \) (not/live) here in those days. I \( 2 \) (live) near Birmingham.

PENNY: And when \( 3 \) (you/be) born?

GRANNY: I \( 4 \) (be) born before the Second World War. It \( 5 \) (start) in 1939 and \( 6 \) (not/end) until 1945, so it \( 7 \) (last) for six years, you see. I \( 8 \) (not/understand) what the war was about and I \( 9 \) (not/know) any foreign people.

PAUL: What \( 10 \) (you/do) during the war?

GRANNY: Well, Uncle Sam, who \( 11 \) (be) older than me, and your grandad \( 12 \) (be) in the army. They \( 13 \) (fight) in Europe and Japan, but at the time we \( 14 \) (not/know) where they \( 15 \) (be) because the army \( 16 \) (not/allow) them to write letters.

PENNY: Yes, but what \( 17 \) (you/do)?

GRANNY: Well, a lot of women \( 18 \) (work) in the factories because, of course, there \( 19 \) (not/be) many men at home. But I \( 20 \) (choose) to work for the Red Cross. We \( 21 \) (look) after British soldiers when they \( 22 \) (come) home, but sometimes we \( 23 \) (care) for prisoners of war, who \( 24 \) (be) in camps, you see.

PAUL: And \( 25 \) (there/be) food in the shops?

GRANNY: No, there \( 26 \) (not/be) much food. There \( 27 \) (not/be) much meat, for example, and there \( 28 \) (not/be) any bananas or foreign things.

PENNY: If there \( 29 \) (not/be) much food, then you \( 30 \) (not/get) fat!

GRANNY: Oh, no. Nobody \( 31 \) (get) fat in those days. Everybody \( 32 \) (stay) slim.
A tanév kezdetén két diák beszélget a nyári szünetről. Használjuk az igék mult idejű alakját.

NICK: What **did you do** (you/do) in the summer?
ERIC: I **1** go around Europe by train.
NICK: 2 (it/be) expensive?
ERIC: No, I **3** (buy) a railcard, and it **4** (be) quite cheap.
NICK: 5 (you/go) on your own, or with some friends?
ERIC: A couple of friends **6** (come) with me.
NICK: How many countries **7** (you/visit)?
ERIC: I **8** go to six or seven countries. I **9** (have) a great time, and I really **10** (love) all of them.
NICK: Which one **11** (you/like) most?
ERIC: Sweden, I think. The countryside **12** (be) marvellous, and I **13** (take) lots of photographs.
NICK: When **14** (you/arrive) back home?
ERIC: Last week. I’m still rather tired.

A következő listában egy egyetemista napi programja olvasható. Írjunk mult idejű mondatokat arról, hogy melyik pontot teljesítette (√), melyiket nem (×).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Things to do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>09:00 get up ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09:15 - 10:00 finish my essay ×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00 drink a cup of coffee ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30 - 11:00 cycle to the university ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00 go to the morning lecture ×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00 - 15:00 work in the library ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:00 meet my friends ×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:00 - 15:30 watch the football match ×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:00 go to the afternoon lecture ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:00 - 19:00 return to the library ×</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Az évszámok utáni tőmondatokból alkossunk mult idejű, összetett mondatokat a példa alapján.

0 (It is 1984.) Sally is at school. She plays in a football team.

**When Sally was at school, she played in a football team.**

1 (It is 1987.) Bob’s sister is at university. She writes a lot of poetry.

**When**

2 (It is 1990.) Fred is in the army. He goes to many different countries.

**When**

3 (It is 1992.) Jane and Michael are at school. They don’t do much homework.

**When**

4 (It is 1985.) Anna is a teenager. She wears very long skirts.

**When**
A zárójelben megadott információ segítségével írjunk kérdéseket és válaszokat múlt időben.

0 (When/Kennedy/die?) ~ (He/in 1963)
   \textbf{When did Kennedy die?} ~ \textbf{He died in 1963.}

1 (What/Marie Curie/discover/in 1898?) ~ (She/radium.)

2 (Where/Michelangelo/live?) ~ (He/in Florence.)

3 (When/Thatcher/become/Prime Minister?). ~ (She/Prime Minister in 1979.)

4 (What/Alexander Bell/invent?) ~ (He/the telephone.)

5 (How many books/Agatha Christie/write?) ~ (She/over a hundred books.)

6 (When/Neil Armstrong/walk/on the Moon?) ~ (He/on the Moon in 1969.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>believe</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>last</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>talk</th>
<th>tell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

After I \textbf{left} school, I \textbf{took} a job on the railways.
We \textbf{} by train, of course.
In particular, we \textbf{} some mushrooms that \textbf{} as big as plates.
We \textbf{} everyone about the size of the mushrooms when we \textbf{} back home.
But nobody \textbf{} us.
Of course, we \textbf{} all the famous buildings in Sopron. They were fascinating.
We \textbf{} to go together to Sopron.
I \textbf{} friends with a man called István.
But most of all, we \textbf{} the delicious Hungarian food.
Sometimes, we \textbf{} about our ideas for a holiday.
The journey \textbf{} over 12 hours.

0 \textbf{After I left school, I took a job on the railways.}
The Native American Indians \(^1\) \(\text{were}\) the original inhabitants of America.

In 1620 a group of English people \(^1\) \(\text{went}\) to America on a ship called \(\text{Mayflower}\) and \(^2\) \(\text{arrived}\) in an area they called New England.

On 4 July 1776, America \(^3\) \(\text{declared}\) independence and \(^4\) \(\text{became}\) an independent country, the United States of America.

In 1861 there \(^5\) \(\text{began}\) a war between the northern and southern states of America. The northern states \(^6\) \(\text{freed}\) slavery, and they \(^7\) \(\text{abolished}\) slavery.

In 1969 the Americans \(^8\) \(\text{landed}\) on the Moon. Neil Armstrong \(^9\) \(\text{became}\) the first man on the Moon.

He \(^{10}\) \(\text{said},\) ‘One small step for man, one giant leap for mankind.’

Winston Churchill \(^1\) \(\text{was}\) a soldier, writer and politician. He \(^1\) \(\text{was born in}\) 1874. When he was a young man he \(^2\) \(\text{joined}\) the Army, and \(^3\) \(\text{became}\) in India and the Sudan. But he \(^4\) \(\text{became}\) a journalist as well. He was a reporter for the Daily Graphic and for the Morning Post. In 1899, the Post \(^5\) \(\text{sent}\) him to South Africa, where he wrote about the Boer War. Churchill entered Parliament in 1900. Between 1908 and 1929, he \(^6\) \(\text{served}\) for three British Prime Ministers: Asquith, Lloyd George and Baldwin. But he \(^7\) \(\text{lost}\) his Government job in 1929.

In 1939 Churchill returned to Parliament. Between 1939 and 1945 - the period of the Second World War - Churchill \(^8\) \(\text{became}\) one of Britain’s most popular and successful Prime Ministers. But at the end of the war, in 1945, the British people \(^9\) \(\text{chose}\) a change, and Churchill \(^10\) \(\text{lost}\) his job again. Winston Churchill \(^{11}\) \(\text{served}\) as Prime Minister one more time, from 1951 until 1955. In 1953 he \(^{12}\) \(\text{won}\) the Nobel Prize. He \(^{13}\) \(\text{died}\) in 1965 at the age of 91.
A folyamatos múlt – Past Continuous
(I was waiting, Was I waiting?)

1 A folyamatos múlt idő alakjai:

**ALLITÁS**
I/he/she/it was \( \text{waiting} \)
You/we/they were \( \text{waiting} \)

**TAGADÁS**
I/he/she/it was not/wasn’t \( \text{waiting} \)
You/we/they were not/weren’t \( \text{waiting} \)

**KÉRDÉS**
Was \( I/he/she/it \) \( \text{waiting} \)?
Were \( you/we/they \) \( \text{waiting} \)?

(A rövid válaszokat lásd a 46. fejezetben.)

Az -ing végződés helyesírására vonatkozó tudnivalók a 361. oldalon a C táblázatban találhatók.

2 A folyamatos múlt idővel olyan cselekvést fejezünk ki, amely a múltnak egy adott időpontjában folyamatban volt (pl. at seven o’clock, in 1991):

A: What were you doing at seven o’clock last night?
B: I was driving home from work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>driving</th>
<th>6.30</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>7.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>7.15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I was living in Japan in 1991. (I lived there from 1990 to 1993.)

3 Figyeljük meg a következő mondatot:

When I walked into the room, Ann was writing postcards and Keith was reading.
 (= Amikor bementem a szobába, Anna képeslapokat írt, Keith pedig olvasott.)

Az egyszerű múlt befeljezett cselekvést fejez ki (walked in = bementem), a folyamatos (was writing, was reading) pedig olyat, ami az egyszerű múlttal kifejezett cselekvés időpontjában éppen folyamatban volt. (Anna előbb kezdett írni, és Keith előbb kezdett olvasni, mint ahogy én belépettem.)

4 A folyamatos múlt idejű alak előtt használhatjuk a when vagy while szavakat:

I met her when/while we were working for the same company. (when/while = akkor, miközben/mialatt)

* Figeylem: Az egyszerű múlt mellett nem használjuk a while kötöszöt:

* When I met her, we were working for the same company. (when = akkor, abban az időpontban)

Gyakorlatok

**A**

Ann, egy kis cég vezetője, arra kérte Steve-et, a fiatal menedzsert, hogy jára körbe az irodát, aztán jelentse, mit csinálnak éppen az alkalmazottak. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben lévő igék folyamatos múlt idejű alakjával.

**STEVE:** First I went to reception. The receptionist \( ^0 \) ANSWERING \( \) (answer) the phone. Then I went through the Sales Department. Penny \( ^1 \) \( \) (write) a report.

**ANN:** And what \( ^2 \) \( \) (Jack/do)?

**STEVE:** \( ^3 \) (he/type) something – a letter, I think. Then I walked past Joan and Derek in the Accounts Department.

**ANN:** What \( ^4 \) \( \) (they/do)?

**STEVE:** They \( ^5 \) \( \) (use) their computers. Derek \( ^6 \) \( \) (do) something with numbers and Joan \( ^7 \) \( \) \( \) (prepare) one of those coloured graphs.

**ANN:** So they \( ^8 \) \( \) \( \) (not/play) computer games. Good! And in the Packing Department, \( ^9 \) \( \) \( \) (John/work) hard?

**STEVE:** No, he \( ^10 \) \( \) \( \) (have) a cup of tea. He always has a cup of tea at ten o’clock.
Írjuk le, hogy a képen látható személyek mit csináltak, amikor Rick belépett a helyiségbe. Használjuk a megadott ígérek folyamatos múlt idejű alakját.

- brush
- watch
- read
- listen
- write
- eat
- paint
- sit
- play

0 George was reading
1 Julie .............................................................. a newspaper.
2 Sue and Liz ...................................................... table tennis.
3 Frank ............................................................... television.
4 Caroline .......................................................... on the floor.
5 Barbara ............................................................. a letter.
6 Rita ................................................................. her hair.
7 Alison ............................................................. to some music.
8 Ann ................................................................. a picture.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázatban megadott információ alapján. Használjunk folyamatos vagy egyszerű múltat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shirley</th>
<th>Kevin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lived in New York</td>
<td>lived in Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1973–76</td>
<td>1973–75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studied at university</td>
<td>did a course in Computing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1976</td>
<td>1975–80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left university</td>
<td>worked as a computer operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1976–80</td>
<td>1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worked as a translator</td>
<td>met Shirley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>1980–85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>met Kevin</td>
<td>ran his own company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1982</td>
<td>1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married Kevin</td>
<td>married Shirley</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 In 1972 Shirley was living in New York.
1 In 1974 Kevin in Washington.
2 In 1974 Shirley at university.
3 In 1974 Kevin a course in computing.
4 When Shirley university in 1976, Kevin as a computer operator.
5 When Kevin Shirley, she as a translator.
6 While Shirley a translator, she Kevin.
7 In 1982 Kevin his own company.
8 While he his own company, Kevin Shirley.
Past Simple (I waited) vagy Past Continuous (I was waiting)

Hasonlítsuk össze az egyszerű múlt és a folyamatos múlt alakjait:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Egyszerű múlt  (Past Simple)</th>
<th>Folyamatos múlt  (Past Continuous)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you/he/she/it/we/they</td>
<td>I/he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ talked didn't talk }</td>
<td>was/wasn't were/weren't }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they talk?</td>
<td>talking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Az egyszerű múltat akkor használjuk, amikor olyan cselekvésről vagy eseményről beszélünk, amely a múltnak egy adott időpontjában történt és be is fejeződött:

Last Saturday morning, Paul played football in the park.

múlt
Paul played football.

Most

További példák:
On Sunday I made a cake.
It rained a lot on Saturday morning.

A folyamatos múltat akkor használjuk, amikor egy cselekvés folyamatban volt, miközben egy másik cselekvés megkezdődött és be is fejeződött:

Last Saturday, Paul was playing football in the park when he saw Jane. (= Múlt szombaton Paul éppen futballozott a parkban, amikor meglátta Jane-t.)

múlt
Paul was playing football.

Most

További példák:
The phone rang while I was making a cake. (A telefon megszólalása rövidebb ideig tart, mint a sütemény elkészítése.)
It was raining when we left home.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk összetett mondatokat egyszerű és folyamatos múlt használatával.

0 (The police/arrive/while/I/have/breakfast)
   The police arrived while I was having breakfast.

1 (The storm/start/while/they/drive/home)

2 (I/see/an accident/while/I/wait/for the bus)

3 (Mary/go/to several concerts/while/she/stay/in London)

0 (I/have/breakfast/when/the police/arrive)
   I was having breakfast when the police arrived.

4 (My father/cook/the dinner/when/he/burn/his fingers)

48
(The soldiers/prepare/to leave/when/the bomb/explode)

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék egyszerű és folyamatos múlt idejű alakjával.

0 Beethoven .......... (write) nine symphonies; he .......... (write) another symphony when he died.

1 Last Saturday Tom wanted to make two salads. He .......... (make) the first one in five minutes. He .......... (make) the second one when his guests .......... (arrive), and they .......... (help) him to finish it.

2 The architect Gaudi .......... (design) several houses in Barcelona, Spain. Later he .......... (start) work on a cathedral. He .......... (work) on the cathedral when he .......... (die).

3 Last month a bank robber .......... (escape) while the police .......... (take) him to prison. Later they .......... (catch) him again, and this time they .......... (lock) him up without any problem.

4 Philip’s football team were lucky last Saturday. After 20 minutes they .......... (lose), but in the end they .......... (win) the game by 4 goals to 2.

5 John Lennon .......... (sing) and .......... (play) on many records with the Beatles. After that he .......... (record) several songs without the Beatles. He .......... (prepare) a new record when Mark Chapman .......... (shoot) him.

6 The evening was getting darker; the street lights .......... (come) on. People .......... (hurry) home after work. I .......... (stand) in a queue at the bus stop. Suddenly somebody .......... (grab) my bag.

C Mary Croftot a rendőrségen arról kérdezik, hogy mit csinált péntek este. Nézzük meg a képeket, és a zárójelben lévő igékkal egészítsük ki a párbeszédet. Használjunk egyszerű vagy folyamatos múltat.

Policewoman: What time .......... (you/get) home from work?

Mary: At about six o’clock.

Policewoman: And what .......... (you/do) after you got home?

Mary: I read the newspaper.

Policewoman: Did anything happen while .......... (you/read) the paper?

Mary: Yes, the phone .......... (ring).

Policewoman: What .......... (you/do) when your husband came home?

Mary: I was watching TV, and I .......... (drink) a cup of coffee.

Policewoman: Did you and your husband stay at home?

Mary: No, I .......... (drink) my coffee. Then I put on my raincoat, and we .......... (go) out at seven o’clock.

Policewoman: Why .......... (you/put) your raincoat on?

Mary: Because it .......... (rain), of course.
D 1963-ban John F. Kennedy dallasi látogatása során halálos merényletet követtek el az amerikai elnök ellen. Írjuk le, hogy a képen látható személyek hogyan emlékeznek, mit csináltak, amikor meghallották a merénylet hírét.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eat</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>the living-room</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>in the garden</td>
<td>spaghetti</td>
<td>a bath</td>
<td>my car</td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0. I was having a bath when I heard the news.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

---

E Olvassuk el a következő történetet, és döntsük el, hogy az igék helyes alakját használták-e. Ha igen, pipáljuk ki, ha nem, húzzuk át a hibás alakot és írjuk be helyesen.

I was in my last year at school. While I waited 0 was waiting 1 for my exam results, I decided 2 to find a job for the summer. I finished 3 the exams at the beginning of June and then I was phoning 4 several different companies to ask if they had 5 any work. In the end I found 6 a job on the railways. On the first day, an inspector told 7 me that there was 8 6 other students like me who worked 9 temporarily at the station.

I was a porter. When passengers were coming 0 to the station with a lot of bags, I offered 1 to help them. Usually they were saying 2 ...
‘yes’, so I carried 11 their bags to the train. Sometimes, before the train was arriving 12 at the station, the passengers asked 13 me questions: ‘Do you work here all the time?’, ‘Are you a student?’, and so on. I explained 14 that I was a student and that I was working 15 on the railways just for the summer. When the train was stopping 16 at the platform, I put 17 the bags in the compartment.

While I was working 18 at the station, I was meeting 19 another student called Tony. I thought 20 he was very pleasant, and he was liking 21 me. One day, when we talked 22 about holidays, Tony said 23 that Italy was a wonderful place and that he wanted 24 to go there again. We were deciding 25 to go together at the end of the summer so we bought 26 tickets to go to Rome.

The thing that I remember best was the day that we visited 27 the Sistine Chapel. When we arrived 28 it rained 29 and inside there were 30 not very much light.

Suddenly, while we were looking 31 at the paintings, the rain stopped 32 and sunlight came 33 into the Chapel through the high windows. This was making 34 a fantastic difference and we saw 35 Michelangelo’s work in all its glory.

Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget. Ügyeljünk az egyszerű és folyamatos múlt megfelelő használatára.

Present Perfect (1) (I have seen, I haven’t seen)

A Present Perfect idejűnek sem jelentésben, sem használatban nincs pontos magyar megfelelője. Nyelvtani szempontból jelen idejűk tekintjük, bár nagyon gyakran múlt idejű fordítjuk magyarrá.

1 A Present Perfect alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>Befejezett melléknévi igenév (az ige ún. harmadik alakja)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTÁS</th>
<th>ÖSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you have arrived</td>
<td>I’ve arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He / she / it has arrived</td>
<td>He’s arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We / you / they have arrived</td>
<td>We’ve arrived</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
<th>ÖSSZEVONT ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you have not arrived</td>
<td>haven’t arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He / she / it has not arrived</td>
<td>hasn’t arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We / you / they have not arrived</td>
<td>haven’t arrived</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have I / you finished?</td>
<td>Have we / you / they finished?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has he / she / it finished?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A következő mondatokban Present Perfectet használunk:

Has the train left? (= Elment már a vonat?)
Have Paul and Mary seen your photos? (= Paul és Mary láttá már a fényképeidet?)
Have you read that book? (= Olvastad már azt a könyvet?)

A befejezett melléknévi igenév lehet szabályos vagy rendhagyó:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Befejezett melléknévi igenév</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Szabályos (+ -ed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rendhagyó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A szabályos befejezett melléknévi igenevek a 362. oldalon, a rendhagyók a 363. oldalon találhatók.)

2 A Present Perfectet akkor használjuk, ha:
- valamilyen múltban történt cselekvésről vagy eseményről beszélünk az időpont megjelölése nélkül (a lényeg az, hogy a cselekvés vagy esemény valamikor megtörtént, de nem fontos, hogy mikor):

I’ve seen this film. (= Láttam ezt a filmet. = Ismerem a történetet.)
- életünk különböző eseményeiről beszélünk, arról, hogy mit tettünk eddig és mit nem. Itt sem az a lényeges, hogy mikor történt az említett dolog.

I’ve sailed across the Atlantic. (= Már áthajóztam az Atlanti-óceánon.)
I’ve seen gorillas in Africa. (= Még eddig soha nem táncoltam flamencót.)
- olyan múltban történt cselekvésről vagy eseményről van szó, amely nemrég ért véget, és számunkra fontos eredménye van:

I’ve got a surprise for you. Look, here it is. She’s left the company. (She doesn’t work here any more.)
A Egészitsük ki a mondatokat a megadott kifejezésekkel. Használjuk a Present Perfect szerkezetet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb phrase</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>break the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close the doors</td>
<td>do their homework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink all the Coca-Cola</td>
<td>eat some sandwiches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give me some money</td>
<td>have a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass his driving test</td>
<td>repair her bike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repair his bike</td>
<td>start to rain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Anne has had a shower. so she feels clean and fresh.

1. We .................................. so we’re not hungry now.
2. Sally .................................. so she can ride it now.
3. Mum .................................. so I can go to the cinema.
4. The children ........................ so now they can watch TV.
5. My brother ............................ so we can’t take any photos.
6. It .................................... so we must take an umbrella.
7. Bill .................................. so now he can buy a car.
8. The musicians ........................ so the concert can start.
9. They .................................. so we can’t go in now.
10. We .................................... so we’ll have to buy some more.

B A zárójelben megadott igékből képezzünk befejezett melléknévi igeneveket a következő szövegben, amelyben James saját magáról beszél.

I’ve 0 seen (see) a lot of beautiful places in my life, and I’ve 1 ............... (do) a lot of interesting things. I’ve 2 ............... (travel) in North and South America, for example. I’ve 3 ............... (visit) all the big American cities. I’ve 4 ............... (drive) across Mexico. I haven’t 5 ............... (fly) over the Andes, but I’ve 6 ............... (work) in Peru and Bolivia. I’ve 7 ............... (stay) in expensive hotels and in very cheap hotels! I’ve 8 ............... (swim) in the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea. I’ve 9 ............... (write) thousands of postcards to my friends! I’ve 10 ............... (eat) in the best restaurants in Paris, and I’ve 11 ............... (sing) Italian songs in Rome. I’ve 12 ............... (have) seven or eight holidays in Spain, and I’ve 13 ............... (live) in Portugal.

I haven’t 14 ............... (make) much money, but I’ve 15 ............... (meet) a lot of interesting people and I’ve 16 ............... (take) a lot of wonderful photographs!

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a fenti szöveg alapján: mit csinált és mit nem csinált James eddigi életében?

0. James .................................. (see) the Statue of Liberty.
1. James .................................. (fly) over the Andes.
2. James .................................. (stay) in cheap hotels.
4. James .................................. (eat) in French restaurants.
5. James .................................. (make) much money.
6. James .................................. (have) a Mexican meal.
Present Perfect (2) (ever, never, gone és been)

1. Az előző fejezetben láttuk már, hogy a Present Perfect olyan cselekvést vagy történetet fejez ki, amely röviddel a róla való említés előtt történt. Az ilyen mondatokban nincs időhatározó, azaz nem mondjuk meg, pontosan mikor történt az, amiről beszélünk.

A: Have you had a bath?
B: No, I haven’t had a bath; I’ve had a shower.

Akkor is a Present Perfect szerkezetet használjuk, amikor olyan eseményről vagy cselekvésről beszélünk, amely a múlt adott időpontjától számítva mostanáig – akár többször is – megtörtént. Az, hogy pontosan mikor történt, nem lényeges.

A: Has Kim interviewed many film stars?
B: No, she hasn’t interviewed many film stars, but she has interviewed a lot of pop stars.

London has experienced many changes of fortune.

Amikor azt akarjuk megtudni, hogy valami egyáltalán megtörtént-e valaha, akkor az ever (= valaha) határozót és a Present Perfectet használjuk:

Has Kim ever interviewed Madonna?
Has there ever been an earthquake in Britain?
Have you ever had a jacuzzi?

Ha valami eddig még egyáltalán nem történt meg, a never (= soha) határozót és a Present Perfect állító alakját használjuk.

Figyelem: Ezekben a mondatokban a never fejezi ki a tagadást, az igét nem tagadjuk!

Kim has never interviewed Madonna. (Kim eddig még soha nem interjúolta meg Madonnát.)

There has never been an earthquake in Britain.
I have never had a jacuzzi.
Have you ever seen a tiger? ~ No, I haven’t. I have never seen a tiger.

(Az ilyen kérdésekre adandó rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatóak.)

2. Ha megmondjuk, hogy valami a beszéd pillanatáig hányszor történt, soha nem használjuk az ever (valaha) szót.

London has hosted the Olympic Games twice.
A: How many times have you skied in Austria?
B: I’ve skied in Austria three times.

A Present Perfect szerkezettel fejezzük ki azt is, ha valamit életünkben először teszünk, vagy valami először történik velünk.

It’s the first time (that) I’ve (ever) eaten octopus.
(= Most eszemében életemben először polipot.)

Vígyázat! Az ilyen mondatokban magyarul jelen időt használunk, de az angolban ez helytelen!

3. Az olyan időhatározók mellett, amelyek a beszédet megelőző időszakot és a beszéd idejét is magukba foglalják, Present Perfectet használjuk. Ilyen kifejezések: recently (= mostanában), today (= ma – ezt csak aznap mondhatjuk), this morning (= ma délelőtt — ezt csak aznap déli 12-ig mondhatjuk), this month (= ebben a hónapban), in the last few days (= az elmúlt néhány napban), so far (= mostanáig):

I’ve eaten pizza three times this week.
I’ve worked really hard this morning.

(= Ma délelőtt igazán keményen dolgoztam. – Ezt délen mondhatom.)

Amikor az adott időtartam már elmúlt, múlt időt használunk: I worked really hard this morning.
(= Ma délelőtt igazán keményen dolgoztam. – Ezt azon a napon bármikor mondhatom déli tizenkettő után.)

4. Gone és been

A létige befejezett melléknévi igenévi alakja: been.

Have you ever been seriously ill?
(= Voltál valaha súlyos beteg?)

A go ige befejezett melléknévi igenévi alakja: gone.

Figyeljük meg a különbséget:
He’s gone to Paris. (= Elment Párizsba. – Még most is ott van.)
He’s been to Paris. (= Már járt Párizsban. – Most már nincs ott.)
Gyakorlatok

Abby Mills interjút készít Michael Reed íróval az otthonában reggel kilenc órakor. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az ever vagy never határozósóval, ahol lehetséges.

MICHAEL Good morning, Abby. I’ve just made some coffee. Have you 0. had breakfast? Would you like some coffee?

ABBY No, I haven’t. I didn’t have time. I’ve 0, never interviewed anyone this early in the morning before! So, yes, I’d love a cup of coffee. Thanks.

MICHAEL I know that you’ve interviewed a lot of famous people, but have you 1. interviewed a writer?

ABBY Yes, I have. I always read some of their books first. I’ve 2. read lots of yours. They were all sad. Have you 3. written a happy book?

MICHAEL No, I don’t think I have!

ABBY You’ve travelled all over the world, and you’ve 4. found a happy story to tell! I’m surprised. How many countries have you 5. been to?

MICHAEL I don’t know. Lots! But I’ve 6. been to China. I’d like to go there.

ABBY But one of your books is set in China, isn’t it? I’ve 7. seen the film and it’s good!

MICHAEL Is it? I’ve 8. seen that film, so I don’t know. The story I wrote happened in Korea.

ABBY I’ve 9. heard that you never see the films of your books. Is that true?

MICHAEL Yes, that’s right. I’ve 10. seen any of them.

A táblázat és a példa alapján alkossunk kérdéseket és válaszokat azzal kapcsolatban, hogy melyik diák hányszor játszott az iskolai csapatban.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hockey</th>
<th>Tennis</th>
<th>Cricket</th>
<th>Football</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Melanie Thomas</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tim Jones</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connie Laker</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 (Melanie, hockey) How many times has Melanie played for the hockey team?
0 (Tim, hockey) She’s played sixteen times for the hockey team.
0 (Melanie, hockey) How many times has Tim played for the hockey team?
0 (Tim, cricket) He’s never played for the hockey team.
1 (Tim, cricket) .................................................................
2 (Connie, hockey) .................................................................
3 (Melanie, tennis) .................................................................
4 (Connie, tennis) .................................................................
Present Perfect (3) (just, already, yet, still)

1. A just (= éppen) határozószót akkor használjuk, amikor azt mondjuk, hogy valami röviddel ezelőtt történt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>just</th>
<th>BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It has</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>finished.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Could I speak to Jane, please? ~ I'm afraid she has just left. (= Sajnos éppen az előbb ment el.)

Is that a good book? ~ I don't know. I've just started it. (= Éppen csak hogy elkezdtem.)

2. Figyeljük meg az already (= már) használatát a következő példában:

Do you want something to eat? ~ No, thanks. I've already eaten. (= Már ettem.)

Az already azt nyomatékosítja, hogy valami már megtörtént, esetleg a vártnál hamarabb.

Így használjuk az already szót:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>already</th>
<th>BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I've</td>
<td>already</td>
<td>heard that story.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

NICOLA: Is Sarah going to phone you later?
ROBERT: No. She's already phoned me.

(= Sarah előbb hívta fel Robertet, mint ahogy azt Nicola vártta.)

3. A yet (= még) határozózt akkor használjuk, amikor azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy valami még nem történt meg, de be fog következni.

The post hasn't arrived yet. (= Eddig még nem jött meg a posta. – De meg fog jönni.)

I haven't finished this work yet. (= Még nem fejeztem be a munkát. – De be fogom fejezni.)

They haven't replied to my letter yet.

Kérőd mondatban a yet azt fejezi ki, hogy amire rákérdezünk, annak a bekövetkezésére számítunk.

Have you paid the bill yet? (= Kifizettem már a számlát?)

Has it stopped raining yet?
Have you found a job yet?

Figyelem: a yet rendszerint a mondat végére kerül.

A still (=még) azt jelöli, hogy valami még mindig nem történt meg, illetve még mindig tart.

The post still hasn’t arrived.

Figyeljük meg a still helyét a mondatban.
I still haven’t finished this work.

Gyakorlatok

A Nézzük meg a képeket, és képzeljük magunkat a rendőrnyomozó helyébe, aki rádióján jelenti felettseinek, hogy éppen mi történt. Alkossunk mondatokat a megadott kifejezések, a Present Perfect szerkezeti és a just határozószó használatával.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He/make/a phone call</th>
<th>They/see/me!</th>
<th>He/enter/the/house</th>
<th>He/meet/a friend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/leave/the house</td>
<td>They/enter/the wood</td>
<td>They/look/at a map</td>
<td>They/find/the money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 He's just entered the house.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alkossunk mondatokat az **already, still** vagy **yet** határozószókkal.

0 (I don't know what happened yesterday. I/not/read/the newspaper) **yet**  
I don't know what happened yesterday, I haven't read the newspaper yet.

1 (When are you going on holiday? you/decide?) **yet**

2 (Don't you understand? I/explain/this to you three times) **already**

3 (The children can't go out. They/not/clean/their rooms) **still**

4 (Is Jane coming? you/phone/her?) **yet**

5 (I don't know who won. The game/not/finish) **yet**

6 (No, I'm not hungry. I/have/lunch) **already**

7 (He was paid yesterday, but he/not/give/me the money) **still**

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott kifejezések és az **already, just** vagy **yet** határozószók használatával.

**JUDY:** Are you having a good time here?

**ANN:** Yes, I haven't been here long, and 0 I've already visited (I visit) a lot of interesting places.

**JUDY:** 1. (you/visit/the Art Gallery?)

**ANN:** No, 2. (I/not/do/that), but I'm going to do it.

**JUDY:** What about the theatre? 3. (you/see/a play?)

**ANN:** No, but 4. (I/book/a ticket) for one. It's called The Friends. I rang the theatre five minutes ago. Would you like to come with me?

**JUDY:** Thanks, but 5. (I/see/that play). I saw it last month.

**ANN:** 6. (I/read) in the newspaper that The Adventurers are giving a concert next week. Do you think it will be good?

**JUDY:** Yes, 7. (they/make) a really good new CD. It came out a couple of days ago.

**ANN:** Will I be able to get a ticket?

**JUDY:** Yes, 8. (they/not/sell/all the tickets). But be quick! They're a very popular group.
A Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott kifejezések, a just határozószó és a Present Perfect szerkezet használatával.

0 A: What's happening in this programme?  
  B: I don't know. It's just started.  

1 A: ........................................ (I/come) back from my holiday.  
  B: Did you have a good time?  

2 A: Could I have a copy of Sports World, please?  
  B: Sorry. .................................. (I/sell) the last copy.  

3 A: How's Lucy?  
  B: She's very happy. .................................. (She/finish) her exams.  

4 A: ........................................... (I/have) a letter from Mike.  
  B: Oh yes? What did he say?  

5 A: Have you heard from Alison and Frank recently?  
  B: Yes, ...................................... (they/move) to another town.  

6 A: Have you still got the same car?  
  B: No, .......................................... (I/buy) a new one.  

7 A: Would you like something to eat?  
  B: No, thanks. .................................. (I/have) breakfast.  

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget a gone vagy been melléknévi igenévvel.

0 You're so tanned! Where have you ................................?  

1 A: Where's Helen?  
  B: She's just ................. out to buy a newspaper. She won't be long.  

2 John's .................. to London for a business meeting. He won't be back in the office until tomorrow.  

3 A: Have you ................... to that new French restaurant?  
  B: Yes, I have -- but I didn't think it was very good.  

4 A: I'm going to Australia next week on holiday.  
  B: Australia! You're so lucky. I've never ............... there, but I'd love to go.  

5 A: You look exhausted.  
  B: Yes, I am. I've just ................. to the gym. I did a two-hour aerobics class!  

6 A: Is Kevin there, please?  
  B: I'm sorry, he's not here and I'm afraid I don't know where he's ................... .  

C A zárójelben megadott kifejezések és a Present Perfect szerkezet használatával fűzzünk megjegyzést az egyes állításokhoz a példa alapján.

0 Your bike is not where you left it.  
  (somebody/take/my bike) Somebody has taken my bike.  

1 The garage door was closed; now it is open.  
  (somebody/open/the garage door) ........................................  

2 There are no biscuits in the cupboard.  
  (somebody/eat/all the biscuits) ........................................
3 The kitchen window was all right; now it is smashed.
   (somebody/break/the kitchen window) .................................................................

4 Mary’s watch is not where she left it.
   (somebody/steal/Mary’s watch) .................................................................

Egy felfaláló új találmanyát szeretné népszerűsíteni az újságokban. Az alábbi listában a szükséges
ennivalókat olvashatjuk – (✓) jelű azokat, amelyekkel már végzett.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>prepare the circular letter ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>make copies of the letter ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>send the advertisement to the paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irjunk mondatokat a teendőkkel kapcsolatban. Az állító mondatokban használjuk az
already, a tagadó mondatokban pedig a yet határozószót.

1) He has already prepared the circular letter.

2) He hasn’t bought the stamps yet.

3)   .........................................................................................................................

4)   .........................................................................................................................

5)   .........................................................................................................................

6)   .........................................................................................................................

7) Írjunk mondatokat a teendőkkel kapcsolatban. Az állító mondatokban használjuk az
already, a tagadó mondatokban pedig a yet határozószót.

8) He has already prepared the circular letter.

9) He hasn’t bought the stamps yet.

10) .........................................................................................................................

11) .........................................................................................................................

12) .........................................................................................................................

13) .........................................................................................................................

14) .........................................................................................................................

15) .........................................................................................................................

16) .........................................................................................................................

17) .........................................................................................................................

18) .........................................................................................................................

19) .........................................................................................................................

20) .........................................................................................................................

21) .........................................................................................................................

22) .........................................................................................................................

23) .........................................................................................................................

24) .........................................................................................................................

25) .........................................................................................................................

26) .........................................................................................................................

27) .........................................................................................................................

28) .........................................................................................................................

29) .........................................................................................................................

30) .........................................................................................................................

31) .........................................................................................................................

32) .........................................................................................................................

33) .........................................................................................................................

34) .........................................................................................................................

35) .........................................................................................................................

36) .........................................................................................................................

37) .........................................................................................................................

38) .........................................................................................................................

39) .........................................................................................................................

40) .........................................................................................................................

41) .........................................................................................................................

42) .........................................................................................................................

43) .........................................................................................................................

44) .........................................................................................................................

45) .........................................................................................................................

46) .........................................................................................................................

47) .........................................................................................................................

48) .........................................................................................................................

49) .........................................................................................................................

50) .........................................................................................................................

51) .........................................................................................................................

52) .........................................................................................................................

53) .........................................................................................................................

54) .........................................................................................................................

55) .........................................................................................................................

56) .........................................................................................................................

57) .........................................................................................................................

58) .........................................................................................................................

59) .........................................................................................................................

60) .........................................................................................................................

61) .........................................................................................................................

62) .........................................................................................................................

63) .........................................................................................................................

64) .........................................................................................................................

65) .........................................................................................................................

66) .........................................................................................................................

67) .........................................................................................................................

68) .........................................................................................................................

69) .........................................................................................................................

70) .........................................................................................................................

71) .........................................................................................................................

72) .........................................................................................................................

73) .........................................................................................................................

74) .........................................................................................................................

75) .........................................................................................................................

76) .........................................................................................................................

77) .........................................................................................................................

78) .........................................................................................................................

79) .........................................................................................................................

80) .........................................................................................................................

81) .........................................................................................................................

82) .........................................................................................................................

83) .........................................................................................................................

84) .........................................................................................................................

85) .........................................................................................................................

86) .........................................................................................................................

87) .........................................................................................................................

88) .........................................................................................................................

89) .........................................................................................................................

90) .........................................................................................................................

91) .........................................................................................................................

92) .........................................................................................................................

93) .........................................................................................................................

94) .........................................................................................................................

95) .........................................................................................................................

96) .........................................................................................................................

97) .........................................................................................................................

98) .........................................................................................................................

99) .........................................................................................................................

100) .......................................................................................................................
Anna és Péter hat hónapot töltött Nagy-Britanniában. A térkép és a táblázat alapján írjunk mondatokat programjukról.

0 Ben Nevis (climb)
1 Hadrian’s Wall (walk along)
2 York (visit)
3 the Beatles Museum (see)
4 the River Thames (take a boat trip on)
5 Shakespeare’s birthplace (go to)
6 Canterbury Cathedral (visit)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anna</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Péter</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Anna hasn’t climbed Ben Nevis, but Péter has.
0 Anna and Péter have explored Edinburgh Castle.
1 Anna ........................................
2 Anna ........................................
3 Anna ........................................
4 Anna ........................................
5 Anna ........................................
6 Anna ........................................
0. A: Have you finished your homework?
   B: No, I haven’t finished it already.

1. A: How many times has Mary ever seen that film?
   B: She’s seen it three times.

2. A: What has done today Ron?
   B: He has worked hard today.

3. A: Has your sister spoken to Philip recently?
   B: Yes, she have.

4. A: Have you ever gone to Paris?
   B: No, I’ve ever travelled outside Hungary.

5. A: Has it yet stopped raining?
   B: Yes, it has yet stopped.

---

2096-ot írunk. Két űrhajós arról beszélget, ki melyik bolygót látogatta már meg. Fordítsuk le a párbeszédét.

JENNY: Volt már a Jupiteren?
DIANA: Nem, még nem voltam ott. És te?
JENNY: Nem, de a barátom, Dan, februárban járt ott.
DIANA: És mondott neked valamit róla?
DIANA: Én éppen most tértem vissza a Marsról. Fantasztikus volt.
JENNY: Még soha nem dolgoztam a Marson.
DIANA: Tényleg? Gyönyörű bolygó. Én már hatszor voltam ott.
JENNY: Nekem a Szaturnusz tetszik.
DIANA: Olyan messze még nem jártam. Miért tetszik?
JENNY: Szeretem a gyűrűket! Steve olyan szerencsés. Már háromszor járt ott.
DIANA: Hová szeretnél még utazni?
JENNY: A Plútóra.
DIANA: Szent ég! Azt hiszem, szükségem van egy erős italra.
Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (1) (I lived/I have lived)

1 Amikor a cselekvés vagy történés időpontjára kérdezzünk rá, egyszerű múltat (és nem Present Perfect szerkezetet) használunk:

**What time?** When? stb. A válaszban, amikor megmondjuk az időpontot, ugyancsak az egyszerű múlt időt használjuk (pl. at five o'clock, in 1977, three hours ago):

A: **What time did the plane land?**
(NEM: **What time has the plane landed?**)  
B: It **landed** at five o'clock.  
(NEM: **It has landed at five o'clock**)

múlt  3 4 5 6 7  
most

A: **When did John Lennon die?**  
(NEM: **When has he died?**)  
B: He **died** in 1980.  
(NEM: **He has died in 1980**)  
A: **When did Mark leave?**  
B: He **left** three hours ago.

2 Egyszerű múlt időt használunk akkor is, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy valami hol történt, illetve ha a mondatban a múlt időt nem időhatározó, hanem időhatározó mellékmondat fejezi ki:

*When I was in the army, I had a terrible time. I was almost back home when the storm started.*

3 **A Present Perfectet használjuk, amikor nem az a fontos, hogy valami mikor történt, hanem az hogy milyen hatással van a jelenre:**

*Anna has broken her arm.* (Anna eltörte a karját. – Most is el van törve.)  
*Bill has made the salad.* (Bill elkészítette a salátát. – Kész van.)

Az egyszerű múlt használata azt jelzi, hogy a cselekvésnek vagy eseménynek nincs összefüggése a jellenel:  
*James broke his arm last year. Kate cooked supper yesterday.*

4 **Figyelem: a Present Perfectről azonnal áttérünk az egyszerű múlt időre, amikor egy esemény részletéit tárgyaljuk, vagyis megmondjuk, hogy az mikor, hol, hogyan stb. történt:**

A: *Anna’s broken her arm.*  
B: *How did she break it?*  
A: *She fell when she was skiing.*  
A: *Have you ever been to India?*  
B: *Yes, I have.*  
A: *Really? When did you go?*

Gyakorlatok

A **Égszítsük ki a mondatokat a megfelelő ige egyszerű múlt idejű alakjával.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>die</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>write</th>
<th>divorce</th>
<th>transmit</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 Shakespeare **wrote** ‘Romeo and Juliet’ in about 1595.  
1 France ................. the World Cup in 1998.  
2 Marconi ................ the first radio signals across the Atlantic in 1901.  
3 Marco Polo ................ to China in 1271.  
4 Ayrton Senna ................ in 1994.  
5 Diana .................... Prince Charles in 1996.

B **Égszítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel.**

0 When I was at school, (I/not/like/history) **I didn’t like history.**  
0 (My mother/be/at work) **My mother was at work**  
0 (I/meet/Brian) ......................... when the explosion happened.  
1 (I/be/Brian) ................................ when we were in the army.  
2 (I/be/in the garden) ...................... when you phoned.  
3 When Sam was young, (she/love/swimming) .................................................
4. (I/buy/these shoes) ............................................................ when I was paid last week.
5. When Neil was sixteen, (he/have/very long hair) ..............................................................
6. When he saw her, (he/smile) .........................................................................................

Az első állítás igaz, de igaz-e a második? Ha igaz, írjuk mellé, hogy Yes, ha nem tudjuk, akkor Don’t know.
0. John grew a beard. .......................... John has a beard now. .......................... Don’t know.
0. Bob has grown a moustache. .......................... Bob has a moustache now. .......................... Yes.
1. Ruth went to Italy. .......................... Ruth is in Italy now. ..........................
2. Sarah has opened the door. .......................... The door is now open. ..........................
3. Ian has gone abroad. .......................... Ian is abroad now. ..........................
4. Bill opened the windows. .......................... The windows are open now. ..........................
5. Bill has arrived home. .......................... He is at home now. ..........................
6. Peter put the TV on. .......................... The TV is on now. ..........................
7. Joyce closed the book. .......................... The book is closed now. ..........................
8. Joe has gone to Japan. .......................... Joe is in Japan now. ..........................

Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel. Használjunk Present Perfectet vagy egyszerű múltat.
0. A: Why are you crying?
   B: Look. (I/cut/my hand) \textit{I've cut my hand.}
   A: (How/it/happen?) \textit{How did it happen?}
1. A: Is that a letter from John?
   B: Yes. It says that (his wife/have/a baby boy)
   A: (When/she/have/the baby?)
2. A: Why are you looking so cross, Jeff?
   B: Look. (Alison/break/my camera)
   A: (How/she/break/it?)
3. A: What’s the problem, Jason?
   B: Look. (My bicycle/disappear)
   A: (Where/you/leave/it?)
4. A: What’s the matter with Paul?
   B: (He/lose/his jacket)
   A: (When/he/lose/it?)
5. A: What’s that piece of paper?
   B: It’s my certificate. (I/pass/my exam)
   A: (What mark/you/get?)
6. A: Why are you looking so happy, Di?
   B: (I/buy/a new car)
   A: (Where/you/get/it?)
7. A: Are you going to the concert?
   B: No. (I/sell/my ticket)
   A: (When/you/sell it?)
Steve és Ann az utcán találkozik, miután már hat éve nem látották egymást. Olvassuk el a párbeszédet, és húzzuk át a nem odaillő szerkezeteket.

ANN: Steve! It’s Steve, isn’t it?
STEVE: Ann! Sorry, I haven’t seen you. I didn’t see you. You look different.
ANN: Have you changed your hair? Did you change your hair?
STEVE: Yes, it was blonde when I was at school, it has been blonde when I was at school. But you look different too!
ANN: Really?
STEVE: You didn’t wear glasses at school, did you? You haven’t worn glasses at school, have you?
ANN: Yes, I did! You forgot! You’ve forgotten!
ANN: Sorry. My memory isn’t very good. When did we last meet?
STEVE: At the school disco, six years ago. You have danced all night long! You danced all night long!
ANN: And you have asked me to dance! You asked me to dance!
STEVE: And you said, ‘No,’ you have said, ‘No,’ I was very unhappy at the time.

---

ANN: At the school disco

STEVE: Oh yes. I’ve travelled all over the world. I travelled all over the world.
ANN: I’ve met interesting people. I met interesting people.
STEVE: I learnt five languages! I’ve learnt five languages! What about you?
ANN: Well, I have gone to Italy two years ago. I went to Italy two years ago. And I learnt to type last year. I have learnt to type last year.
STEVE: Do you still dance?
ANN: Oh no. I stopped dancing after school. I have stopped dancing after school.
STEVE: Well, I must go. It was nice to see you again.
ANN: Yes. And you. Um... Have you eaten in that new Japanese restaurant? Did you eat in that new Japanese restaurant?
STEVE: No, I haven’t.
ANN: Would you like to?
STEVE: I’d love to. Perhaps we could go dancing afterwards just like old times.

Now
1 A: **Why did you shout at her?**
B: She borrowed my tennis racket and broke it. I was angry.

0 A: **Have you finished?**
B: I'm afraid not. I've got one more essay to write. You can go without me. I really don't mind.

1 A: ..........................................................
B: Two weeks ago. I stayed at her house for the weekend.

2 A: ..........................................................
B: To Majorca. I had a great time. Have you been there?

3 A: ..........................................................
B: This? It's a sort of bed for the cat to sleep in. Do you think it's soft enough?

4 A: ..........................................................
B: That was ages ago. I can't remember. Bad service perhaps. I never stay if I'm not happy.

5 A: ..........................................................
B: Everyone, but nobody has replied! Did you post the letters?

6 A: ..........................................................
B: Um...four days? A week? I forget everything on holiday! Joe darling, when did we get here?


**INTERVIEWER:** When 0 **did you decide**. (you decide) to become an actress?

**KAREN:** When I was about 8 years old.

**INTERVIEWER:** Why? What 1 .......... (happen)?

**KAREN:** I 2 .......... (see) a performance of a Shakespeare play at my local theatre. My parents 3 .......... (take) me and I 4 .......... (think) that it 5 .......... (be) very exciting. I 6 .......... (decide) that night to become an actress myself.

**INTERVIEWER:** 7 .......... (you enjoy) your time in the show 'The Locals'?

**KAREN:** Yes, it 8 .......... (be) great fun.

**INTERVIEWER:** What 9 .......... (be) your best experience in the show?

**KAREN:** Well, of course, last year my character in the show 10 .......... (get) married. It 11 .......... (be) a big story in the media and it 12 .......... (attract) a lot of publicity for me.

**INTERVIEWER:** 13 .......... (you have) any problems because you are so famous?

**KAREN:** Not really. I 14 .......... (meet) a lot of very nice people and they 15 .......... (say) a lot of nice things to me.
Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (2) (for, since és ago)

**Past Simple (egyszerű múlt)**

1. A következő mondatokban, egyszerű múlt időt használunk:
   - It was very cold last week.
   - Did you go to France last year?
   - Sheila did not go to work yesterday.
   - She phoned two hours ago.

   Az egyszerű múltat akkor használjuk, ha a mondatban van múlt időre utaló időhatározó (two hours ago, last week, yesterday), amely azt fejezi ki, hogy a szóban forgó esemény már lezajlott, a cselekvés már befejeződött.

2. Egyszerű múltat használunk, ha arról beszélünk, hogy valami a múltban egy bizonyos ideig tartott.
   - A: How long did Mike work in Africa?
   - B: He worked there for four years.

   Mike már nem dolgozik Afrikában.

   **a múltban**

   **for four years**

3. Egyszerű múltat használunk abban az esetben is, ha olyan eseményről beszélünk, amely ma már nem élő személy életében történt:
   - A: Did your grandmother ever visit Canada?
   - B: Yes, she spent several holidays there.

   **Present Perfect** szerkezettel fejezzük ki azokat az eseményeket és cselekményeket, amelyek még most is folyamatban vannak:
   - A: How long have you worked here?
   - B: I've worked here for six months.

   (= Még most is itt dolgozom.)

   **a múltban**

   **for six months**

   **Most**

   **Egyszerű múltat használunk annak a kifejezésére, hogy valami egy bizonyos idővel ezelőtt történt (ago), egy bizonyos ideig tartott (for), vagy egy adott időponttól kezdve valameddig tartott (from/to):**

   The Second World War ended over 50 years ago.
   The Second World War lasted for six years.
   The Second World War lasted from 1939 to 1945.

   NEM: The Second World War lasted since 1939 to 1945.

   **Present Perfect** használunk annak kifejezésére, hogy valami egy idő óta (for) vagy egy meghatározott időpont óta (since) nem történt meg:
   - I haven't seen Tom for three weeks. (= Három hete nem láttam Tomot.)
   - I haven't seen Tom since February. (= Február óta nem láttam Tomot.)
   - I haven't seen Tom since he came back. (= Nem láttam Tomot, amióta visszajött.)

   NEM: Have seen Tom three weeks ago.

   Figyelem! Különös gondossággal ügyeljünk az egyszerű múlt és a Present Perfect megkülönböztetésére, ugyanis a magyar nyelvben jelen vagy múlt idő is kifejezheti azt, amit az angolban a Present Perfect.

   Pl.: I've been here for three weeks. (Három hete vagyok itt. – A magyarban jelen idő.)
   I've already been to England. (Már voltam Angliában. – A magyarban múlt idő.)
0 There were a lot of accidents last year, and there have been a lot this year, too.
0 I have not seen Jane today, but I saw her yesterday.
1 Our team is very good. We two competitions last year, and we two this year as well.
2 The factory more than 1,000 motorbikes this year; it not so many last year.
3 I'm worried about Mary. She ill last week, and she ill most of this week as well.
4 Joe not hard last month, but he hard this month.
5 I a lot of money this year – much more than I last year.
6 It not much last year here, and it not much this year, either.
7 Joanne to me last week, but she not this week.
8 Paul not his brother in Spain this year, but he him twice last year.
9 It not today, but it three times last week.

Susan Cowley (1947–) is an artist. She (paint) in many different styles and she (have) exhibitions in 14 countries.
1 Timothy Spinks (1846–1927) was a biologist. He (study) the plants of New Zealand, and he (write) several books on biology.
2 Claire Fox (1957–) is a doctor. She (develop) new treatments for diseases, and she (make) TV programmes about medicine.
3 Catherine Knight (1824–1883) was a nurse. She (work) with soldiers, and she (spend) her life trying to improve their lives.
4 Steven Brock (1963–) is a golf player. He (win) several competitions, and he (earn) a lot of money from advertising.
5 Peter Field (1948–) is a policeman. He (work) in London all his life, and he (arrest) more than 250 criminals.
6 Miranda Block (1901–1971) was a musician. She (play) the violin, and she (sing) in all the world's opera houses.
A példa alapján írjuk át a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel.

0 Fran has been in Madrid for a week.
   (go/ago) ................................................................. Fran went to Madrid a week ago.
   (be/since last week) ........................................ Fran has been in Madrid since last week.

1 Ben hasn’t smoked for five years.
   (stop/smoking/ago) ..................................................

2 Jane moved to Bristol a year ago.
   (live/since last year) ...................................................

3 Anna has been married for three months.
   (get/married/ago) ......................................................

4 Mary bought a car six months ago.
   (have/for six months) ............................................

5 Pat was ill yesterday and she’s still ill today.
   (be/for 24 hours) ...................................................

6 Charles has had this job since last month.
   (start/ago) ..............................................................

7 Kate has had a driving licence for a year.
   (have/since last year) ............................................... 

8 Tom lost his job two months ago.
   (be/unemployed/for two months) ..................................

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a for, since, ago szavakkal.

HELEN: Hi! When did you get here?

DAVID: Oh, I’ve been here 0 for .................. about an hour. The train came in quite a long time
   1.................. and then I had a cup of coffee.

HELEN: Let’s go then, shall we?

GINA: Have you asked Sally to the party?

SUE: No. I haven’t seen her 2............... April.

GINA: Well, she’s working very hard at the moment.

JACK: Where have you been? I haven’t seen you 3............... weeks.

ALAN: I know! I’ve been to Paris and New York on business.


PETER: I’m exhausted! I haven’t played football 5............... I was at school.

IAN: Neither have I. When shall we play again?

PETER: Next year!

LUCY: Has the play started?

JO: Ssssh! It started five minutes 6............... 

JILL: I’ve been here 7............... two o’clock. Don’t you have a watch?

EMMA: Yes, of course I do, but I was stuck in traffic 8............... an hour.
Dear Mum and Dad,

How are you? I’ve been here for three days now, and it’s fantastic! The family (meet) me at the airport on Sunday, and (take) me to their house. I (never see) such a big house! I (get) lost on the first floor this morning, and the garden is like a football pitch.

I (see) the town centre yesterday afternoon. It’s like a film – American cops, drugstores, big cars etc. We (have) a Coke and a hamburger, of course. It (be) the best hamburger I’ve ever had. The town isn’t very big. We (see) everything in an hour. (not meet) any film stars yet, but we’re going to Los Angeles tomorrow, so here’s hoping!

Fiona (break) her arm in a local tennis competition last week. I think she’ll be OK, and hope she can return to England with me for the English part of the exchange.

Well, I think I (say) everything. It’s great fun! (arrive) three days ago and I (start) to feel American. We must all come one day!

Love,

Kate

14 Golita Drive
Santa Barbara
California
901032
USA
20th July 2001

Fordítsuk le ezeket a híres angol személyiségekről szóló mondatokat.

1 Jane Austen 1775-ben született. Regényeket írt, és Londonban és Bathban élt. Könyvei, például az Értelem és érzelem (Sense and Sensibility), a mai irodalomra is hatást gyakorolnak.

2 Az angolok nagy része (már) olvasta Charles Dickens könyveit, például a Copperfield Dávidot. Ez a regény a tizenkilencedik századi London életét mutatja be.


5 Margaret Thatcher 1979 és 1990 között volt miniszterelnök. Ő volt az első brit miniszterelnökönő. Amikor befedezte politikai pályáját, megírta önleletrajzát.

6 Andrew Lloyd Webber jónéhány rendkívül népszerű musicalt írt, például a Macskákát és az Operaház fantomját. Az első nagysikerű darabja a Jézus Krisztus Szupersztár volt.
A Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megfelelő szerkezetekkel.

SARAH: 0. Have you ever been (Have you ever been/Did you ever go) to the United States?

JIM: Yes, 1. (I've been/I went) to California last year.

SARAH: 2. (Have you liked/Did you like) it?

JIM: Yes, 3. (I've enjoyed/I enjoyed) the trip a lot.

SARAH: What 4. (have you done/did you do) there?

JIM: 5. (I've visited/I visited) Hollywood, Disneyland and San Francisco. 6. (Have you been/Did you go) to California, Sarah?

SARAH: No, but 7. (I've booked/I booked) a holiday there. I've got my ticket and I'm going next week!

B Nancy és Harry egy összejövetelen találkozik. Évekkel ezelőtt ugyanarra az egyetemre jártak, de már régén nem látották egymást. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédüket a zárójelben megadott szavakkal és az egyszerű múlt vagy Present Perfect használatával.

NANCY: Gosh, 0. you've changed (you/change)!

1. (I/not/recognize) you when 2. (you/come) into the room.

HARRY: Yes, 3. (I/grow) my hair. It was very short when 4. (you/know) me all those years ago.

NANCY: And 5. (you/grow) a beard.

HARRY: Oh yes, 6. (I/grow) that about a year ago.

NANCY: When 7. (we/meet) last?

HARRY: 8. (It/be) at Anna's party. 9. (We/talk) about your boyfriend a lot.

NANCY: Oh, him? 10. (I/stop) going out with him a long time ago.

HARRY: I'm sorry to hear that. 11. (What/happen)?

NANCY: 12. (We/have) a big argument. But I'm glad.

HARRY: 13. (He/not be) the right man for me.

NANCY: 14. (you/see) any of the other people from our course recently?

HARRY: Well, 15. (I/not/keep) in contact with many of them, but 16. (I/see) Dave and Kate a few times.

HARRY: How are they?

NANCY: Fine. 17. (They/get) married last month actually.

HARRY: Really? 18. (I/not/know) they were a couple.

NANCY: No, 19. (they/keep) it secret for a long time.

HARRY: Mmm. 20. (I/ask) Kate to go out with me several times when we were students. Now I know why 21. (she/say) 'no' every time!
The London Underground

London has had an underground train system since the 19th Century. The London Underground (start) in 1863, when Victorian engineers and workers (build) the Metropolitan railway. This railway line (go) from Paddington Station to Farringdon Street Station, and steam engines (pull) the coaches. Eight more lines (open) since the Metropolitan line started. The world’s first underground electric railway (open) in 1890. This line (go) from the City of London to Stockwell in South London. The most modern line is the Jubilee line, which (open) in 1979. Since the London Underground (begin), many other cities, such as New York and Moscow, (build) their own systems.

A következő párbeszéd Jim Leach és egy rendőrfelügyelő között zajlik. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel egyszerű múltban vagy Present Perfectban.

POLICEMAN: Mr Leach, how many times have you been (you/be) in prison?
JIM LEACH: Twice.
POLICEMAN: When (you/finish) your last prison sentence?
JIM LEACH: I (come) out of prison about six months ago.
POLICEMAN: How long (you/live) in this town?
JIM LEACH: I have lived here for about seven years. I (move) here when I got married.
POLICEMAN: So you (be) married for seven years.
JIM LEACH: No, my wife (leave) me two years ago.
POLICEMAN: (you/see) her since she left you?
JIM LEACH: No, I (not/see) her since she left.
Az alábbi párbeszéd egy újságíró és egy Amerikában vendégszereplő angol énekesné között zajlik. A zárójelben megadott kifejezésekből írjuk meg az újságíró kérdéseit. Használjuk az igék egyszerű múlt vagy Present Perfect alakját.

JOURNALIST: (When/you/arrive/in America?)
0. *When did you arrive in America?*

MONICA: About six weeks ago.

JOURNALIST: (How many/shows/you/do?)
1. 

MONICA: Thirty so far. I work hard, don’t I?

JOURNALIST: (Which cities/you/play in?)
2. 

MONICA: I’ve been to Chicago, Atlanta, New Orleans, and Los Angeles.

JOURNALIST: (How many/shows/you/do/in Atlanta?)
3. 

MONICA: I don’t know. Seven? Eight? How many interviews did you do last month? Are you going to ask me some interesting questions?

JOURNALIST: (How many/people/come/to/your Saturday night show in Atlanta?)
4. 

MONICA: I didn’t sell the tickets. More than ten, I think.

JOURNALIST: Actually, there were 20,000. It was a big success. OK, a new subject. (you/meet/any American singers/since/you/arrive?)
5. 


JOURNALIST: (Where/you/see/Joe? In Chicago?)
6. 

MONICA: Sure, that’s where he lives.

JOURNALIST: (you/play/some music/with Joe/in Chicago?)
7. 

MONICA: Yeah, we did. I like Joe. Look, I’m getting tired. Have we finished?

JOURNALIST: One more question? (How long/you/be/here/in New York?)
8. 

MONICA: Three days. That’s about twenty-five interviews.
FAX

Metropolitan Hotel, New York, USA

Monica has arrived in New York three days ago. She has played in cities all over America. 20,000 people have attended her Saturday night show in Atlanta. She has spent time with several American singers. She has visited Joe Satino in Chicago two weeks ago. She has played and recorded music with him. Last week she has sold 10,000 copies of her new record. But she looks tired. She has had a busy time in New York. Today she has already talked to ten journalists, and it's only 4 p.m.

G

Monica az interjú után felhívta londoni barátját. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott kifejezések megfelelő alakjával.

WOMAN: Hello. Marion here.
MONICA: Oh, it's Monica here. Can I speak to Zak, please?
WOMAN: Sure. I'll get him.
ZAK: Is that you, Monica?
MONICA: Of course it's me. Where have you been Zak? I have more than fifty times since I arrived in America.
ZAK: I have some work to do. Why any messages?
MONICA: I don't like answering machines. You know that.
ZAK: Anyway, how are you?
MONICA: I'm tired, of course. I have thirty shows. I've played everywhere.
ZAK: Where are you now?
MONICA: I'm in New York. I have here for three days.
ZAK: Great! I have to New York. What's it like?
MONICA: It's full of journalists. I have fifteen interviews today.
ZAK: any American singers?
MONICA: Sure. I've met Joe Satino and ...
ZAK: Satino? Fantastic. anything with him?
MONICA: Yeah, we have a song together in Chicago. It was good.
ZAK: Have you visited Steve yet?
MONICA: Yes, I have him in Atlanta. He's fine. Zak, are you going to come to America?
ZAK: Of course. I have a ticket.
MONICA: Zak?
ZAK: Yes.
MONICA: Who's Marion?
1 A Present Perfect Continuous alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTÁS</th>
<th>I/you/we/they have/`ve</th>
<th>He/she/it has/s’</th>
<th>been cooking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
<th>I/you/we/they haven’t</th>
<th>He/she/it hasn’t</th>
<th>been cooking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRĐÉS</th>
<th>Have</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>been cooking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Has</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Az -ing végződéssel kapcsolatos további tudnivalók a 361.oldalon, a D táblázatban, a kérdő alakra adható rövid válaszok pedig a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 Ezt az igédtől akkor használjuk, ha valami a múltban kezdődött el és mostanáig tart:

You’re late! I’ve been waiting for you.
A Present Perfect Continuous mellett gyakran használjuk a for és a since előjárókat. A for időtartamot, a since a cselekvés kezdetének időpontját jelöli:

I’ve been waiting for you for two hours.
(= Két órája várlak. – időtartam)
I’ve been waiting for you since six o’clock.
(= Hat óra óta várlak. – kezdő időpont)

3 Néhány további példa:

Julia has been talking on the phone for an hour.
(Egy órával ezelőtt kezdett beszélni, és még most is beszél.)
You’ve been sitting there since one o’clock.
(Egy órakor ültél le oda, és még most is ott ülsz.)

4 A Present Perfect Continuous szerkezetet olyan cselekvés fejezhetünk ki, amely a múltban kezdődött el, a beszéd pillanatában is tart és magyarázatot ad valamilyen jelenségére:

What a lovely smell! ~ Yes, I’ve been cooking.
(= Micsoda nagyszerű illat! ~ Igen, főzök.)

5 A Present Perfect Continuous szerkezet olyan cselekvésre is utalhat, amely a múlt egy bizonyos időpontja óta rendszeresen ismétlődik:

She’s been having driving lessons for a couple of months.
(Néhány hónapja tanul vezetni. – Néhány hónappal ezelőtt kezdte el, és még most is tanul.)
I’ve been playing tennis since I was a child.

6 Ha azt akarjuk meg tudni, hogy valami mióta tart, a How long + Present Perfect Continuous szerkezetet használjuk:

How long have you been studying English?

Figyelem! Az ever, never és az already nem használható a Present Perfect Continuous szerkezettel.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő levelet Present Perfect Continuous és a zárójelben lévő igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

Dear Diana,

Hello from Liverpool. I just thought I’d write and tell you about what’s been happening. (what/happen) here since we last saw each other. 1.......................... (Louise/study) hard - she’s got her exams soon. 2.......................... (She/sit up) until late at night and 3.......................... (she/complain) about it a lot. 4..........................

(William/try) to earn some money for several months. 5.......................... (He/look) for jobs and 6.......................... (he/go) for interviews but he hasn’t found a job yet.

7.......................... (Mike/spend) most of his time on the golf course and 8.......................... (he/get) a lot better at the game. And me? 9..........................
Marcia

Az alábbi párbeszéd a munkából hazatérő anya és gyermek között zajlik. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék Present Perfect Continuous alakjával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dig</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>tidy</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>wash</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 MOTHER: Why are there dirty plates and glasses in the living room?
LINDA: Because Peter has been having a party.

1 MOTHER: And why are all the toys in Jenny’s bedroom on the floor?
LINDA: Because she tidied her cupboards.

2 MOTHER: And why is Clare soaking wet?
LINDA: She is making her dolls in the bath.

3 MOTHER: And why is this carpet muddy?
LINDA: Because the dog washed it in the garden.

4 MOTHER: And why is the television on?
LINDA: Because Peter’s friends used a video.

5 MOTHER: And why are you covered in flour?
LINDA: Because I used some cakes.

6 MOTHER: And why are all these magazines on the floor?
LINDA: Dad washed them.

7 MOTHER: Jack! Why is this place in such a mess?
JACK: I don’t know. I worked the computer in the study.

8 MOTHER: Well, I have all day and now I need some help to tidy up!

Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példa alapján. Használjuk a Present Perfect Continuous szerkezetet és a for vagy since előjárószót.

0 She started her course a month ago and she is still doing it.
She has been doing her course for a month.

1 I started reading this novel last weekend and I’m still reading it.
I’ve been reading this novel since last weekend.

2 He started playing chess when he was ten and he still plays it.

3 I started work at eight o’clock and I’m still working.

4 Helen started looking for another job two months ago and she’s still looking.

5 We arrived here two hours ago and we’re still waiting.
Nézzük meg a képeket, és a megadott szavakkal írjuk le, hogy a Wyatt család tagjai hogyan készülnek a karácsonyra. Használjunk Present Perfect Continuoust.

wrap make decorate shop write put-up a cake cards

decorations presents the tree for food

0 John has been putting up decorations.
1 Mary and Stephen ..........................................................
2 Martha ...........................................................................
3 Delia .............................................................................
4 Tom ..............................................................................
5 Joanna ..........................................................................  

A táblázatban megadott információ alapján írjunk állító mondatokat Nagy-Britanniáról. Használjuk a Present Perfect Continuoust és a for vagy since előjárószót.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People</th>
<th>by train</th>
<th>1829</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>whisky</td>
<td>600 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British women</td>
<td>in general elections</td>
<td>1928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People</td>
<td>the London Underground</td>
<td>1863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>50 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scientists</td>
<td>space</td>
<td>1957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiences</td>
<td>Shakespeare's plays</td>
<td>300 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People</td>
<td>rock and roll</td>
<td>the 1950s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People</td>
<td>rugby</td>
<td>over 150 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The British Royal Family</td>
<td>at Buckingham Palace</td>
<td>Victorian times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People</td>
<td>by credit card</td>
<td>the 1970s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxford University</td>
<td>students</td>
<td>the thirteenth century</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
People have been travelling by train since 1829.

Scotland has been producing whisky for 600 years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How long / you / study physics</td>
<td>How long / you / learn French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where / you / sleep</td>
<td>Where / you / shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who / you / talk to</td>
<td>Why / you / run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What / you / eat</td>
<td>What / you / read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you / work / hard</td>
<td>you / wait / long</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A: Have you been working hard?

B: Yes, I’ve done all my homework.

A: How long have you been learning French?

B: For six years. I can speak it fluently.

A: I got up late, and I missed my bus.

B: Chocolate. Would you like some?

A: In the living-room. The bedroom was too cold.

A: For four years. I’m at Aberdeen University.

A: No, I’ve only been here about ten minutes.

B: A book about America. It’s fascinating.

A: Miriam. She phoned from New York.

A: At Harrods. I bought a new watch.
Present Perfect Simple (I’ve done) és
Present Perfect Continuous (I’ve been doing)

Hasonlitsuk össze a két igeidőt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect Simple</th>
<th>Present Perfect Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you/we/they</td>
<td>have/ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td>has/’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ eaten</td>
<td>have/ve/they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has/’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>} been eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 A Present Perfectet (have painted) általában akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy történés, amelyről beszélünk, a múlt nem meghatározott időpontjában történt és a beszéd pillanatában már nem tart:

*We’ve painted the flat.* (= Kifestettük a lakást.)
*Anna’s mended her bike.* (= Anna megjavította a kerékpárját.)

A Present Perfect Continuous (have been painting) akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy történés a múltban kezdődött, és vagy befejeződött a beszéd pillanatátig vagy még most is tart:

*We’ve been painting the flat. That’s why it smells.*
*We still have three rooms to paint.* (= Festjük a lakást. – Még nem fejeztük be. Még mindig hátra van három szoba.)
*Anna’s hands are dirty because she’s been mending her bike.* (= Anna a kerékpárját javítja.)

3 A How many?, How much? és How often? kérdésekben is gyakran használjuk a Present Perfectet. A kérdésre adott válaszban színtén:

A: How many rooms have you painted?
B: We’ve painted three of them.

A: How much has it cost?
B: Oh, it hasn’t cost much.

A: How often have you stayed up all night?

A How long? kézdetű kérdésben és a since és for előljárószót tartalmazó válaszban Present Perfect Continuous is használhatunk.

A: How long have you been waiting? Have you been queuing for a long time?
B: I’ve been waiting since two o’clock.

4 A következő esetekben a Present Perfect Continuous alakot nem használhatjuk:

- amikor rövid ideig tartó cselekvésről beszélünk (have, stop, break stb.):
  *Tony has had an accident on his bike.*

- amikor az ige (pl.: know, decide, forget, notice stb.) valamiféle szellemi tevékenységet fejez ki:
  *I’m sorry. I’ve forgotten your name.*

- amikor arról beszélünk, hogy valamit mikor csináltunk legutóbb:
  *I haven’t eaten meat for two years.* (= Két éve nem ettem húst. – Utoljára két évvel ezelőtt ettem húst.)

5 A work, teach és a live igék használhatók mindkét szerkezettel. Ezekben a mondatokban a for vagy a since előljárószót használjuk. Ezekben az esetekben a kétféle szerkezet jelentése között nincs sok különbség.

*I have taught here for two years.* VAGY *I have been teaching here for two years.* (Két éve tanítok itt.)

Gyakorlatok

A Anna és Sophia házibulit rendez. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet Present Perfect Simple vagy Present Perfect Continuous és a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

**ANNA:** Let’s talk about our dinner party next week. How many people have you invited?
**SOPHIA:** Four. All of them (reply) and all of them (say) that they can come.
**ANNA:** Well, I (think) about Arthur and Fiona. I (decide) that we should invite them as well.
SOPHIA: Good idea. We .................................. (not see) them for ages. I wonder what they
6 .................................. (do).

ANNA: Well, I .................................. (hear) from George that their lives
8 .................................. (change) quite a bit. They 9 .................................. (move) to a
new house and they 10 .................................. (decorate) it - they
11 .................................. (not finish) doing that yet. But Arthur 12 ..................................
(lose) his job.

SOPHIA: Oh dear. Well, let’s invite them. It might cheer them up.

B Négy barát éppen valamilyen tevékenységet fejezett be. Nézzük meg a következő táblázatot.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neil</th>
<th>Tevékenység</th>
<th>Most</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rachel</td>
<td>sweep the floors</td>
<td>he is sweating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>cut the grass</td>
<td>she is tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
<td>do the washing-up</td>
<td>he has soft hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>peel the onions</td>
<td>she has red eyes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a fenti információ alapján. Használjunk Present Perfectet vagy Present Perfect Continuous.

0     Neil, why are you sweating? ~ Because I ..................................................

0     Is the lawn finished? ~ Yes, Rachel has cut the grass.

1     Paul, why are your hands so soft? ~ Because I ..................................................

2     Are the onions ready for the pan? ~ Yes, Carol ............................................. them.

3     Rachel, you look tired. ~ Yes, I .................................................................

4     Are the floors clean? ~ Yes, Neil ................................................................. them.

5     Why are your eyes red, Carol? ~ Because I ....................................................

6     Are the plates clean? ~ Yes, Paul .................................................................

C Maggie munkából hazatérve férjével, Tornal, és lánlyaival, Lizzel és Wendyvel beszélget. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megfelelő ideálakkal (Present Perfect vagy Present Perfect Continuous).

MAGGIE: Hello, Tom. 0 Have you had ........................................ (you/ have) a good day?

TOM: Well, not really. 0 I’ve been trying ........................................ (I/try) to talk to the boss about that transport
problem all day but .................................. (I/not/speak) to him yet.

MAGGIE: 2 .................................. (I/have) a very successful day. 3 .................................. (I/talk) to
some Japanese customers for months, and now 4 .................................. (I/sell) them three
machines. 5 .................................. (you/see) the girls yet?

TOM: No, 6 .................................. (I/just/get) home. Wendy! Liz! Where are you?

LIZ: I’m in here. I’m watching the TV.

WENDY: I’m in the kitchen, doing my homework. 7 .................................. (I/do) it since I got home
and .................................. (I/finish) half of it.

MAGGIE: And how long 9 .................................. (you/watch) the TV, Liz?

LIZ: 10 .................................. (I/just/switch) it on.

WENDY: Don’t tell lies. 11 .................................. (you/watch) it for more than an hour.

TOM: OK, stop that! Now who’s going to help with supper?

LIZ: Not me. 12 .................................. (I/help) three times this week already.

WENDY: Well, I can’t help because I 13 .................................. (not/finish) my homework.
Past Perfect (I had finished)

1 A Past Perfect szerkezet a had segédigéből és az íge harmadik (befejezett melléknévi igenévi) alakjából áll (pl. finished, gone):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLITÁS</th>
<th>I/you/he/she/it/we/they had gone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TAGADÁS</td>
<td>I/you/he/she/it/we/they hadn’t gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KÉRDÉS</td>
<td>Had I/you/he/she/it/we/they gone?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A kérdésekhez adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)
(További információk a Past Perfect használatáról az E és F táblázatban találhatók a 362. és a 363. oldalon.)

2 Figyeljünk meg az alábbi példát:
Jane had gone home when I phoned her at the office. (= Jane már elment haza, amikor a hivatalban telefonon kerestem.)

A múltban  most

Jane went home.  I phoned her.

3 A Past Perfect azt fejezi ki, hogy valami a múltban egy másik eseményt megelőzően történt. Ami előbb történt, azt jelöljük a Past Perfect alakkal (had gone), ami később, azt egyszerű múlt idővel (phoned).
When I got home, I saw that the letter had arrived. (= Amikor hazavért, láttam, hogy a levél már megérkezett. – A levél előbb érkezett meg.)
When he had finished his homework, he went to bed. (= Amikor befejezte a házi feladatát, lefeküdt aludni. – Előbb fejezte be a házi feladatot.)
He couldn’t pay the bill because he had left his wallet at home. (= Nem tudta kifizetni a számlát, mert otthon felejtette a tárcáját. – Előbb hagytta otthon.)
I was very nervous because I hadn’t driven a car on the motorway before. (= Nagyon ideges voltam, mert azelőtt még soha nem vezettem autópályán.)

Figyeljünk meg a by the time (= mikor/mire) használatát:
By the time he was twenty-five, he had already made a million pounds. (= Huszonöt éves korára már egymillió fontot keresett.)
Had the builders finished by the time you got home from your holiday? ~ Yes, they had.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az igék megfelelő alakjával (Past Perfect).

0 I didn’t watch the film because I .................................. (see) it before.
1 We couldn’t eat at the restaurant because we ............................ (not/book) a table.
2 I couldn’t buy it because I ................................. (spend) all my money.
3 I was tired because I ............................... (get up) very early that morning.
4 He didn’t know the answer because he ........................... (not/do) his homework.
5 She was very happy because she ................................ (win) a prize.
6 I ........................................... (forget) my pen so I had to borrow one.
7 When I got home, I switched on the answerphone. Several people ......................... (leave) messages for me.
8 I ........................................ (not/hear) the joke before; I laughed a lot.
9 When we came out of the restaurant, we saw that our car ............................... (disappear).
10 She couldn’t see the photographs because she ............................. (not/bring) her glasses.
11 The ground was very dry; it ........................................ (not/rain) for a long time.
Henry vacsorára hívta barátait a házába. Alkossunk mondatokat a Past Perfect használataival a lista alapján, amelyből kiderül, hogy mivel készült el és mivel nem, mielőtt a vendégek megérkeztek.

0 He bought the food.
1 He cleaned the flat.
2 He didn’t buy anything to drink.
3 He had a shower.
4 He changed his clothes.
5 He started making dinner.
6 He didn’t finish making dinner.

By the time his guests arrived:

0 ........................................................................
1 ........................................................................
2 ........................................................................
3 ........................................................................
4 ........................................................................
5 ........................................................................
6 ........................................................................

Alkossunk összeitt mondatokat when kötőszóval a példa alapján. Ügyeljünk, hogy mikor használunk egyszerű múltat és mikor Past Perfectet.

0 We finished our meal. Then we went for a walk.
   When we had finished our meal, we went for a walk.
1 I did the course. Then I was able to speak the language well.
   When I .................................................................
2 He did all his work. Then he went home.
   When .................................................................
3 Everyone left. Then I went to bed.
   When .................................................................
4 She had a glass of water. Then she felt better.
   When .................................................................
5 He did the washing-up. Then he listened to some music.
   When .................................................................
6 Steve saved enough money. Then he bought a new motorbike.
   When .................................................................
7 I discussed the problem with a friend. Then I felt happier.
   I felt happier when ..............................................
8 She finished speaking. Then I gave my opinion.
   I gave my opinion when ......................................
9 The guests left. Then we tidied the house.
   We tidied the house when ...................................
Past Simple (I saw) vagy Past Perfect (I had seen)

1. Használtsuk össze a két példamondatot:
   'I have never been on a plane before now.'
   Jenny flew to Rome last year. She **had never been**
   on a plane before that.

   Amikor múltban történt eseményről vagy
   cselekvésről beszélünk, egyszerű múltat
   használunk (**flew**); ha pedig olyan eseményről,
   amely a múltban történt előtt zajlott, akkor
   Past Perfectet (**had been**).

   Egy másik példa:

   **A mozi előtt Mary ezt mondja:**
   **MARY:** We don't need to queue because I've
   **already bought the tickets.** (= Nem kell sorba
   állnunk, mert már megvettem a jegyeket.)

   **Később így beszél róla:**
   **MARY:** We didn't need to queue because I **had**
   **already bought the tickets.** (= Nem kellett
   sorba állnunk, mert már (korábban)
   megvettem a jegyeket.

   Figyéljük meg, hogy a **never** és az **already**
   a befejezett melléknévi igenév előtt (**been,**
   **bought**) áll.

2. Amikor eseménysort mesélünk el, egyszerű
   múltat használunk:
   **A** I parked my car. **B** I went to the shops.
   **C** Somebody **stole** my radio. **D** I went back to my
car.

   **a múltban** A B C D **most**

   Ha nem időrendi sorrendben mondjuk el az
   eseményeket, a befejezett múlt fejezi ki azt,
   ami előbb történt:
   **D** I went back to my car. **C** Somebody **had stolen**
   my radio. (Mire visszamentem az autómhoz,
elopták a rádiómat.)

   Ilyen esetekben használhatjuk a **when**
   (= amikor, mire) szót:

   **When** I went back to my car,
   I saw that somebody **had stolen** my radio.

3. Függő beszédben is a Past Perfect alakot
   használjuk:
   'I have suffered from asthma for many years.'
   (= Hosszú évek óta gyöktör az asztma.)
   She **told the doctor** that she **had suffered from**
   asthma **for many years.** (= Elmondta az orvosnak,
   hogy hosszú idő óta gyötor az asztma.)

   (A függő beszéddel kapcsolatos további
   információ a 125. fejezetben található.)

Gyakorlatok

**A** Írjunk mondatokat arról, hogy az állításban szereplő személy az adott cselekvést már
korábban is végezte-e, vagy még sohasem tett ilyet. Használjunk Past Perfectet
**already** illetve **never** határozószóval.

0. Last summer Mary won a gold medal for the third time.
   **She had already won two gold medals**
   ................................................. before that.

0. Last year Ken visited Scotland for the first time.
   **He had never visited Scotland**
   ................................................. before that.

1. Last weekend Tom rode a horse for the first time.
   He ................................................. before that.

2. Last summer Jeff ran in a marathon for the sixth time.
   He ................................................. before that.

3. Last week Susan wrote a poem for the first time.
   She ................................................. before that.

4. Last week Ann appeared on TV for the first time.
   She ................................................. before that.
3. A következő pontok két-két eseményt tartalmaznak abban a sorrendben, ahogy ezek megtörténtek. Alkossunk összetett mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. Úgyeljünk, hogy mikor használunk egyszerű múltat, és mikor Past Perfectet.

1) A The driver started the car. B Lady James appeared.
   (When Lady James/appear/, the driver/already/start/the car)
   **When Lady James appeared, the driver had already started the car.**

   1. A We put the fire out. B The firemen arrived.
      (When the firemen/arrive/, we/already/put/the fire out)

   2. A Jim finished the work. B The manager came back.
      (When the manager/come/back, Jim/already/finish/the work)

   3. A I went to bed. B Philip telephoned.
      (When Philip/telephone/, I/already/go/to bed)

   4. A Alice and Jack had lunch. B Their children came home.
      (When their children/come/home, Alice and Jack/already/have/lunch)

   5. A Ian made the dinner. B His wife got home from work.
      (When his wife/get/home from work, Ian/already/make/dinner)

   6. A The thieves spent the money. B The police caught them.
      (The thieves/already/spend/the money when the police/catch/them)

3. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat Past Perfect használatával.

0. Last summer Pam said, ‘I’ve always wanted to fly in a helicopter.’
   Pam said that she **had always wanted to fly in a helicopter.**

1. Fred said, ‘Jack has just gone out.’
   Fred told us that Jack

2. Robert said to Jill, ‘Have you been to Cambridge?’
   Robert asked Jill if she

3. When the boys came home, Mrs Brock said, ‘I’ve made some sandwiches.’
   Mrs Brock told the boys that she

4. ‘I know your cousin,’ said Tom. ‘I met her in Amsterdam.’
   Tom said he knew his cousin because he

5. Bob was talking to Jean, and he said, ‘Have you ever been to Japan?’
   Bob asked Jean if she
6 When Jack came, I said, ‘I’ve finished the job.’
   I told Jack that I .................................................................

7 When the car mechanic arrived, we said, ‘We’ve already found the problem.’
   We explained to the mechanic that we ........................................

8 When I was interviewing the author, I said, ‘How many books have you sold?’
   I asked the author how many books she ........................................

D Atkossunk mondatokat a példa alapján Past Perfect és never ... before használatával.

0 Dan first flew to America when he was twelve. (in a plane)
   He had never flown in a plane before.

1 Helen saw Rigoletto last night. (an opera)

2 Tim ate at The Ashoko restaurant last weekend. (in a Japanese restaurant)

3 Sarah first rode a Harley-Davidson when she was seventeen. (a motorbike)

4 Not long ago Simon read War and Peace. (a Russian novel)

5 Mauro went to London last summer. (be abroad)

6 Katie heard a Beethoven symphony during last year’s music festival. (live classical music)

7 Bill first drove his dad’s BMW when he was nineteen. (a car)

8 Claire did a bungee jump last summer. (anything so crazy)

E Tegyünk fel kérdéseket Past Perfect alakban a példa alapján.

0 Katie saw Romeo and Juliet last week.
   Had she ever seen Romeo and Juliet before?

1 Flora went to Ireland last summer.

2 Tony made a Christmas cake last year.

3 Peter took Jenny out to dinner last night.

4 Sue swam in a national competition last Saturday.

5 Simon tidied his room yesterday.

6 Brazil won the World Cup in 1994.
Az alábbi képek mindegyike mellett két összetett mondat áll. Pipáljuk ki azt a mondatot, amelyik a kép tartalmának jobban megfelel, a másikat pedig húzzuk át.

0 When the police arrived, the thieves ran off. ✓
When the police arrived, the thieves had run off.

1 When my father came home, we all had dinner.
When my father came home, we had all had dinner.

2 When the teacher walked in, Bob and Fred stopped fighting.
When the teacher walked in, Bob and Fred had stopped fighting.

3 When Clare’s friends arrived, she opened her birthday presents.
When Clare’s friends arrived, she had opened her birthday presents.

4 When James came in, his sister went out.
When James came in, his sister had gone out.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a tartalmilag odaillő mondat függő beszéddé történő átalakításával.

| Have you finished your homework? | I’ve lived in the same house all my life. |
| Have I gone to the doctor’s? | Did you remember to post my letters? |
| I’ve just seen a lovely dress I want to buy. | I’ve already seen the film. |

0 Jean left a note for her husband to tell him that she had gone to the doctor’s.
1 Old Mrs Smith told us that she .........................................................
2 The teacher asked us if we .................................................................
3 Richard asked his wife if she ..............................................................
4 Jill told Pam that she ........................................................................
5 Bob asked Ruth out to the cinema, but she said that she .............................

Lisa Banks eltünésével kapcsolatban nyomoz a rendőrség. Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget, amely annak a szemtanúnak a vallomásából származik, aki Lisát utoljára láttá.

1 Figyeljük meg az egyszerű múlt használatát a következő mondatokban:

- helyzet leírása:
  *Henry lived in France for many years.*

- szokás leírása:
  *When I was young, I ran a mile every day.*

Az egyszerű múlt valamilyen múltbeli helyzetet vagy szokást fejezi ki.

2 Figyeljük meg a *used to* használatát:

*Jill used to live in Paris.* (= Jill valamikor Párizsban élte.)

Many people *used to make* their own bread. (= Vált idő, amikor sokan maguk sütöttek a kenyerüket.)

*My husband used to work at home.* (= A férjem régebben otthon dolgozott.)

A *used to* + főnévi igenév szerkezettel olyan helyzetet vagy szokást fejezünk ki, amely a múltban igaz volt, de ma már más a helyzet:

*Jill már nem él Párizsban.*

Manapság az emberek általában a boltban vásárolják a kenyeret.

A férjem már nem otthon dolgozik.

A magyarban múlt idővel fejezzük ki ugyanezt, de gyakran hozzátesszük, hogy ‘valamikor’, ‘régen’.

*Hasonlítsuk össze a used to és az egyszerű múlt használatát:*

- egyszerű múlt: *When he was young, he ran a mile every day.* (Fiatal korában naponta egy mérföldet futott. – A mondatból nem derül ki, vajon ma is fut-e még.)

- *used to*: *When I was young, I used to run a mile every day.* (Fiatal koromban napi egy mérföldet futottam. – Ma már nem.)

Figyelem: a múltban történt egyszeri cselekvést az egyszerű múlt fejezi ki:

*Last week I bought a new CD player.*

Ilyen esetekben helytelen a *used to* használata: *Last week I used to buy a CD player.*

Tagadó és kérőd mondatban a *did + use to* szerkezetet használjuk:

*Sue didn’t use to like black coffee.*

*Did Alan use to cycle to school?*

3 A jelenben is érvényes helyzetet vagy szokást egyszerű jelenenkell fejezzük ki:

*Ann sings in a band.* (NEM: *Ann uses to sing in a band.*

*f Joe doesn’t cycle to school.* (NEM: *Joe doesn’t use to cycle to school.*


4 A *be + used + to* (hozzá van szokva – állapot) és a *get + used + to* (hosszászokik – folyamat) szerkezetek nem azonosak az eddig tárgyalt *used to* alakkal. Ezek az alakok nem múltbeli szokást fejeznék ki, és nem csak múlt időre vonatkozhatnak.

*Figyeljük meg a szerkezetet:*

*be + used + to + ( főnév vagy get ) + ige + -ing*

*Scandinavians are used to their long winters.*

(= A skandinávok hosszú vannak szokva a hosszú, hideg telekhez.)

*At first I didn’t like it but now I’m used to getting up early.* (= Eleinte nem szerettem, de most már hozzá vagyok szokva a korai keléshez.)

*When Ellen went to Spain, she quickly got used to eating late in the evening.* (= Amikor Ellen Spanyolországba ment, gyorsan hozzászokott a késő esti étkezéshez.)

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Ez a táblázat néhány ember izlésének változását mutatja.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Ann</th>
<th>Tom</th>
<th>Robert</th>
<th>Pamela</th>
<th>Mary</th>
<th>Susan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the past Now</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>white bread</td>
<td>tap water</td>
<td>tinned fruit</td>
<td>margarine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td>brown bread</td>
<td>bottled water</td>
<td>fresh fruit</td>
<td>butter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a példa alapján.

0 Ann……………………………… meat, but now……………… fish.
1 Robert………………………… white bread, but now……………… brown bread.
2 Pamela……………………….. tap water, but now……………… bottled water.
3 Mary…………………………… fresh fruit now, but……………… tinned fruit.
4 Susan…………………………… butter now, but……………… margarine.

Ezután egészítsük ki a kérdéseket.

0 Did Ann use to eat…………… meat? ~ Yes, she did, but now she eats fish.
5 …………………………… white bread? ~ Yes, he did, but now he eats brown bread.
6 …………………………… tinned fruit? ~ Yes, she did, but now she eats fresh fruit.
7 …………………………… tap water? ~ Yes, she did, but now she drinks bottled water.

Végül egészítsük ki ezeket a mondatokat.

0 Ann……………………………… fish, but she does now.
8 Susan……………………………… butter, but she does now.
9 Mary eats fresh fruit now, but she………………………… it.
10 Pamela drinks bottled water now, but she……………………… it.

Húzzuk át a nyelvtanilag hibás mondatokat.

0 When he was at primary school, Tony used to work very hard.
0 Last year Peter used to get a new bicycle for Christmas.
1 I didn’t use to watch TV much, but I do now.
2 When he was a teenager, my father used to buy all the Beatles’ records.
3 Paul uses to go to the cinema almost every weekend.
4 Did Pamela used to go to the concert last night?
5 Paul used to be really fit when he played a lot of volleyball.
6 John use to spend a lot of money on that new jacket he bought last week.
7 Kate didn’t use to come to school yesterday because she was sick.
8 Jane used to play tennis a lot, but she doesn’t have time now.
9 Did you use to go to the seaside for holidays when you were a child?
10 We used to live in Canada before we came here.

A példa alapján alkossunk mondatokat az adott személy régebbi és mostani szokásáról.

0 Andrew/get up/seven o’clock/now/7.30
Andrew used to get up at seven o’clock, but now he gets up at half past seven.

0 I/swim/before work/now/after work
I used to swim before work, but now I swim after work.

1 Dan/play/violin/now/guitar

2 Anna/be/best friends/Angela/now/Cathy

3 Susan/have/dancing lessons/now/riding lessons
Past Perfect Simple (I had eaten) vagy
Past Perfect Continuous (I had been eating)

A Past Perfect Continuous alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLITAS</th>
<th>TAGADAS</th>
<th>KERDES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She had been eating.</td>
<td>She hadn’t been eating.</td>
<td>Had she been eating?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nézzük meg a Past Perfect és Past Perfect Continuous között lévő különbséget:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 l/you/he/she/it/we/they had eaten</td>
<td>l/you/he/she/it/we/they had been eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 A Past Perfect olyan eseményt ír le, amely egy másik, ugyancsak a múltban történt esemény vagy cselekmény előtt már befejeződött:

We had rescued the old woman before the fire brigade arrived. (= Kimentettük az idős hölgyet, mielőtt a tűzoltók megérkeztek.)

A Past Perfect Continuous olyan eseményt ír le, amely hosszan tartott egy másik, ugyancsak a múltban történt esemény előtt:

A bus finally arrived, we had been waiting a long time. (= Mire végül megérkezett a busz, már jó régen várakoztunk.)

3 A How many?. How much?. How often?

kezdetű kérdésekeben és az ezekre adott válaszokban is használjuk Past Perfectet:

A: How much fruit had they picked by noon?
B: They had picked about 20 kilos.

A: When the inspector visited the school, how many rooms had the workers painted?
B: They had painted more than half of them.

A How long? kezdetű kérdéseken használjuk a folyamatos befejezett múlt időt, a válaszban a since vagy a for előjárószkót:

A: How long had you been waiting when the bus arrived?
B: We had been waiting for two hours.

The men were very tired because they had been working since the morning.

4 Figyelem: bizonyos esetekben csak a Past Perfect alakot használjuk, a Past Perfect Continuousst nem:

| ➢ az olyan rövid ideig tartó cselekvést kifejező igék esetében, mint pl. stop, break, finish stb.: |
| Tanya had finished her homework before dinner time. |
| ➢ az olyan igék esetében, amelyek gondolkodással kapcsolatosak: know, decide, forget, notice: |
| I apologized because I had forgotten her name. |
| ➢ amikor arról beszélünk, hogy valamit mikor csináltunk utoljára: |
| Before I visited Kenya last year, I hadn’t spoken Swahili for over ten years. |

5 Bizonyos igék esetében mind a két igeidő használható; a mondat jelentése lényegében ugyanaz:

In 2000, I had taught (VAGY I had been teaching) for two years. (= 2000-ben már két éve tanítottam.)

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakból. Ügyeljünk arra, hogy a cselekvést, amely megelőzte a másikat, Past Perfect alakkal fejezzük ki.

0 (We/put/put out the fire/before the fire brigade/arrive)

We had put out the fire before the fire brigade arrived.

1 (The children/clean/the flat/before/their parents/come/home)

2 (Two young men/catch/the thief/before/the police car/appear)

3 (Some volunteers/move/the car/before/the rescue truck/arrive)
Ian és Rosemarie ezen a nyáron házasadott össze. Egészítsük ki a házasságkötés előtti időről szóló mondatokat a Past Perfect Continuous és a for vagy since előljárószó használatával.

When Ian and Rosemarie got married:

1. They go out together/three years.  
   \textit{They'd been going out together for three years.}

2. They save up to buy a flat/a year.


4. Rosemarie run her own business/six months.

5. They organize their honeymoon/April.

6. They talk about the wedding/ages!

Frank Hounsell sikeres énekes. A következő interjúban arról beszéli, milyen volt az élete, mielőtt népszerűvé vált. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a Past Perfect Simple vagy Past Perfect Continuous és a for vagy since előljárószó használatával, ahol szükséges.

\textbf{INTERVIEWER:} (How long/you perform) before you became successful?

   \textbf{0. \textit{How long had you been performing before you became successful?}}

\textbf{FRANK:} (I/sing in public/over ten years).

   \textbf{1.}

\textbf{INTERVIEWER:} And (how long/record songs) when you had your first hit?

   \textbf{2.}

\textbf{FRANK:} (I/record songs/five years).

   \textbf{3.}

\textbf{INTERVIEWER:} (How many records/you make)?

   \textbf{4.}

\textbf{FRANK:} (I/make three CDs but none of them/sell very well.)

   \textbf{5.}

\textbf{INTERVIEWER:} (you/give up hope) that you would succeed?

   \textbf{6.}

\textbf{FRANK:} (Well, I/work hard/years and years but I/not earn much money).

   \textbf{7.}

So, (I/think of giving up) when I finally had a hit record.

   \textbf{8.}

I'm glad I didn't give up!
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: igeidők (12–29. fejezet)

A Egészítsük ki a következő üzeneteket a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

0 I spoke to Ken yesterday and he wants to arrange a meeting.
1 I (not go) to work last week because I (be) ill.
2 I (not have) a reply from you. Could you send one now?
3 I (talk) to a customer when you (ring) yesterday.
4 (you decide) whether you can meet me tomorrow or not?
5 (you see) Charles yesterday? What (he say) about your promotion?
6 I (try) to phone you for a couple of days.

B Írjunk kérdéseket az alábbi mondatokhoz. A kérdésben használjuk a válaszban szereplő igét.

0 A: Where/yesterday
   B: John was at home.
1 A: Where/when you met Jenny
   B: I was going to work.
2 A: our players/well
   B: Yes, they played very well.
3 A: How long/here
   B: I’ve lived here all my life.
4 A: When/Einstein
   B: I think he died in about 1950.
5 A: How long
   B: I’ve been waiting for twenty minutes.
6 A: What time/to bed last night
   B: I went to bed just after midnight.

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat since, for, in vagy ago használatával.

0 Fran has been in Paris for a week now.
   (go/to Paris/a week) Fran went to Paris a week ago.
1 Sally hasn’t eaten meat for five years.
   (stop/eating meat/five years)
2 Mary emigrated to Canada in 2000.
   (live/in Canada/2000)
3 They have been married for six years.
   (get married/six years)
4 My sister passed the driving test nine months ago.
   (have/a driving licence/nine months)
5 Peter’s flu started a week ago.
   (Peter/have flu/a week)
6 Colin has lived here since 1999.
   (come/to live here/1999)
My back hurts because I have been sitting (sit) on a hard chair all day.

A: What's wrong with Mr Simons?
B: He has broken (break) his leg.

The dog is dirty because he is digging (dig) in the garden.

How many cigarettes (you, smoke) so far today?

A: How's your friend Simon? (he, finished) that novel yet?
B: I don’t think he’ll ever finish it. He is writing (write) it for ten years already.

That strange smell is because they are mending (mend) the gas pipes.

Someone is eating (eat) my lunch. There’s only half of it left.

This week the children are collecting (collect) £500 for charity, so now we have nearly £2,000.

A rendőrség egy rablás ügyében nyomoz. Egészítsük ki Brown felügyelő és az egyik nyomozó beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

BROWN: How many people 0 have you interviewed (you/interview) up to now?

DETECTIVE: I 1 interviewed (interview) two yesterday and I
2 talked (talk) to three today, but I’m seeing one more this afternoon.

BROWN: Who 3 (you/see) first?

DETECTIVE: I 4 decided (decide) to start with the most likely suspect, so I
5 started (start) with Frank Burgess because he
6 was in prison three times for robbery.

BROWN: Right. What 7 (he/say)?

DETECTIVE: Here are my notes. ‘On Friday night I 8 set (set) off for my
9 mother’s at about nine o’clock. She lives in Nottingham and I
10 got (get) there about midnight, so at the time of the
crime I 11 drove (drive) north up the M1.’

BROWN: I 12 heard (hear) that his mother
13 died (die) two or three years ago.

DETECTIVE: No, she was very ill and everybody 14 thought (think) she was
15 going to die, but in the end she 16 got (get) well again.

BROWN: Well, I still don’t believe him.

DETECTIVE: Neither do I. His mother lives south of here, in Brighton. She
17 lived (live) there for years.

BROWN: Who 18 (you/talk) to next?

DETECTIVE: Charlie Green. I 19 talked (talk) to him when you
20 phoned (phone) me yesterday.

BROWN: He has also been in prison. I 21 know (know) him since he
22 was at school with my brother. And what’s his story?
DETECTIVE: He said he 21………………………………. (keep) out of trouble since he
22………………………………. (come) out of prison two years ago. He said that at
first he 23………………………………. (work) in a garage and since then he
24………………………………. (work) in a hospital. I phoned the hospital later and
they said that he 25………………………………. (do) a great job ever since he
26………………………………. (start).

BROWN: OK, let’s go back to Frank Burgess. What 27………………………………. (he/say)
he 28………………………………. (do) at the time of the crime?

A hiányos mondatokba írjuk be a used to + -nél típusú szerkezetet, ahol lehetséges.
Ha ezt nem használhatjuk, írjuk le még egyszer az első mondatban szereplő igét.

0 Liz skied a lot when she was young. Liz used to ski……………………………… a lot when she was young.
0 I saw Rod three times last summer. I saw Rod three times last summer.
1 Tina always went to school by bus. Tina went to school by bus.
2 They completed the house in three months. They completed the house in three
months.
3 For a long time Bill lived alone. Bill lived alone.
4 Jill plays tennis every week. Jill plays tennis every week.
5 Our athletics team won nine medals. Our athletics team won nine medals.
6 Philip smoked a lot, but he’s stopped now. Philip stopped smoking a lot, but he’s
stopped now.

Robert Fuller híres zenész. Egész írásunkat közvetítjük a megadott
kifejezésekkel. Minden egyes kifejezést csak egyszer használjunk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hadn’t been</th>
<th>happened</th>
<th>had been practising</th>
<th>had become</th>
<th>started</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>had finished</td>
<td>used to shout</td>
<td>had never experienced</td>
<td>was blowing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had put</td>
<td>was trying</td>
<td>have been playing</td>
<td>was happening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven’t forgotten</td>
<td>sounded</td>
<td>used to arrive</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven’t had</td>
<td>not been able</td>
<td>had made</td>
<td>was getting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First of all, I’d like to thank you for inviting me here today. I haven’t been back to the school
since I left over ten years ago. Of course, I late and how the teachers at me!

On my way here, I to think of my best and worst memories of the school. Well,
my best memory is something that in my first year. My class a concert for the rest of the school and the parents. Before the concert, we for weeks, but there was one piece of music that to play properly. On the night of the concert, we were all really nervous when we to play that piece, but for some reason everyone got it right. It all fantastic and the audience stood up and applauded when we . I anything like it and I’ll always remember how good we all felt. I as a professional musician for five years now and I still a better feeling.

And the worst memory? Well, that was something musical too. In my final year at the school, I good at the trumpet and the head teacher asked me to give a demonstration. I started to play but no sound came out. I as hard as I could but nothing . The audience were looking at me and I embarrassed.

Then I looked in the trumpet. Somebody a sock in there. It was a joke. The sock it impossible for any sound to come out.
Egészítsük ki Tom és Jane beszélgetését az itt megadott kifejezésekkel.

**Tom:** Now that you are married and are back at home, I expect you are thinking about having children.

**Jane:** Oh, yes. What about you and Sally? How on?

**Tom:** That’s a difficult subject. She to live in Scotland for a while.

**Jane:** Do you mean she you?

**Tom:** I’m not sure. She me two years ago, but then she back.

We’re still friends – I to Scotland; in fact I to her last night. But let’s not talk about that.

**Jane:** OK, let’s change the subject. I nothing to eat since breakfast. Are you hungry? How about a Chinese meal?

**Tom:** Good idea. It’s ages since a Chinese meal.

A következő mondatok mindegyikében van hiba. Húzzuk át a hibás részt, és a helyes szót vagy kifejezést írjuk a mondat után.

1. We moved to this house two years ago.
2. Jim was here in the morning and his sisters was here in the afternoon.
3. My cousins didn’t walked; they came by bike.
4. When we have finished the work, we had a cup of tea.
5. Have your parents ever gone to Australia?
6. Our neighbours have lived here since two years.
7. The children have been playing cards since breakfast.
8. Jackie and Tom haven’t finished their homework already.
9. When she was young, my grandmother used to work in the market.
10. Last year Bob told me that he has passed every subject.
11. We were walk in the park when the rain started.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1. A nagyapám még csak tizenhárom éves volt, amikor (már) elkezdett dolgozni.
2. Tavya a csapatunk nem játszott valami jól, de az idén már őt mérközést megnyertünk.
3. Mit csináltak a gyerek, amikor hazaérték?
4. A gyerekek a nyár eleje óta a Balatonon vannak.
5. A munkások nagyon fáradtak, mert egész nap keményen dolgoztak.
6. Susie tegnap este telefonált és elmondta, hogy átment a vizsgán.
7. Az anyám egyszerű eladó volt, de 1999 óta ő a bolt vezetője.
8. Sheila azelőtt sokat teniszezett, de már évek óta nem játszott.
A jövőre vonatkozó szándék – be going to

1 A be going to alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be going</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>FŐNEVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>snow.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALLITÁS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/you/they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/you/they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are we/you/they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Rendszerint a be (’m, ’s, ’re) összevont alakjait használjuk:

They’re going to leave.
He’s going to spend a week by the sea.

3 Az összevont tagadó alak: I’m not going to:

I’m not going to play tennis today.

Egyes szám harmadik személyben és a you, we, és they mellett kétféle tagadó alak lehetséges:

He/she/it isn’t going to come.
He/she/it’s not going to come.

4 A be going to jövő időt fejezi ki. Általában akkor használjuk, ha valamilyen szándékokat vagy elhatározást fogalmazunk meg:

(A be going to szerkezet tartalmazó kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók: Is he going to leave? ~ Yes, he is.)

You/we/they aren’t going to come.
You/we/they’re not going to come.

(A be going to szerkezet tartalmazó kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók: Is he going to leave? ~ Yes, he is.)

(A be going to szerkezet tartalmazó kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók: Is he going to leave? ~ Yes, he is.)

(Gyakorlatai)

A Paul elhatározta, hogy a következő dolgokat fogja tenni. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a be going to szerkezet és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

0 I’m going to study ....... (study) music at university.
1 I ................................ (travel) all over the world.
2 I ................................ (not/work) in an office.
3 I ................................ (marry) a very rich woman.
4 We ................................ (have) eleven children.
5 They ................................ (become) a football team.
6 They ................................ (win) the World Cup.
7 I ........................................ (play) the piano every night in a café.
8 We ..................................... (not cook) or clean.
9 We ..................................... (eat) in restaurants every day.
Sarah és Joe nyári terveikről beszélgetnek. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben megadott igék és a **be going to** szerkezet használatával.

**SARAH:** What **are you going to do?** (you/do) this summer, Joe?

**JOE:** I **1** ................................................ (travel) around Europe. I **2** ................................................ (buy) a special rail ticket and I **3** ................................................ (visit) lots of countries.

**SARAH:** Which countries **4** ................................................ (you/go) to?

**JOE:** I **5** ................................................ (start) in France. Then I **6** ................................................ (travel) to Holland.

**SARAH:** What kind of places **7** ................................................ (you/see)?

**JOE:** I **8** ................................................ (not go) to the big cities. I **9** ................................................ (stop) in small towns.

**SARAH:** Where **10** ................................................ (you/stay)?

**JOE:** I **11** ................................................ (not stay) in hotels because I **12** ................................................ (not have) much money to spend. I **13** ................................................ (sleep) on the train as much as I can and I **14** ................................................ (find) student hostels.

**SARAH:** How **15** ................................................ (you/find) them?

**JOE:** I **16** ................................................ (buy) a book with all the addresses and information.

**SARAH:** **17** ................................................ (you/take) lots of photos?

**JOE:** Yes, and I **18** ................................................ (write) a diary. I **19** ................................................ (describe) all the places I visit and all the people I meet.

**SARAH:** Great. **20** ................................................ (let) me read it when you get back?

**JOE:** Oh, I'm not sure about that!

---

**Irjunk mindegyik képhez egy mondatot a be going to szerkezettel és a megfelelő kifejezéssel.**

It/rain
They/eat/a pizza
They/not/play tennis
She/not/win/the race
She/have/a swim
They/watch/a film
He/make/a phone call
He/play/the piano

0. He's **going to make a phone call.**

---

95
Will / shall (I will do it, Shall we go?)

1 A shall/will segédigével jövő időt fejezhetünk ki. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

It’s now five o’clock. I’ll stop work at six o’clock.
(= Most ot óra van. Hat órakor fogom abbagyni a munkát.)

2 A will segédige használata:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>will/‘ll</th>
<th>FŐNEV IGENEV (to nélkül)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ÁLLITÁS
I/he/she/it/we/you/they will/‘ll go

TAGADÁS
I/he/she/it/we/you/they will not/won’t go

KÉRÉDS
Will I/he/she/it/we/you/they go?

A beszélt nyelvben rendszerint az összevont alakot használjuk:
I’ll, he’ll, I won’t, he won’t.

3 A will segédigét használjuk, ha szerintünk valami a jövőben be fog következni, valaminek a bekövetkezésében reménykedünk vagy bizunk:
I’m sure Jane will love your new dress.
I think that in the future, everyone will have an electric car.
He’s a good manager. He won’t make any mistakes.

A will segédigével fejezzük ki, ha bizonyosan tudjuk, hogy valami be fog következni:
My father will be fifty years old tomorrow.

A will segédigét használjuk a jövőre vonatkozó kérdésekben is:
Will they win this game? (= Meg fogják nyerni a meccset?) ~ Yes, I think they will.
(A kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

4 Az I’ll alakot használjuk, ha a beszéd pillanatában határozzuk el, hogy valamit meg fogunk tenni. Például megszólal a telefon, és azt mondjuk:
I’ll answer it. (= Felveszem.)
Egy másik példa:
A: Does anyone want to come with me tonight?
B: Yes, I’ll come. (= Igent, én megyek.)

A will kérest és a kérésre adott udvarias válasz is kifejezhet:
A: Will someone post this letter for me?
B: Yes, I’ll post it for you.

5 A Shall I …? kédelű kérdéssel valamit felajánlunk valakinek, vagy valamilyen döntést várunk tőle:
Shall I make you a cup of tea? (= Csináljak neked egy csésze teát?)
Shall I come after lunch? (= Ebből után jöjök?)
What time shall I come? (= Mikor jöjök?)

Azt is a shall fejezi ki, ha azt akarjuk kideríteni, hogy valaki elfogadja-e a javaslatunkat:
Shall we go to the cinema tonight? (= Menjünk moziba ma este?)

A let’s vagy a why don’t we? kifejezésekkel is tehetünk javaslatot:
Let’s go to the cinema tonight.
Why don’t we go to the cinema tonight?

Gyakorlatok

Ág Égészítsük ki a mondatokat a will, won’t, shall vagy let’s szavakkal.

0 My mother is thirty-nine years old; she will be forty next month.
1 Tell me. How much sugar do I buy?
2 Don’t take an umbrella; it will rain today.
3 I’ve got a good idea. Have a party!
4 I don’t know if Linda and Paul will be at the concert.
5 A: Don’t worry. I’m sure John will lend us some money.
   B: No, he says this time he will lend us a penny.
Alkossunk mondatokat I'll és a megfelelő kifejezés használatával.

- phone for a taxi |
- carry some of them |
- make you a sandwich |
- go with you |
- give you some money |
- ask her to phone you tonight |
- open a window |

0 A: I want to take these books home, but they’re very heavy.
B: I’lI carry some of them.

1 A: I feel sick. It’s so hot in this room.
B: .............................................................

2 A: I want a cup of coffee, but I don’t have any money.
B: .............................................................

3 A: I’m hungry. I didn’t have any lunch.
B: .............................................................

4 A: It’s ten o’clock. I’ll be late if I walk.
B: .............................................................

5 A: I want to speak to Jane. It’s very important.
B: .............................................................

6 A: I want to go to the museum, but I don’t know the way.
B: .............................................................

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat Shall I, Shall we vagy Let’s használatával.

0 A: I’m hungry. Are you going to the shop, Philip?
B: Yes. ................................................ get you something to eat?

1 A: I’m going to get some tickets for the concert next week. ................... buy you one?
B: Yes, please. I’d love to come.

2 A: I’ve got an idea. ......................... go to a restaurant tonight.
B: OK, .......................... go to the new Indian place?

3 A: Our meeting is at John’s office on Baker Street. There’s nowhere to park the car.
B: ............................ walk or take a taxi?

4 A: You look thirsty. ................ get you a drink?
B: Yes, please. An orange juice or some water.

5 A: It’s a beautiful day! ...................... have a picnic.
B: Wonderful idea! Who shall we invite?

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat will, won’t, shall vagy let’s használatával.

1 Segítesz lemosni a kocsi? ~ Igen, segítek.
2 Játsszunk egy parti sakkot!
3 Mit vegyek fel? Vegyem fel a fekete ruhámat?
4 Ne aggódj, Ma délütán felhívom a nagypapáit.
5 Péter nem fog válaszolni erre a kérdésre.
6 Fáradt vagyok. Feküdjünk le aludni!
A jövő kifejezése – Present Continuous és Present Simple

1 Figyeljük meg a példákat:

   * I'm flying home tomorrow. (= Holnap hazutazom.)
   * He's starting a new job on Monday. (= Hétvégén kezd dolgozni az új munkahelyén.)
   * Tony and Ann are coming at the weekend. (= Tony és Ann a hét végén érkezik.)

A fenti mondatokban a folyamatos jelen (Present Continuous) használtuk (lásd a 7. és a 9. fejezetet), de ezüttal nem azt fejezzük ki, hogy valami éppen most történik. Ezek a mondatok a jövőben majd bekövetkező cselekvést fejeznek ki.

Figyelem! Hasonló esetben a magyarban is gyakran jelen időt használunk (kezd, érkezik), bár a mondat a jövőre vonatkozik.

2 Nebbük meg a következő példát:

   * I bought my ticket last week. I'm flying home next week.

A folyamatos jelen (I am flying) olyan, jövőben történő cselekvést fejezi ki, amely már korábban eldött.

További példák:

   * Egy bank itt Tomnak, és közölte vele, hogy a jövő héten kezdhet náluk dolgozni.
   * He's starting a new job next week. (= Jövő héten kezd egy új munkahelyen.)

   * Tom meghívja barátait: Would you like to come for dinner on Sunday?
   * Tony és Ann válasza: Yes.
   * Tom ekkor ezt mondja: Tony and Ann are coming on Sunday.

3 Gyakran az időhatározó is fontos része a jövő időt kifejező folyamatos jelenben álló mondatnak, pl. next week, in July, tomorrow, on Sunday:

   * JELEN IDŐ: I'm leaving now. (= Megyek. – most)
   * JOVÓ IDŐ: I'm leaving tomorrow. (= Megyek. – holnap)
   * JELEN IDŐ: We're having a party at the moment. (= Összejövetel van nálunk.)
   * JOVÓ IDŐ: We're having a party in July. (= Juliustól lesz nálunk egy összejövetel.)

4 Folyamatos jelen használunk, ha azt akarjuk meg tudni, hogy valaki milyen programot tervez. What are you doing this weekend?

5 Nem használhatjuk a folyamatos jelen, ha a jövőben bekövetkező eseményt nem tölünk függ:

   * HELYTELLEN: The sun is shining tomorrow.
   * HELYESEN: The sun will shine tomorrow.

6 Ha olyan jövőbeli eseményről beszélünk, ami nem a mi szándékontól vagy elhatározásunktól függ, az egyszerű jelenet (Present Simple) használjuk:

   * A: What time is the match on Saturday?
   * B: It starts at three o'clock.

   * What subject do we have first lesson tomorrow?

   * Easter falls late next year.

   * The school year ends on 28 July this year.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk mondatokat folyamatos jelenben a megfelelő kifejezéssel a zárójelben lévő állítás alapján.

   * I/fly/to Florida in August
   * I/study/English in London in May
   * I/eat/in a new restaurant tonight
   * I/go/to the doctor tomorrow
   * I/see/Mary this weekend
   * I/go/to a concert next Tuesday

0 (You paid for an English course in London yesterday.)

   * I'm studying English in London in May.

1 (You booked a table at a new restaurant last week.)

2 (You bought a ticket for a concert last month.)
3 (You telephoned your doctor this morning.)

4 (You paid for a holiday at a travel agent’s last week.)

5 (You talked to Mary on the phone this morning.)

Az alábbi lista Cathy jóvő heti programját részletezi. Az információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat folyamatos jelen használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>work until six o'clock; go to the library after work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>play tennis with Ian, five o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>go to the doctor’s, 2.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>have a typing lesson, 10.30–12.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>meet Jackie outside cinema, 8.30; film starts at 8.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>Nick and Lucy come here for dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 **She’s working** until six o’clock on Monday.

1 .................................................. to the library after work on Monday.

2 .................................................. tennis with Ian at five o’clock on Tuesday.

3 .................................................. to the doctor’s at 2.30 on Wednesday.

4 .................................................. a typing lesson from 10.30 to 12.30 on Thursday.

5 .................................................. Jackie outside the cinema at 8.30 on Friday.

6 .................................................. a film at 8.45 on Friday.

7 Nick and Lucy ........................................ to her house for dinner on Saturday.

8 .................................................. anything on Sunday.

Két tanár az iskolai hangverseny szervezéséről beszélget. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen és a zárójelben megadott ígérek használatával.

**What’s happening**

MR HOPPER: 0 .................................................. (What/happen) at the concert next week?

MR RANCE: Well, 1 .................................................. (it/take place) on Thursday, as you know.

MR HOPPER: Yeah. What time 2 .................................................. (it/start)?

MR RANCE: 7.00, but 3 .................................................. (the doors/open) at 6.00.

MR HOPPER: 4 .................................................. (Who/play)?

MR RANCE: Well, Year 2 have formed a group. 5 .................................................. (They/sing) a few songs.

Then there’s Maria from Year 4. 6 .................................................. (She/play) a cello piece by

Elgar. And after that it’s Year 5. 7 .................................................. (They/sing) some

traditional songs.

MR HOPPER: 8 .................................................. (anyone else/perform)?

MR RANCE: Oh yes, I nearly forgot. Mr Davies and Mrs Harris. 9 .................................................. (They/dance).

MR HOPPER: OK. What 10 .................................................. (I/do)?

MR RANCE: 11 .................................................. (You/collect) tickets at the door and

12 .................................................. (you/introduce) each of the performers.

MR HOPPER: Fine. See you there.
### Will vagy be going to, Present Continuous vagy be going to

Hasonlitsuk össze a **will** segédigé és a **be going to** szerkezet használatát:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>1</strong></th>
<th>A <strong>will</strong> segédigét <strong>to</strong> nélküli főnévi igénvével használjuk (do, go, be, arrive stb.):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</strong> (arrive) <strong>tomorrow.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I/you/he (stb.) <strong>will</strong> /'ll <strong>go</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I/you/he (stb.) <strong>will not</strong> / won't <strong>go</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Will I/you/he (stb.) <strong>go</strong>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>2</strong></th>
<th>A <strong>will</strong> segédigét a beszéd pillanatában elhatározott cselekvés kifejezésére használhatjuk:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>a múltban</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>most</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>beszéd</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>elhatározás</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I like this coat. I think I’ll buy it.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Üzletben, éttermben gyakran fejezzük ki a kívánságunkat a <strong>will</strong> segédigével.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A: <em>What would you like to eat?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B: <em>I’ll have a pizza, please.</em> (= Kérek egy pizzát.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A <strong>will</strong> gyakran felajánlást vagy igéretet fejezz ki:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’ll <strong>carry</strong> your case for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I won’t forget your birthday again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ugyancsak a <strong>will</strong> segédigével fejezzük ki, ha bizunk benne vagy remélijük, hogy valami be fog következni:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’m sure you’ll enjoy the film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’m sure it won’t rain tomorrow. It’ll be another beautiful, sunny day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>2</strong></th>
<th>**A <strong>be going to</strong> alakot <strong>to</strong> + főnévi igenév követi (to do, to be, to rain stb.):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</strong> (to rain) <strong>soon.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My friends <strong>are going to come</strong> tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It isn’t going to rain today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What are you going to do on Sunday?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **3** | Előre eltervezett cselekvést vagy eseményt folyamatos jelennel vagy a **be going to** szerkezettel fejezhetünk ki. Hasonlitsuk össze a következő mondatokat: |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>folyamatos jelen (Present Continuous):</strong></th>
<th><strong>be going to:</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>We’re moving to a new flat in two weeks.</em></td>
<td><em>We’re going to move to a new flat soon.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Két héten belül új lakásba költözünk. - Már kitűztük a költözés időpontját.)</td>
<td>(= Hamarosan új lakásba költözünk. - Szándékkunkban áll, de még semmit sem véglegesítettünk.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A folyamatos jelen olyan, a jövőben bekövetkező eseményt jelöli, amelyet már megszerveztünk. A **going to** használata azt jelzi, hogy valami szándékunkban áll, de még nem szerveztük meg.

Nézzük meg a példamondatot:

*I’m meeting Diana at 3 p.m., and I’m going to meet her assistant some time next week.*

(Dianával megbeszélünk a találkozót, az asszisztensével csak szándékkomban áll találkozni.)
Gyakorlatok

A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a be going to szerkezettel és a megfelelő igével.

0 He's going to eat his meal.
1 The plane......................
2 She........................... a picture.
3 He............................ into the water.
4 She........................... on the door.
5 He............................ the ball.

Alkossunk mondatokat 'll és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

0 Sit down. (I/make/you a cup of coffee)
   'I'll make you a cup of coffee.'

1 A: It's time for me to go home.
   B: (I/give/you a lift) ..............

2 (I/phone/you tonight, I promise) ...........................................

3 A: I won't be able to buy the tickets for the concert today.
   B: Don't worry. (I/buy/the tickets for both of us, and I/meet/you at the concert hall)

4 A: Oh no, it's raining and I must go to the shops.
   B: That's OK. (I/lend/you my umbrella) ................................

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és 'll vagy a be going to használatával.

0 A: It's rather hot in here, isn't it?
   B: Yes, you're right. ........................ (I/open) a window.

1 A: Are you going to watch TV tonight?
   B: Yes, ............................ (I/watch) my favourite programme at nine o'clock.

2 A: What .......................... (you/eat) tonight? What food have you bought?
   B: I haven't bought any food.
   A: Well, why don't you come to my house? ......................... (I/cook) us something nice to eat.

3 A: I'm going into town tomorrow. .............................. (I/buy) some new clothes.
   B: Oh, what .......................... (you/get)?
   A: .................................. (I/look) for a T-shirt and some jeans.
   B: I'd like to go into the centre too. ............................ (I/come) with you.

4 A: ................................. (I/leave) work late tomorrow. There's a meeting at six o'clock.
   B: Oh, I didn't know that. Well, ............................ (I/see) you after the meeting.

5 .................................. (I/phone) Tom at six o'clock. I promised to phone him this evening.

6 A: Are you going to have a holiday in the summer?
   B: Yes, ............................ (I/travel) around Europe with a friend.
D Keressük meg minden képhez a megfelelő mondatot. A mondatpárokából csak az egyik mondat helyes, a másikat húzzuk át.

0 a You look hot, I'll open a window./You look hot, I'm going to open a window.
b Next year, we're going to enter the Japanese market./Next year, we'll enter the Japanese market.
c Thanks, I'm going to have an orange juice./Thanks, I'll have an orange juice.
d Have a rest, I'm going to do the photocopying./Have a rest, I'll do the photocopying.
e Relax, I'll answer it./Relax, I'm going to answer it.
f Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'll meet the new manager of our Tokyo office./Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'm going to meet the new manager of our Tokyo office.

E Válaszoljunk a kérdésekre will vagy be going to segítségével.

0 A: Hi, nice to see you. Would you like a drink?
   B: (I/have/a coke, please) I'll have a coke, please.

1 A: What are you doing these days?
   B: (Nothing much but I/start/a new job soon)

2 A: Would you like something to eat?
   B: (Thanks, I/have/a sandwich)

3 A: What are your plans for the weekend?
   B: (I/do/some shopping tomorrow and I/go/for a swim on Sunday)

4 A: Why is Maria standing by the piano?
   B: (She/sing/, I'm afraid)

5 A: This cake looks delicious. Are you going to have some?
   B: (No, but I'm sure you/enjoy/it)

6 A: How are you getting home?
   B: (David/give/me a lift)
A Hollandiából hazatérő Lizt bátyja, Tom várja a londoni pályaudvaron. Ellenőrizzük hogy a szövegben aláhúzott részek helyese-e vagy sem. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan szerkezeteket, a hibásakat pedig húzzuk át, és írjuk melléjük a helyes megoldást.

**TOM:** Hi Liz. Do you want some tea or coffee after your journey?

**LIZ:** Thanks. I'll have a cup of tea.

**TOM:** I'm going to carry your bag – you look tired.

We'll go to that café over there.

Here we are. So, welcome back to England. How was Holland?

**LIZ:** Well, it was great to have some time to think, and I've made some decisions. I'll talk to the boss tomorrow, and I'll ask him if I can move to another department.

**TOM:** Good. I'm sure he'll give you what you want. Would you like something to eat?

**LIZ:** Um, yes. I'm going to have a sandwich. Thanks. What about you?

**TOM:** No, thanks, I don't want to spoil my appetite. I've reserved a table for this evening at the Mexican restaurant in Leicester Square. I'll take Jill. What are you going to do this evening?

**LIZ:** I haven't thought about it. I'll probably cook something. Oh, and I must ring Dad. Did you remember that it's his birthday tomorrow?

**TOM:** Yes, I remembered. He'll be fifty. Promise me you'll relax a bit?

**LIZ:** Sure.

**TOM:** OK. I'll get you a taxi. Call me tomorrow.

You won't forget, will you?

---

Ann egy hét múlva nyaralni megy, de addig még sok tennivalója van. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázat alapján. A már elrendezett tevékenységeknél használjunk folyamatos jelent, a többinél pedig **be going to** szerkezetet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>morning</th>
<th>afternoon/evening</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>10.00 take Tim to the airport</td>
<td>wash the car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>buy some stamps</td>
<td>write some letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>11.00 take the dog to the vet</td>
<td>tidy my flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>12.30 cook lunch for mother</td>
<td>buy a new squash racket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>9.00 play squash with Mary</td>
<td>do the shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>wash my hair</td>
<td>6.00 meet Tim at the airport</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Ann is taking Tim to the airport on Monday morning.
0 On Monday evening Ann is going to wash the car.
1 On Tuesday she some stamps because in the evening she some letters.
2 She can't see anyone on Wednesday morning because she the dog to the vet.
3 On Wednesday evening she her flat.
4 On Thursday afternoon she a new squash racket because squash with Mary on Friday morning.
5 On Friday afternoon she the shopping.
6 She her hair on Saturday morning because she Tim at the airport at six o'clock.
A Nézzük meg a táblázatot, és egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következő igékkel: beat, draw with, lose to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bob Foster’s forecast for next Saturday’s big football matches:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arsenal 1 – 1 Liverpool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipswich 3 – 3 Millwall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bob Foster thinks that:
0 Arsenal will draw with Liverpool.
1 Leeds ........................................... Everton.
2 Chelsea ...................................... Luton.
3 Ipswich ...................................... Millwall.
4 Brighton ...................................... Oxford.
5 Portsmouth ................................... Preston.

B Olvassuk el George holnapi programját, és egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben megadott szavak és folyamatos jelen használatával.

9 o'clock: catch the train
10 o'clock: meet Judy in the main square
11 o'clock: meet Harry and Fred for coffee
12 o'clock: go to the theatre box office for tickets
1 o'clock: have lunch with Dave
2–5 o'clock: help Dave in his bike shop
6 o'clock: catch the train home

TIM: What 0 are you doing ......................... (you/do) tomorrow, George?
GEORGE: 1 ........................................... (I/go) into the town centre.
TIM: What time 2 ................................ (you/catch) the train?
GEORGE: At nine o’clock, 3 ............................... (I/meet) Judy at ten o’clock.
TIM: Where 4 ....................................... (you/meet) her?
GEORGE: In the main square, and then 5 ........................ (we/meet) Harry and Fred in a café. After that, 6 .................................................. (we/go) to the theatre to buy some tickets, and then 7 .............................................................. (I/have) lunch with Dave.
TIM: What 8 ........................................... (you/do) in the afternoon?
GEORGE: 9 ........................................... (I/help) Dave in his shop.
TIM: When 10 ....................................... (you/come) home?
GEORGE: 11 ........................................... (I/catch) the train back at six o’clock.

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és a be going to szerkezet segítségével.
0 (Mike/help us/tomorrow) Mike is going to help us tomorrow.
1 A: (you/see/new James Bond film?) .............................................................
   B: Yes, (I/buy/a ticket/this afternoon) .....................................................
2 A: (you/clean/the car?) ...........................................................................
   B: No, (Mum/take/it to the car wash) ........................................................
A: The weather man says (it/rain/this afternoon) .................................................................
B: I know. (I/take/my umbrella) .................................................................

4 A: (What/you/study/at university next year?) .................................................................
B: (I/study/medicine) .................................................................

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket **will** vagy **be going to** és a megfelelő kifejezés segítségével, attól függően, hogy a cselekvést mikor határozzák el.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>take it to the car wash</th>
<th>get you an aspirin</th>
<th>see her</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go to the hairdresser's</td>
<td>have a shower</td>
<td>make some tea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) MARY: Philip, I'm very thirsty.
PHILIP: I'm going to make some tea.

1) PAUL: I've got a headache.
SALLY: I'll get you an aspirin.

1) JACK: Is your toothache better?
JILL: No, but I've phoned the dentist. I ........................................... at 10.30.

2) JANE: Do you think my hair is all right?
SAM: No, I'm sorry, I don't. I think it needs a cut.
JANE: OK, I ................................. this afternoon.

3) ANN: Where's Tom?
MIKE: He's just gone into the bathroom. He .................................

4) JOHN: Where have you been with the car? It's very dirty.
ROSE: Is it? OK, I .................................

Állapitsuk meg, hogy az aláhúzott szerkezeteket helyesen használják-e a következő párbeszédeken. Ha igen, pipáljuk ki, ha pedig nem, húzzuk át és írjuk mellé a helyes megoldást.

A: I'm thirsty.
B: Shall I get ✔ ................................. you a drink?
A: Yes, please. I'm having ................................., a Coca-Cola.

A: I'm not doing ................................. anything tonight. How about you?
B: No, I'm free. Will we go ................................. to the cinema?
A: No, let's go ................................. to that new Italian restaurant.
B: All right. What time am I coming ................................. to collect you?

A: What have you brought this bag to work for? Will you go ................................. on a trip?
B: Yes, straight after work, I'm going ................................. to the station.
A: What time the train leaves .................................?
B: At half past six.
A: I'm going to give ................................. you a lift in my car if you like.
B: Thank you, but my husband's going to take ................................. me.

A: Shall we play ................................. tennis tomorrow?
B: OK. What time?
A: Well, tomorrow the park opens ................................. at nine o'clock.
B: No, I go ................................. out for a meal with Margot tonight, so I'll be ................................. home late. How about twelve o'clock? Is that all right?
A: Right. I meet ................................. you at the park at twelve.
Mark's going to run across Africa in January.

0  Mark's going to run across Africa in January.
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  

Ebben a táblázatban jövő heti utazásunk programját foglaltuk össze.

4-DAY TRIP TO MADRID
Tuesday: flight leaves at 18.00; check in at the Hotel Princess
Wednesday: visit the Prado Museum, morning; take a guided tour of the Royal Palace, afternoon
Thursday: have a special lunch at the hotel; see an opera at the Opera House, evening
Friday: leave Madrid at 11.00.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat folyamatos jelen és az alábbi igék használatával.

have  go  see  fly  stay  leave  take  visit

0  We're going to Madrid on a 4-day trip to Madrid next week.
1  to Madrid at 18.00 on Tuesday.
2  in the Hotel Princess.
3  the Prado Museum on Wednesday morning.
4  a guided tour of the Royal Palace on Wednesday afternoon.
5  a special lunch at the hotel on Thursday.
6  an opera at the Opera House on Thursday evening.
7  Madrid at 11.00 on Friday.
Stan és Peter arról beszélget, milyen lesz az élet ötven év múlva. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **will** és a megfelelő kifejezések használatával.

I'm sure/we not eat/normal food. people/not have to/go/about. people/get/sick? they/speak/the language! we/all/have electric cars there/not be/any shops.

**STAN:** I think **we'll all have electric cars**.............................. because there won't be enough petrol.

**PETER:** You're probably right. And we'll buy everything by computer because
1 .................................................................

**STAN:** I'm not sure about that. People like to go shopping.

**PETER:** Perhaps.

**STAN:** But people will learn languages by computer so that when they go abroad
2 .................................................................

**PETER:** No, I think there'll be virtual reality machines at home which will simulate holidays so
3 .................................................................

**STAN:** Are you sure? I don't think the technology will be ready.

**PETER:** What will hospitals be like? 4 .................................................................

**STAN:** I don't know.

**PETER:** 5 ................................................................. because we won't be able to produce enough. People will drink special vitamin drinks instead.

**STAN:** I hope you're wrong. Come on, let's go to the shops, buy some food, cook it, and plan our next holiday! Quick!

**Fordítsuk le a következő levelet.**

**Kedves Carol!**

Jövő héten rövid nyaralásra megyek. Kis szállodában fogok lakni a Wondermare-tő közelében. Természetesen nincs elég pénzem a nyaralásra, de vonattal fogok utazni – ez olcsóbb lesz, mint autóval – és biztos vagyok benne, hogy elfogadják majd a szállodában a hitelkártyámát. (De nem lesz elég pénzem vendéglőben étkezni.)

Hétfőn a cégnél fontos megbeszélés lesz, természetesen nem leszek itt. Gondolom, senkinek sem fogok hiányozni.

Szombaton jövök majd vissza. Azt hiszem, a vonat őt körül ér be. Majd akkor felhívjuk, Üdvözlettel,

Philip
When, as soon as, until stb. és a jelen idő

1 Nézzük meg a következő mondatokat:

*When the programme ends, I’ll do the washing-up.*
(= Amikor a műsor befejeződik, el fogok mosogatni.)

*Wait here until I get back.*
(= Várt itt, amíg vissza nem jövök.)

*I’ll phone you as soon as I arrive.*
(= Felhívjak, amint megérkezem.)

A *when, before, after, until* és az *as soon as* utáni jelen időt használunk akkor is, ha a jövőben bekövetkező eseményről beszélünk. Ezek után a szavak után nem használhatjuk a will segédigét. Helytelen a *When the programme will end* ... mondat.

Figyelem! Magyarul az *until* helyes fordítása általában: 'amíg nem' (pl.: amíg vissza nem jövök), az angolban az *until* kezdetű mellékmondatban az igét nem tagadjuk. Helytelen az *until I don’t come* mondat.

2 ➤ A *when* kezdetű mellékmondatban egyszerű jelent használunk, amikor arról beszélünk, ami a jövőben fog bekövetkezni:

*I’ll buy a magazine when I’m in the newsagent’s.*

*When you see her, give her my message.*

➤ Az *until* kezdetű mellékmondatban egyszerű jelent használunk, amikor azt mondjuk, hogy valami mostantól kezdve a jövőben valameddig tartani fog:

*We’ll sit outside until it gets dark.*
(= Addig fogunk kint ülni, amíg be nem süttetik.)

➤ Az *as soon as* jelentése időhatározói mellékmondatban: 'rögtön azután':

*They’ll start playing as soon as it stops raining.*
(= El játszani, amint eláll az eső.)

➤ A *before* jelentése időhatározói mellékmondatban: 'mielőtt', 'azt megelőzően':

*I’m going to finish this work before I go.*

3 A *when* után Present Perfectet (have done) akkor használunk, amikor arról beszélünk, aminek be kell fejeződni vagy ami be fog fejeződni egy másik cselekvés előtt:

*When I’ve found a job, I’ll look for a flat.*
(= Ha találtam állást, akkor majd keresek lakást.)

*When Simon has saved enough money, he’ll buy a car.*
(= Amikor Simon már eléggé pénzt takarított meg, vesz majd egy autót.)

4 After után használhatunk akár egyszerű jelent, akár Present Perfectet, nincs sok jelentésbeli különbség:

*After she takes/has taken the course, she’ll be a qualified teacher.*

**Gyakorlatok**

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a: *when, before, after, as soon as,* vagy *until* szavakkal. Egyes mondatoknál több megoldás is lehetséges.

0  I’ll stay in this job . . . . . . . . . . . . I find a better one.
1  I’m going to keep working . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . I finish this.
2  Remember to buy some stamps . . . . . . . . . . you’re in the post office.
3  . . . . . . . . . . . I speak to him on the phone tonight, I’ll ask him.
4  We can go for a meal . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . we’ve seen the film.
5  I’ll keep looking for it . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . I find it.
6  I’ll wait for them . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . it gets dark, and then I’ll leave.
7  Don’t forget to lock the door . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . you go out.
8  . . . . . . . . . . . . . I’ve found the information, I’ll phone you.
Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket egyszerű jelen vagy egyszerű jövő (will + to nélküli főnévi igenév) használatával.

1 A: Could you post this letter for me today, please?
   B: Yes, I'll do (do) it when I go (go) to the shops.

2 A: I might be late tonight.
   B: OK. I (wait) until you (arrive).

3 A: Have you decided what you’re going to do at the weekend yet?
   B: No, but I (phone) you as soon as I (know) what I’m going to do.

4 A: Have you done that homework yet?
   B: No, not yet. I (do) it when I (have) enough time.

5 A: I don’t want to go to that party tonight.
   B: Well, I’m sure you (enjoy) it when you (get) there.

6 A: Could you tell Tom to ring me, please?
   B: Yes, I (tell) him when I (see) him tomorrow.

7 A: Mr Jackson isn’t in at the moment.
   B: I see. Well, I (wait) until he (come) back.

8 A: Have you booked a hotel in London yet?
   B: No, but we (book) one before we (go) there.

OK. This is the plan. I (put) the rope and the bags in my van tomorrow afternoon. When everything (be) ready, I (come) to collect you three. Then we (drive) to that street behind the bank. As soon as it (get) dark, Frank and Tony (climb) onto the roof of the building. I (look) out for the police and Sam can stay in the car. Wait on the roof until you (see) my signal. When you (see) the signal, open the roof door with this key. As soon as you (get) inside, you (see) an alarm on the left. Disconnect it. When you (do) that, go down the stairs to the basement. No, wait! Before you (go) down, listen very carefully to see if there is anyone inside. Here are the keys to the strong room. When you (go) into the strong room, you (find) the lights on the right. As soon as you (put) all the money in the bags, turn the lights out. The bags (be) heavy, but don’t use the lift. When you (climb) the stairs back to the roof, signal to me once. As soon as I (see) your signal, I (help) you with the bags and the ropes. Everything (be) fine! And we (live) the rest of our lives in luxury!
A jövő kifejezése más szerkezetekkel

1 A Future Continuous (will be doing) a jövő adott pillanatában folyamatban lévő cselekvésre vagy eseményre utal:
   *If you get there at one o'clock, they'll be having lunch.* (= Ha egy órakor mész oda, éppen ebédelnii fognak.)
   *We'll be sailing across the Atlantic at this time tomorrow.* (= Holnap ilyenkor éppen az Atlanti-óceánon fogunk hajózni.)

2 A Future Perfect (will have done) a jövő adott pillanatáig befejezendő cselekvést vagy eseményt jelöl:
   *They'll have finished all the work by the end of the week.* (= A hét végére már minden munkával kész lesznek.)
   *If you don't get there before six o'clock, Tim will have left.* (= Ha nem érsz oda hat előtt, Tim addigra már nem lesz ott.)

3 A Future Perfect Continuous (will have been doing) a jövő adott pillanatáig előtt megkezdett, és az említtet időpontban még tartó cselekvésre vagy eseményre utal:
   *If we get there at ten o'clock, the others will have been waiting for an hour.* (= Ha tizkor érünk oda, addig a többiek már egy órája fognak várakozni.)
   *Next month we will have been saving for ten years.* (= Jövő hónapban lesz tíz éve, hogy takarékoskodunk.)

4 A fenti szerkezetekben kérdésnél és tagadásnál a will illetve won't segédigét használjuk (won't = will not):
   *What will you be doing at this time tomorrow?* They won't have finished all the work by the end of the week.
   *How long will they have been waiting for us?*

5 A múltban megfogalmazott jövőre vonatkozó szándéket a was/were going to szerkezettel fejezhetjük ki:
   *I had to leave before the end of the meeting because I was going to catch an early train.* (= Az értekezlet vége előtt kellett elmennem, mert egy korai vonatot akartam elérni.)
   *Anne couldn't accept the invitation because she was going to visit her mother.* (= Anne nem fogadhatta el a meghívást, mert az édesanyját akarta meglátogatni.)

   Ha ezt a szerkezetet használjuk, a mondatból nem derül ki, vajon a szándék megvalósult-e:
   *I was going to buy you a present, but I didn't have enough money.* (= Akartam venni ajándékot, de nem volt eléggé pénzem.)

   A was/were going to szerkezettel fejezünk ki olyan jövőre vonatkozó jóslatot is, amelyet tapasztalható tények valószínűsítenek:
   *The clouds were gathering; it was going to rain.*
   *My mother was in a bad mood; I could tell that she wasn't going to let me go to the disco.*

Gyakorlatok

A következő beszélgetés egy főiskola büféjében hangzott el. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat Future Perfect Continuous és a for előljárósó használatával.

0 In two months, I/live in this country/three years.
   In two months, I will have been living in this country for three years.

1 Next week I/come to this college/a year.
   Next week I will have been coming to this college for a year.

2 In a few days, I/go out with my girlfriend/six months.
   In a few days, I will have been going out with my girlfriend for six months.

3 On Friday, I/do my part-time job/two weeks.
   On Friday, I will have been doing my part-time job for two weeks.

4 In a week's time, my brother/live in my flat/six months.
   In a week's time, my brother will have been living in my flat for six months.

5 In a few minutes, we/sit here/three hours!
   In a few minutes, we will have been sitting here for three hours!
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az alábbi ígek és a Future Perfect szerkezet használatával.

\[\text{correct do double eat install \underline{leave} read sell wash}\]

1. If we don’t get there quickly, Bill \underline{will have left}.
2. I imagine they \underline{will have eaten} all the hard work before we arrive.
3. They \underline{will have finished} all the best food by the time we get to the party.
4. What a lot of visitors! I don’t think we \underline{will have cleaned up} all the dishes before suppertime.
5. The government insists that they \underline{will have increased} the number of hospital beds by the end of next year.
6. Our school \underline{will have installed} computers in all the classrooms by the end of the year.
7. The organizers say they \underline{will have distributed} all the tickets before the games start.
8. The teacher says that she \underline{will have completed} all the projects by next week.
9. I’m not sure that I \underline{will have returned} all the books on the reading list before the exam.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott ígek és a Future Perfect Continuous szerkezet használatával.

1. By this evening \underline{they will have been queueing} (queue) all day.
2. If the parcel doesn’t come tomorrow, we \underline{will have been waiting} (wait) two weeks for it.
3. At the end of the month Mary \underline{will have been working} (work) here for a year.
4. Next year our company will have \underline{been making} (make) leather shoes for 100 years.
5. My father wants a change. Next year he \underline{will have been doing} (do) the same job for five years.
6. When the ceremony is over, those soldiers \underline{will have been standing} (stand) in the same place for almost four hours.
7. It’s an endurance competition. At midnight all the couples that are still on the dance floor \underline{will have been dancing} (dance) non-stop for twenty-four hours.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a \underline{was/were going to} szerkezet és a megfelelő íge használatával.

\[\text{buy catch visit watch clean go have}\]

A: Why did they leave early?
B: Because they \underline{were going to catch} an early train.

1. A: When I saw your brothers, they were wearing overalls.
B: Yes, they \underline{were going to buy} out the garage.

2. A: Why was Sally cross?
B: Because she \underline{was going to buy} some concert tickets, but they had all gone.

3. A: I saw your sister walking to town this morning.
B: Yes, she \underline{was going to visit} in the car but my mother needed it.

4. A: There were a lot of people in the park this morning.
B: I imagine they \underline{were going to watch} the cricket match.

5. A: I saw your mother carrying some flowers this morning.
B: Yes, she \underline{was going to buy} granny. Granny’s in hospital.

6. A: I thought I told Peter to have his hair cut!
B: Well, he \underline{was going to have} it cut this morning, but the hairdresser’s was full.
A Keressük meg a képekhez tartozó kifejezéseket, és írjunk mondatokat a be going to szerkezet használatával.

- They/order a meal
- The film/start
- He/make an omelette
- They/not/get home quickly
- She/have a shower
- They/rob a bank
- The sun/come out
- She/not/talk to him

0. **They're going to rob a bank.**
1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 

B Egészítsük ki a következő beszélgetést. A nem megfelelő kifejezést húzzuk ki.

**PETE:** 0. *Are you having/Do you have* a holiday this summer, Molly?

**MOLLY:** Yes, 1. *I'm going/I go on a trip* to the US next week.

**PETE:** Oh. That sounds good. Which part?

**MOLLY:** 2. *I'm staying/I'll stay* in Dallas to begin with. Then 3. *I hire/I'm going to hire* a car and 4. *I'll drive/I'm going to drive* through some of the Southern States.

**PETE:** That sounds good. When 5. *does your flight leave/will your flight have left?*

**MOLLY:** At 6 o'clock on Friday. 6. *I'm going to get/I'll get* a taxi to the airport. 7. *The plane lands/The plane will land* in Dallas at about 11 o'clock their time.

**PETE:** When 8. *is your trip ending/does your trip end?*

**MOLLY:** On Friday the 21st. 9. *I arrive/I'll arrive* back here at 5.

**PETE:** Well, I could pick you up from the airport. 10. *I'm not doing/I won't do* anything that day. I'm sure.

**MOLLY:** Oh thanks. That would be great.
Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott szavak és 'll vagy a be going to szerkezet használatával.

1  A: It's rather hot in here, isn't it?
   B: Perhaps it is. Don't worry! I'll open (l/open) a window.
2  A: Is there anything good on TV tonight?
   B: Yes, 'Sing with the stars', my favourite programme. That's what (l/watch).
3  A: Come and have supper with us tonight, but come early because my husband’s told me that
   ..................... (he/go) to bed early.
   B: All right, ..................... (we/come) straight after work.
4  A: I've made a shopping list. Tomorrow ..................... (l/buy) some new clothes.
   B: What ..................... (you/get)?

   A: ..................... (l/spend) most of my money on some new shoes. There's a shop in town
   that imports them direct from America.
   B: That sounds interesting. I think ..................... (l/come) with you.
5  A: Hey, Peter phoned last night. ..................... (he/meet) me for a drink.
   B: Have you decided where to go? I suggest you try that new place called Dombies.
   A: OK, ..................... (we/try) there.
6  A: There's a good film on at the Classic cinema. ..................... (l/see) it tomorrow evening.
   Do you want to come?
   B: Tomorrow's a bit difficult. ..................... (l/paint) my bedroom. But when I've finished,
   ..................... (l/phone) you.

Írjunk mondatokat az adott szavakkal. Használjuk a will segédigét, ahol szükséges.

0  Tom/be/at the bus stop/when/you/get/there.

   Tom will be at the bus stop when you get there.
1  She/phone/me/as soon as/she/get/to the station.

2  When/you/meet/Philip/you/recognize/him easily. He has a red beard.

   ..................... He has a red beard.
3  The guide/wait/here/until you/come/back.

4  We/call/at granny's house/before/we/go/to the cinema.

5  Take the medicine. After/you/take/it/you/feel/a lot better.

   Take the medicine.
6  The play/start/as soon as/everybody/be/quiet.

7  It/be/very quiet/when your cousins/go/home.

8  As soon as/he/finish/work/Brian/phone/us.
Pam egy boltban dolgozik. Az alábbi táblázatban összeírta hétvégi teendőit, és amikor valaki felhívja, hogy töltsenek együtt egy kis időt, elfoglaltságára hivatkozva visszautasítja. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket folyamatos jelen vagy a be going to szerkezet használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Morning</th>
<th>Afternoon</th>
<th>Evening</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>work (9.00 – 12.00)</td>
<td>do my washing</td>
<td>supper with Ted (8.00)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>work (9.00 – 12.00)</td>
<td>make some cakes</td>
<td>play tennis with Sara (7.00)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>clean the flat</td>
<td>have a piano lesson with Bob (3.00)</td>
<td>go to bed early</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 ANNE: Can we meet on Friday morning?

PAM: No, I'm working on Friday morning.

ANNE: How about Friday afternoon?

PAM: No, I'm going to do my washing on Friday afternoon.

1 BILL: Can I see you on Friday evening?

PAM: No, I'm afraid.

BILL: What about Saturday afternoon?

PAM: Sorry.

2 DAVE: Could we see each other on Saturday evening?

PAM: No, because.

DAVE: How about Sunday morning?

PAM: No.

3 ELLEN: Is there any chance of seeing you on Sunday afternoon?

PAM: No.

ELLEN: What about Sunday evening?

PAM: Oh, no.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a Future Continuous és az alábbi igék használatával.

- fly
- get
- have
- lie
- work

0 At this time tomorrow, we'll be flying over the Atlantic.

1 If your cousins come after lunch, we... in the garden.

2 Don't get there too early. They... breakfast.

3 At this time next week, you... on a beach on the Costa Brava.

4 Tomorrow, when you're still in bed, I... my maths exam.

5 The invitation says eight o'clock. Don't arrive before eight because they... everything ready.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a Future Perfect és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

0 If we don't get there quickly, Bill... (leave)

1 The highway engineers say that they... (install) all the new traffic lights before the end of the year.

2 Next week, when my father runs in the marathon, he... (compete) in every local marathon for the past twenty years.

3 We must get to the concert early. Otherwise people... (take) all the good seats.

4 A: When... (you/finish) decorating the flat?
   B: I... (not/finish) until the end of the week.
Fejezzük be a mondatokat az adott szavak és a Future Perfect Continuous használatával.

Some of the people hoping to get tickets have been here since early this morning. By the time the ticket office opens / they / queue / for six hours.

By the time the ticket office opens they will have been queuing for six hours.

I’ve been teaching since I left university. By next summer / I / teach / for ten years.

By next summer ........................................................

I’m moving house. I’ll be tired this evening because I / lift / boxes / all day.

I’ll be tired this evening because ........................................................

My grandmother’s employer is going to give her a gold watch next year. By then / she / work / for the firm for forty years.

By then ........................................................................

The protest has lasted a long time. Tomorrow the protesters / sit / in front of the government building for two weeks.

Tomorrow the protesters ........................................................

Egészsítsük ki a következő telefonbeszélgetést a was / were going to szerkezet és a megadott igék használatával.

tell be have phone invite arrange call suggest

CAROL: I thought you 0 were going to phone me yesterday.

DENNIS: Sorry, I 1 ......................... you but I was too busy. I didn’t think I 2 ......................... such a busy week but I’ve got lots to do.

CAROL: I thought we 3 ......................... to meet one evening this week.

DENNIS: Yes, I 4 ......................... that we meet on Thursday. I thought I 5 ......................... free then but now I’ve found out that I won’t be.

CAROL: That’s OK. I 6 ......................... you that I can’t make Thursday. I 7 ......................... you to my place on Friday.

DENNIS: I think we’ll have to try next week instead!

Egészsítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megdott igék megfelelő alakjával.

This is my new plan for the future. I 0 was going to study (study) medicine at university, but I’ve changed my mind. I’ve decided that first I

1 ......................... (work) abroad for a year, singing and playing the guitar. Then I 2 ......................... (come) home and sing in pubs and clubs for two years. By that time I 3 ......................... (be) twenty-one and I 4 ......................... (perform) for three years, so lots of people

5 ......................... (hear) me. Then I 6 ......................... (study) at the new school of drama. It 7 ......................... (open) in three years’ time. If I do well at drama school, in ten years’ time I

8 ......................... (perform) on the London stage. Perhaps I

9 ......................... (be) the best actress of my generation. And if my plan doesn’t work, I 10 ......................... (study) medicine!
Szófajok (ige, főnév, melléknév stb.)

1 Figyeljük meg az alábbi mondatot:

Steven bought an expensive new car on Friday.
He drove it carefully to Newcastle.

2 Konkrét főnevek:
river cars sugar

Elvont főnevek:
love problems education

Élőlényeket jelentő konkrét főnevek:
woman dogs insect

Tulajdonnevek, földrajzi nevek:
Jane Harris Paris Oxford Street

Összetett főnevek:
bedroom footpath notebook

3 Cselekvést vagy létezést kifejező igék:
work play live meet stay see

4 Segédigék: be, have, do, will, can, may, must stb.

Az ige mellett gyakran segédigék álltak:
I have seen Peter. (have = elsődleges segédigék)
I must go now. (must = módbeli segédigék)

5 A melléknév (a mondatban jelző) megelőzi a főnevet (a jelzett szót):
We had a wonderful day.
A be, look, seem, feel igék után melléknév is állhat (főnév nélkül):
He’s hungry. She looks tired.

Figyelem! Az angolban a melléknévnek nincs többségi száma. Akkor sem, ha a mondat alanyában többszámú főnév: She is pretty. They are pretty. (= Ő csinos. Ők csinosak.)

6 A határozószó kiegészítő az ige jelentését:
She walked quickly. He sings well.

A legtöbb melléknévből -ly végződés hozzáadásával képezhetünk határozószót:
clearly slowly badly

7 A főnév helyett személyes névmás (I, you, he, she stb.) állhat a mondatban:
David has a new job. He is enjoying it.

Figyelem! Amikor magyarra fordítunk, gyakran felesleges a névmást kitenne, mert a magyarban a személyrag megmutatja, kíről beszélünk. A fenti mondatot helytelen lenne úgy fordítani, hogy Ő érzi, hogy Ő-évezi azt.)

8 Az előírászók (in, on, at stb.) segítségével helyet vagy időt jelölhetünk:

HEL: She’s at home. It’s in the box.
IDO: I’ll see you on Monday.
They went on holiday in June.

Gyakorlatok

A Az alábbi szavakat írjuk a táblázat megfelelő oszlopába.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Főnév</th>
<th>Ige</th>
<th>Segédigék</th>
<th>Melléknév</th>
<th>Határozószó</th>
<th>Névmás</th>
<th>Előírászó</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I had a wonderful holiday in Spain last year.
She lives in a large flat in New York.
Peter walked quickly to work.
We met them in Green Street on Friday.
You must come and visit me in Scotland.

My teacher spoke clearly but I didn’t understand her.
Mary and Jackie are studying Japanese at college.
I have lost my bag.
They bought a big, old house in the country.
She swims fast, and she can ski well too.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázatban szereplő szavakkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Főnév</th>
<th>Igé</th>
<th>Segédigé</th>
<th>Melléknév</th>
<th>Határozószó</th>
<th>Névmás</th>
<th>Előljárószó</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>pass</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>sick</td>
<td>easily</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>Do</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0  Paul has just started a new job.
1  You’ll the books the table.
2  bought some flowers and gave them to my wife.
3  played and lost the tennis.
4  haven’t seen your grandfather for a long time – you visit him at the weekend.
5  Don’t worry! You’ll the exam.
6  Listen! The money is the box.
7  We’re playing volleyball on you want to play?
8  I feel What did we eat the restaurant?

Képezzünk összetett szavakat az alábbiakból, és írjuk ezeket a magyar megfelelőik mellé. Minden szó csak egyszer használható.

ache ball bath book brush business coat end fish foot head house light motor news paper pot rail rain room scraper shell shop sky sun tea tooth way way week wife woman

0 autópálya | motorway | 8 újság
1 fürdőszoba | 9 felhőkarcoló
2 fogkéfe | 10 kagyló
3 labdarúgás | 11 hétvége
4 üzletasszony | 12 esőkabát
5 könyvesbolt | 13 vasút
6 fejfájás | 14 teáskanna
7 háziasszony | 15 napfény

A zárójelben megadott szavakat tegyük a megfelelő helyre a mondatban.

0 (on) I’m a flying b to c Mexico d Sunday. d
1 (interesting) I a saw b a c very d film e last f night.
2 (quickly) Go a or b you’ll c miss d the e train!
3 (can) I a see b the c mountains d from e my f window.
4 (it) She a sent b me c a d ticket e but f I g left h at i home.
5 (go) You a look b sick. You c must d and e see f a g doctor.
6 (in) I a stayed b there c for d a e week f June.
7 (big) Mary a gave b Christopher c a d present.
8 (road) There’s a snow b on c the d so e drive f carefully.
1 Az angol kijelentő mondat szörendje általában:
alany + állítмány + bővítмény

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>ÁLLÍTMÁNY (IGE)</th>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>will like</td>
<td>the food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>is watching</td>
<td>TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally</td>
<td>paints</td>
<td>portraits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Egyes igék után nem áll tárgy:
Steven has gone. Ann and Tom can swim.
The man shouted.

Egyes igék után mindig következik tárgy:
They want a drink.
Sara wrote the letter.

3 Főnév vagy melléknév a hozzá kapcsolódó létipével (be) együtt lehet a mondat állítмányába:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FŐNÉV</th>
<th>Melléknév</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pat is</td>
<td>a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary was</td>
<td>sad.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A look, seem (= valamilyenek látszik), feel (= valahogy érzi magát) (ld. 39. fejezet), get (= valamilyenén válék) (ld. 62. fejezet) típusú igék után is állhat melléknév (főnév nélkül): Mary looks sad. I'm getting hungry.

4 Ha létfő van a mondatban, a tagadás a be
ragozott alakja + not (vagy n't) szerkezetel történik:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>ÁLLÍTMÁNY</th>
<th>BŐVÍTMÉNY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pat is not</td>
<td>a doctor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary wasn't</td>
<td>sad.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ha segédő van a mondatban, a tagadás a
gyakorlati tagadási szerkezetel történik:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>SEGÉDŐ</th>
<th>FŐIGE</th>
<th>BŐVÍTMÉNY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peter isn't</td>
<td>watching TV.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter shouldn't</td>
<td>watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steven hasn't</td>
<td>gone home.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They can't</td>
<td>swim.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Ha a mondatban létige van (jelen időben
am/is/are, múlt időben was/were), kérdésben
a létfő az alany elé kerül:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTMÁNY</th>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>BŐVÍTMÉNY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Pat</td>
<td>a doctor?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why was</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>sad?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kérdésben a segédő is az állítмány előtt áll:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SEGÉDŐ</th>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>ÁLLÍTMÁNY</th>
<th>BŐVÍTMÉNY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>they like</td>
<td>the food?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where has</td>
<td>Steve</td>
<td>gone?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kérdésnél egyszerű jelenben a do(es),
egyszerű múltban pedig a did segédőt és a
főige to nélkül főnévi igenévi alakját használjuk:

Do they want a drink?
When did Sara write the letter?

6 Függő kérdésnél, mivel kijelentő mondatról
van szó, nem használjuk a do/did segédőt,
ez a szörend a szokásos alany + állítмány +
bővítмény sorrend szerint alakul. Az eredeti
kérdő mondat kérdőszavából kötősző lesz –
ha nincs ilyen (eldöntendő kérdésnél), akkor
az if (= vajon, hogy) kötőszőt használjuk:
I'm asking you if Pat is a doctor.
(=~ Azt kérelem, hogy Péter orvos-e.)
I don’t know if they will like the food. (= Nem
 tudom, vajon izlik-e majd nekik az étel.)
Tell me where Steven has gone.
(= Mondd meg nekem, hova ment Steven!) I wonder when Sara wrote the letter.
(= Szeretném tudni, Sara mikor írta a levelet.)
1. The boys are playing football.

2. Brilliant was the film.

3. Michael not has come.

4. The children are looking tired.

5. Jack does play the trombone?

6. What languages can speak Margaret?

7. I don't know where Jimmy lives.

8. When Alice went to Paris?

Alkossunk mondatokat a szavak sorba rendezésével.


2. (awake/children/not/the/were). The children were not awake.

3. (flowers/gone/have/all/the/where/?). Where have all the flowers gone?

4. (did/film/not/see/the/we). We did not see the film.

5. (do/boys/doing/those/what/?). What are those boys doing?

6. (do/elephants/live/where/?). Where do elephants live?

7. (can/piano/play/Terry/the). Terry can play the piano.

8. (chemistry/does/sister/study/your/?). Does your sister study chemistry?

Pipáljuk ki a hiánytalan mondatokat, ahol pedig kiegészítésre van szükség, használjuk a megadott szavakat. Néhány mondatnál több megoldás is lehetséges.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>are</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>has</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0. Mary looks happy.

1. Cats are good swimmers.

2. Where we sit?

3. The weather not been good.

4. When they send the letter?

5. My father made the supper.

6. What Philip watching?

7. What time did have lunch?

8. He will not say where he works.

9. Which films you seen?

10. Ask them how they feel.

Fordítsuk le a következő mini-párbeszédeket.

1. A: Megeszed a húst?
   B: Igen, de a tojást nem kérem.

2. A: A nővéred tanárnő?
   B: Nem, egy irodában dolgozik.

3. A: Hol lakik Tibor?
   B: Nem tudom, hol lakik.

4. A: Láttad Marikát?
   B: Nem, nem láttam.

5. A: Mit mondott az az ember?
   B: Egy szót sem szólt.
A kiegészítendő kérdés – kérdőszók

1 A where, when, why és how kérdőszó. A kiegészítendő kérdést kérdőszóval kezdjük, ezt követi a létfinek (am/is/are/was/were) vagy a segédjegy, utána pedig az alany áll (ld. 40. fejezet):

   ➢ Where (= hol)
   A where kérdőszó helyre kézde:
   Where is Mike? ~ He's at home.

   ➢ When (= mikor)
   A when időpontra:
   When do they play football? ~ On Fridays.

   ➢ Why (= miért)
   A why kérdőszó valaminek az okára kézde:
   Why is Mary at home? ~ Because it's a school holiday.

   ➢ How (= hogyan)
   A how a cselekvés módjára kézde:
   How does he travel to work? ~ He goes by train.
   A how kérdőszóval kézdezzük meg azt is, hogy valaki hogy van:
   How are you? ~ I'm fine.
   (További tudnivalók a how kérdőszóval kapcsolatban a 42. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 A who, what, which és whose szintén kérdőszó. A kiegészítendő kérdést kérdőszóval kezdjük, ezt követi a létfinek (am/is/are/was/were) vagy a segédjegy, utána pedig az alany áll. A who személyre kézde:

   ➢ Who (= ki, kit)
   Who is that man? (= Ki az a férfi?)
   Who do you like best? (= Kit szeretsz a legjobban?)

   ➢ What (= mi, mit), which (= melyik, melyiket)
   A what általában tárgyakra, fogalmakra vagy eseményekre vonatkozik:
   What are they doing? (= Mit csinálnak?)
   What's your name? (= Mi a neved?)
   What colour is your new coat? (= Milyen színű az új kabátod?)
   A which kérdőszót több lehetőség közül való választás esetén használjuk:
   There's Coke or beer. Which do you want? (= Melyiket kéréd?)
   Which name do you prefer: Emma or Sarah?

   ➢ Whose (= kie)
   A whose valaminek a tulajdonosára kézde:
   Whose is this book? (= Ki ez a könyv?)
   Whose book is this? (= Ez kinek a könyve?)

3 A who, what, which és whose rendszerint az alanyra kézde (további tudnivalók a 43. fejezetben):

   ➢ Who lives here? (= Ki lakik itt?) ~ Mary lives here.
   ➢ What is happening? (= Mi történik?) ~ Nothing is happening.
   ➢ Which team is winning? (= Melyik csapat áll nyerésre?) ~ Our team is winning.
   ➢ Whose photo hangs on the wall? (= Kinek a fényképe lóg a falon?) ~ My photo hangs on the wall.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavakból.

0 (you/where/live/do/?). Where do you live?

1 (do/get up/you/when/?) .................................................................

2 (she/does/where/come from/?) ......................................................

3 (leaving/they/are/when/?) ............................................................

4 (he/is/why/waiting/?) .................................................................

5 (are/you/how/?) ...........................................................................

6 (is/where/the town centre?) ...........................................................

7 (Paul/drive/so fast/does/why/?) ....................................................

8 (when/the film/does/start/) ..........................................................

9 (do/how/you/feel/?) .....................................................................

10 (is/running/she/why/?) ...............................................................

0. *Where do you live?* ~ I live in the next street.
1. ~ I arrived about an hour ago.
2. ~ I came with a friend of mine.
3. ~ That man over there is my boss.
4. ~ I got here by taxi.
5. ~ Brian invited me.
6. ~ I’d like to eat some of that cake.
7. ~ I prefer white wine.
8. ~ This is my glass.
9. ~ I’m leaving in about an hour.
10. ~ I’m going home by taxi.

Írjunk kérdéseket az alábbi válaszokhoz.

0. *When is the last train?*
   
   The last train is at half past eleven.
1. She lives near the market.
2. The boy in the photo is my cousin.
3. John’s going out because he wants some fresh air.
5. They are going to the cinema this evening.
6. They cut the paper with a machine.
7. It’s my sister’s bicycle.
8. Elephants live in Africa and India.
9. Sara goes to bed at about eleven o’clock.
10. They are playing cricket.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1. Itt egy alma és egy barack. Melyiket kéred?
2. Kié ez a kabát a széken?
3. Ki a kedvenc énekesnőd?
4. Melyik kép tetszik jobban, ez a modern, vagy az a régi?

1 A How long? (= mennyi ideig?) kezdők kérdés valamilyen cselekvés vagy esemény időtartamára kérdez:
   How long is the course? ~ Six weeks.
   How long does the journey take? ~ Three hours.
A from ... to vagy a from ... until (= -tól ...-ig) előjárószókat használjuk akkor, ha megadjuk a kezdés és a befejezés időpontját:
   She was a student from 1985 to 1990.
   Tomorrow I’m working from 8.30 until 6.30.

2 A How far? (= milyen messze?) két hely közötti távolságra kérdez. A from ... to előjárószókat használjuk:
   How far is it from Amsterdam to Paris? ~ 475 kilometres.
   How far are the shops from here? ~ Not far.

3 A How often? (= milyen gyakran?) a cselekvés gyakoriságára kérdez. A válaszban gyakran használjuk az every day, once a week stb. időhatárószókat:
   How often do the buses run? ~ Every hour.
   How often do you play squash? ~ Twice a week.

4 A How much? (= mennyi?, mennyit?) szerkezettel valaminek az árára kérdhetünk:
   How much is a return ticket to Brighton?
   How much did you pay for this car?

5 A How much? (= mennyi?) kezdők kérdés megszámlálhatatlan főnevekre kérdez. Ezeknek nincs többes számú alakjuk, és nem tehetünk előjük határozatlan névelőt (pl. bread, work, weather, money, music, meat, milk, cheese). (További információ a 70. fejezetben és a 360 oldalon a B táblázatban található.)
   How much bread is there in the cupboard?
   How much work did you do today?

Figyelem! A money (= pénz) az angolban megszámlálhatatlan főnév, nincs többes száma.
   How much money do you have?

6 A How many? (= hány?) megszámlálható dolgok mennyiségére kérdez:
   How many students are in your class? ~ Twenty.
   How many people went to the party? ~ Ten. (Lásd még a 78. fejezetet.)

7 A how kérdőszó melléknév (a mondatban jelző) vagy határozószó (a mondatban határozó) előtt áll.
   How tall is the church? (= Milyen magas a templom?) ~ It’s over 100 metres.
   How well does he play? (= Milyen jól játszik?) ~ He plays very well.
   How old are you? (= Hány éves vagy?) ~ I’m 19! I’m 19 years old. NEM I’m 19 years.

Figyelem: a How old szerkezettel bármilyen életkorra kérdhetünk, még egy gyerekére is: How old is he? ~ He is two months old.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk kérdéseket How long, How old, How often stb. használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igéiddel.

0 (How/you/stay/in New Zealand?)
   How long did you stay in New Zealand?
   ~ I stayed there for six months.

1 (How/he/read/a newspaper?)
   ~ He reads one every day.

2 (How/a single room/cost?)
   ~ It costs £50 a night.

3 (How/be/you when you went to live in Australia?)
   ~ I was 15 when I went there.

4 (How/exams/you/going to take?)
   ~ I’m going to take three exams.

5 (How/the course/last?)
   ~ It will last for two years.
Alkossunk kérdéseket a How old, How much, How many stb. szerkezettel és a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

0 A: .......................................................................................... (your husband/be)?
   B: He is 34. He'll be 35 next month.

1 A: ......................................................................................... (languages/you/speak)?
   B: I speak three – English, French and Chinese.

2 A: .................................................................................. (it/be/from here to the airport)?
   B: It's about 25 kilometres.

3 A: ....................................................................................... (the meal/cost)?
   B: I can't remember, but it wasn't very expensive.

4 A: .................................................................................... (you/stay/there)?
   B: I stayed there from June until October.

5 A: ....................................................................................... (the postman/come)?
   B: He comes twice a day.

Fordítsuk le a kérdéseket How kérdőszó és a megadott szavak segítségével.

big far fast long many much often old quickly

0 Milyen gyorsan mehet ez a vonat? ......................... can this train go?
1 Milyen gyakran mosol fogat? ............................ do you clean your teeth?
2 Hány éves a nővéred? ................................. is your sister?
3 Mekkora a szobád? ................................. is your bedroom?
4 Mennyibe kerül a Coca-Cola ebben a diszkóban? ....................... is a Coca-Cola in this disco?
5 Mennyi ideig laktál Bathban? ......................... have you lived in Bath?
6 Hányan jönnek? ................................. people are coming?
7 Milyen messzire van a park? .............................. is it to the park?
8 Milyen gyorsan tudod befejezni a munkát? ...................... can you finish the work?

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet Sarah kérdéseivel. Minden kérdést egy How kezdetű kérdőszóval kezdjünk.

0 SARAH: ................................................................. (hours a week/you/work)
   EMMA: I work 40 hours a week.

1 SARAH: .................................................................................. (you/travel abroad)
   EMMA: I travel abroad about six times a year.

2 SARAH: .................................................................................. (you/work for that company)
   EMMA: I’ve been working for that company for two years.

3 SARAH: .................................................................................. (be/your office/your home)
   EMMA: It’s 5 kilometres to my office from my home.

4 SARAH: .................................................................................. (you/earn)
   EMMA: I earn about 40,000 a year.

5 SARAH: .................................................................................. (people/work in your department)
   EMMA: 55 people work in my department.

6 SARAH: .................................................................................. (successful/be/your company)
   EMMA: My company is very successful.
A kiegészítendő kérdés – alanyra és tárgyra vonatkozó kérdések

1. Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>Who told you? (= Ki mondta neked?)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MARY</td>
<td>James told me. (= James.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ez a kérdés az alanyra vonatkozik.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
<th>Who did you see? (= Kit láttál?)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MARY</td>
<td>I saw Bill. (= Billt.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ez a kérdés a tárgyra vonatkozik.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**A Who told you? kérdésben a who a mondat alanya. (= Ki?)**
Egy másik példa:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>Who wrote Hamlet?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MARY</td>
<td>Shakespeare wrote Hamlet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amikor a who kérdőszóval az alanyra kérdézünk, a kérdő mondat szórendje megegyezik az állító mondatéval:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>Who is going to come with me?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Ki jön velem?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Who lives in that old house?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Ki lakik abban a régi házban?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Who wants some more coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Ki kér még kávé?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**A Who did you see? mondatban a who a mondat tárgya. (= Kit?)**
Egy másik példa:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
<th>Who did you visit last night?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MARY</td>
<td>I visited a friend of mine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amikor a who kérdőszó a tárgyra kérd, a be, do, have stb. segédje az alany előtt áll a kérdő mondatban:

| TÁRGY | Who are you going to invite? |
|-------|=============================|
|       | (= Kit fogsz meghívni?)      |
|       | Who did Laura ask for help?  |
|       | (= Kit kért meg Laura, hogy segítsen?) |
|       | Who have you visited?        |
|       | (= Kit látogattál meg?)      |

3. Hasonlítsuk össze a what kérdőszóval kezdődő, alanyra illetve tárgyra vonatkozó kérdéseket:

**ALANY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What is in this dish?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(= Mi van ebben az edényben?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TÁRGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What did you buy at the shops?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(= Mit vásároltál?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figyelem! A who és what kezdetű kérdésben, ha a kérdés az alanyra vonatkozik, soha nincs do segédje: Who likes ice cream? What makes this noise?

Ha a who és a what a tárgyra vonatkozik, kell a do segédje: Who do you love? (= Te kit szeretsz?) What do you want? (= Mit akarsz?)

---

**Gyakorlatok**

**A.** Kérdezzünk az aláhúzott mondatrészekre Who vagy What kérdőszóval.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0 (Eric met somebody.)</th>
<th>Who did Eric meet?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 (Somebody ate the last piece of cake.)</td>
<td>Who ate the last piece of cake?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (Somebody wants some more coffee.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (Something happened at the end of the story.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (Somebody is going to pay the bill.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (He had something for breakfast.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (Their letter said something.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 (Somebody knows the answer to my question.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (They saw something.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 (She is phoning somebody.)</td>
<td>____________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alkossunk kérdéseket Who vagy What kérdőszóval a zárójelben megadott információk segítségével.

Who were you talking to on the phone? ~ (I was talking to) Elizabeth (on the phone).

What was the result of the game? ~ (The result of the game was) 2–0 to Italy.

~ Anita and Frank (went on the trip).

~ I’m not sure (what’s happening in this film).

~ (I’m going to phone) Jane.

~ (I watched) that new comedy programme (on TV last night).

~ John (sent these flowers).

~ (I bought) a book (in that shop).

Olvassuk el a szöveget, majd tegyünk fel kérdéseket a mondatokra a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

Two days ago Robert took his driving test. He failed it. Afterwards he met his friend Philip. He told Philip that he had failed his test. Then he said, ‘Don’t tell anyone. It’s a secret.’ Philip said, ‘OK, I won’t tell anyone.’

Later that day, Philip met Linda for coffee and he said, ‘Robert failed his driving test.’ Linda laughed. ‘Poor Robert,’ she said.

0 (What/Robert/do/two days ago?)

What did Robert do two days ago? ~ He took his driving test.

1 (What/happen?)

~ He failed it.

2 (Who/take/his/driving test?)

~ Robert.

3 (What/Robert/fail?)

~ His driving test.

4 (What/Robert/say/to Philip?)

~ He said, ‘Don’t tell anyone.’

5 (Who/meet/Linda/for coffee?)

~ Philip.

Egészszüksük ki a kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavakkal segítségével.

0 (Oswald, kill) Who killed Kennedy? ~ He killed President Kennedy.

0 (Kennedy, kill) Who killed Kennedy? ~ Oswald killed Kennedy.

1 (the Nobel Prize, win) Who won the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1909? ~ Marconi.

2 (Marconi, invent) What did Marconi invent? ~ Short-wave radio.


5 (Hiroshima, destroy) What was destroyed in Hiroshima? ~ An atomic bomb.


7 (France, beat) Who beat Italy in the European Cup Final? ~ France beat Italy.
Milyen? – What ... like? (What's she like?)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi kérdést és választ:
   A: What’s Mark like?
   B: He’s very good-looking and he’s very kind, but he’s not very clever.

A What ... like? kérdés valakihez a a külsőjére (tall, short, pretty stb.) vagy a természetére (interesting, boring, friendly, unfriendly stb.) vonatkozik.

A What ... like? kérdés helyre, könyvire, filmre vagy eseményre is vonatkozhat (pl. bully, futballmeccs stb.):
   A: What’s Rio de Janeiro like?
   B: Well, the beaches are wonderful but the traffic is awful.

   A: What’s Spielberg’s latest film like?
   B: It’s excellent.

2 A look like külső tulajdonságra utal:
   A: What does Julie look like?
   B: She’s tall with brown hair.

A What ... like? kérdés valami izére, hangjára tapintására, vagy szagára is vonatkozhat:
   A: What does that taste like? (= Milyen íze van?)
   B: It tastes like cheese. (= Mint a sajtnak.)

   A: What is this material?
   B: I don’t know. It looks like wool but it feels like cotton. (= Nem tudom, ráncézésre gyapjú, de a tapintása olyan, mint a pamuté.)

A Who ... like jelentése: ’kire hasonlít’:
   A: Who’s Julie like – her father or her mother?
   B: She’s like her mother.

   Rio de Janeiro is like Buenos Aires.

   Your house is not like mine. It’s much bigger.

 (= A te házad nem olyan, mint az enyém. A tiéd sokkal nagyobb.)

Figyeljük meg a fenti kérdések szórendjét! A who áll a mondat elején, azt követi a létige, utána következik az alany, és a kérdést a like zárja. A válaszban a szórend: alany, létige, like, majd annak a megnevezése, akire valaki/valami hasonlít.

4 A What’s she like mondatban a like előljárósó, nem azonos a like igével:
   A: What music does Julie like? (= Julie milyen zenét szereti?)
   B: She likes rock music.

5 Ha valaki egészségéről vagy hogyélétérol érdeklődünk, rendszerint a How (nem pedig a What ...) kérdőszót használjuk:
   A: How’s your brother today?
   B: He feels much better.

   A: How is your boss today?
   B: He’s in a good mood!

Gyakorlatok

A Tegyünk fel kérdéseket a mondatokra a zárójelben megadott szavak és az is/are like vagy a look like szerkezet segítségével. Néhány mondatnál két megoldás is lehetséges.

0 (What/Sally/like)
   A: What is Sally like?
   ~ B: She’s clever, but she’s a bit boring.

0 (What/Jane/like)
   A: What does Jane look like?
   ~ B: She’s quite short and has dark hair.

1 (What/Peter/like)
   A: .................................................................
   ~ B: He’s not a very interesting person.

2 (What/Anna’s parents/like)
   A: .................................................................
   ~ B: They’re very generous.

3 (What/Tom/like)
   A: .................................................................
   ~ B: He’s very tall, and he has blond hair.

4 (What/Eva/like)
   A: .................................................................
   ~ B: She’s tall and strong.

5 (What/Bob and Tom/like)
   A: .................................................................
   ~ B: They’re very amusing.
6 (What/Susan/like)
   A: ....................................................... ~ B: She’s tall and slim, and she wears glasses.

B Olvassuk el a következő leírásokat.

Kiwis are a round, brown fruit with a rough skin. They have almost no smell, but they are sweet, with a flavour similar to strawberries.

A double bass is a musical instrument. It is the largest member of the violin family. It has a deep sound.

Írjunk kérdést a mondatokra a **look/sound/taste/smell/feel + like** szerkezettel.

0 **What do kiwis look like?** ~ They’re round and brown.
1 ............................................................. ~ It has a deep sound.
2 ............................................................. ~ They don’t really have a smell.
3 ............................................................. ~ They have a flavour like strawberries.
4 ............................................................. ~ Like a very big violin.
5 ............................................................. ~ They have a rough skin.

C Tegyünk fel kérdéseket a mondatokra a **like** előljárószó vagy a **like** ige és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

0 (What music/you/like)
   A: **What music do you like?** .......................... ~ B: I like rock music.

0 (What/Julie/like)
   A: **What is Julie like?** ............................... ~ B: She is very amusing.

1 (Who/your sister/like)
   A: ............................................................. ~ B: She likes a boy in her class.

2 (What/Paul’s brothers/like)
   A: ............................................................. ~ B: They think they’re clever, but I don’t.

3 (What/Jane/like/for breakfast)
   A: ............................................................. ~ B: She likes toast and marmalade.

4 (Who/you/like)
   A: ............................................................. ~ B: I’m like my mother.

5 (What/Mary’s husband/like)
   A: ............................................................. ~ B: He is rather boring. He’s not like her.

6 (What sports/you/like)
   A: ............................................................. ~ B: I like swimming and football.

D Írjunk kérdéseket a **What ... like?** szerkezet (amely állandó tulajdonságra kérdés) vagy a **How ...?** kérdőszó (amely ideiglenes helyzetre kérdés) és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

0 (be/Atlanta) **What is Atlanta like?** ~ It’s a very modern city.
0 (be/Mike/today) **How is Mike today?** .......................... ~ He feels a lot better.
1 (be/John’s flat) ............................................................. ~ It’s very big, and it has a wonderful view.
2 (be/your boss/in the mornings) ............................................................. ~ He is tired and cross.

3 (be/a squash racket) ............................................................. ~ It’s similar to a tennis racket, but lighter.
4 (be/your sister) ............................................................. ~ She’s very well, thank you.
5 (be/Portugal) ............................................................. ~ It’s very interesting. There’s lots to see.
A  Írjunk kérdéseket a mondatokhoz a megadott kérdőszók és a zárójelben lévő szavak használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>when</th>
<th>what (x2)</th>
<th>which</th>
<th>which of (x2)</th>
<th>who (x2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 (... leave/school) ...........................................? ~ I left school last year.
1 (... these books/Sally/read) ......................................? ~ She is reading all of them.
2 (... Jane/have/for breakfast) .....................................? ~ She has toast and coffee.
3 (... you/see/at the station) ......................................? ~ I saw John.
4 (... Mary/prefer,/tea or coffee) ..................................? ~ She prefers tea.
5 (... you/studying/at university) ..................................? ~ I’m studying chemistry.
6 (... these two books/you/buy) ....................................? ~ I’m buying both of them.
7 (... they/invite/to their party) ..................................? ~ They’re inviting all their friends.


LUKE: So, where shall we go? (we/shall/go)
CLARE: Let’s go to Ireland.
LUKE: OK and (we/be going to/go)?
CLARE: In the last two weeks of June.
LUKE: Fine. (we/need to do/next)?
CLARE: We need to book a hotel in Dublin.
LUKE: OK. (hotel/you/prefer)?
CLARE: I prefer this one, in this brochure, The Gresham.
LUKE: (you/choose/that one)?
CLARE: I’ve chosen it because it looks nice and it’s in the centre.
LUKE: (be going to/make/the booking)?
CLARE: I’ll do it. I’ve got all the details.

C Keressük meg a kérdésekhez tartozó választ.

0 Who’s the baby like? a All kinds, but especially Indian.
1 What’s their house like? b He’s quite tall, with dark hair.
2 What kind of food do you like? c Small, but full of famous buildings.
3 What’s Helen like? d Exactly like his father.
4 What does Peter look like? e Very clever and amusing.
5 What does that cheese taste like? f She’s like her mother.
6 What’s Cambridge like? g Modern, with a nice little garden.
7 Who’s Pauline like? h It’s very strong.
Tegyünk fel kérdéseke az aláhúzott mondatrészekre.

0 Bill phoned Sally last Saturday.

Who did Bill phone last Saturday?

0 When did Bill phone Sally?

Jack is going to Portsmouth by car.

Jill’s father is much better.

Ann bought the small picture because she didn’t like the bigger ones.

Mary’s daughter is working in America.

Mary and Tom brought the drinks.

Susan állásinterjún vesz részt egy nemzetközi cégnél, amely a fejlődő országok támogatásával foglalkozik. Fordítsuk le az ügyvezető kérdéseit.

0 MANAGER: (Mi a teljes neve?) What is your full name?

SUSAN: Susan Elizabeth Branson.

1 MANAGER: (Honnann értesült erről az állásról?) I saw an advertisement in the paper.

SUSAN: The Guardian.

2 MANAGER: (Melyik újságban?)

SUSAN: Almost every day.

3 MANAGER: (Milyen gyakran olvassa a Guardian?)

SUSAN: In 1999. And then I went to university.

5 MANAGER: (Mit tanult az egyetemen?)

SUSAN: Geography and modern languages.

6 MANAGER: (Miért szeretne nálunk dolgozni?)

SUSAN: Because I want to help poor people and because I like visiting other countries.

7 MANAGER: (Hány országban járt már?)

SUSAN: Oh, several. Five or six in Europe and also Egypt and Morocco.

MANAGER: I see. Well, now you have to do a writing test. Can you come this way please?
Tegyünk fel kérdéseket **Where, How much, When** stb. kérdőszóval. Használjuk a zárójelben megadott információt.

0. **Where do Tom and Jean live?** ~ (Tom and Jean live) in **Plymouth**.
1. **How much butter did you buy?** ~ (I bought) **half a kilo** (of butter).
2. ~ (Lucy is going to come) **tomorrow**.
3. ~ (They borrowed) **Maria’s** (car).
4. ~ (They lived here) for **four years**.
5. ~ (Michael has got) **fifty** (compact discs).
6. ~ (Pam goes to work) by **bus**.
7. ~ (They stopped working) because the lights went out.
8. ~ (The coast is) **five miles** (from here).

Írjunk kérdéseket az adott válaszokhoz a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével.

0. (Tina Taylor interviewed the winner.)
   a. Who did Tina Taylor interview? ~ The winner.
   b. Who interviewed the winner? ~ Tina Taylor.

1. (Jack is going to help Susan.)
   a. Who ~ He’s going to help Susan.
   b. Who ~ Jack.

2. (John won three prizes.)
   a. How many ~ Three.
   b. Who ~ John.

3. (There are three machines; the machine in the corner makes the boxes.)
   a. Which ~ The one in the corner.
   b. What ~ Boxes.

Tegyünk fel két kérdést mindegyik helyzetben a zárójelben megadott ige segítségével.

0. There is an umbrella here. I don’t know who it belongs to. *(leave)*
   a. **Whose umbrella is this?**
   b. **Who’s left an umbrella here?**

1. I found a purse. I don’t know who it belongs to. *(lose)*
   a. Whose ~
   b. Who’s ~

2. There is a car parked in my space! *(park)*
   a. Whose ~
   b. Who’s ~

3. I found a ten pound note on the floor. *(drop)*
   a. Whose ~
   b. Who’s ~
1. A példa alapján írjunk két-két kérdést és választ a képeken látható diákokkal kapcsolatban a megadott szavak segítségével. Minden szót használjunk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>football</th>
<th>swimming</th>
<th>short</th>
<th>long</th>
<th>dark</th>
<th>blonde</th>
<th>muscular</th>
<th>tennis</th>
<th>small</th>
<th>slim</th>
<th>basketball</th>
<th>athletic</th>
<th>tall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1) **What does Carol look like?**
   *She's small and slim, and she has long blonde hair.*

2) **What sport does she like?**
   *She likes tennis.*

---


**MR JONES:** Milyen a ház?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Szép régi ház. Azt hiszem, tetszeni fog önöknek.
**MR JONES:** Mennyire régi?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Körülbélül százéves.
**MR JONES:** Hol van?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Egy kisvárosban York mellett.
**MR JONES:** Ki lakik most ott?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Mr Ryan, a ház tulajdonosa.
**MR JONES:** Miért akarja eladni?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Mert Manchesterbe költözik. Ott talált munkát.
**MR JONES:** Mikor költözik?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Hamarosan.
**MR JONES:** Mikor nézhetjük meg a házat?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Bármikor. Máris felhívom.
**MRS JONES:** Várjon egy percet! Még tudnom kell néhány dolgot. Hány hálószoba van?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Két hálószoba van. Mindkettő megéletaltsen nagy.
**MRS JONES:** Milyen messze van a legközelebbi bolt?
**ÜGYNÖK:** Egy kis bolt és a bank egészen közel van, de autóbuszra kell szállni, ha a legközelebbi bevásárlóközpontba akarnak menni.
**MRS JONES:** Rendben. Menjünk, nézzük meg. Még egy kérdés. Mennyibe kerül?
Rövid válasz – short answers (Yes, I am; Yes, I do)

1 Nézzük meg a következő példákat:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>RÖVID VÁLASZ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is he at work?</td>
<td>~ Yes, he is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I come?</td>
<td>~ No, you can’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like it?</td>
<td>~ Yes, I do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does she live here?</td>
<td>~ No, she doesn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A rövid válasz azt jelenti, hogy a válaszban nem ismétéljük meg az egész kérdést.

Is she sick? ~ Yes, she is sick. (Ez teljes válasz, itt a kérdés minden szavát megismételtük)
~ Yes, she is. (rövid válasz)

Rövid választ (igen/nem) elődöntő kérdésre adhatunk:

Are you coming? ~ Yes, I am.  ~ No, I’m not.

2 A rövid válaszban nem ismétéljük meg a kérdőmondatban szereplő főigét:

Did he go to Paris? ~ Yes, he did.  NEM: Yes, he did not go.

Is she waiting? ~ Yes, she is waiting.

Ha a kérdésben a be létezne szerepel, a rövid válaszban is ezt használjuk:

Are you tired? ~ Yes, I am.
Is he hungry? ~ Yes, he is.
Is there a café near here? ~ Yes, there is.
Were there enough sandwiches? ~ Yes, there were.

Figyelem! A magyar nyelvben a rövid válasz lehet egyszerűen: ’Igen’. Az angolban ennyire rövid választ adni ugyanis, ott a rövid válaszban segédigét és személyes névmást is használunk. Are you tired? ~ Yes, I am. (NEM: Yes.)

Tagadó válasznál a segédigéhez a not (n’t) tagadászó járul:

Will they win? ~ No, they won’t.

Did Paul come? ~ No, he didn’t.

Are you cold? ~ No, I’m not.

Az igenlő rövid válaszban nem használjuk az összevont alakokat:

Are you tired? ~ Yes, I am. (NEM: Yes, I’m.

Is he happy? ~ Yes, he is. (NEM: Yes, he’s.)

3 Rövid válasszal fejezhetjük ki egyetértésünket vagy ellenéreményünket egy elhangzott megállapítással kapcsolatban:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KIJELENTÉS</th>
<th>VÁLASZ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He’s working hard.</td>
<td>~ Yes, he is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Keményen dolgozik.)</td>
<td>(= Hált, hogy/Bizony.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s at work.</td>
<td>~ No, she isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= A munkahelyén van.)</td>
<td>(= Déshogy van.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She loves films.</td>
<td>~ Yes, she does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Szereti a filmet.)</td>
<td>(= Így van.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ha az ige az állítást tartalmazó mondatban egyszerű jelenben van, a do/does segédigét, ha egyszerű múltban, akkor a did segédigét használjuk a rövid válaszban:

She loves films. ~ Yes, she does.

He liked the book. ~ Yes, he did.

4 Írásban a Yes vagy No után vesszőt teszünk:

He lives in London. ~ No, he doesn’t.

Gyakorlatok

A Húzzuk át a rövid válaszban felesleges részt, és az utolsó szükséges szó után tegyük pontot.

0 Can you come tonight? ~ Yes, I can. come tonight.
1 Will you see Ted tomorrow? ~ Yes, I will see Ted tomorrow.
2 Do you have toast for breakfast? ~ No, I don’t have toast for breakfast.
3 Do you drive to work? ~ Yes, I do drive to work.
4 Did she come yesterday? ~ No, she didn’t come yesterday.
5 Were you tired after the game? ~ Yes, I was tired after the game.
6 Can she sing well? ~ No, she can’t sing well.
7 Did Tom have a holiday? ~ Yes, he did have a holiday.
8 Is she studying French?  ~ Yes, she is studying French.
9 Do you play basketball?  ~ No, I don’t play basketball.
10 Are you thirsty?  ~ No, I’m not thirsty.

B Keressük meg a kérdésekhez tartozó választ.

| Yes, she did. | No, he doesn’t. | No, she wasn’t. | Yes, he did. | Yes, I will. | Yes, they did. | Yes, I do. | No, they aren’t. | No, I can’t.
|---------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|

0 Did they all leave?  ~ Yes, they did.
1 Does Steve work hard?  ~
2 Do you like this music?  ~
3 Are they listening?  ~
4 Did she enjoy her holiday?  ~
5 Was Mary at the concert?  ~
6 Will you phone this weekend?  ~
7 Can you play the guitar?  ~
8 Did he go to bed?  ~

C Adjunk igénlő és tagadó választ a kérdésekre.

0 Was the film good?  ~ Yes, it was.
                     ~ No, it wasn’t.
1 Does he enjoy French food?  ~ Yes,
                              ~ No,
2 Can Billy swim?  ~ Yes,
                               ~ No,
3 Will they return tonight?  ~ Yes,
                               ~ No,
4 Do you want to buy that shirt?  ~ Yes,
                                   ~ No,
5 Are they coming in Mike’s car?  ~ Yes,
                                   ~
6 Did you ask Sally to come?  ~
                            ~

D Egészítsük ki a következő kérdésekre adott rövid válaszokat.

0 Does everyone have to vote in Britain?  No, they don’t.
1 Is the age for voting 18?  Yes,  
2 Does the Prime Minister live at 10 Downing Street?  Yes,  
3 Are there two main political parties in Britain?  Yes,  
4 Do general elections happen every three years?  No,  
5 Was there a female Prime Minister in 1980?  Yes,  
6 Are the Houses of Parliament in Manchester?  No,  
7 Does the Queen open Parliament?  Yes,  
8 Do people in Britain care about politics?  Yes,
1 Az utókerdés kijelentő mondatban kapcsolt rövid kérdés (pl. isn’t it, haven’t we?):
HENRY: We’ve met before, haven’t we? (= Már találkoztunk, ugye?)
JEFF: Yes, we have.

2 Figyéljük meg a következő párbeszéd részletet:
ANNA: Sandra is Swiss. (= Sandra svájci.)
DAMID: No, she’s French, isn’t she? (= Nem, francia. Vagy nem? – En azt hittem. Lehet, hogy tévedek?)

Amikor az utókerdés valóságos kérdés, a mondat végén emelkedő hanglejtést használunk.
Viszont ha az utókerdés nem igazi kérdés, ereszkedő hanglejtést használunk:

That was a boring programme, wasn’t it?
(= Unalmas músort volt, ugye?)

3 Az utókerdésben használt segédigé a főmondatban szereplő igétől függ:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IGE</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>UTÓKÉRDÉS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be:</td>
<td>You’re French, aren’t you?</td>
<td>(A be megfelelő alakja: are – aren’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ige:</td>
<td>He plays golf, doesn’t he?</td>
<td>(A do segédigé megfelelő alakja: plays – doesn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>segédige:</td>
<td>It has arrived, hasn’t it?</td>
<td>(A segédigé megfelelő alakja: has – hasn’t)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Állító mondatnál az utókerdésben a tagadó alakot használjuk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTÓ ALAK</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>TAGADÓ ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m right,</td>
<td>aren’t I?</td>
<td>(Figyelem! A be egyes szám első személyben NEM amm’t, HANEM aren’t.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’re 18,</td>
<td>aren’t you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They’re getting tired,</td>
<td>aren’t they?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They were friendly,</td>
<td>weren’t they?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He lives in France</td>
<td>doesn’t he?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You speak Spanish,</td>
<td>don’t you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You passed your exams,</td>
<td>didn’t you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She has left,</td>
<td>hasn’t she?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can drive,</td>
<td>can’t you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bus will come soon,</td>
<td>won’t it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is enough food,</td>
<td>isn’t there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Tagadó mondatnál az utókerdésben állító igé alakot használunk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÓ ALAK</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>ÁLLÍTÓ ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It isn’t very cheap,</td>
<td>is it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We aren’t going to be late,</td>
<td>are we?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She wasn’t angry,</td>
<td>was she?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You don’t like this,</td>
<td>do you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She didn’t win,</td>
<td>did she?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She hasn’t visited Ireland,</td>
<td>has she?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She can’t drive,</td>
<td>can she?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It won’t rain today,</td>
<td>will it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There aren’t many chairs,</td>
<td>are there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gyakorlatok

A Fejezzük be a mondatokat a megfelelő utókerdéssel.

aren’t you? can you? didn’t you? does it? don’t you? have we? is it? is there? isn’t it? does it? don’t you? have we? is it? is there? isn’t it?

JO: We haven’t met before, have we?
TIM: No, I’ve just arrived.
JO: Ah, yes. You and your friends came last week.
TIM: Well, two weeks ago actually.
JO: You come from Australia.
TIM: Yes, from Sydney. And you’re from Scotland.
JO: Yes, that’s right. Tell me about Sydney. It’s very hot there.  

TIM: Most of the time, but not always.

JO: But it never gets very cold. 

TIM: Well, no, not as cold as northern Europe, for example.

JO: So you can’t do winter sports then. 

TIM: No, but we do a lot of surfing. There isn’t anywhere to surf here. 

JO: That’s true. But nowhere is perfect.

B Fejezzük be a mondatokat utókérđéssel.

0 The programme starts at seven o’clock, doesn’t it? ~ Yes, that’s right.
1 I can use this ticket on any bus, can I? ~ Yes, you can.
2 The bill won’t be very high, will it? ~ No, I don’t think so.
3 He wasn’t very polite, was he? ~ No, he wasn’t.
4 I didn’t make a mistake, did I? ~ No, you didn’t.
5 That was a lovely meal, wasn’t it? ~ Yes, it was delicious.
6 They left last week, didn’t they? ~ Yes, that’s right.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet utókérđésekkel.

MARTHA: I’m going to Helsinki tomorrow.

CHARLES: That’s in Finland.

MARTHA: Yes, it’s the capital.

CHARLES: You’ve been there before.

MARTHA: Yes, two years ago.

CHARLES: But you can’t speak Finnish.

MARTHA: No, I can’t.

CHARLES: But a lot of Finnish people speak English.

MARTHA: Yes.

CHARLES: Well, I’ll see you before you leave.

MARTHA: Yes, I’ll see you tonight.

D Fejezzük be a megkezdett mondatokat a válaszok alapján, utókérđés használatával.

0 A: She. 

B: Yes, she comes from Hungary.

1 A: You can. 

B: Yes, I can speak French very well.

2 A: You haven’t. 

B: No, I haven’t heard this story.

3 A: You went. 

B: Yes, I went to Frank’s party.

4 A: It isn’t. 

B: No, it isn’t very far from here.

5 A: She won’t. 

B: No, she won’t be angry.
Én is, én sem (so am I, I am too; neither am I, I'm not either)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

I'm tired. So am I.

So am I. (= Én is.)

2 További példák:

He was very angry. (= Nagyon mérgez volt.)
~ So was I. (= Én is.)

My flat's quite small. (= A lakásom elég kicsi.)
~ So is mine. (= Az enyém is.)

They were waiting. ~ So was she.

I'm going to have tea. ~ So am I.

Ann has finished her work and so has Mary.

They've been waiting. ~ So has she.

I work in an office. ~ So do I.

I enjoyed the film. ~ So did I.

Philip will pass the exam and so will you.

(= Philip át fog menni a vizsgán, és te is.)

He can drive. ~ So can she.

Figyeljük meg:

➢ állító mondat esetén az állításhoz fűzőtt megjegyzésben a so szót használjuk;

➢ az állításban használt ige vagy igei szerkezet határozza meg, hogy milyen segédigé áll a so után.

So am I helyett mondhatjuk azt is, hogy I am too, a So is she helyett She is too – mindkét változat ugyanazt jelenti.

3 További példák:

I'm tired. ~ I am too.

We've got a small flat. ~ We have too.

I work in an office. ~ I do too.

Bill enjoyed the film and I did too.

He can drive. ~ She can too.

4 Tagadó mondat után a Neither am I/Nor am I (= Én sem.) tipusú szerkezetet használjuk:

I'm not tired. ~ Neither am I. (= Nem vagyok fáradt. ~ Én sem.)

I haven't seen that film. ~ Neither have I.

I don't like this place. ~ Neither do I.

I didn't see that play. ~ Neither did I.

Tom's sister can't drive and neither can he.

(= Tom növőre nem tud vezetni, és maga Tom sem.)

5 Az I'm not either, She doesn't either ugyanazt jelenti, mint a Neither am I, illetve a Neither does she:

I'm not tired. ~ I'm not either.

I haven't seen that film. ~ I haven't either.

I don't like this place. ~ I don't either.

I didn't see that play. ~ I didn't either.

His sister can't drive and he can't either.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a so, too, either vagy neither szavakkal.

0 I really enjoyed that meal. ~ So ................. did I.

0 I haven't done the homework. ~ I haven't .................

0 We live in the centre of town. ~ We do .................

1 I don't like football. ~ ..................... do I.

2 I haven't been to America. ~ ..................... have I.

3 My father works in an office. ~ ..................... does mine.

4 I haven't read a newspaper today. ~ ..................... have I.

5 I play a lot of different sports. ~ I do .................

6 I've been working very hard lately. ~ ..................... have I.

7 Ann will be at the party and ................. will Jane.

8 My brother can't speak any foreign languages and ................. can my sister.

9 Helen sent me a birthday card and Robin did .................

10 George isn't going to the meeting and I'm not .................
11 Tony arrived late and ............... did I.
12 Kathy didn’t go to the concert and ............... did I.

B A példa alapján fuzzünk megjegyzést a következő állításokhoz so vagy neither használatával.
0 I’ve got a cold. (I) ~ So have I.
0 I haven’t got much money. (I) ~ Neither have I.
1 We’re going to the concert. (we) ~
2 My pen doesn’t work. (mine) ~
3 I haven’t read today’s paper. (I) ~
4 My meal was excellent. (mine) ~
5 I’ve been ill. (Frank) ~
6 Ron didn’t go to the party. (George) ~
7 I can’t understand this game. (I) ~
8 I’m not working tomorrow. (I) ~
9 Ruth passed the exam. (John) ~
10 I’ve eaten enough. (I) ~
11 I’m going to see that film. (we) ~
12 My car is very old. (mine) ~

C A táblázatban megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat so, too, either vagy neither használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lives in:</th>
<th>JULIA</th>
<th>ROBERT</th>
<th>SANDRA</th>
<th>PAUL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>New York</td>
<td>Chicago</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaks:</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drives?:</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Likes:</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>travelling</td>
<td>travelling</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plays:</td>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Julia lives in New York and Sandra does too.
0 Julia lives in New York and so does Sandra.
1 Robert doesn’t live in New York and ......................... Paul.
2 Robert doesn’t live in New York and Paul ......................
3 Julia speaks Spanish and ......................... Sandra.
4 Julia speaks Spanish and Sandra ...........................
5 Robert can’t speak Spanish and ......................... Paul.
6 Robert can’t speak Spanish and Paul ........................
7 Julia can drive and Paul .........................
8 Robert can’t drive and ........................ Sandra.
9 Julia has passed her driving test and ......................... Paul.
10 Robert likes travelling and ........................ Sandra.
11 Julia likes reading and Paul ........................
12 Julia plays basketball and ........................ Robert.
13 Sandra doesn’t play basketball and ......................... Paul.
Képesség és lehetőség kifejezése (can, can’t, could, couldn’t, be able to)

1. A **can** segédigével így alkotunk mondatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALLITÁS</th>
<th>1/1e/she/it/you/we/they could ski.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TAGADÁS</td>
<td>1/1e/she/it/you (stb.) could not/can’t ski.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KÉRÉS</td>
<td>Could 1/1e/she/it/you (stb.) ski?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A beszélt nyelvben **cannot** helyett általában a **can’t** alakot használjuk:

*He can’t swim.*

(Can you swim? ~ Rövid válasz: No, I can’t. Lásd a 46. fejezetet.)

2. A **can és a can’t** azt fejezi ki, hogy valamit képesek vagyunk/nem vagyunk képesek megszínálni, valamit tudunk vagy nem tudunk:

*She can speak Japanese.* (Beszéld japánul.)

*He can’t ski.* (= Nem tud sielni.)

A **can/can’t** azt is jelentheti, hogy valami egy adott pillanatban lehetséges:

*I can see the moon.* (= Látom a holdat. = Látható a hold.)

3. A **could** segédigével így alkotunk mondatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALLITÁS</th>
<th>I/he/she/it/you/we/they could ski.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TAGADÁS</td>
<td>I/he/she/it/you (stb.) could not/can’t ski.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KÉRÉS</td>
<td>Could I/he/she/it/you (stb.) ski?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A **could** azt fejezi ki, hogy a múltban valamit tudtunk, valamire képesek voltunk:

*I could run 100 metres in 12 seconds when I was young.*

Susan **could read** when she was three years old.

Ha olyan tevékenységről beszélünk, amelyre a múlt egy adott pillanatában voltunk képesek, a **could** segédigével helyett általában a **was/were able to** szerkezetet használjuk:

*I was able to visit her yesterday.* (= Tegnap meg tudtam látni.)

NEM: I could visit her yesterday.

A **couldn’t** egyaránt kifejezheti azt, hogy valami a múltban nem voltunk képesek, és azt is, hogy egy adott alkalommal nem:

*I couldn’t understand physics at all when I was at school.* (= Iskolában egyáltalán nem tudtam megérteni a fizikát.)

*I couldn’t see the film because there was a really tall man in front of me.* (= Nem látta a filmet, mert egy nagy magas ember ült előttém.)

4. Jövő időben a **will + be able to** szerkezetet használhatjuk.

(A will-can helytelen.)

*The baby will be able to talk soon.*

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A képek és a példa alapján és alkossunk rövid párhuzádeket **can vagy can’t** használatával.

![play tennis](image1)

**A:** Can she play tennis?

**B:** Yes, she can.

**A:** Can she play the violin?

**B:** No, she can’t. She can play tennis, but she can’t play the violin.

138
2 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat can, can’t, could vagy couldn’t használatával.

0 You don’t have to shout. I ........................ hear you very well.
0 I ................................ watch that programme last night because I had to go out.
1 He ............................. play last week because he was injured.
2 He eats in restaurants all the time because he .......................... cook.
3 I .............................. give you a lift in my car because it isn’t working at the moment.
4 I didn’t have a good seat in the theatre, so I .......................... see the stage very well.
5 John doesn’t need a calculator. He .......................... do very difficult sums in his head.
6 She’s very good at music. She ............................. play three instruments.
7 I .............................. find my address book. Do you know where it is?
8 He spoke very quickly and I ............................. understand anything he said.
9 We ............................ go on the trip because we .......................... afford it. It was very expensive.
10 I .............................. do any more work because I was very tired, so I stopped.
11 She spoke very clearly. I ............................. understand everything.
12 Our dog is very clever. It .............................. turn the lights on.
13 Look at the rain. We ............................. leave now because we haven’t got an umbrella.
14 In the days before fridges, you ............................. keep food for only a couple of days.
15 This computer programme ............................. translate into six languages.
16 Gorillas ............................. make noises but they .......................... speak.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **was able to** vagy **were able to** szerkezzettel.

0 1. **was able to** get the last ticket for the concert.
1 After waiting for a long time, we get into the museum.
2 They buy a new carpet very cheaply in the sales.
3 I eat three plates of pasta in the restaurant last night!
4 Our friends visit us yesterday afternoon despite the bad weather.
5 I finish my homework in half an hour today.
6 She have a long holiday last year.

A táblázatban megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat **can, could** vagy **will be able to** használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LAST YEAR</th>
<th>NOW</th>
<th>HOPES FOR THE FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joy swim 100 metres</td>
<td>swim 1000 metres</td>
<td>swim for her club team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark type 15 words per minute</td>
<td>type 30 words per minute</td>
<td>work as a secretary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill lift 25 kilos</td>
<td>lift 100 kilos</td>
<td>join a weightlifting team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anne speak only a little French</td>
<td>speak French quite well</td>
<td>work as an interpreter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol only cook omelettes</td>
<td>cook quite well</td>
<td>work as a chef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom only play the piano</td>
<td>play the piano and the violin</td>
<td>play in an orchestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susan only ride a bike</td>
<td>drive a car</td>
<td>drive a racing car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frank jump only 5 metres</td>
<td>jump 7 metres</td>
<td>represent his club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gail only ski down blue slopes</td>
<td>ski down red slopes</td>
<td>teach skiing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Last year Joy **could swim 100 metres**. Now, **she can swim 1000 metres**.
0 At the moment Anne **can speak French** quite well, and if she studies hard, perhaps **she’ll be able to work** as an interpreter.
1 Last year Mark. Now, ...........................................
1 At the moment Bill ........................................, and if he trains hard, perhaps ........................................
3 Last year Anne ........................................, Now, ........................................
4 At the moment Carol ........................................, and if she works hard, perhaps ........................................
5 Last year Tom ........................................, Now, ........................................, and if he works hard, perhaps ........................................
6 Last year Susan ........................................, Now, ........................................, and she hopes that one day ........................................
7 This year Frank ........................................, although last year he ........................................, If he does well, one day he ........................................
8 Gail hopes that one day she ........................................, Although last year she ........................................, now she ........................................
Jack 19 éves, és éppen elkőtőzik otthonról, mert egy másik városban fog egyetemre járni. Fogalmazzuk meg kérdésben a szülei és saját aggodalmait a jövővel kapcsolatban. Használjunk be able to szerkezetet.

**Jack’s Wories**
- get up in time for lectures?
- find time to study?
- afford to go out?
- keep in touch with my old friends?
- understand the lectures?

**Jack’s parents**
- Will he be able to cook for himself?
- pass all his exams?
- come home at weekends?
- keep his room tidy?
- do his own washing?

**Jack**
- Will I be able to get up in time for lectures?

---

**F** Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott igékkel és could, couldn’t vagy was/were able to használataival.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>contact</th>
<th>escape</th>
<th>get into</th>
<th>move</th>
<th>put</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>swim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**During the night of the storm no one** 0. **could sleep** .......................... because of the noise of the wind. In the morning we 1. ...................... that something was seriously wrong. The engines were silent and the ship’s radio was broken so the boat 2. .................... and no one 3. ..................... a message for help. Luckily, one of the passengers had a good mobile phone, so he 4. ...................... the coast guard. But then the ship began to sink fast. Some of the passengers were frightened because they 5. ......................, but luckily everyone 6. ..................... the lifeboats. We 7. ...................... our luggage in the lifeboats, so we had to leave everything behind. But the important thing was that we 8. ...................... safely and it wasn’t long before the coast guard found us.

**G** Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget.

Carol kisöccse egy éves. A múlt héten még nem tudott járni, de ma felállt és sikerült néhány lépést megtenni. Oda tudott menni a könyvespolchoz, és le tudta venni az egyik könyvet.


Carol nagyapja hetven éves. Amikor fiatal volt, tudott teniszzeni, és le tudta futni a maraton. Most nem tud ennyit futni, de tud üszni, és hosszú sétákat tesz.

Tornagyakorlatokat is tud végezni.

1 A can és could segédigékkkel kérést fejezhetünk ki:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can/could</th>
<th>I/we</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>a coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Kaphatok/Kérék egy kávét.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>a receipt?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Kaphatnék egy elismervényt?)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>two tickets, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>some sugar?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Could I? udvariasabb, mint a Can I?

2 A can, may és could segédigével engedélyt kérhetünk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can/May/</th>
<th>I/we</th>
<th>TO NELKÜLI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Could</td>
<td></td>
<td>FŐNEVI IGENÉV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>use your pen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Házszínáomat a tolladat?)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>look at your map, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>borrow your tennis racket, please?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 A Can you?, Could you? és Would you? (de a May you? nem) azt is kifejezheti, hogy valakitől valamit kérünk. A could és a would formálisabb és udvariasabb, mint a can.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can/Could/</th>
<th>+ you</th>
<th>TO NELKÜLI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Would</td>
<td></td>
<td>FŐNEVI IGENÉV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>help me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Tudnál nekem segíteni?)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>me a newspaper?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| I’m hot. Would you open the window, please? ~ Yes, of course.

Gyakorlatok

Tegyük helyes sorrendbe a zárójelben megadott szavakat. (Fogalmazzunk meg kéréseket.)

0 (have/a return ticket to York/could/please/I)
   Could I have a return ticket to York, please?

1 (please/I/can/a glass of orange juice/have)

2 (we/listen to your new CD/can)

3 (your phone/please/use/I/can)

4 (may/borrow/your camera tomorrow/I)

5 (please/the menu/pass/you/could)

6 (can/this letter for me/you/post)
Hogyan kérnénk az alábbi dolgokat a különböző helyszíneken? Használjuk a megadott kifejezéseket és a zárójelben lévő szerkezetet.

- have a map of the town
- have a single room
- have two melons
- have some fish and chips
- have a ticket for Glasgow

0 PLACE: a train station
(could I ... please) Could I have a ticket for Glasgow, please?

1 PLACE: a greengrocer's
(can I ... please)

2 PLACE: a restaurant
(can I ... please)

3 PLACE: a hotel
(could I ... please)

4 PLACE: a tourist information centre
(could I ... please)

Kérjünk engedélyt a zárójelben megadott szerkezet és a megfelelő kifejezés segítségével.

- use your photocopier
- use your dictionary
- turn on the TV
- close the window
- borrow your pen

0 SITUATION: You want to find the meaning of a word.
(may I) May I use your dictionary?

1 SITUATION: You want to write down a telephone number.
(can I)

2 SITUATION: You want to watch a programme.
(can I ... please)

3 SITUATION: You’re feeling cold.
(may I)

4 SITUATION: You need a photocopy of a letter.
(may I ... please)

Kérjünk segítséget az adott helyzetben a megfelelő kifejezés és a zárójelben megadott szerkezet használatával.

- tell me the time
- buy me a magazine
- carry one of these cases
- tell me the way to Buckingham Palace

0 PROBLEM: You’re sick. You’re in bed. You’re bored.
(can you ... please) Can you buy me a magazine, please?

1 PROBLEM: Your suitcases are very heavy.
(could you)

2 PROBLEM: You’re lost in London.
(could you ... please)

3 PROBLEM: You’ve forgotten to put your watch on.
(can you)
Utasítás, tanács, tiltás (must, mustn’t)

1. A must segédigével így alkotunk mondatokat:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>must</th>
<th>+ TO NELKÜLI FŐNÉV IGÉNEV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I must</td>
<td>go. (= Feltétlenül mennem kell.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ÁLLITÁS
l/he/she/it/you/we/they must go.

TAGADÁS
l/he/she/you (stb.) must not/mustn’t go.

2. must (= kell)

A You must kezdetcő mondat tartalmazhat szigorú parancsot vagy figyelmeztetést:
You must all finish your work before you go home!
You must pay attention when I’m talking to you!

A You must szerepel olyan nyilvános helyeken elhelyezett feliratokon is, amelyek mindenkihez érvényes szabályokat vagy utasításokat tartalmaznak:
You must pay before you enter the museum.
All visitors must go to reception when they arrive.

Tanácsot is meg fogalmazhatunk a You must kezdetedő mondattal:
You must visit the art gallery. The paintings there are fantastic.
You must read this book; it’s fantastic!

Amikor ügy érezzük, hogy valamit meg kell tennünk, a mondatot az I must vagy a We must szavakkal kezdhetjük:
I must leave now, I’m getting tired.
(= Mennem kell, kezdek fáradt lenni.)
I haven’t got any money, I must get a job.
We must buy some milk at the supermarket.

3. mustn’t (= nem szabad/tilos)

A mustn’t tiltást vagy figyelmeztetést fejezik ki:
You mustn’t touch the animals!
You mustn’t be late.
You mustn’t forget to buy your ticket.
A figyelmeztetés saját magunknak is szólhat:
I mustn’t forget my passport.
We mustn’t spend all our money today!

4. A must és a mustn’t a jelenre és a jövőre is vonatkozhat:

JELEN
I’m tired. I must go to bed.
You mustn’t speak to her now!

JÖVÖ
You must book your ticket next week.
(NEKED You will must …)
It’s my uncle’s birthday next month. I must visit him.

A must segédigéje a múltra nem vonatkozhat.
Helyette a have to segédigét használjuk.
(További tudnivalók az 52. fejezetben találhatók.)

Gyakorlatok

A. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a must/mustn’t segédigével.

0 You .................................... cross the road without looking. It’s dangerous.
1 You .................................... try the food that he cooks. It’s delicious!
2 The exam is next month. I ...................... work harder.
3 You .................................... forget your umbrella. It’s going to rain.
4 We .................................... stay here any longer. We must go to the station now, or we’ll miss our train.
5 You .................................... learn to swim before you go sailing.
6 I .................................... phone John tonight. I haven’t spoken to him for a long time.
7 You .................................... listen or you won’t understand.
8 It's seven o'clock. Shall we go? We .................... miss the concert.

9 Be careful! You ...................... lose that money.

10 It's an important match. You ...................... play well.

11 You ...................... read this book. It's fantastic.

12 You ...................... go into the cinema without a ticket.

A A Rio szálloda nem túl vendégszerető hely, rengeteg szabályt kell betartani. Olvassuk el a listát, és írjunk mondatokat a must/mustn't segédigével.

NOTICE TO GUESTS
Carry your own suitcases to your room.
Do not take food into your room.
Pay for your room when you arrive.
Vacate your room by 9 a.m. on the day you leave.
Do not ask hotel staff for tourist information.
Return to the hotel before 10 p.m. every night.

0 You must carry ...................... your own suitcases to your room.
1 You ...................... food into your room.
2 ...................... for your room when you arrive.
3 ...................... your room by 9 a.m. on the day you leave.
4 ...................... hotel staff for tourist information.
5 ...................... to the hotel before 10 p.m. every night.

3 Henry változtatni akar szokásain. Írjunk a képek alapján mondatokat a megfelelő kifejezéssel és a must/mustn't segédigével.

study in the evening
run every morning
dress smartly
watch TV all day
smoke
visit my grandmother
sleep in the afternoon
dance all night

0 I mustn't smoke...

0 I must dress smartly.

1

2

3

4

5

6
Kell, nem kell (have to, don’t have to)

1 A have to alakjai egyszerű jelenben:

ÁLLÍTÁS ÉS TAGADÁS
\(\text{\lf you/we/they} \)

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{have} & \\
\text{don’t have} & \\
\text{has} & \\
\text{doesn’t have} & \\
\end{align*} \]

\text{to go.}

KÉRDÉS
Do \(\text{\lf you/we/they} \) have to go?

2 have to (= kell)

A have to segédigével azt fejezhetjük ki, hogy valamit azért kell megtennünk, mert bizonyos, mások által előírt szabályokat be kell tartanunk:

- We have to pay the rent every month. (= Minden hónapban kell labörög fizetnünk.)
- My brother has to travel a lot in his job.
- Ha olyasmiről beszélünk, amit mi magunk tartunk fontosnak, a must segédigét használjuk (lásd az 51. fejezetet).

3 Akkor is a have to segédigét használjuk, amikor valamit azért kell megtennünk, mert a körülmények kényszerítenek rá:

- I have to get a bus to school.
- She has to live on a small income.

4 A Do I/you... have to alakot használjuk, ha azt kérdezzük, hogy valamit meg kell-e tennünk:
- Do I have to show my passport?
- Do you have to wear a uniform at work?

5 A don’t have to azt jelenti, hogy valamit nem kell megtennünk:

- We don’t have to pay now. (Buy now. Pay next year)
- We don’t have to hurry; we’re early.
- I don’t have to get up early on Sunday. I can stay in bed if I want.

6 A have to helyett a have got to alak is használható:

- Do you have to/Have you got to get up early tomorrow? – Yes, I have to/I’ve got to get up at six o’clock.
- They don’t have to/haven’t got to come this afternoon.

Figyelj! A have got to alak múlt időben nem használható:

- They had to leave early. (= Korán el kellett mennünk.) A had got to helytelen.

7 Mült időben a had to alakot használjuk.

Figyelj! Tagadó alakja didn’t have to.

- I had to do a lot of work yesterday.
- We didn’t have to play football.
- We hadn’t to play football.

8 Jövő időben a will have to/’ll have to szerkezetet használjuk:

- He’ll have to look for another job.
- We won’t have to get tickets in advance.
- Will they have to get visas?

De a have to jelen idejű alakkal jövő időt is kifejezhetünk:

- I have to do some shopping tomorrow.
- Do you have to work next weekend?

Gyakorlatok

Az alábbi táblázatban néhány foglalkozzással kapcsolatban találunk információt. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat have to vagy don’t have to használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shop assistants</th>
<th>Bank clerks</th>
<th>Doctors</th>
<th>Teachers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deal with the public</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work on Sundays</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work with money</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear uniforms</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* Shop assistants ............................................... have to deal with the public.
1 Teachers ....................................................... the public.
2 Teachers .................................................... on Sundays.
3 Doctors ......................................................... on Sundays.
4 Shop assistants .............................................. with money.
5 Bank clerks ............................................... with money.
6 Doctors ...................................................... with money.
7 Shop assistants often .................................. uniforms.
8 Teachers ..................................................... uniforms.

B. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **have to** segédigé és a zárójelben megadott kifejezések alkalmazásával. Figyeljünk a megfelelő igeidő használatára.

0. **I have to leave** (I/leave) now; I’ve got an appointment at the dentist’s.
1. **Did you have to study** (you/study) literature when you were at school?
2. **You don’t have to come** (You/not/come) with me now if you don’t want to.
3. **I have to work** (I/not/work) hard because the job was very easy.
4. **I have to run** (I/do) to school because I was late.
5. **I have to go** (I/go) to an important meeting yesterday.
6. **You have to show** (you/show) your passports when you reached the border?
7. **He have to pay** (I/pay) in cash next week or can I give you a cheque?
8. **Did you have to decide** (You/not/decide) today. You can tell me tomorrow.

C. Írjuk meg a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott szavak és a **have to** megfelelő alakjának használatával.

**Good morning. I’d like to buy a travel card. What do I have to do?**

(Good morning. I’d like to buy a travel card. What/I/do?)

**ASSISTANT:** 1 .............................................. (You/fill/in an application form.)

**DANIEL:** 2 ...................................................(I/give/you/a photograph?)

**ASSISTANT:** 3 ............................................. (No, you/not/give/me anything, except the money!)

**What did you have to do at school today?**

(What/you/do/at school today?)

**GEOFF:** 4 .................................................... (We/do/some/English tests.)

**DAD:** 5 ....................................................... (How many questions/you/answer?)

**GEOFF:** 6 ...................................................(We/answer/about 40 grammar questions.)

**DAD:** 7 ....................................................... (you/speak/in English?)

**GEOFF:** 8 .................................................... (No, but we/do/that next week.)
Must vagy have to; mustn’t vagy don’t have to


2 A have to többnyire azt fejezi ki, hogy valamit szabály vagy törvény ír elő, vagy valaki kötelez minket valamire: Doctors sometimes have to work on Sunday. A tagadó és a kérdő alakban a do segédigét használjuk: Teachers don’t have to work on Sunday. Do you have to work today? ~ No, I don’t.

3 ÁLLÍTÁS Állító mondatban nincs mindig lényeges különbség a must és have to használata között. Sok dolgot szabályok írnak elő, amelyek betartását mi is fontosnak tartjuk: In Britain you must drive on the left. Vagy In Britain you have to drive on the left.

4 TAGADÁS Figyeljük meg a különbséget a mustn’t és a don’t have to között:
   ➤ A mustn’t gyakran azt jelenti, hogy valamit nem szabad megtenni, mert szabályellenes vagy tilja a törvény: You mustn’t smoke on buses. (= Az autóbuszokon tilos a dohányzás.) In football you mustn’t touch the ball with your hands. (= Futballban tilos a labdát kézzel érinteni.)
   ➤ A don’t have to jelentése: ‘nem kell’, ‘nem szükséges’, ‘nincs előírva’: In Britain, people don’t have to carry a passport with them. Nowadays students do not have to learn Latin at school.

5 KÉRDEŠ Kérdezní a do/does . . . have to (nem must) alakkal kell, ha azt kérdezzük, hogy valami kötelező-e vagy nagyon fontos: Does Michael have to get up early tomorrow? Do we have to wait here?

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a must/mustn’t segédigével és a megfelelő igével.

be drive obey park play work

0 Car drivers ............................... slowly in towns.
1 You ........................................ your car in a ‘No Parking’ area.
2 Everybody ............................... the traffic police.
3 You ........................................ football in the street.
4 Drivers ..................................... careful when it’s foggy.
5 Lorry drivers ............................ when they are tired.

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a must/mustn’t segédigével és a megadott igékkel. Mindegyik igét csak egyszer használjuk.

finish forget visit buy ask leave tell have

A: We ........................................ the castle before we leave.
B: Yes, and we ............................... to take a boat trip on the river.

A: Do you think I can take a holiday next month, George?
B: Yes, but you ............................. the boss first.
A: We 3 .............................................. this work tonight.
B: Why?
A: We’re going to have a test tomorrow.
B: Why not? I’m tired and I want to go home.
A: Please stay. She’s going to sing the best song of the evening.
A: I worked hard yesterday and made a lot of money.
B: That’s good but you look tired. You 5 .............................................. a rest tomorrow.
A: John and I are going to get married, but you 6 .............................................. my father.
B: Why not?
A: John is an actor and my father doesn’t like actors!
A: I hate this flat. It’s so small.
B: I know. We 7 .............................................. a house with a garden.

C Az alábbi szabályok egy iskola házirendjében szerepelnek. Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a you általános alany és a must/mustn’t segédigé alkalmazásával.

| Attend all classes: |
| Don’t take school books home with you. |
| Don’t make a noise in the corridors. |
| Don’t write in school books. |
| Arrive for lessons on time. |
| Bring your own pens and paper. |

0 You must attend all classes.
1 .............................................. school books home with you.
2 .............................................. a noise in the corridors.
3 .............................................. in school books.
4 .............................................. for lessons on time.
5 .............................................. your own pens and paper.

D A zárójelben lévő állítás alapján alkossunk kérdést Do/Does … have to használatával, és adjunk rövid választ, ahogy a példában láthatjuk.

0 (They don’t have to work hard.)

Do they have to work hard? ~ No, they don’t.

0 (They must stay at home.)

Do they have to stay at home? ~ Yes, they do.

1 (Jim has to go to the doctor’s.)

.............................................. ~ Yes, ..............................................

2 (We must show our passports.)

.............................................. ~ Yes, ..............................................

3 (Linda doesn’t have to pay.)

.............................................. ~ No, ..............................................

4 (They must do all this work today.)

.............................................. ~ Yes, ..............................................
Does she have to has she has must mustn't have does she

MARK: We have to get up early tomorrow.

BOB: Why?

MARK: Have you forgotten? Angela to move to a new flat tomorrow, and I promised we would help her.

BOB: have to move out by a particular time?

MARK: No, there’s no rush. She doesn’t leave her old flat before the afternoon, but there are lots of things to pack, so we get there fairly early.

BOB: Why have to move, by the way?

MARK: She said that tell you because she wants to tell you herself when she sees you tomorrow.

Nézzük meg a következő feliratokat, és írjunk mondatokat don't have to vagy mustn't használatával.

**ANTIQUES**

Please feel free to come in.
(No eating inside.)

Entry possible before the concert.
No late arrivals allowed.

All vehicles - Slow.
Drivers of large vehicles, wait for guard before crossing.

Students!
Please be quiet - 4th year exam in progress.

LIBRARY
No talking.
Please leave books on tables.

SWIMMING POOL
Free swim today.
No eating.
No drinking.
A Stanton Squash Club az alábbiakra kötelezi látogatóit:

- wear sports shoes
- leave the changing rooms tidy
- finish on time

és a következő dolgokat tiltja:

- disturb other players
- eat or drink outside the bar
- take club balls home

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat have to, don't have to vagy mustn't használatával.

0. You **don't have to** wear white clothes, but you **have to** wear sports shoes.

1. You ___________________ finish on time, but you ___________________ start on time.

2. You ___________________ play with club balls, but if you do, you ___________________ take them home.

3. You ___________________ eat or drink outside the bar, but you ___________________ buy your food in the bar if you don't want to.

4. You ___________________ leave the changing rooms tidy.

Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat. (Használjuk a you általános alanyt.) Ezután döntsük el, melyik állítás igaz, melyik hamis, és véleményünket vitassuk meg csoporttársainkkal és a tanárral.

1. Tizenhat éven felülnek kell lennünk ahhoz, hogy cigarettát vásárolhassunk.

2. Ha nem mész át az iskolai vizsgán, évet kell ismételned.

3. Amikor Londonba vagy Párizsba utazunk, nem kell ótlevet vinni magunkkal.

4. Lottószelvény vásárlásához legalább tizennyolc évesnek kell lennünk.

5. A kutyatartáshoz engedély szükséges.

6. Étteremben vagy sörzőben tilos a dohányzás.

7. A motorkerékpárosoknak bukósisakot kell viselniük.

8. A választásokon minden felnőttnek szavaznia kell.


10. Éjszaka nem szabad világítás nélkül kerékpározni.

11. Ha elmúltál tizenhét éves, és házasságot akarsz kötni, nem kell engedélyt kérned a szüleidtől.

BIZONYARRA, BIZONYARRA NEM, TAÍAN
(must, can’t, may, might, could)

1 A főnévi igenév to nélküli alakjával használyuk
(pl. be, go, come, earn) a következő
segédigékét: must, can’t, may, could:

They must
FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
earn a lot.

2 BIZONYOSSÁG: She must be rich.
(= Bizonyára gazdag.)
Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:
Jane got top marks in her exams. She must be very
clever. (= Jane a legjobb jegyeket kapta a
vizsgáin. Bizonyára nagyon okos. − Annak
alapján, amit róla tudunk, ezt joggal
feltételezzük.)

A must tehát azt fejezi ki, hogy valamiről meg
vagyunk győződve, bizonyosak vagyunk benne:
The Greens have two houses and two cars. They
must earn a lot of money. (= Greenéknek két
házuk és két autójuk van. Nyilván nagyon
sokat keresnek.)

A: There’s someone outside in an orange car.
B: It must be Susan. She’s the only person I know
with an orange car. (= Ez bizonyára Susan.
Az ismerősöm közül ő az egyetlen, aki
narancssárga autója van.)

3 LEHETETLENSÉG: She can’t be poor.
(= Nem lehet szegény.)

Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:
Tim studied hard for his exams, but he got poor
marks. He can’t be very clever. (= Tim rengeteget
tanult a vizsgáira, de gyenge jegyeket kapott.
Nem lehet nagyon okos. − Annak alapján, amit
tudunk róla, úgy gondoljuk, hogy nem nagyon
okos.)

The Browns both have part-time jobs; they can’t
earn much money. (= Brownék mindkettő csak
részidőben dolgoznak; nem kereshetnek sokat.)

A: There’s someone at the door. I think it’s Bill.
B: It can’t be Bill. He’s in Australia.
(= Nem lehet Bill, ő Ausztráliában van.)

4 LEHETSÉGES: She {may  might could} be in the garden.
(= Lehet, hogy a kertben van.)

Figyeljük meg a következő példát, amelyben a
may segédige szerepel:
A: Eva is not in her room. Where is she?
B: She may be in the garden. (Annak alapján,
amit tudunk, feltéhetően a kertben van.)

A might, a may és a could azt fejezi ki, hogy
valami lehetőséges, de nem bizonyos.
Ugyanezen a segédigék a jövőben
bekövetkező eseményre is utalhatnak:
My sister might come tomorrow. (= Lehet, hogy
holnap jön a nővérem.)
She may/might come, but she may/might not.
(Lehet, hogy jön, lehet, hogy nem.)

A could segédigét ennek kifejezésére nem
használhatjuk. Helytelen a következő mondat:
She could come but she couldn’t.

A tagadó alak: may not vagy might not.
A: I’ve phoned Jill, but there’s no answer.
B: She may not be at home.
(= Lehet, hogy nincs ott.)

I might not finish the project in time.
(= Lehetőséges, hogy nem fogok időre végezni
a feladattal.)

A may not (mayn’t) összevonat alakját nem
használhatjuk, a mightn’t alakot igen.
His story mightn’t be true.
(= Lehet, hogy a története nem igaz.)

Gyakorlatok
A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat must vagy can’t és a megfelelő ige használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>belong</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>spend</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>remember</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Anna lived in America for three years, so she must speak English.</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tom’s brother doesn’t know anything about medicine, so he can’t be a doctor.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Jane has an incredible number of compact discs. She likes music a lot.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Peter doesn’t speak German, so he doesn’t like music a lot.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 This jacket .................................................. to Janet because it’s not her size.
4 That man .................................................. around here because he doesn’t know any of the street names.
5 Jack .................................................. a lot of clothes. He wears something different every day.
6 Sam’s grandmother is over eighty years old, so she .................................................. the Second World War.
7 You’ve got ten cats already. You .................................................. to get another one.
8 Susan buys new clothes every day. She .................................................. a lot of money.

**Step 4**: Egészítsük ki a mondatokat might vagy might not és a zárójelben megadott ige használatával.

0 Accept their offer. You .................................................. (get) a better opportunity.
1 I .................................................. (buy) her this plant for her birthday. She likes plants a lot.
2 Take a coat with you. It .................................................. (be) cold this evening.
3 We .................................................. (go) to Greece this summer, but we haven’t booked anything yet.
4 I .................................................. (go) by car because there will be a lot of traffic.
5 They .................................................. (come) to the party tonight. They’re very busy.
6 A: What are you going to do tonight?
   B: I’m not sure. I .................................................. (stay) at home. I’m tired.
7 I don’t know where Jane is at the moment. She .................................................. (be) in the gym, or she .................................................. (be) in the science lab.
8 Don’t worry too much about that mistake. It .................................................. (be) important.
9 I’ll try to change the time of my flight, but it .................................................. (be) possible. The planes are often full at this time of year.
10 You .................................................. (find) a hotel if you go to the main street – there are lots there.

**Step 5**: Bankrablás történt – a rendőrség összegyűjtötte a gyanúsítottak fényképét. Nézzük meg a képeket és egészítsük ki a mondatokat can’t be, could be vagy must be használatával.

- **Drake**
- **Hall**
- **Brown**
- **Rogers**
- **Smith**

0 A witness says that the robber had glasses. If that’s true, then it .................................................. Brown or Drake. It .................................................. either Hall or Rogers or Smith.
1 A witness says that the robber had black hair. If that’s true, then it .................................................. Hall, but it .................................................. Brown.
2 A witness says that the robber had a moustache. If that’s true, then it .................................................. Rogers, but it .................................................. Drake or Brown.
3 A witness says that the robber didn’t have a beard. If that’s true, then it .................................................. Drake or Brown but it .................................................. Hall or Smith.
4 A witness says that the robber had black hair and wore glasses. If that’s true, then it .................................................. Rogers. It .................................................. Hall.
5 And if what everyone says is true, then ..................................................
Alakítsuk át a mondatokat must, can't, may/might vagy may not/might not használatával.

0 I'm sure she's very rich.
   She ..................................................

1 Perhaps Mary won’t come.
   Mary ..............................................

2 I've never seen him so he definitely doesn’t live near here.
   I've never seen him so he ........................................

3 It is possible that Peter is in the garage.
   Peter ..............................................

4 He gets to work before me so it's obvious that he takes the train.
   He gets to work before me so he ........................................

5 It's possible that my parents will pay for the concert tickets.
   My parents ........................................

6 It's possible that Jack is not willing to help us.
   Jack ..............................................

7 Perhaps she'll go abroad but perhaps she won't.
   She ..............................................

Egészítsük ki a szöveget must, can't vagy might és a megfelelő kifejezés használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cost a lot of money</th>
<th>be a soldier</th>
<th>work long hours</th>
<th>go to Portugal</th>
<th>come this weekend</th>
<th>be very interested</th>
<th>earn £60,000 a year</th>
<th>also be at the shops</th>
<th>be at the gym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 RUTH: I think Ann’s brother is in the army.
   JAMES: He ........................................; he’s only fifteen.

1 BOB: What are you going to do next summer?
   SUSAN: I don't know. We ........................................, but it’s not certain yet.

2 FRED: Mike’s new flat is all electric – kitchen, heating, everything.
   PETER: That ........................................ in electricity bills.

3 SAM: Is Mary coming to see us this week?
   SALLY: It depends on her work. She ........................................ if she finishes the project that she’s doing.

4 CAROL: Have Brian and Kim got any children?
   TOM: Yes, they have two children, but they ........................................ in them, because they never talk about them.

5 ANDY: Do you see your new neighbours very much?
   SARAH: No, they ........................................, because they are hardly ever at home.

6 PAUL: Fred’s gone out, hasn’t he? Where has he gone?
   ANN: I don't know. He ........................................ or he .........................................

7 TIM: Is Jane very rich?
   EMMA: Oh yes, she has a flat and a sports car. She ........................................ at least.
The leotard must be for Jill. It can't be for anyone else.

The CDs could be for Peter, Susan or James. They can't be for Jill.

The tennis racket
It ..........................................................

The camera
It ..........................................................

The paints and brushes
They ..........................................................

The skiing clothes
They ..........................................................

The books
They ..........................................................

The cricket bat
It ..........................................................

Fordítsuk le a következő jelenetet a Hamupipőke (Cinderella) című meséből.

SZOLGA: A herceg elrendelte, hogy meg kell találni ennek a cipőnek a tulajdonosát. Egy gyönyörű lány vesztette el a legutóbbi bálnon. Ha megtaláljuk, a herceg feleségül veszi a lányt. A szerencsés leányból hercegnő lesz. Fel akarják próbálni, hőlgyeim?

1. MOSTOHATÉTVÉR: Csak az enyém lehet! Add ide! Nézzétek! Ez pontosan az én méretem!

2. MOSTOHATÉTVÉR: Te biztos, hogy bolond vagy! Ez nem lehet a te cipőd. A te lábad nagy, ez a cipő pedig kicsi, mint az én lábam. Ennek az én cipőmnek kell lennie. Biztos vagyok benne, hogy a bálnak veszettettem el.

SZOLGA: Bocsásson meg, kisasszony. Ez a cipő nem lehet az öné. Az ön lába túl nagy. A cipő bizonyára egy másik hőlgyé, aki ebben a házban lakik – vagy kérdezzem meg a szomszédokat?

1. MOSTOHATÉTVÉR: Ez csak Hamupipőke lehet...

SZOLGA: Hamupipőke? Hol van?

1. MOSTOHATÉTVÉR: Ő, nem tudom. Biztos a konyhában van.

2. MOSTOHATÉTVÉR: Lehet, hogy a kertben van.

SZOLGA: Hívják ide rögtön. Fel kell próbálnia ezt a cipőt. Lehet, hogy ő az a lány, akit a herceg keres. Talán ő az új hercegnő!

MOSTOHATÉTVÉREK: Nem! Nem lehet ő a hercegnő! Ez bizonyára tévedés!
Múltra utaló módbeli segédígyékok (must have seen, can't have done)

1. **A must, can't, may, might és could segédigével múltra is utalhatunk. A have és az ige bef jelezett melléknévi igenévi alakja áll a segédige után:**
   - Mary must have seen him. (= Mary biztosan láttá őt.)
   - Ken might have gone home early. (= Ken talán korán hazament.)

2. **BIZONYOSSÁG**
   Nézzük meg, hogyan használjuk a must segédigét:
   - Jane got good marks in her exams. She must have worked hard. (= Jane jó jegyeket kapott a vizsgán. Bizonyosan keményen dolgozott.)
   - They've changed everything in their house. They must have spent a fortune. (= Mindent átalakítottak a házban. Bizonyára egy vagyon költöttek.)

3. **LEHETETLENÉSÉG**
   Nézzük meg, hogyan használjuk a can't segédigét:
   - I saw Bill in Oxford this afternoon so he can't have stayed in London all day. (= Ma délúton Oxfordban láttam Billt, szóval nem töltette az egész napját Londonban.)

Ugyanezt kifejezhetjük a couldn't have alakkal is:
- Nobody answered the phone so they couldn't have been at home. (= Senki nem vette fel a telefon, lehetetlen, hogy otthon voltak.)

4. **LEHETSÉGES**
   Figyéljük meg a may have használatát:
   - I don't know where Sally is. She may have gone to the shop. (= Nem tudom, hol van Sally. Lehet, hogy elemel a bolitba.)
   - A may, might és could (a sean nem) + have azt fejezi ki, hogy valami talán úgy történt, de nem tudjuk bizonyosan:
     - John doesn't know where his watch is but he thinks he might/could have left it at school. (= John nem tudja, hol az órája, de azt gondolja, talán az iskolában hagytja.)
   - A tagadó alak may not vagy might not (de nem could not):
     - A: Carol's not answering her mobile.
     - B: She might not have taken it with her. (= Talán nem vitte magával.)

**Gyakorlatok**

A. Egészítsük ki a mondanokat a következő szerkezettel: must vagy can't + have + a megfelelő ige bef jelezett melléknévi igenévi alakja.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be buy catch like live retire spend study take visit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 The boss increased Alan's salary so she ........................................... his work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 Saul doesn't know a word of French so he ........................................... in France.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Jack was at home all weekend so he ........................................... at the theatre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Sara didn't use to have so many CDs. She ....................... a lot more recently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Mrs Stuart is almost 70 so she ........................................... from her job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Their house is wonderful now. They ........................................... a fortune on it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Tom didn't know what an antibiotic is so he ........................................... medicine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Tim was only in Brazil for a week, so he ........................................... all the places he says that he went to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Your mother's umbrella isn't here. She ........................................... it with her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 John's very late getting home. He ........................................... his usual train.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Aikossunk hasonló értelmű mondatokat **must**, **can't**, **might** vagy **might not** + **have** + befejezett melléknévi igenév szerkezet használatával.

1. Those letters aren’t here now so I’m sure that somebody has posted them.
   Those letters aren’t here now so somebody must have posted them.
2. Susan’s had exams all day so I’m sure that she hasn’t spoken to Barry.
   Susan’s had exams all day so she hasn’t spoken to Barry.
3. The book isn’t here. Perhaps Peter took it home.
   The book isn’t here. Peter took it home.
4. Jim sounded cross on the phone so I’m certain he hasn’t had a good day.
   Jim sounded cross on the phone so he hasn’t had a good day.
5. The road’s quite wet so I’m sure it rained during the night.
   The road’s quite wet so it rained during the night.
6. They don’t watch much TV so perhaps they haven’t heard the news.
   They don’t watch much TV so they haven’t heard the news.
7. Sara lives on that street so I’m sure she heard the fire engines.
   Sara lives on that street so she heard the fire engines.

Egy öreg ház padlásán értékes festményt találtak. Olvassuk el a nagy festőkről szóló információt és egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **can’t have been**, **could have been** vagy **must have been** szerkezettel.

Hans Holbein, German 1497–1543 (16th century)
Michelangelo, Italian 1475–1564 (16th century)
Rubens, Flemish 1577–1640 (17th century)
Jan Vermeer, Dutch 1632–1675 (17th century)
Canaletto, Italian 1697–1768 (18th century)
Frans Hals, Dutch 1580–1666 (17th century)

0. One expert thinks that the painting is from the early 16th century. If that’s true, then the painter could have been Michelangelo but can’t have been Rubens.
1. Another expert thinks that the painting is Dutch or Flemish. If that is true, then the painter can be... Canaletto but not Vermeer or Rubens.
2. Another expert thinks that the painting is from the 17th century. If that’s true, the painter... Frans Hals or Rubens, for example, but Holbein.
3. Another expert is certain that the painting is Dutch. If that’s true, the painter... Michelangelo, but... Vermeer or Frans Hals.
4. Another expert is convinced that the painting is Italian and from the 18th century. If that’s true, then the painter... Holbein or Rubens. In fact, the painter... Canaletto.
Kellene, nem kellene (should, shouldn’t)

1 A should segédigét a főige to nélküli főnévi igenévi alakjával (do, go stb.) használjuk:

\[
\text{I should} \quad \text{do} \quad \text{some work tonight.}
\]

(NEM I should-to do …)

Minden személyben a should alakot használjuk:

\[
\begin{aligned}
&I/you/he/she/it/we/they \quad \text{should} \quad \text{go}.
\end{aligned}
\]

2 A tagadó alak: shouldn’t (= nem kellene)

You shouldn’t sit in the sun all day.

They shouldn’t spend so much money.

3 Az I should/we should szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy valamit meg kellene tennünk, mert az úgy helyes:

I should go home. It’s midnight.

We should invite them for a meal.

Az I/we shouldn’t azt jelenti, hogy valamit nem kellene megtennünk:

We shouldn’t spend so much money.

A you should/shouldn’t szerkezettel tanácsot adhatunk:

You should look for a better job.

You shouldn’t drive so fast.

A should nem olyan nyomatékos, mint a must vagy a have to:

You should eat more fruit. (Több gyümölcst kellene enned. – Jó lenne.)

‘You must eat more fruit,’ said the doctor.

(= Több gyümölcst kell enned, mondta az orvos. – Ez nagyon fontos.)

4 A should I/we …? kérdő alakkal tanácsot kérünk:

\[\text{Should I write my name in this space?}\]

What should I say to Helen?

(= Mit mondjak Helennek?)

I need a new passport. Where should I go?

(= Új ütlévére van szükségem. Hova menjek?)

5 Az I think we should, I don’t think you should kezdetű mondatokkal a véleményünket mondhatjuk meg valamiről:

\[\text{I think we should get a new car.}\]

I don’t think you should believe everything he says. (= Azt hiszem, nem kellene mindent elhinned, amit mond.)

(ALTALÁBAN NEM: I think you shouldn’t …)

6 A Do you think I should …? kezdetű mondattal valakinek a véleményét kérjük:

He hasn’t replied to my letter. Do you think I should phone him? (= Gondolod, hogy fel kellene hívnom?)

What do you think I should give Tom for his birthday? (= Mit gondolsz, mit kellene adnom Tomnak a születésnapjára?)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat should/shouldn’t segédigével és a zárójelben megadott kifejezéssel.

0. You shouldn’t work

0. I enjoyed that film. We should go

1. (You/work) so hard. Have a holiday.

2. (I/cook) for dinner tonight?

3. (You/park) here. It’s not allowed.

4. (You/wear) a coat. It’s cold outside.

5. (You/smoke). It’s bad for you.

6. (We/arrive) at the airport two hours before the flight.

7. (I/pay) now or later?

8. (I/apply) for this job?

What do you think (I/write) in this space on the form?
9. .................................................. (I/eat) any more cake. I’ve already eaten too much.
10. This food is terrible. ................................................. (We/complain) to the manager.
11. Which shirt do you think ........................................... (I/buy)?

Henry főzni fog. Adjunk neki tanácsokat a you should vagy you shouldn’t szerkezet és a felszólító mondatokban lévő igék használatával.

Don’t leave the meat in the oven for more than one hour.
Cut the onions as small as possible.
Use fresh herbs and fresh vegetables.
Don’t put in too much salt and pepper.
Wait until the water boils before you put the vegetables into it.
Heat the oven before you put the meat in.
Cut the meat into four equal slices.

0 You shouldn’t leave the meat in the oven for more than one hour.
1 the onions as small as possible.
2 fresh herbs and fresh vegetables.
3 in too much salt and pepper.
4 until the water boils before you put the vegetables into it.
5 the oven before you put the meat in.
6 the meat into four equal slices.

Írjuk le Brian és Keith beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával. A mondatokba tegyük be a do vagy should segédigét, ahol szükséges.

BRIAN: (I want to buy a motorbike. What/you/think/I/do?)
0 I want to buy a motorbike. What do you think I should do?
KEITH: (You/look/ at the advertisements in the papers.)
0 You should look at the advertisements in the papers.
BRIAN: (Which papers/ I/get?)
1 ..............................................................
KEITH: (I think/ you/buy/ the local newspapers.)
2 ..............................................................
BRIAN: (What/you/think/ I/do/before I buy a bike?)
3 ..............................................................
KEITH: (I/not/think/ you/decide/too quickly.)
4 ..............................................................
(You/check/ the condition of the bike.)
5 ..............................................................
(You/ask/ somebody who knows about bikes to look at the bike for you.)
6 ..............................................................
(You/not/buy/ one just because it looks nice!)
7 ..............................................................
(You/be/ very careful.)
8 ..............................................................
Kellene, jobban tennéd, ha... — should, ought to, had better

1 A should, az ought to és a had better mellett to nélküli főnévi igénevet használunk (pl. be, go, ask, wait):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FŐNEVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I should go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You ought to ask.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We had better wait.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(= Mennem kellene.)
(= Meg kellene kérdezned.)
(= Jobb lenne, ha várnánk.)

2 A should és az ought to segédigével tanácsot kérünk vagy tanácsot adunk, azt mondjuk meg, mi a helyes vagy mi a legjobb döntés:
A: I’ve got toothache. What should I do?
B: You should go to the dentist’s.
Amikor kötelezettségről vagy törvényről beszélünk, általában az ought to segédigét használjuk:
A: I saw a robbery. What ought I do?
B: You ought to report it to the police.
Amikor azonban személyes véleményünknek adunk hangot, rendszerint a should segédigét használjuk:
B: I think you should forget about it.
Kérdő és tagadó mondatban gyakrabban használjuk a should, mint az ought to segédigét. (Az ought to hivatalosabb hangzású.)
I shouldn’t go. VAGY: I ought not to go. Should I go? VAGY: Ought I to go?

3 Amikor tanácsot adunk, vagy arra utalunk, hogy szerintünk valakinek mit keliene tennie, a had better szerkezetet is használhatjuk:

There’ll be a lot of traffic tomorrow. We had (vagy We’d) better leave early.
I had (vagy I’d) better ask the doctor about the pain in my stomach.

Figyelem! Bár a had múlt idejű alak, a had better szerkezet nem a múltra, hanem a jelenre vagy a jövőre utal.
A had better egy konkrét helyzetre vonatkozik, a should vagy az ought to általanosságban ad tanácsot:
I’m not ready. You’d better not wait for me.
(= Nem vagyok még kész, jobb lesz, ha nem vársz rám.)
When people are in trouble, they should go to the police. (NEM: ... they had better go to the police.)
(= Amikor az emberek bajban vannak, a rendőrséghez kell fordulniuk.)

Figyelem! A had better tagadó alakja: had better not + to nélküli főnévi igénev: You’d better not wait for me.
Az ought to tagadó alakja: ought not to: You ought not to do that.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a kérdésekre adott válaszokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal, not és to hozzáadásával, ahol szükséges.

0 A: Should Henry stay in bed?
   B: No, the doctor said he shouldn’t. (should) stay in bed.

1 A: Can we move that cupboard?
   B: No, it’s very delicate, so you shouldn’t. (ought) leave it where it is.

2 A: Should we change these notices?
   B: No, the show is still on, so we shouldn’t. (should) change them until next week.
3 A: You’d better tell the boss about the accident immediately.
   B: No, she’s in a bad mood. I …………………… (had better) tell her until tomorrow.
4 A: Does the doctor say it’s all right for Mrs Bradley to work?
   B: Yes, but she must be careful. She …………………… (ought) lift anything heavy, for example.
5 A: Can they come before dinner?
   B: No, we haven’t got enough food, so they …………………… (had better) come after dinner.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a should/shouldn’t segédigével és a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call an ambulance</th>
<th>give you a new cup</th>
<th>drive home in her car</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave everything where it is</td>
<td>decide for herself</td>
<td>move the person yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borrow money</td>
<td>do anything about it</td>
<td>let him eat so much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make him do lots of sport</td>
<td>report it to the police</td>
<td>ask someone to take her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch anything</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 A: There is a house near my home where I often hear a child crying.
   B: You …………………… .
   0 A: My daughter wants to marry a sailor. What should I do about it?
   B: In my opinion, you …………………… . Your daughter should decide for herself …………………… .
1 A: If someone has a serious accident, what’s the right thing to do?
   B: Well, you …………………… . It’s not a good idea to move an injured person. Instead, you …………………… to take the person to hospital.
2 A: Last Saturday I bought some coffee cups but one was broken. What can I expect the shop to do?
   B: They …………………… .
3 A: My son is twelve years old and he’s already very overweight.
   B: Well, it’s important not to eat too much, so you …………………… .
   Also, you …………………… .
4 A: If you come home and see that you’ve been robbed, what’s the best thing to do?
   B: Well, you …………………… . You …………………… . and call the police.
5 A: Mary can’t work because she’s feeling sick. How can she get home?
   B: Well, she …………………… . She …………………… home.
6 People …………………… if they can’t pay it back.

C Írjunk megjegyzést az állításokhoz had better és a zárójelben megadott kifejezés használataival.

0 A: I’ve got a headache.
   B: (You/go and lie down) You’d better go and lie down …………………… .
1 A: The children want to play in the kitchen.
   B: (they/clear everything away)
   Well, …………………… when they finish.
2 A: I think it’s going to rain.
   B: (we/take our umbrellas) Yes, …………………… .
3 A: I’m going to go to bed now. We have to get up very early tomorrow.
   B: (I/go to bed early too) Yes, …………………… .

161
Szükséges, nem szükséges – need, needn’t

1 A need igét akkor használjuk, amikor arról beszélünk, amit meg kell tennünk, de nem mert kötelező, hanem mert szükséges: need + főnévi igenév (pl. to do, to go)

I need to go to the dentist’s.

Egyes szám harmadik személyben (he, she, it) a need ige-s személyragot kap:

She needs to buy some white paint.

Tagadó és kérdő alakiban, valamint rövid válaszban a do segédigét használjuk:

You don’t need to go to the doctor’s.

Mary doesn’t need to buy any green paint.

A: Do you need to go to the dentist’s?
B: Yes, I do. / No, I don’t.

A: Does Mary need to buy any brushes?
B: Yes, she does. / No, she doesn’t.

2 A need igét akkor is használhatjuk, ha arra utalunk, hogy mire van szükségünk. Ebben az esetben a need után tárgy áll:

Mary needs some white paint.
I don’t need a new car.
Does Peter need any help?

That carpet needs cleaning.
(= Azt a szőnyeget ki kell tisztitani.)
My watch needs repairing.
(= Az órámát meg kell javíttatni.)

Figyelem! A need + tárgy szerkezetet magyarrá átalálja a ‘szüksége van valamire’ vagy a ‘kell valakinek valami’ szerkezettel fordítjuk, az angol mondatban a need után következő főnév vagy -ing alak (paint, car, help, cleaning, repairing) a mondat tárgya.

3 Ha arról beszélünk, hogy valamit nem kell megtenni, használhatjuk a needn’t alakot, amely után to nélküli főnévi igenév áll (pl. go, buy). A needn’t és a don’t need to/doesn’t need to jelentése megegyezik:

You needn’t go to the shops. We have enough food.
(VAGY: You don’t need to go to the shops.)
Mary needn’t buy any paint.
(VAGY: Mary doesn’t need to buy any paint.)

Nem használhatjuk a needn’t alakot, ha a mondatban tárgy követi: (pl. your coat): You don’t need your coat. It’s not cold outside.
(= Nem kell kabát. Nincs kint hideg.)
(NEM: You needn’t your coat.)

4 Mölt időben a needed to alakot használjuk:

The room was dirty, so they needed to clean it before they started to paint it.

Tagadás:
The room wasn’t dirty so they didn’t need to clean it before they started to paint it.

Figyelem! A needn’t have + befejezett melléknévi igenév jelentése: ‘nem kellett volna’, ‘felesleges volt’.

We needn’t have lit the fire, because it was a warm evening. (Nem kellett volna befuteni, meleg este volt.)

You needn’t have bought any bread, Jim. There is plenty in the cupboard. (Jim, nem kellett volna kenyeret venned, rengeteg van a szekrényben.)

Gyakorlatok

A Alex Norvégiaba utazik a nyáron, ezzel kapcsolatban kér tanácsot Caroltól, aki tavyál már járt ott. Egészítük ki a párbeszédet a need megfelelő alakkával.

ALEX: 0. I need 1. (I) some advice. What 2. do I need to take?

CAROL: Well, 3. (you/take) warm clothes because it’s like early spring in England.

ALEX: 2. (I/take) gloves as well?

CAROL: No, 3. (you/not) gloves there. But there’s something else you mustn’t forget. 4. (Everybody/buy) something to repel the mosquitoes.

ALEX: OK. What else 5. (I)?

CAROL: Well, you simply must take a camera, but 6. (you/not/take) extra film because they sell films on the boat.

162
Alex: I'm glad you mentioned that. My camera needs to be mended. I must take it to the shop.

8 Alakítsuk tagadóvá a zárójelben megadott mondatokat.
  0 Jane needs to pay Jim today. Jane needn't pay Jim today.
  0 The car needs new tyres. The car doesn't need new tyres.
  1 We need a lot of paper.
  2 Mark needs to get everything ready today.
  3 Mary needs to leave at six o'clock.
  4 Ann needs a new bag.

C Az alábbi táblázatban összefoglaltuk, hogy a Brightside Gimnázium milyen eszközeit biztosít diákjai számára a vizsgákban vagy sportversenyeken való részvételhez.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examinations</th>
<th>The school provides:</th>
<th>The school doesn't provide:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>art exams</td>
<td>paint</td>
<td>brushes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawing exams</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>rulers and pencils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis competitions</td>
<td>balls</td>
<td>rackets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>football competitions</td>
<td>football shirts</td>
<td>shorts and boots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A példa alapján írjuk le, hogy mit kell, illetve mit nem kell a diákoknak magukkal hozniuk az egyes eseményekre.

0 (art exams/paint) Students needn't bring paint for art exams.
0 (tennis competitions/rackets) Students need to bring rackets for tennis competitions.
1 (football competitions/football shirts)
2 (drawing exams/paper)
3 (art exams/brushes)
4 (tennis competitions/balls)
5 (football competitions/shorts and boots)
6 (drawing exams/rulers and pencils)

 ثلاث Használjuk a didn't need to vagy needn't have szerkezetet a megfelelő igével.

0 The programmes didn't cost us anything. We didn't pay for them.
    We didn't need to pay for the programmes.
0 You took your umbrella yesterday but it didn't rain.
    You needn't have taken your umbrella yesterday.
1 Jill paid for her holiday in advance, but it wasn't necessary.
    Jill needn't have taken for her holiday in advance.
2 My sister spoke to Sally yesterday, so I didn't phone her.
    I needn't have spoken to Sally because my sister had spoken to her.
3 We bought extra food but now John and Mary can't come.
    We needn't have bought extra food because John and Mary can't come.
4 Why did you work during the weekend? We don't have to finish until next week.
    You didn't need to work during the weekend.
5 I didn't take my passport with me because an identity card was enough.
    I needn't have taken my passport with me.
1 Nézzük meg a példát:

Jane had to wait an hour for a bus.
A had to wait azt jelenti, hogy Jane azért várt egy óra hosszat, mert nem jött busz.
A had to tehát azt jelenti, hogy azért tettünk valamit, mert szükséges volt.
Ha azt akarjuk mondani, hogy valaki azért nem tett meg valamit, mert arra nem volt szükség, a didn't have to alakot használjuk:
I didn't have to work last Saturday.
Kér désben a do segédigét használjuk: did ... have to:
Did you have to work last Saturday?

2 Nézzük meg a következő példát:

Claire szombaton is jár dolgozni. Mült szombaton beteg volt, ezért akkor nem dolgozott:
Claire should have gone to work last Saturday, but she was ill. So she stayed at home.

A should have (done/gone stb.) azt jelenti, hogy valaminek meg kellett volna történnie, de nem történt meg. Ezzel a szerkezettel kritizálhatunk is valakit. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

Peter nem zárta be a kaput, és a tehenek nem arra a legelőre mentek, ahová kellett volna:
Peter should have closed the gate. (= Peternek be kellett volna zárnia a kaput.)

A shouldn't have + befejezett melléknévi igenév szerkezet arra utal, hogy valami olyan történt, aminek nem kellett volna:
Peter shouldn't have left the gate open. I shouldn't have got angry with Jane.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket had to illetve did ... have to szerkezét és a zárójelben megadott szó használatával.

0 JIM: When you had those stomach pains, ................................ (you) go into hospital?
JOAN: No, I ................................. (not) go into hospital, but I ................................. stay in bed for a week.

1 ALAN: Was there a translation in the exam?
JANE: No, we ................................ (not) translate anything, but we ................................. write three essays.

2 ANN: I was very busy yesterday.
BILL: What ................................. (you) do?
ANN: I ................................. prepare everything for today’s meeting.

3 KEN: ................................ (you) wear a uniform when you were at school?
JEAN: Yes, and we ................................. make sure it was always neat and tidy, as well.

4 TOM: What ................................. (you) do to get your international driving licence?
TINA: I ................................. show the police my national driving licence, but I ................................. (not) take another driving test.

5 MARK: Our children enjoyed their holiday at the summer camp.
MARY: ................................. (they) help at mealtimes?
MARK: Well, they ................................. (not) make the food, but they ................................. help with the washing-up.
A következő mondatokban használjunk *should have* vagy *shouldn’t have* szerkezetet.

0 I didn’t work hard at school.
   *should have worked* hard at school.

0 I left school when I was only 16. That was silly.
   *shouldn’t have left* school when I was only 16.

1 I didn’t get any qualifications. That was a mistake.
   I ……………………………… some qualifications.

2 I started to drink a lot when I was 17.
   I ……………………………… to drink when I was 17.

3 I got married when I was 18, but I was too young.
   I ………………………………. when I was 18.

4 My uncle offered me a job but I didn’t take it. That was stupid.
   I ………………………………. the job that my uncle offered me.

Az alábbi táblázatban a Heathrow repülőtér egyik információs pultjának hétvégi munkabeosztása olvasható.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SATURDAY</th>
<th>SUNDAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On duty</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jenny</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian</td>
<td>ill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joan</td>
<td>ill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A táblázat alapján írjunk mondatokat *had to, didn’t have to* vagy *should have* használatával.

0 (Jenny/Saturday) *Jenny had to work on Saturday.*

0 (Colin/Saturday) *Colin didn’t have to work on Saturday.*

0 (Carol/Sunday) *Carol should have worked on Sunday* but she was ill.

1 (Colin/Sunday) ………………………………. but he was ill.

2 (Joan/Sunday) ………………………………. but she was ill.

3 (Derek/Sunday) ………………………………. but he was ill.

4 (Mary/Saturday) ………………………………. but he was ill.

5 (Brian/Saturday) ………………………………. but he was ill.

6 (Daniel/Saturday) ………………………………. but she was ill.

7 (Joan/Saturday) ………………………………. but she was ill.

8 (Derek/Saturday) ………………………………. but she was ill.
A Tegyünk fel a következő állításokhoz kapcsolódó kérdést.

0 The boys can go. ~ Where can they go?
1 Victor must stay. ~ How long?
2 Sally has to leave. ~ When?
3 Peter should see a doctor. ~ Which doctor?
4 Bill had to pay. ~ How much?
5 Mike might have been at someone’s house. ~ Whose?
6 My sister can play the piano. ~ How well?
7 Molly needs some white paint. ~ How many litres?
8 Terry should have gone to the bank. ~ When?

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat can, can’t, could, couldn’t, will be able to vagy won’t be able to használatával.

0 A couple of years ago Peter couldn’t play the piano at all, but now he can play quite well.
1 Frances speak any foreign languages at the moment, but if she lives in Germany for a couple of years I imagine she speak German.
2 My father was a good runner when he was young. He run twenty kilometres, but now he run more than two or three.
3 You’re pleased that you play for the first team now, but if you don’t train properly, you continue in the first team.
4 My sister hasn’t got much money at the moment so she buy a car, but if she saves, perhaps she buy one next year.
5 My baby brother say several words now, but only a few weeks ago he say a single one.
6 Before I did the cookery course I only make omelettes, but now I make other things.

C Az első oszlopan különböző mondatok első két szava található, a másodikban a mondatok folytatása, de többféle összefüggés lehetséges. Keressük meg az összes helyes változatot, és a megfelelő betűket írjuk a számok mellé.

0 Can I  a see you tomorrow?
1 I can b pass me the salt?
2 Could I c not smoke here.
3 You may d come back next week.
4 You could e help me please?
5 Can you f lend you my CDs.
6 May I g sit next to you?
7 Could you h bring my boyfriend with me?
8 I could i see I was busy.

0...a, a, h ... 1 ... 2 ... 3 ... 4 ...
5 ... 6 ... 7 ... 8 ...
A következő táblázat egy nyári diáltábor szabályait foglalja össze. Egyes dolgokat kötelező betartani, a többi tetszés szerint választható. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat must, mustn’t vagy don’t have to használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compulsory</th>
<th>Optional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At meal times</td>
<td>shirt and shorts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On excursions</td>
<td>packed lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On river trips</td>
<td>life jacket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the morning</td>
<td>have a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At bed time</td>
<td>clean your teeth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 At meal times you ........................ wear a shirt and shorts. On an excursion, you ................... take radios. When there’s a river trip, you .............................. wear a swimming costume.

1 When you go on an excursion, you ................ collect a packed lunch.
2 At meal times you ......................... wear shoes.
3 When there’s a river trip, you ................ take bottles with you.
4 At meal times you ......................... use mobile phones.
5 When you go on an excursion, you ................ take drinks.
6 When there’s a river trip, you ................ wear a life jacket.
7 In the morning you ........................ have a shower.
8 In the morning you ......................... wake others.
9 In the morning you ........................ make your bed.
10 At bed time you ......................... clean your teeth.
11 At bed time you ......................... eat sweets.
12 At bed time you ........................... put the lights out.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a had to vagy should have szerkezettel aszerint, hogy a cselekvés végül megtörtént-e vagy sem.

0 The teacher gave Paul some extra homework last Monday and he did it.
   Last Monday Paul ........................... some extra homework.
0 Last Tuesday Sally had ‘dentist’s’ in her diary, but she didn’t go.
   Last Tuesday Sally ........................ the dentist’s.
1 Last Wednesday Connie needed some coloured paper but she forgot to buy it.
   Last Wednesday Connie ......................... some coloured paper.
2 Last Tuesday Bill got up early because he was going to catch a plane.
   Last Tuesday Bill ......................... up early.
3 Last Saturday Jenny didn’t have enough money to go shopping so she went to the bank first.
   Last Saturday Jenny ......................... to the bank before she went shopping.
4 Last Friday Tim went to renew his passport but he didn’t take his old passport with him.
   Last Friday Tim ........................... his old passport with him.
5 Last Sunday Brian intended to phone his cousin but he forgot.
   Last Sunday Brian ......................... his cousin.
6 The teacher told Sara to finish her essay after school, and she did.
   Sara ........................... her essay after school.
Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket **must, might** vagy **can't have** és a megfelelő ige használatával.

**buy**  **earn**  **give**  **go**  **know**  **live**  **speak**  **take**

0 Vicky has changed her car twice this year. She ......................... a lot of money.

0 A: Where's your brother?
B: I'm not sure. Perhaps he went to the park or he ......................... to the sports club.

1 A: Do you know where that man lives?
B: No, but he ......................... round here because I've never seen him before.

2 A: Did Joe buy a chicken for lunch?
B: Perhaps. Or he ......................... a rabbit. I'm not sure.

3 Joe's umbrella isn't here. He ......................... it with him.

4 A: I work at Bradley's, the sports shop.
B: Then you ......................... my sister, Patty, because she's the manager.

5 A: What are you going to give Robin for his birthday?
B: I'm not sure, but I ......................... him a CD.

6 A: Yesterday I phoned and talked to somebody called Daniel, I think.
B: No, you ......................... to Daniel. He wasn't here yesterday.

Egészítsük ki az iskola tanárai és a diákok képviselői között játszódó párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal illetve kifejezésekkel.

**can** (x2)  **could** (x2)  **couldn't**  **had better**  **have**  **to**  **might**  **have**  **must**  **must have**  **need**  **ought**  **should**  **should have**  **will**  **have to**

**MRS COLE:** Well, it's ten o'clock. 0 **Can** ......................... we begin the meeting?

**CAROL:** Not really, Mrs Cragg, Stephen 1 ......................... be here and he hasn't come to school yet.

**MR KING:** What's happened to him?

**CAROL:** I don't know. I suppose he 2 ......................... be ill or he 3 ......................... missed the bus.

**MRS COLE:** Well, he 4 ......................... come soon or we 5 ......................... begin without him. Oh, he is now.

**STEPHEN:** Good morning everyone! I'm sorry I'm late. I 6 ......................... gone back to sleep after the alarm rang.

**MR KING:** All right. Let's begin. What are the things that we 7 ......................... talk about?

**CAROL:** Well, first there are the showers in the gym. There 8 ......................... be something wrong with them because the water is always cold.

**MRS COLE:** Yes, the men 9 ......................... come last week to repair them, but they phoned to say they 10 ......................... come. I'll phone them again. What else?

**STEPHEN:** Well, there's the question of the bikes. We 11 ......................... to have more places for them.

**MRS COLE:** Well, how big is the problem? 12 ......................... you perhaps give us an exact idea of how many more we 13 ......................... ?

**STEPHEN:** OK. I'll count them and bring the exact figures next time.

**MR KING:** Is there anything else?
STEPHEN: There’s nothing that I \( \text{can give} \) \( \text{think of.} \)

MRS COLE: All right. Thank you for coming. And Stephen, remember! When your alarm rings, you \( \text{can’t be able} \) to get up straight away.

A következő párbeszédben a tanár egy elvégzendő feladatról beszédi diákaival. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott kifejezésekkel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>can give</th>
<th>can be</th>
<th>had better</th>
<th>save</th>
<th>have to</th>
<th>hand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>might do</td>
<td>might forget</td>
<td>must be</td>
<td>must work</td>
<td>mustn’t be</td>
<td>should be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should we wait</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>write down</td>
<td>won’t be able</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TEACHER: I want you to do a project about a visit abroad. You \( 0 \) \( \text{can give} \) the project any title you like, but the project \( 1 \) about a foreign country. That’s the only subject allowed. I want you to describe the things young people \( 2 \) or see during a three-day visit.

SARA: Miss, \( 3 \) questions now or \( 4 \) until later?

TEACHER: I think you \( 5 \) your questions until I’ve finished talking.

SARA: But I \( 6 \) my question.

TEACHER: Write it down and then you won’t forget it. Your project \( 7 \) between five and ten pages long. I \( 8 \) very exact because I don’t know how many pictures you will put in. It \( 9 \) less than five pages. I will return projects which are shorter than this. You will work in groups. Everybody \( 10 \) with one or two other people. \( 11 \) information from the library or from travel agencies, but perhaps the best place to look is on the Internet. But remember that you \( 12 \) the address of anywhere you visit in case you want to go back there later. OK. Any questions?

SARA: When do we \( 13 \) it in?

TEACHER: Good point! By the end of the month, I \( 14 \) to accept any projects after that because next month I’ll be very busy.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1. Annának reggel nyolc óról délután négyig kell dolgoznia.
2. Ki tudná nyílni nekem az ajtót, kérem?
3. Jobban tennéd, ha nem ennél ilyen sokat.
4. Ha beteg vagy, nem kell tornagakorlatokat végezned.
5. Itt nem szabad parkolni, menjünk a másik utcába.
6. Szerintem meg kellene mondanod a mamádnak, hogy eltérted a bőgrét.
7. Nem kellett volna sietnünk, mert a koncert később kezdődött.
10. Több időre volt szükségünk, hogy befejezzük a munkát.
A birtoklás kifejezése – have és have got

1 Nézzük meg a have ige használatát a következő példában:

They always have breakfast at seven o’clock.
(= Mindig hét órakor reggelizünk.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTÁS</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>don’t have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td>doesn’t have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>Do</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>have ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does</td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 A következő mondatban a have got alakot használjuk:

I’ve got three brothers. (= Három bátyjám van.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÁLLÍTÁS</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>have got/’ve got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td>has got/’s got</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAGADÁS</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>haven’t got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td>hasn’t got</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KÉRDÉS</th>
<th>Have</th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>got ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Has</td>
<td>He/she/it</td>
<td>got ...?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 A have és a have got egyaránt használható, ha:

- azt mondjuk, hogy valakinek valamije van:
  We have a house in Spain.
  We’ve got a house in Spain.
  Paul doesn’t have a car.
  Paul hasn’t got a car.
  Do you have any money?
  Have you got any money?

- a családunkról beszélünk:
  Jane has a brother and a sister. (= Jane-nek van egy bátyja és egy nővére.)
  Jane’s got a brother and a sister.

- valaki külsőjét írjuk le:
  She has blue eyes. (= Kék szeme van.)
  She’s got blue eyes.
  Does your brother have long hair or short hair? (= A bátyádnak hosszú vagy rövid haja van?)
  Has your brother got long hair or short hair?

- rossz közérzetről panaszkodunk:
  I have a headache. (= Fáj a fejem.)
  I’ve got a headache.

4 A have (nem have got) alakot használjuk, ha

- ételezésről, szabadidőről/nyaralásról beszélünk, valamint a következő
  kifejezésekben: ‘have a bath’, ‘have a shower’ és ‘have a wash’.

Do you normally have a big breakfast? (= Általában sokat eszel reggélire?)
Have a good holiday! (= Kellemes nyaralást!) I always have a shower before I go to sleep. (= Mindig zuhanyozom, mielőtt lefelekszem aludni.)

5 Múlt és jövő időben a have got szerkezetet nem használjuk:

I had a car but I sold it. (Nem: I had got a car …)

Gyakorlatok

A Anne és Jim kitalálós játéket játszik, a feladvány egy híres házaspár. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a have got szerkezet használatával.

ANNE: 0 Have they got (they) any children?

JIM: Yes, 1. (they) a daughter.

ANNE: And 2. (they) a lot of money?

JIM: 3. (they/not) as much money as Bill Gates.

ANNE: What colour eyes 4. (the man)?

JIM: 5. (he) blue eyes.

ANNE: And 6. (the woman) blue eyes, too?

JIM: I don’t know, but she’s ugly.

ANNE: Then it’s the Clintons. I know you don’t like Hillary!

170
Egészítsük ki a szöveget a have ije állító vagy tagadó alakjával.

It’s nine o’clock on Sunday morning. During the week we 0 have breakfast together at half past seven, but on Sunday my father and I 1 breakfast early, and my mother 2 hers until ten or eleven. Sometimes my parents 3 a swim before breakfast, but if they 4 a swim, then my mother 5 a long bath and my father 6 a shower. I 7 coffee and toast for breakfast, but my father 8 toast. He prefers cereal.

Írjuk le a kérdésekre adható választ a példa alapján. Használjuk a zárójelben megadott kifejezéseket.

0 (got/ I’ve/two brothers)  
A: Have you got any brothers or sisters?  
B: Yes, I’ve got two brothers.

1 (in Edinburgh/ a flat/ she’s got)  
A: Does your sister live in Scotland?  
B: Yes, ...

2 (you/got – have/ a headache?)  
A: What’s the matter?  
B: No, but I feel tired.

3 (blonde hair/ she/ got/ hasn’t)  
A: Jane’s tall and blonde.  
B: No, you’re wrong.

4 (have/ you/do/a holiday every year?)  
A:  
B: No, I don’t.

5 (a car/ I/got/haven’t)  
A: Do you drive to work?  
B: No,  

6 (you/dinner at seven?/ have/do)  
A:  
B: No, we always eat at half past seven.

A következő mondatok közül néhányban hiba van. Írjuk át helyesen a hibás mondatokat, a helyes mondatokat pedig pipáljuk ki.

0 We’ve got a holiday in Mexico every year.  
1 Paul’s got a sister in Scotland.  
2 She is tired but she doesn’t have a cold.  
3 I haven’t got lunch every day.  
4 Have you got a shower every day?  
5 Do you have a headache?  
6 I have got a holiday in Spain every year.  
7 We’ve got a large garden.  
8 I’ve got a bath at ten and I go to bed at eleven.  
9 They have got dinner at eight o’clock.  
10 They’ve got two dogs.  
11 Have got a good weekend!  
12 Have you got a motorbike?

We have a holiday in Mexico every year.  

1
1. Figyeljük meg a make és a do igé használatát a következő mondatokban:

A: What's Jim doing?
B: He's making a cake. (NEM ... doing)
A: What sort of cake is he making?
B: A chocolate cake.
A: What's Helen making?
B: She isn't making anything.
A: What's she doing then?
B: She's reading.

A do jelentése 'tesz/csinál/cselekszik', a make jelentése 'készít'(pl. make a chair/cake).

2. Sok kifejezésben szerepel a make vagy a do igé, nem mindig, mikor melyiket használjuk. Néhány gyakran használt kifejezés amelyekben a make igét használjuk:

- make a complaint (= panaszt tesz)
- make a decision (= elhatároz)
- make a difference (= különbséget tesz)
- make an effort (= erőfeszítést tesz)
- make friends (= összebarátkozik)
- make a journey/trip (= utazást tesz)
- make a meal (= ételt készít)
- make a mistake (= hibázik)
- make money (= pénzt keres)
- make a phone call (= telefonál)

Néhány gyakran használt kifejezés a do igével:

- do your best (= megtesz minden töle telhető)
- do some work (= munkát végez)
- do an exercise (= megsinál egy gyakorlatot/feladatot)
- do some homework (= házi feladatot készít)
- do your hair (= megsinálja a frizuráját)
- do a job (= elvégez egy munkát)
- do the washing-up (= elmosogat)
- do someone a favour (= szíveségét tesz)
- do the cleaning (= takarít)
- do the shopping (= bevásárol)

3. A get igének számos jelentése van. Íme néhány gyakran használt kifejezés:

- get (+ főnév) = receive (kap)
  Did you get any letters today?
  She got a dictionary for her birthday.

- get (+ főnév) = buy, bring (vásárol, hoz)
  I'll get some cheese when I go to the shops.
  Could you get a pen from my desk?

- get to (+ főnév) = arrive at/in (megérkezik)
  What time did you get to the office?

- get (+ melléknév) = become (valamilyené vál)</p>
A Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a make vagy a do igé megfelelő alakjával és a megadott szavakkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>best</th>
<th>favour</th>
<th>difference</th>
<th>effort</th>
<th>decision</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>shopping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>mistake</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ROSE: Would you 0 do .............. me a .............. and 0 do .............. some shopping for me?

ALAN: Yes, OK.

ROSE: Are you all right, Alan? Is something wrong?

ALAN: I have to 1 .............. a .............. about my future. I think I’m going to leave my job.

ROSE: What’s the matter? Aren’t the people nice? Haven’t you 2 .............. any .............. there?

ALAN: Oh, yes. I like the people who work there.

ROSE: What is it then?

ALAN: Well, I think I 3 .............. a .............. when I chose an office job because I have to 4 .............. all the boring .............. , and I don’t like it.

ROSE: When you start, it doesn’t 5 .............. much .............. what kind of company it is. New people often have to 6 .............. a boring .............. at first. You just have to 7 .............. your .............. , and when they see that you are 8 .............. an .............. , then perhaps they’ll offer you something better.

B A get helyett használjunk más igét a következő mondatokban.

0 Mary got a prize for her drawing. → Mary received a prize for her drawing.

1 What time does this train get to London? → What time does this train .......... in London?

2 The noise got louder and louder. → The noise .......... louder and louder.

3 Will you get some fruit when you go to the shops? → Will you .......... some fruit when you go to the shops?

4 We usually get our meat from the supermarket. → We usually .......... our meat from the supermarket.

5 They will get a cheque for the work they did. → They will .......... a cheque for the work they did.

6 In the middle of the day the desert sand gets very hot. → In the middle of the day the desert sand .......... very hot.

D Alkossunk kifejezéseket a get igével és a megadott szavakkal, és a megfelelő alakjat írjuk be a mondatokba.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>confused</th>
<th>divorced</th>
<th>dressed</th>
<th>drunk</th>
<th>engaged</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>married</th>
<th>stuck</th>
<th>washed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 When you’ve finished swimming, get dressed .......... quickly so you don’t get cold.


2 They took their car onto the beach and it .......... in the sand.

3 Don’t go through the woods; follow the road and you won’t .......... .

4 I feel really dirty after walking around the city centre; I must go and .......... .

5 Football hooligans often go to pubs and .......... before the match starts.

6 When people explain things too quickly to me, I often .......... .
Make és let

1 Amikor a make ige után személynév vagy
személyes névmás áll, utána pedig egy
melléknév, akkor azt jelenti a mondat, hogy
valami valakinek valamilyen érzést okoz:

Champagne
make + + NEV/NÉVMÁS + MELLEKNÉV
makes me drunk.

(= A pezsgőtől részeg leszek.)
Azt is ez a szerkezet fejezi ki, hogy valakit
valamilyen cselekvésre késztetünk:

Sad films
make + NEV/NÉVMÁS + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
make me cry.

(= A szomorú filmektől sírök.)
(NEM ... make me to cry.)

Figyelem! Ebben a szerkezetben, amelyet
műveltett szerkezetnek nevezünk, a főnévi
igenév to nélkül áll.

2 Nézzük meg ezt a példát:

The teacher made us do our homework again. (= A
tanár újra megritatta velünk a házi feladatot.)

A make + név/névmás + főnévi igenév
szerkezet azt is jelenti, hogy valakit valamire
kötelezőlünk:

My parents make me tidy my bedroom. (A
szüleim velem takarítatták ki a hálószobáimat.)

Tagadás: They don’t make me wash my clothes.
(= A ruháimat nem mosatják ki velem.)

Kér dés:
Do his parents make him work at home? (= A
szüleinek dolgoztatják otthon?)

3 Nézzük meg a let ige használatát:

They let me stay out late.

(= Megengedik, hogy későig kimerüljünk.)
(NEM ... let me to stay ...)

A let ige jelentése: 'megengedő'.

Tagadó alakja: don’t/doesn’t let.

My parents don’t let me stay out late. (= A
szüleim nem engedik meg, hogy későig
kimerüljünk.)

What do your parents let you do? (= Mit
engednek meg neked a szüleid?)

Figyelem! A let igét to nélkül főnévi igenévvel
használjuk.

4 A let igével engedélyt is kérhetünk:

'I’ve got a new camera.' ‘Oh, let me see!’ (= Hadd
nézzem meg!’)

A: ‘It’s a difficult decision; let me think about it.’
(= Ez nehéz döntés. Hadd gondolkozzam
rajta.)

B: ‘Let me know when you decide.’ (= Tudasd
velem, amikor eldöntötted.)
(NEM Make-me know …)

Let me in! I want to talk to you. (Engedj be!
Beszélne akarok veled.)

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk hasonló értelmű mondatokat make vagy let ige használataival.

0 Derek’s parents don’t let him go to bed late.

Derek’s parents .make him .go to bed early.

1 Ellen’s mum makes her do her homework before she watches TV.

Ellen’s mum ................. watch TV before she does her homework.

2 Lara’s mother doesn’t let her wear short skirts.

Lara’s mother ................. wear long skirts or trousers.

3 Eric’s dad makes him have his hair cut short.

Eric’s dad .................. grow his hair long.

4 Anna’s parents don’t make her come home early at weekends.

Anna’s parents .......... stay out late at weekends.

5 Sam’s parents let him sleep late on Saturdays.

Sam’s parents ............... get up early on Saturdays.
Jenny’s dad makes her drink water with her meals.
Jenny’s dad .......... sweet drinks with her meals.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a make vagy let megfelelő alakjával.

0 I forgot my history book, but Jack .......... me share his.
0 Tom’s mother made .......... him get his hair cut before his job interview.
1 Mary wasn’t at Alan’s party. Her father didn’t .............. her go.
2 Mike is quite lazy, but his wife .............. him help her with the children.
3 Paul’s mother .......... him eat sweets, but she always .......... him clean his teeth afterwards.
4 Peter wanted to give up his piano lessons, but his parents .............. him continue with them.
5 Tom is allergic to cats. If he goes near one it .............. him sneeze.
6 Anne’s boss is very understanding. She .............. her work at home if her children are ill.
7 Cathy’s parents .......... her do lots of things my parents won’t allow me to do!
8 I love onion soup, but peeling the onions always .......... me cry.
9 Janet is very silly sometimes. She can’t understand her maths homework, but she doesn’t .............. anyone help her.
10 Joe was driving badly. So the police stopped him and .............. him take a breath test.
11 I often .......... my best friend borrow my clothes, because she .............. me borrow hers.
12 The police .............. the thieves give back all the money.

Ann fia, David, nem kevés bosszúságot okoz az anyjának. Olvassuk el, amit az anya mond fiának, aztán az aláhúzott részeket írjuk át a példa alapján.

‘Well, first of all 0 you must pay for the window you broke. 0 I’ll give you your pocket money early, so that you can do that. And 1 you must go and apologize to Mrs Rowland. Then 2 you have to tidy your room, because it’s in a terrible mess, 3 and you have to finish your science homework as well. After that, 4 you must do your music practice. 5 You can’t watch any television today. You won’t have time. Then 6 you must show me your homework. 7 You can phone your friends then if you like, but 8 you certainly can’t go out! 9 You’ll have to spend the evening in your room and 10 go to bed early. Are you listening to me, David?’

0 Ann made David pay for the window he broke.
0 She let him have his pocket money early.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a make, do, have vagy get ige megfelelő alakjával. Ügyeljünk a helyes igeidő használatára.

0 He is \textit{making} \ldots a cup of coffee in the kitchen.
0 We \textit{had} \ldots lunch in a very pleasant little restaurant yesterday.
1 She always \ldots excited before her birthday.
2 I always \ldots a bath before I go to bed.
3 We have to \ldots some homework every evening.
4 Yesterday I \ldots a terrible mistake.
5 They \ldots the shopping and then they went home.
6 It always \ldots very hot here during the summer.
7 Could I \ldots a quick phone call, please?
8 Please don't \ldots so much noise.
9 We \ldots a wonderful holiday in Greece last year.
10 How old were you when you \ldots married?

Ezen a listán Anna tegnapi programja látható. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a make, do, have vagy get ige megfelelő alakjaival. Néhány mondatban egynél több megoldás is lehetséges.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.30</td>
<td>Got up. Shower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>Breakfast. (Fruit juice and toast.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.30 - 9.00</td>
<td>Walk to work. Rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.00 - 1.00</td>
<td>Work. Very busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.00 - 2.00</td>
<td>Lunch in office. (Sandwiches,)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.00 - 5.00</td>
<td>Work. Finished everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.30</td>
<td>Shopping. Home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>Pizza for dinner. Washed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.00 - 11.00</td>
<td>TV. Tired. Bed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It was a normal day for Anna yesterday. She got up at seven thirty and she \textit{had} \ldots a shower. Then she \textit{had} \ldots breakfast. For breakfast she \textit{had} \ldots fruit juice and toast. She walked to work. It rained and she \textit{had} \ldots wet. In the morning she \textit{had} \ldots a lot of work. She \textit{had} \ldots lunch at about one o'clock. She \textit{had} \ldots sandwiches for lunch. She \textit{had} \ldots all her work by five o'clock, so she went home. On the way home she \textit{had} \ldots some shopping. She \textit{had} \ldots a pizza for dinner. She \textit{had} \ldots the washing-up and then she watched TV for three hours. By eleven o'clock she felt quite tired, and so she went to bed.
Egészítsük ki a következő kérdés-válasz párokat a make, do, have vagy get ige megfelelő alakjaival.

0 A: Was the film good?
   B: No, I got bored in the middle of it.

1 A: Could you some shopping for me?
   B: Yes, what do you want me to buy?

2 A: Were you pleased by the news?
   B: No, it me very unhappy.

3 A: Was it a warm day?
   B: Yes, but it rather cold in the evening.

4 A: Are you hungry at the moment?
   B: No, I a big meal a couple of hours ago.

5 A: Did he pass the test?
   B: No, he a lot of mistakes.

6 A: Are you ready to go out?
   B: No, I’m not. I want to wash first.

7 A: Could you repair this for me?
   B: Yes, but I can’t until tomorrow.

Keressük meg az első oszlopban lévő mondatok befejezését a második oszlopban.

0 When Jane went to London, she forgot her map
1 Linda fell in love with Paul
2 Kate was at the bus stop when it started to rain
3 Tony woke up half an hour later than usual
4 Mrs Hill’s class made a lot of noise
5 The burglar tried to climb through a small window
6 Peter’s marriage to Julia failed
7 Tim had never tasted whisky before

0 a and he got drunk.
1 b and she got angry with them.
2 c and she got lost.
3 d and they got married.
4 e and they got divorced.
5 f so she got wet.
6 g and he had to get dressed in a hurry.
7 h and he got stuck.

Irjuk át a következő mondatokat has helyett has got használatával, ha ez lehetséges.
Ha nem, húzzunk egy vonalat.

0 Amy has curly hair.
1 James had cornflakes for breakfast.
2 Mary has a bad cough.
3 Tom has two older sisters.
4 Helen has a new CD player.
5 Alice had dinner with her cousins.
6 I don’t have time to read the newspaper.
7 Sam had very long hair when he was a teenager.
8 Do you have enough money for your train ticket?
9 After the football match, Ben had a hot shower.
10 Steve is having a wonderful holiday in Spain.

Amy’s got curly hair.
Használjuk a do, have, let vagy get igét egyszerű múltban a következő párbeszéd kiegészítéséhez. Ahol zárójel is van, a zárójelben megadott szót is tegyük be a mondatba.

TOM: Tell me about life when you were young, Granny.

GRANNY: We had a good time, but we didn't have (not) so many toys and things.

TOM: How (you) to school?

GRANNY: I walked to school.

TOM: And (you) lunch at school?

GRANNY: Every morning my mother some sandwiches and I took those to school.

TOM: And (you) a television and a computer?

GRANNY: No, we a radio, and our neighbours sometimes me listen to their records. But my parents always anything else.

TOM: And what was Christmas like?

GRANNY: Well, we our own Christmas cards and decorations because we (not) much money. On Christmas day we a big lunch, then we the washing up together. Afterwards, we sang songs and played games.

TOM: I don't know how you had a good time without a computer! Mum and Dad me buy a new computer game yesterday. But they me pay for it myself.

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a make vagy do ige megfelelő aljakával.

AMY: How do you share the housework in your family?

DAN: Mum most of the shopping, and she also the washing and ironing. We all some cleaning and we our own beds.

AMY: Who the cooking?

DAN: We all some, but my mother all our bread and cakes. Dad usually the washing up. He always the coffee after meals, too.

Alkossunk mondatokat az adott szavakból a make, do vagy get ige megfelelő aljakával.

0 A: you/any mistakes/in your homework?

   Did you make any mistakes in your homework?

   B: Yes, I made two.

1 A: Amy/any letters/this morning?

   B: Yes, she got two, and a postcard.

2 A: What time/you/usually/to work?

   B: I usually get there at about 8.30.

3 A: you/me/a favour?

   B: Yes, of course I will, if I can.
4 A: When/Helen/a decision/about moving to London?
B: As soon as she finds a flat there.
5 A: your daughter/undressed without help?
B: Yes, she can.
6 A: you/a lot of international phone calls?
B: Yes, I do, because I call my relatives in New Zealand and Canada.
7 A: What/Sue/for her birthday?
B: A new camera and some money to buy clothes.
8 A: Jill and Mick/married soon?
B: Yes, they are. The wedding is next month.
9 A: When/you/the shopping?
B: Whenever I have time. Usually on Saturday morning.

I Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a make vagy let ige megfelelő alakjával.
0 Anne hates all vegetables, but her mother makes her eat some every day.
1 My parents don’t make me do anything that I don’t want to.
2 Kate loves her pet cat so much she makes it sleep on her bed.
3 Why don’t you make your hair grow a bit? You always have it cut so short!
4 Peter wanted to go to work when he had flu, but the doctor made him stay at home all week.
5 John is too strict with his children. He never makes them enjoy themselves.
6 Please make me copy your maths homework! I can’t do it at all.
7 Mum! Look what Sue made me do! She pushed me and I knocked the milk over!
8 Sorry I’m home so late. Mr Jones wouldn’t make us go until the classroom was tidy.
9 Mum! Make Tom give me my pen! He took it and he won’t give it back!
10 My dad was great. As soon as I passed my test he made me drive his car.

J Fordítsuk le a következő beszélgetést. Ahol lehet, használjuk a make igével képzett műveltető szerkezetet.

ROY: Szerencsés vagy! Az én szüleim semmire sem kényszerítenek. Hagyják, hogy későn menjek haza, engedik, hogy dohányozzam, még ihatók is. Milyen borzasztóak a szüleim! Soha nem aggódnak értem!
Speak és talk; borrow és lend; take és bring; carry és fetch

1 Speak és talk (beszél)
A speak igét akkor használjuk, amikor:
► azt mondjuk, hogy valaki a gondolatait előszóval fejezi ki, illetve, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogyan beszél:
   The room was silent. No one spoke.
   Marian speaks very clearly.
► arról a képességről beszélünk, hogy valaki valamilyen nyelven tud vagy azon a nyelven beszél:
   Clare can speak French and Spanish.
► valaki valakivel párbeszédet folytat (~ to someone):
   Could I speak to Mr Smith, please?
► ugyanez formalisabb stílusban:
   I would like to speak to the manager.
A talk igét akkor használjuk, amikor:
► valaki valamit megbeszéli valakivel.
   talk to someone about { something doing something
   I really must talk to Joanne. We need to talk about going on holiday.

2 Borrow (kölcsön kér), lend (kölcsön ad)
A lend ige használata:
lend something to someone
lend someone something
Figyeljük meg a mondatok szerkezetét! Ha az igét a tárgy követi, a részeshatározó előtt to áll. Ha az igé után áll a részeshatározó, nincs előtte to.
I lent Stephen my dictionary because he had lost his. (= Kölcsönadtam Stephennek a szótáramat, mert a sajátját elvesztette.)
A borrow ige használata:
borrow something from someone
Laura borrowed money from the bank in order to start her own business. (= Laura kölcsönt vett fel a banktól, hogy elindítsa a vállalkozását.)

3 Take és bring, fetch és carry
Ezek az igék valami elmozdítását, elvitelét jelentik, de használatuk nagyon különböző.
Hasonlótuk össze:
► A take jelenléte: ‘valamit elviszi valahova’:
   When you go out, could you take this letter to the post office for me?
   A take away jelenléte: ‘valamit valahonnan elviszi’:
   The waiter came to our table to take away our plates.
► A bring jelenléte: ‘(oda)hoz valamit, ahol vagyunk vagy ahova menni fogunk’:
   Mum, can I bring a friend home for dinner?
► A fetch jelentése: ‘valamiért elmegy, hogy elhozza valahonnan’:
   fetch someone/thing from somewhere (= elhoz valakit/valamit valahonnak)
   fetch something for someone (= elhoz valamit valakinek)
   Max usually fetches his son James from nursery at five o’clock. (= Max rendszerint ötkor hozza el a fiát, James-t az óvodából.)
   Az angolban a ‘valakiért elmegy és elhozza’ kifejezhető a fetch vagy a köznyelvben gyakran a (go and) get igével is:
   Max usually (goes and) gets his son James from nursery at five o’clock.
► A carry ige a ‘visz’ fizikai tevékenység jellegét hangsúlyozza, ezért gyakran a ‘cipel’ igével fordítható:
   She was carrying a baby in her arms. (= Egy kisbabát vitt a karjában.)
   Give me a hand! I can’t carry this by myself. (= Segits! Egyedül nem bírom ezt vinni.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészsűk ki a mondatokat a speak vagy talk ige megfelelő alakjával.
0 Luke has got tonsillitis. Yesterday he couldn’t speak at all.
1 James and Sheila aren’t happy in London. They’re about selling their house and going back to Scotland.
2 (On the phone) Could I to Mrs Brady, please?
3 My French teacher was an amazing man. He could ................................ six languages fluently.
4 Pauline ................................... in such a quiet voice, I couldn’t hear what she said.
5 I met my old friend Janet at 6.00, and at 10.30 we were still ................................ !
6 You were on the phone all morning! Who were you ................................ to?

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a lend vagy borrow ígé megfelelő alakjával.

Ben: You know Mike? He just asked if he could ........................ twenty pounds from me.
Nick: You didn’t ...................... him anything, did you?
Ben: No, I didn’t. I made some excuse and said I couldn’t.
Nick: You were right to do that. He ...................... from everyone, you know, and he’s very slow to
pay people back. I ...................... him ten pounds once, and I didn’t get it back for weeks!
Ben: Well, I felt a bit mean. I could easily afford to ...................... him ten pounds. It isn’t very
much, and perhaps he really needs it.
Nick: Not very much? If you’re so rich, can I ...................... ten pounds from you? I don’t get my
allowance from my parents for another week, and I’m really short of money at the moment!

C Keressük meg az összetett mondatok első tagmondatához illő folytatást.

0 Sue always has school lunches a because I’m taking the kids to the dentist’s.
1 Peter has trained his dog well b but Claire takes sandwiches with her.
2 Sharon couldn’t stop coughing c so she brought a computer home from the office.
3 The waiter picked up the heavy tray d he took his girlfriend with him.
4 The next time you come to visit us e I called an ambulance to take him to the hospital.
5 I won’t be at work this afternoon f so Tom fetched a glass of water for her.
6 My mum had a lot of work to finish g he carries his papers in a smart leather briefcase.
7 When Jack went to Paris on business h and carried it carefully to the table.
8 When Steve broke his arm i why don’t you bring your sister with you?
9 The fireman came out of the house j and when he throws a stick, Fido always fetches it.
10 When James goes to his office k carrying an unconscious child in his arms.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a bring, fetch vagy carry ígé megfelelő alakjával.

0 Judy ...................... the children camping in Wales for a few days.
1 When you come to my house, can you ...................... some computer games with you?
2 Philip is very generous. Last time he came to visit, he ...................... presents for everyone.
3 Jenny is ...................... the children from school. She’ll be home soon.
4 Our cat has got three kittens. She ...................... them around the house in her mouth.
5 When you come to my party, would you like to ...................... a friend with you?
6 It’s quite cold today. If you go out, make sure you ...................... your coat.
7 When she went shopping, Kate ...................... plenty of money with her – and spent it all!
8 I have an important letter about your exams for you all. Please remember to ...................... it
home and give it to your parents.
9 When you go into town, could you ...................... my suit from the cleaner’s?
10 When Simon travelled around Europe as a student, he ...................... everything he needed on
his back in an enormous rucksack.
Állapotot jelentő, 'statikus' igék

1 Nézzük meg a következő mondatokat:

A: What does Tom do?
B: He sings in a pop group.

A: What is Tom doing?
B: He's singing with his band.

A cselekvést jelentő, 'dinamikus' igék mind általános (pl. he sings), mind folyamatos (pl. he's singing) szemléletben is használhatóak. A legtöbb ige (pl. sing, teach, study, talk, listen, sit, play stb.) ebben a csoportba tartozik.

Vannak azonban folyamatos alakban nem használható, úgynevezett statikus igék is. Nézzük meg a példákat:

Tom has a motorbike.

Tom likes Mary.

Ezeket az igéket (have/have got, like, know) csak egyszerű alakban használhatjuk:

2 Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak:

- a gondolkodással kapcsolatos igék:

  know (= tud, ismer)
  forget (= elfelejt)
  notice (= észrevész)
  understand (= megért)
  recognize (= felismer)
  remember (= emlékszik)

  I know the answer. (NEM I'm knowing ...)

- az érzelmeket kifejező igék:

  hate (= gyűlől)  like (= szeret)
  love (= szeret)  want (= akar)

  He likes ice-cream. (NEM He's liking ...)

3 Hasonlitsuk össze a következő mondatokat. Az egyikben az ige cselekvést, a másikban állapotot jelöl. A cselekvést folyamatos, az állapotot egyszerű jelenlek fejezzük ki:

look: He's looking at the picture.
(= Nézi a képet.)
He looks tired. (= Fáradtnak látszik.)

taste: John is tasting the soup. (= John megkóstolja a levest.
The soup tastes nice. (= A leves jó ízű.)

feel: She's feeling the material. (= Tapogatja az anyagot.)
I feel cross about the accident. (= Mérges vagyok a baleset miatt.)

have: What's she doing? She's having lunch. (= Mit csinál? Ébrekel.)
What's wrong? I have a headache. (= Mi a baj? Fáj a fejem.)

think: Please be quiet. I'm thinking. (= Kérlek, maradj csendben! Gondolkodom.)
I think you're right. (= Ízem, igazad van.)

Гyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget a megadott igékkel. Ügyeljünk az egyszerű (I eat) és folyamatos (I'm eating) jelen helyes alkalmazására. Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.

listen like sit talk want drink play understand think

Everybody 0 is talking .......... very loudly. Tom 1 .................. near the CD player because he 2 .................. to the music. ‘Who 3 ................. the
1 5. the music, but I don’t 6. the words very well,
Judy says. At the end of the song, Judy says, ‘Are you thirsty, Tom? 7. you a drink?’ ‘Yes, a glass of orange juice, please,’ says Tom. ‘I never
8. beer or wine.’

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával (egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen).
0 I ........................... (not/understand) that sign over there. What ........................... (it/mean)?
1 Paula and Jack are in the sitting room. They ........................... (listen) to the news, and
Paula ........................... (look) at a magazine as well.
2 Tim ........................... (like) his new shoes; they ........................... (fit) him perfectly.
3 JUNE: Look! That woman ........................... (sit) in your chair.
BARRY: It ........................... (not/matter). I can sit over there.
4 This computer is very expensive. It ........................... (cost) more than £3000, but the price
........................... (include) five CDs.

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakból egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen használatával.
0 ALAN: (You/wear/your coat. /you/go/out?)
   You’re wearing your coat. Are you going out?
JANE: (Yes,/I/go/the shops. /I/need/some more paint.)
   Yes, I’m going to the shops. I need some more paint.
1 ADAM: (you/recognize/the woman in this photo?)
   .................................................................
SUSAN:(you/mean/the woman who/look/straight at the camera?)
   .................................................................
2 MARK: (Hello, David. Why/you/stand/here? /you/wait/for me?)
   .................................................................
DAVID: (Yes, I/want/to speak to you.)
   .................................................................
3 JAMES: (Listen to the engine. /you/think/it’s all right?)
   .................................................................
FIONA: (It/sound/all right, but it/smell/of oil.)
   .................................................................

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tastes</th>
<th>is tasting</th>
<th>feels</th>
<th>is feeling</th>
<th>thinks</th>
<th>is thinking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
0 A customer ........................... some curtain material.
1 She’s smiling because she ........................... about her boyfriend.
2 The cook ........................... the soup now.
3 This material ........................... very soft.
4 This cake ........................... delicious.
5 Pamela ........................... English is an easy language to learn.
Igei kifejezések – phrasal verbs (1) (go with, put on, get up)

1 Az igék egy mellettük álló másik szóval (határozószóval vagy előjárószóval) gyakran úgynevezett 'phrasal verb' kifejezést alkotnak, melynek jelentése eltér az önállóan álló ige jelentésétől (pl. go with, put on, get up).

2 Az ige + határozózó vagy előjárószó szerkezet (pl. go with, put off) jelentése nem feltétlenül következetethető ki a két szóból, amelyből a kifejezés áll. Például a go on jelentése: 'folytat'. Az igei kifejezések jelentését célszerű szótárban ellenőrizni.

3 Nyelvtanilag különböző 'phrasal verbs' fajták léteznek:

   ▶ Első csoport:
   The police are looking for the criminal. (= A rendőrség keresi a bűnözőt.)
   The police are looking for him. (= NEM The police are looking him for.)
   A look for szerkezet igéből és előjárószóból áll, ilyenkor a tárgy (the criminal, him) mindig az igei kifejezés után áll. Hasonló, gyakran használt szerkezetek:

   - go with (= vele jár)
   - break into (= betör)
   - look into (= megvizsgál valamit)
   - come across (= véletlenül találkozik)
   - look after (= gondoskodik róla)
   - call for (= felszólít valamire)
   - get at (= kritizál)
   - join in (= csatlakozik)

   ▶ Második csoport:
   She put on a hat. (= Felvett egy kalapot.)
   She put on the hat.
   She put it on. (NEM She put on it.)
   A put on kifejezés tárgya a hat, illetve az it. Ha a mondat tárgya névnap (me, you, her, him, it, us, them, one, some, any), akkor az a kifejezés igéi és határozószói része közé kerül; ha főnév, akkor tehetjük akár az ige (put a hat on), akár az egész kifejezés után (put on a hat). Ilyen, gyakran használt szerkezetek még:

   - bring back (= visszahoz)
   - work out (= kidolgoz)
   - put on (= felvész - ruhát)
   - fill in (= kitölt - kérdőívét)
   - take off (= levesz - ruhát)
   - put away (= eltesz)
   - hand in (= benyújt)
   - rub out (= kiradíroz)
   - look up (= kikeres)
   - turn down/off (= lehalkít, kikapcsol)
   - turn up/on (= felhangosít, bekapcsol)

   ▶ Harmadik csoport:
   I usually get up at seven o’clock. (= Rendszerint hét órákor keleken fel.)
   A harmadik csoportba azok a szerkezetek tartoznak, amelyek után nem állhat tárgy:

   - get away (= meglóg)
   - get back (= visszatér)
   - go out (= kijut)
   - go on (= folytat)
   - go off (= távozik)
   - get off/on (= leszáll, felszáll)
   - come round (= átjön)
   - hold on (= vár)
   - get up (= felkel)

   Figyelem! A 'phrasal verb' sajátossága az is, hogy egy a szókapcsolatnak számos jelentése lehetséges, a zárójelben megadott jelentés csak egy a lehetséges jelentések közül.

   ▶ Negyedik csoport:
   I’m really looking forward to my holiday. (= Nagyon várom a nyaralásomat.)
   Ebbe a csoportba azok a három szavas kifejezések tartoznak, amelyeknél az ige és a határozózó után mindig áll előjárószó, és azzal együtt – természetesen – tárgy:

   - look forward to (= valamit örömmel vár)
   - get on with (someone) (= kijön valakivel)
   - come up with (= előáll valamivel)
   - look up to (= tisztel valakit)
A  Egészítsük ki a következő párbeszédet a megadott ígei kifejezésekkel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go out</th>
<th>come round</th>
<th>join in</th>
<th>turn down</th>
<th>get back</th>
<th>call for</th>
<th>get off</th>
<th>look after</th>
<th>put on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Frank: Ann, ₀ turn down the music a bit. I want to tell you something.

Ann: What is it?

Frank: Tom has just phoned to say that he is ¹ here with his children, Jane and Michael. He wants us to ² them while he goes to the shops in town.

Ann: We don’t have to stay at home, do we? I’m going to the sports club with Sally. She’s ³ me at eleven o’clock.

Frank: No, you can ⁴ if you like. But it’s cold; are you going to go on your bike?

Ann: Yes, but I’ll ⁵ some warm clothes.

Frank: OK, Jane and Michael can go there on the bus. I’ll tell them where to ⁶.

And when you’re at the club, can you let Jane and Michael ⁷ your games?

Ann: Don’t worry. We always have a good time together.

Frank: Good, but remember to ⁸ by one o’clock, so we can have lunch.

B  Helyettesítsük az aláhúzott szavakat a megfelelő ígei kifejezéssel. Használjunk szótárt, ha szükséges.

brought back | get away | went off | fill in | get at | hold on | look up | put away | rubbed out

₀ How did the prisoners escape?  get away

₁ If you want a passport, you must complete this form.

₂ Wait! I’m coming.

₃ I can’t reach the books at the back of the cupboard.

₄ The bomb exploded just before midnight.

₅ The teacher erased the words that were wrong.

₆ You can consult the meaning of the words in a dictionary.

₇ Has Philip returned the books that he borrowed?

₈ At the end of the day the children stored their toys.

C  Egészítsük ki a kérdésekre adott válaszokat a kérdésben szereplő ígei kifejezés megfelelő alakjával és a zárójelben megadott névmással. Ügyeljünk a helyes szórendre.

₀ A: Where did you come across that old bicycle?

B: (it) I ₀ came across it in my grandfather’s garage.

₀ A: Have you taken your shoes off?

B: (them) Yes, I’ve ₀ taken them off.

₁ A: How did the thief break into your house?

B: (it) He ₁ using a hammer.

₂ A: Can you turn the bedroom lights off, please?

B: (them) Yes, I’ll ₂ in a minute.
A: Have the students handed in their homework?
B: (it) Yes, they’ve all ......................................................... .

A: This maths problem is difficult. I can’t work out the answer.
B: (it) No, I can’t ............................................................... either.

A: Do you think this tie goes with my shirt?
B: (it) Yes, it ................................................................. very well.

A: Who looks after your dogs when you are away on business?
B: (them) My neighbour ...................................................... .

Carol took off her gloves.
Carol took her gloves off.

I came across this chair in a second-hand shop.

Simon joined in the singing.

The ball got stuck high in a tree, and we couldn’t get at it.

It’s hot in here. Shall I turn down the heating?

Could you look up ‘trivial’ in your dictionary, please?

I really don’t think a brown jacket goes with grey trousers!

The lesson is over. It’s time to put away your books.

It’s cold this morning. I think you should put on a scarf.

Quick! Rub out that drawing before the teacher comes in!

Someone broke into our office last night and stole the computers.

To open a bank account, you have to fill in this form.

Egészítsük ki a következő párbeszédeket a megadott ígei kifejezésekkel.

look up to go out join in look after look into go off look forward to get on with hold on put away come across

0 A: How do you get on with Martin?
B: Fine. I’ve always found him very friendly and sociable.
A: Is Amy starting university?
B: Oh yes. She can’t wait to get there!

A: Where did you get that hat? It’s great!
B: I came across it on a market stall, when I was actually looking for a belt.

A: What did you do last Saturday night?
B: Nothing much. I didn’t. I just stayed in and watched TV.

A: Are you ready? We’ll miss the train if we don’t go soon!
B: I’ll be ready in two minutes!

A: Do you like Mr Arnold?
B: I don’t like him, but I’m afraid of him. He’s a brilliant teacher.

A: I feel awful! I think I must be getting the flu. And I’ve got an important meeting today.
B: Don’t worry. Go home and let me everything here.

A: Did David enjoy his first day at school?
B: Yes, he did. His teacher said he all the activities, and had fun.

A: What happened to your local MP? Wasn’t he involved in some scandal?
B: Oh, haven’t you heard? The police are his financial affairs.

A: It looks as if summer is over. It’s quite cool today.
B: Yes. Time to the barbecue until next year!

A: I love the fireworks on Bonfire Night, don’t you?
B: No! Every time one with a loud bang, I jump out of my skin!

Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat az alábbi igéi kifejezések alkalmazásával. Mindegyiket csak egyszer használjuk.

- get back
- come across
- get up
- look up to
- look after
- put on
- look forward to
- take off
- go away

0 Egy konferencián Peter egy régi barátjával, akit sok éve nem láttott. 
At a conference Peter came across an old friend who he hadn’t seen for many years.

1 Sarah fivére, Mark felé, a nővérére. Csdálja, és nagyszerűnek tartja.

2 David nagyon érthettnek a bulióból, így másnap reggel nem tudott időben felkelni.

3 Amikor elmegyek házi régét, mindig a szomszédok vigyáznak a házra.

4 Alice nagyon várja a tizenhatodik születésnapját. Az összes barátját meghívta a születésnapi bulijára.

5 Amikor megjöttem, levette az ingem és pólot vettem fel.
Igei kifejezések – phrasal verbs (2) (get over, call off, grow up)

Ahogy az előző fejezetben láttuk, a 'phrasal verb' elnevezésű szerkezetek nyelvtani szempontból négy csoportba oszthatók:

1. Igéből és előjárósóból álló szerkezet, ahol a tárgy mindig az ige kifejezés után áll:

   *This book belongs to Ingrid.* (= Ez a könyv Ingridé.)
   *It belongs to her.*

   Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak még:

   - **call at** (= rövid időre megáll valahol)
   - **call on** (= beugrik valakihoz)
   - **consist of** (= valamiből áll)
   - **deal with** (= megold valamit, foglalkozik valamivel)
   - **get over** (= túlteszi magát valamin)
   - **go over** (= áttekint valamit)
   - **head for** (= valami felé tart)
   - **keep off** (= távol tartja magát valamitől)
   - **laugh at** (= kinevet)
   - **lead to** (= valamihez vezet)
   - **look through** (= alaposan átnéz)
   - **make for** (= elindul valami felé)
   - **pay for** (= kifizet)
   - **see to** (= gondoz)
   - **stand for** (= jelent)
   - **take after** (= hasonlít valakire)
   - **think of** (= gondol valakire/valamire)

2. Igéből és határozószóból álló szerkezet, ahol a tárgy az ige vagy az egész kifejezés után áll:

   *Tim cleaned up the mess.* (= Tom feltakarította a piszkiot.)

   *Tim cleaned the mess up.*

   Ha a tárgy személyes névmás, akkor csak az ige és a határozószó között állhat:

   *Tim cleaned it up.* (= Tim tisztította fel.)

   (NEM *Tim cleaned up it.*)

   Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak még:

   - **bring up** (= említi)
   - **call off** (= lemond egy eseményt)
   - **call out** (= szólít)
   - **carry out** (= kivitelez)
   - **clear up** (= feltakarít)
   - **find out** (= megtud pl. titkot)
   - **pick up** (= felvesz)
   - **put off** (= elodáz)
   - **put up** (= elszállásol)
   - **sort out** (= elintéz)
   - **take up** (= beletölt valamibe)
   - **throw away** (= kidob)
   - **try on** (= felpróbál)
   - **wash up** (= elmosogat)

3. Igéből és határozószóból álló szerkezet, amely után nem áll tárgy:

   *Where did you grow up?* (= Hol nőttél fel?)

   Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak még:

   - **call out** (= felkiált)
   - **clear up** (= kitisztul)
   - **dress up** (= felöltözik)
   - **find out** (= kitalál)
   - **get through** (= végére ér)
   - **give in** (= megadja magát)
   - **run away** (= elszalad)
   - **set off** (= útnak indul)
   - **shut up** (= befogja a száját)
   - **stay in** (= otthon marad)
   - **wash up** (= elmosogat)

   * A csillaggal jelölt kifejezések tárgyas változatban is előfordulnak – ilyenkor a 2. csoportba tartoznak.

4. Az ige és a határozószó után mindig áll előjárósózó, és azzal együtt tárgy:

   *I can’t put up with all this noise.* (= Nem tudom elviselni ezt a lármat.)

   A negyedik csoportba tartoznak még:

   - **catch up on** (= behoz lemaradást)
   - **catch up with** (= utolér)
   - **get away with** (= megőriz valamit)
   - **go out with** (= együtt jár valakivel)
   - **live up to** (= megfelel az elvárásnak)
Gyakorlatok

A zárójelben megdott szót tegyük a megfelelő helyre a mondatban.

0 (to) This book belongs to Ingrid. I'd better return it to her.
1 (it) There was a lot of rubbish but Mr Brown cleaned up.
2 (her) My mother was eccentric and my sister takes after her.
3 (for) It was getting dark so the scouts headed for the nearest village.
4 (it) Everyone said the project would be difficult but they carried it out without any problems.
5 (them) I know their parents died when the children were young, so who brought them up?
6 (away) What did you do with that magazine? Did you throw it away?
7 (up) What's your hat doing on the floor? Pick it up!
8 (it) I like this dress. Can I try it on?
9 (at) My sister laughed at all the jokes.
10 (with) My colleague deals with complaints.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott ígeli kifejezésekkel úgy, hogy jelentésük az első mondatéhoz hasonló legyen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>check in</th>
<th>find out</th>
<th>get over</th>
<th>give out</th>
<th>look out</th>
<th>pick up</th>
<th>put up with</th>
<th>stand for</th>
<th>take up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 Has your mother recovered from her cold?
   Has your mother got over her cold?
1 Be careful! You almost stepped on my foot.
   ...! You almost stepped on my foot.
2 How did you discover that they were married?
   How did you find out that they were married?
3 What do the initials NATO mean?
   What do the initials NATO stand for?
4 They started practising yoga in India.
   They gave up yoga in India.
5 When you arrive at the hotel, you have to register.
   When you arrive at the hotel, you have to check in.
6 I'm not prepared to tolerate bad behaviour.
   I'm not prepared to put up with bad behaviour.
7 I'll collect the children on my way home from work.
   I'll pick up the children on my way home from work.
8 Molly, can you distribute the papers. Two per person.
   Molly, can you give out the papers. Two per person.
Kate and Jane had to study a lot so they usually stayed in during the week, but at the weekend they always tried to go out. One weekend they decided to go camping, but it rained so hard that they had to (it) for a week. The weather wasn’t very good in the first part of that week, but it on Friday, and on Saturday it was fine. They after breakfast and got a train going to Ripon. From Ripon they Pateley Bridge, about fifteen kilometres away. When they reached Grantley, which was about half way, they Ellen Eastwood, a distant cousin of Kate’s. Ellen was very pleased to see them and offered to (them) for the night. They accepted, but decided to go on to Pateley Bridge and then come back in the afternoon. When they got back, Ellen had found some old photograph albums and they all the funny clothes and the hairstyles from the old days. Then they talked and talked. Kate things about her grandparents that she didn’t know before – apparently they had to to get married. (Her parents had never told her that.) But it wasn’t just Ellen who talked; she wanted to the lives of Kate’s family in York, so Kate told her everything about her parents and her two brothers.

0 When you leave a hotel, you usually have to before midday.
   a) call off    b) check out    c) run away    d) sort out

1 They say the new goalkeeper is very good. I hope he his reputation.
   a) makes for    b) takes up    c) goes out with    d) lives up to

2 Jason in a children’s home.
   a) brought up    b) tried on    c) stayed in    d) taken up

3 Do you want a lift in my car? Where are you?
   a) going over    b) heading for    c) picking up    d) getting through

4 You start walking. I’ll you in a few minutes.
   a) catch up with    b) lead to    c) get over    d) pick up

5 She’s very obstinate. Once she’s decided something, she won’t .
   a) take after    b) give in    c) find out    d) look through

6 When it’s a carnival time, everybody has to .
   a) put on    b) set off    c) dress up    d) call out

7 It rained in the morning but in the afternoon it .
   a) cleared up    b) got over    c) cleaned up    d) got through

8 We’ll have to decide this week. We can’t until next week.
   a) keep it off    b) deal it with    c) call it out    d) put it off
Néhány diák a félév végére tervezett összejövetelt beszéli meg. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a megadott kifejezések megfelelő alakjával. Ügyeljünk a zárójelben lévő névmások elhelyezésére.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call out</th>
<th>clear up</th>
<th>deal with</th>
<th>dress up</th>
<th>get away with</th>
<th>go over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pay for</td>
<td>pick up</td>
<td>put up</td>
<td>shut up</td>
<td>think of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PETRA: OK. As you know, we have to organise the end-of-term party. First we have to think of a theme, like monsters or cartoon characters or something because everybody likes to at these parties.

COLIN: I vote for monsters. I want to be a monster.

PETRA: All right, you can be a monster, Colin. Then someone has to make posters and (them) so that everybody knows the date and the theme.

CERRY: I can (that). I’m good at drawing.

PETRA: OK. Then we need someone to collect money from everybody who’s coming.

LAURA: I’ll do that. Collecting money’s my hobby!

PETRA: All right, but you also have to order the food and (it) out of the money you collect.

LAURA: Oh, dear. I thought that I would just collecting the money.

PETRA: Then we usually borrow musical equipment from the sports club, so we don’t need to pay anything there. But we need somebody to collect it.

FRANK: No problem. I’ll (it) in my new car.

KEN: The oldest new car in the world!

FRANK: Oh! You’re just jealous!

PETRA: All right, all right. As you know, we always have a bingo competition, so we need someone to the numbers.

FRANK: How about Ken? He’s got a big mouth.

KEN: Thanks for the compliment. OK, I’ll do it.

PETRA: Right. And now for the best bit. We need some volunteers to everything at the end.

EVE: Everyone can help to do that.

PETRA: Yes, I suppose so. All right, let’s everything again so that it’s clear ...

Forditsuk le a mondatokat a megadott igei kifejezések segítségével. Mindegyiket csak egyszer használjuk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call at</th>
<th>consist of</th>
<th>go out with</th>
<th>grow up</th>
<th>lead to</th>
<th>live up to</th>
<th>look through</th>
<th>throw away</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Jack beugrott a postára, hogy bélyeget vegyen.
2. Az új filmsorozat öt részből áll.
3. Minden lapot átnéztél ma reggel?
4. Vidéken vagy városban nőttél fel?
5. Tim nem tud eleget tenni a szülei elvárásainak.
6. Peter az összes régi lemezet kidobta.
7. Ez az út a tengerpartra vezet?
8. A növérem egy ismert újságíróval jár.

191
A főnevek többes száma – plural nouns (cats, men); one / ones

1 A főnevek többes számában általában -s végződést kapnak:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM (+ -s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a cup</td>
<td>some cups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one student</td>
<td>three students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the cat</td>
<td>the cats</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Írásban -s, -ss, -sh, -ch vagy -x végződésű főnevek, valamint egyes -o-ra végződő főnevek többes számában -es végződést kapnak:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ -es</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiss</td>
<td>kisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td>wishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>matches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Mássalhangzó + -y-ra végződő főnevek -ies végződést kapnak:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>families</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- A főnev végén álló f-ből többes számban gyakran v lesz:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-f/-fe → -ves</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Egyes főnevek többes száma rendhagyó:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>man</th>
<th>men</th>
<th>tooth</th>
<th>teeth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>women</td>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>people</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>feet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A többes számmal kapcsolatos további információ az A táblázatban, a 360 oldalon található.)

3 One és ones

A főnev megismétlése helyett a one névmást használhatjuk:

I need a pen. Have you got one? (= Szükségem van egy tollra. Neked van (tollad)?

Our house is the one with the red door. (= A mi házunk az a piros ajtajú (ház).)

Többes számú főnévre a ones névmással utalhatunk:

Do you like red apples or green ones? (= A zöld almát szereted vagy a pirosat?)

These biscuits are cheaper than those ones. (= Ezek a kekszek olcsóbbak, mint azok.)

4 Kérdő mondatban gyakran használjuk a Which one ...? (= melyik?) és a Which ones ...? (= melyek) alakot:

ASSISTANT: Which one would you like, the black dress or the white one?

MARY: I’d like the black one, please. (= A feketét kérém.)

JIM: I like the black and white photographs. Which ones do you like? The black and white ones or the colour ones?

SUSAN: I prefer the colour ones. (= Nekem jobban tetszenek a színesek.)

Gyakorlatok

A Írjuk a képek alá a megfelelő főnev többes számú alakját.

1 Some boxes
2 Two bananas
3 Some
4 Three
5 Some
6 Some
7 Four
Some  Three  Two  Two

B Pipáljuk ki a helyesen írt többes számú alakokat és húzzuk át a hibásakat.

| knives ✓ | tooths | matches | wishes | matches | citys |
| cities | men | countries | potatoes | teeth | familys |
| wishes ✓ | tomatos | mouses | wives | wives ✓ | potatoes |
| countrys | tomatoes | mans | mice | knifes | families |

C İrjuk át a zárójelben megadott mondatokat úgy, hogy a főnevet a one/ones névmással helyettesítsük.

0 He’s got a new suit.
   (It’s a blue suit.) It’s a blue one.

0 A: Who is your favourite actor?
   B: (The actor that I like best is Bruce Willis.) The one that I like best is Bruce Willis.

1 I want a glass of orange juice.
   (Do you want a glass of orange juice?)

2 The chocolate cakes are popular.
   (But the strawberry cakes are nicer.)

3 A: Which house do you like?
   B: (I like the house with the red door.)

4 Tom has a blue carpet in his room.
   (Emma has a green carpet in her room.)

5 English is a difficult language.
   (There isn’t an easy language.)

6 A: Where are the photos?
   B: (Do you mean the photos of the wedding?)

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszödét a one/ones névmással.

ELLEN: Here’s the china department. We need some cups.
ERIC: Do we want large 0 ones or small 1 ones?
ELLEN: Small 2 are best.
ERIC: But I like tea in a large cup.
ELLEN: OK, put six small cups and a large 3 in the basket.
ERIC: What about a teapot? There’s a metal 4 and a nice china 5 . Which 6 do you like?
ELLEN: I prefer the china 7 .
ERIC: It’s similar to the little cups but it’s not like my big 8 . Now, we also need knives.
ELLEN: Can’t we use the 9 that my mother gave us?
ERIC: Well, I suppose the big 10 for bread is all right, but we certainly need some little 11 for vegetables and a sharp 12 for meat.
ELLEN: All right. Where are the knives?
Megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek – countable és uncountable nouns

1 A legtöbb főnévnek egyes és többes számú
   alakja is van:

   house/houses  dog/dogs  man/men

Ezek megszámlálható főnevek.

one house   two dogs   three men

Az a, some és the névelő használható a
megszámlálható főnevek előtt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a:</td>
<td>a house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the:</td>
<td>the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some:</td>
<td>some houses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Más főneveket általában nem tehetünk többes
   számba:

   water  bread  petrol  rain  tennis

Ezek megszámlálhatatlan főnevek (ld. 360. old. B táblázat).

Nézzük meg az alábbi képeket:

rain
(megszámlálhatatlan)

cars
(megszámlálható)

Az a névelő vagy számnév nem állhat
megszámlálhatatlan főnév előtt, de a the és a
some igen:

a:  We need to buy bread and sugar.

some:  Stop here. We need some petrol.

the:  Look at the rain!

3 Az alábbiakban néhány megszámlálhatatlan
   főnevet sorolunk fel azokkal a kifejezésekkel
   együtt, amelyekkel „megszámolhatjuk” ezeket:

   a (bottle  carton) of  water

   a cup of  tea
   milk

A some megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevekkel egyaránt használható:

some apples,  some water (ld. 73. fejezet).

Vásárlásokor ezek előtt a főnevek előtt a
grams/kilos/litres stb. szavakat is
használhatjuk:

Can I have two litres of milk, please?

4 Egyes főnevek egyaránt lehetnek megszámlálhatóak
   vagy megszámlálhatatlanok, aszerint,
   hogy milyen jelentésben használjuk azokat:

MEGSZÁMLÁHLATATLAN

I like tea. (=Szeretem a teát.)

Her hair is red. (=Vörös haja van.)

I haven’t got time. (=Nincs időm.)

I always have sugar in my tea. (=Cukorral iszom a teát.)

MEGSZÁMLÁHLATÓ

I’d like two teas, please. (=Két CSÉSZE teát kérek.)

Three sugars in my tea, please. (=Három KOCKACUKROT kérek a teámba.)

There’s a hair in my tea. (=Egy HAJSZÁL van a teámban.)

We always have a good time on holiday. (=Nyaraláskor mindig jól érezzük magunkat.)

Figyelem! A have a good time kifejezés
jelentése: ’Jól érzi magát, jól szórakozik.’
A Tegyük az a vagy some szavakat a következő főnevek elé.

0. a house 7. information 15. warm water
1. some bread 8. toast 16. big city
2. holiday 9. bird 17. good news
3. cinema 10. grass 18. Indian tea
4. luggage 11. trains 19. boring film
5. socks 12. musician 20. thick book
6. school 13. spaghetti 21. good advice
7. homework 14. ideas 22. tall woman

B Válasszuk ki a megfelelő lehetőséget a szöveg kiegészítéséhez.

Welcome to Chatsworth House. I'm going to lead this tour of the house and give you 0 an/some information about the history of the house. Let's start in the famous Dining Room, which George V and Queen Mary visited in 1933. For 1 a/- dinner, the King and Queen ate 2 a/- beef from Scotland and 3 a/- small pig from a local farm, and drank 4 a/some wine from France and Italy. The beautiful cloth on the table is made of 5 the/- best Lancashire cotton. To your left, you can see that the legs of 6 the/- little table in the corner are made of 7 a/- glass. Finally, on the wall by 8 the/a window, there is 9 a/some painting by 10 the/- Dutch painter, Van Dyck.

C Egészitsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a (x2)</th>
<th>bottle</th>
<th>cartons</th>
<th>cup (x2)</th>
<th>pieces</th>
<th>slice (x2)</th>
<th>some (x3)</th>
<th>the (x4)</th>
<th>two (x3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. My father has .a................. motorbike.</td>
<td>1. After school I have a ................. of bread with ................. butter on it.</td>
<td>2. Tom has got three ................. of luggage.</td>
<td>3. Sue always has a ................. of coffee after lunch.</td>
<td>4. For this experiment we need a glass ................. with ................. water in it.</td>
<td>5. We want ................. coffees, please – one white and one black.</td>
<td>6. We must stop at a garage and put ................. petrol in ................. car.</td>
<td>7. How much is ................. bottle of Coke at ................. supermarket?</td>
<td>8. There are two ................. of milk in ................. fridge.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1. A poggyszom az autóban van.
2. Tudsz adni egy papírt és egy ceruzát?
3. Citromot és két kanál cukrot kérek a teámba.
4. Tojást és sajtot kell vennünk.
5. Ebben a könyvben popzenével kapcsolatos tudnivalók vannak.
6. Van egy rossz hírem a számodra.
7. Kaptál házi feladatot holnapra?
8. Nem sok víz van az asztalon.
10. Sally gyakran kőlát iszik, miközben a házi feladatot írja.
1 Hasonlitsuk össze az a és az an használatát:

- Az a határozatlan névelőt mássalhangzóval kezdődő szavak előtt használjuk (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l stb.):
  - a doctor
  - a big car
  - a girl
- az a névelőt használjuk azok előtt a szavak előtt is, amelyek u-val kezdődnek, és kiejtésük megegyezik a you szó kiejtésével, valamint az eu kezdetű szavak előtt:
  - a university
  - a European city

- Az an határozatlan névelőt magánhangzóval kezdődő szavak előtt használjuk (a, e, i, o, u):
  - an apple
  - an interesting film
- az an névelőt használjuk azok előtt a szavak előtt is, amelyek néma h-val kezdődnek.
  Hasonlitsuk össze a következő két szót:
  - an hour (a kiejtése azonos az our szó kiejtésével, az ilyen h-t nevezzük néma h-nak.)
  - a house (ebben a szóban a h nem néma, tehát a névelő a)

2 Hasonlitsuk össze az a/an és a the névelő használatát:

- MARY: I've got a CD player and a TV in my room.
- JOE: Is the TV big?
  - a TV (= egy tévé, itt említek először)
  - the TV (= az a bizonyos tévé, amit Mary az előző mondatban említett)

- A a/an határozatlan névelőt használjuk, ha egyik beszélő sem tudja, konkrétan kíről vagy miről van szó:
  - There's a man at the door.
- A the határozott névelőt akkor használhatjuk, ha mindkét beszélő számára nyilvánvaló, kíről vagy miről van szó.
  - Do you like the new film by Steven Spielberg?

3 Az a/an névelőt használjuk:

- árak, sebesség és gyakoriság megnevezése előtt:
  - It costs £2 a litre. (= Literenként két font.)
  - He drives at ninety miles an hour! (= Őránként kilencven mérfölddel hajt.)
  - I go to the gym twice a week. (= Ketszer egy héten megyek a tornaterembe.)
- a hundred, a thousand és a million számnevek előtt:
  - a hundred people
  - a thousand days
- ha valaki foglalkozásáról beszélünk:
  - I'm a bank manager.

A the névelőt használjuk:

- ha az említett dologból vagy személyből csak egy van:
  - May I turn on the TV? (= Bekapcsolhatom a tévet? – csak egy tévé van)
  - The Queen is visiting our school today. (= Ma a királynő meglátogatja az iskolánkat.)
- ha azt mondjuk, hogy valaki valamilyen hangszeren játszik:
  - I play the guitar. (= Gitáron játszom.)
  - Jane plays the violin. (= John hegedűl.)
  - Figyelem! A hangszer neve előtt nincs előljárószó: nem: I play on the guitar.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a vagy an határozatlan névelővel.

0 My father's got a new car.
1 It's an old film.
2 This is an interesting book.
3 They've got a house in Spain.
3 It's a cheap restaurant.
4 He's an Italian businessman.
5 The journey takes an hour.
6 We've got a black cat.
7 I want to buy an umbrella.
8 Maths is a difficult subject.
B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a vagy an határozatlan névelővel és a megfelelő szókapcsolattal.

0 Steven Spielberg is ..........................................................
1 Tokyo is ..............................................................
2 Heathrow is ..........................................................
3 The Ganges is ...........................................................
4 Oxford is .............................................................
5 A BMW is .............................................................
6 Spain is ...............................................................

C Ian Brent biztosítást szeretne kötni, ezért kereste fel Mike Cox, a biztosítótársaság képviselőjébe. Egészítsük ki a párbeszéd szövegét a, an vagy the névelővel.

MR COX: Hello, my name is Mike Cox. I am from 0. the ........................................... insurance company. I have 0. a .................................. form with some questions. Your name is Ian Brent. Do you have 1. ................. middle name?

MR BRENT: Yes, my full name is Ian Stanley Brent.

MR COX: All right. Now, where do you live, Mr Brent?

MR BRENT: I live in 2. ........................................... house in Peckham.

MR COX: Peckham, I see. And what is your job?

MR BRENT: I’m 3. ................. scientist. I work for 4. ....................... government.

MR COX: Do you work in 5. ....................... laboratory or in 6. ............................. office?

MR BRENT: I work in 7. ............................. small office in 8. ............................. centre of London.

MR COX: And how do you get to 9. ............................. office from Peckham?

MR BRENT: I usually take 10. ............................. underground.

MR COX: What is your salary, Mr Brent?

MR BRENT: Well, I earn almost £35,000 11. ....................... year.

MR COX: Now, your family. You’re married, aren’t you?

MR BRENT: Yes, and we have two children, 12. ....................... girl and 13. ....................... boy. 14. ....................... girl is sixteen and 15. ....................... boy is fourteen.

MR COX: Fine. And you want to take out 16. ....................... insurance policy for £100,000.

MR BRENT: Yes, that’s right.

MR COX: Well, that’s all. Can you sign 17. ....................... form here at 18. ....................... bottom?

D A következő mondatokban nem mindig a megfelelő névelőt használták. Húzzuk át a helytelenül használt névéket és írjuk melléjük a helyes megoldást, a hibátlanokat pedig pipáljuk ki.

0 I’m not sure what she does, but I think she’s a ............................. doctor.
1 I see the ............................. thousand different things when I am on holiday.
2 Be careful! That perfume costs £100 a ............................. bottle.
3 Please invite Ben to your party. He plays a ............................. piano and a ............................. guitar.
4 A: What does John do?  
   B: I’m not sure, but I think he’s the ............................. teacher in a school.
5 She likes to drive at the ....................... hundred miles an ....................... hour.
6 I play the ....................... violin in an orchestra. They pay me £50 the ....................... day!
7 A: Is my handbag in the living-room?  
   B: No, it isn’t. I think it’s in a ............................. kitchen.
A névelő (2) – articles (a, an, the)

1 Az a/an határozatlan névelő használata:
   ➤ egyes számban álló főnevek előtt:
      He was reading a book.
   ➤ személyek vagy tárgyak leírása előtt:
      They have a beautiful house.
      John is an old friend of mine.
   ➤ a What + a/an + főnév felkiáltásban:
      What a beautiful day! (= Micsoda szép nap!)
   (Az a/an használataéra vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók a 71. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 A the határozott névelő használata:
   ➤ egyes és többszámú számán álló főnevek előtt:
      the book the books
   ➤ megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt
      (pl. music, water, food, education):
      The water is in the fridge.
   Figyelem! A megszámlálhatatlan főneveknek nincs többszámú, és az a/an határozatlan névekt sem használjuk megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt.
   ➤ A the névlet akkor használjuk, ha teljesen egyértelmű, kírő vagy miről van szó:
      Anna likes music, but she doesn’t like the music that John plays.
      Mike's gone to the shops.
      I must go to the bank/the station/the airport.
   ➤ ha valamiből csak egy van:
      the River Thames the Atlantic
      the Himalayas the USA
      (Egyéb tudnivalók a 71. fejezetben találhatók.)

3 Nem használjuk a the névlet
   ➤ többszámú számú álló főnevek (pl. vegetables) és megszámlálhatatlan
      főnevek (pl. education, music) előtt, amikor ezekről a dolgokról általánosságban
      beszélünk:
      Do you like vegetables? I think education is very important.
   ➤ feladatok száma és oldalszámok előtt:
      Do Exercise 3 on page 29. (= Vegezd el a 29. oldalon a 3. feladatot.)
   Használjuk viszont sorszámok neve előtt:
   Do the third exercise.
   ➤ Nem használjuk sem az a/an, sem a the névlet nyelvege megnevezése, étkezése
      neve, városok, a legtöbb ország és a legtöbb utca neve előtt, valamint
      repülőterek, állomások, önállóan álló
      hegyiségek és tavak neve előtt sem:
      She speaks Spanish.
      She lives in Amsterdam in Holland.
      What time will lunch be?
      from Heathrow Airport to Oxford Street
   ➤ Nincs névele a közlekedési eszközök neve
      előtt sem:
      by car/taxi/bus/plane/air
   Figyelem: ha a car főnév előtt az in
      előljárósó áll, akkor ki kell tennünk a the
      névlet: I came in the car/in my car.
   ➤ Ha a What ...! kezdetű felkiáltásban többes
      számú főnév vagy megszámlálhatatlan
      főnév van, az a/an névlet nem
      használhatjuk:
      What disgusting food!
      (= Micsoda undoritó étel!)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget a/an vagy the névelővel, ahol szükséges.

Home and school: In our class 0 the ................. teacher lives in 0 a ................. house, but all the
students live in 0 .................... flats. Many students have 1 ................. breakfast at home but one or
two make 2 ................. sandwich and eat it on 3 ................. way to school. Some students walk to
school, but many take 4 .................... underground and some come by 5 ................. car.

Interests: Everybody goes to 6 .................... cinema – some students see 7 ................. films two or
three times 8 .................... week. Everybody likes to listen to 9 ................. music and most people
listen to 10 .................... radio for 11 .................... hour or more every day.

Ambitions: Some students want to study 12 .................... science at 13 .................... university; some
want to find 14 .................... job, and one wants to be 15 .................... artist.
What kind of the food can you choose if you miss your plane and have to spend a night at a Heathrow hotel? I suggest that you leave an airport, and take a look at the local restaurants.

'Apollo' is twenty minutes from the airport by taxi, and is a Greek restaurant that belongs to a local family. They also have the pasta, and other international food.

The food on the menu outside looked good and I decided to have a Greek salad, and then a steak. I normally have a dinner at about eight o'clock, but it was then about nine. I was looking forward to a glass of wine and some bread. The number sixteen on the wine list looked interesting – a red wine from the Mexico. I ordered a bottle of water as well. (It was £2.00, which is quite cheap these days in UK restaurants.)

When it arrived, the food was good. The first course, the salad, was fresh and delicious. And steak was even better. So, if you spend a night at Heathrow, try 'Apollo'.

Egészítsük ki a pároszédet a/an vagy the névelővel, ahol szükséges.

MIKE: Is Maria a student at your college?
ROSIE: No, she's old friend of mine.
MIKE: What does she do?
ROSIE: She's computer programmer. She's not English, you know. She comes from Brazil, but she lives in USA.
MIKE: Has she got job there?
ROSIE: Yes, she works for big company there.
MIKE: Do you write letters to each other?
ROSIE: Yes, I've got letter from her here.
MIKE: What does she say in letter?
ROSIE: She says that she has nice apartment in centre of Chicago.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1. Van egy könyvem az elefántokról.
2. Árulnak bort az állomás mellett lévő boltban?
3. A zene nagyon fontos az Egyesült Államokban.
4. Félek a kutyáktól, főleg a nagy kutyáktól.
5. Az ebédet az étkezőben szolgálják fel.
6. A kertben zöldség és gyümölcs is van, a gyümölcseit megesszük, de a zöldséget eladjuk.
7. A film fantasztikus volt, a színészek pedig csodálatosak.
8. Sally irodalmat tanul az egyetemen.
A/an, some, any, no, none

1. Nézzük meg az alábbi ábrákat:

   - A pen
   - Some pens
   - Some food
   - No food

2. Az a/an névelőt egyes számban álló, megszámítható főnevek előtt (pl. pen, car, friend) használjuk:
   - I need a pen.
   - Do you have a car?
   - He doesn't have a friend. (= Nincs egy barátja sem.)
   - (A megszámítható és megszámíthatatlan főnevekre vonatkozó tudnivalók a 70. fejezetben találhatók.)

3. A some és any határozatlan névmás után a megszámítható főnevek többes számban állnak (pl. pens, friends, books):
   - I've got some new pens.
   - John doesn't have any friends.
   - Do you have any books about Africa?

4. A some és any határozatlan névmást megszámíthatatlan főnevekkel is használjuk – ezeknek természetesen ilyenkor sincs többes számú alakja (pl. money, information, advice, news, music, coffee, milk, toast, bread, food, water, snow stb.):
   - I haven't got any money.
   - (= Egyáltalán nincs pénzem.)
   - Is there any snow on the mountains in summer?
   - I would like some coffee, please.

5. ÁLLITÁS

   Állító mondatokban általában a some használatos:
   - She's got some photos of her baby.
   - I'd like some information, please.

   Állító mondatban az any jelentése
   - 'akármelyik', 'bármelyik':
   - You can leave at any time.
   - Take any book.

6. TAGADÁS

   Tagadásnál az any vagy a no névmást használjuk:
   - We haven't got any eggs. VAGY
   - We've got no eggs.
   - There isn't any milk. VAGY
   - There is no milk.

   Tagadó mondatban az any és a some jelentése különböző:
   - I don't like any fruit.
   - (Semmiféle gyümölcstől nem szeretek.)
   - I don't like some fruit.
   - (Néhány gyümölcstől nem szeretek.)

7. KÉRDÉS

   Kérdésben általában az any névmást használjuk:
   - Do you speak any Russian?
   - (= Beszélsz valamennyi oroszul?)

   Kérdő mondatban akkor lehet some, amikor a kérdésre igenlő választ várnunk:
   - Can you give me some information?

   Kínáláskor mindig a some használatos:
   - Would you like some coffee?

8. A some és any határozatlan névmás önállóan, tehát főnév nélkül is állhat, Tagadáskor a not … any szerkezet vagy a none névmás használható (NEM RE):

   - We don't need to buy cheese because there's some in the fridge.
   - We need to buy eggs because there aren't any in the fridge. (VAGY: because there are none in the fridge.)

Gyakorlatok

A. Tom és Tina vásárlási listát készít. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a: a/an, some, any, no, none szavakkal.

   TOM: We haven't got any……….. eggs so we need to buy some………..

   TINA: No, no. There are 1…………… in the fridge, but there's 2…………… cheese.
TOM: OK, cheese. Now, we’ve got 3 fruit in the sitting room but we haven’t got enough for the weekend so we need to buy 4 more. What else?
FINA: We want to have 5 salad for lunch, I think.
TOM: Yes, of course. So we need 6 lettuce. Oh, and 7 tomatoes because there are 8 in the kitchen.
FINA: We must buy 9 bottle of oil as well.
TOM: OK, and I want to buy 10 newspaper because there’s 11 football match on TV this afternoon but I don’t know what time it starts.
FINA: But there are 12 football matches today because the weather is so bad. We can go and see 13 film instead.
TOM: Oh, all right. Anyway, are there 14 more things to put on the list?
FINA: No, I think that’s everything. I hope you’ve got 15 money because I haven’t got 16.
FINA: OK. Put 17 coat on and get 18 shopping bag and we’re ready.

B Alakítsuk tagadóvá a mondatokat not ... any használatával.
0 We’ve got some photos of our holiday.
   We haven’t got any photos of our holiday.
1 I can give you some advice.
2 There are some good films at the cinema this week.
3 There is some cake in the cupboard.
4 Miriam has some heavy luggage to take to the airport.
5 There are some letters for you today.
6 There is some snow on the mountains this morning.

C Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.
1 Szomjas vagyok. Adj egy kis vizet, légy szíves!
2 Van valami könyved Afrikáról?
3 Nincs itthon kenyér, és nincs keksz.
4 Van testvéred? ~ Hányom nővérem van, de fiútestvérem nincs.
5 Általában szeretem az embereket, de néhányat nem szeretek.
6 Kaphatsz néhányat ezekből a fényképekből.
7 Vasárnap egyáltalán nincs vonat.
8 Tiszta ingre van szükségem, de nincs a szekrényben.
9 Nincs pénzünk itthon, és nincs a bankban sem.
10 Piritóst akarok készíteni. Van régi kenyerünk?
11 Van szótárad? ~ Igen, van itt néhány.
12 Nem tudtunk bélyeget venni, de vettünk borítékokat.
A Pötoljuk a hiányzó a/an határozatlan névelőt.

0 An ............... hour is .................. long time.
1 Take ................. umbrella. ~ It’s OK, I’ve got ................. hat.
2 Please take ................. piece of fruit. Would you prefer ................. orange or ................. banana?
3 ................. interesting programme is on TV tonight. It’s about ................. island in the Indian Ocean.

B A következő mondatpároknál az egyik mondatból az a/an, a másikból pedig a the hiányzik. Pötoljuk a névelőket.

0 ‘Mary’ is ................. girl’s name.
   ‘Mike’ is .................. name that my parents gave me.
1 Batsford is ................. town where my uncle lives.
   Winchester is ................. town in the south of England.
2 Trains don’t stop here because ................. station is closed.
   Almost all towns have ................. railway station.
3 My sister wants to write .................. book about her favourite hobby.
   ................. books in the library are very old.
4 If you don’t know how to get somewhere, ask ................. policeman.
   I know .................. police officer whose photo was in the paper.
5 A German family lives in ................. house next to ours.
   My cousin can’t find ................. house to buy anywhere.
6 ................. woman behind you is Ann’s mother.
   At work I sit next to .................. woman with beautiful red hair.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a/an vagy the névelővel, de csak akkor, ha szükséges.

0 On Sunday we get up late and have ................. lunch in ................. garden.
1 Do you grow ................. vegetables in your garden? I prefer them to ................. flowers!
2 Now she’s a star, she owns ................. beautiful house, overlooking ................. Pacific.
3 Over ................. hundred people share the big prize every week.
4 The hospital charges visitors one pound ................. hour for parking. How scandalous!
5 I’m late when I go to work by ................. bus. So I take ................. car.
6 I love ................. music, especially rock, but I like ................. dance music as well. My
   favourite instrument is ................. guitar.
7 Jenny’s brother is ................. economist. He lives in Leeds and teaches at .................
   University of South Yorkshire.
8 What ................. beautiful mountains there are in Wales – but what ................. terrible
   weather!
9 I think ................. exercise is very important. I run several times ................. week and play
   ................. tennis whenever I can.
10 Please turn to ................. page 40 and look at ................. exercise 3.
Tegyük a zárójelben lévő főneveket többes számába.

0 I live in the same street as Mary. Our (family) ________ are friends.
1 I need a new set of kitchen (knife) ____________
2 Can you name all the (country) ____________ of the European Union?
3 In the story, the old witch gives the girl three (wish) ____________
4 Please get half a kilo of (tomato) ____________ and a couple of small white (loaf) ____________ when you go out.
5 There aren’t many (fish) ____________ left in some parts of the ocean.
6 The dentist checks my (tooth) ____________ and gives them a polish.
7 I wait for half an hour, and then two (bus) ____________ come along together!
8 (City) ____________ can be difficult places to bring up (child) ____________ in.
9 Pack the (box) ____________ carefully. The (watch) ____________ are fragile.
10 More (man) ____________ work as secretaries, and more (woman) ____________ become managers these days.
11 These days, a lot of couples go to football (match) ____________ . Men don’t always go without their (wife) ____________ or girlfriends.
12 James treads on Diana’s (foot) ____________ when they dance.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az a névelővel, ahol szükséges.

0 Can you get me ____________ tea, and get ____________ lemonade for Sue?
1 Would you like ____________ coffee? Have you got ____________ time for one?
2 Kate has ____________ long dark hair.
3 Do you take ____________ sugar in your tea?
4 We always have ____________ great time at Mike’s New Year’s Eve party.
5 Oh, disgusting! Look, there’s ____________ hair in my soup!

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a/an vagy the névelővel.

0 A: Have Ann and Mark got any pets?
   B: Yes, they’ve got ____________ dog and ____________ cat.
   A: Does ____________ dog like ____________ cat?
1 A: This is ____________ interesting book.
   B: Who’s ____________ author?
   A: Jane Sinclair – you know, she’s ____________ woman who has her own show on TV.
2 A: Have you got ____________ ruler that I can borrow?
   B: I’ve got ____________ plastic one and ____________ wooden one. But ____________ wooden one is broken.
   A: Well, lend me ____________ plastic one then, please.
3 A: ‘Heartache’ is ____________ wonderful film.
   B: Who is ____________ director?
   A: Bob Pine. He’s ____________ great film director.
4 A: Why is ____________ earth hot at ____________ equator?
   B: Because that is ____________ part of ____________ earth that is close to ____________ sun.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

piece  bottle  some  cup  spoonful  glass  slice

0 I have a ............... of cake with my coffee every morning.
1 Alan has a very interesting ............... of news to tell you.
2 We need to stop at the next garage and buy ............... petrol.
3 Remember this ............... of good advice.
4 Every morning, the milkman leaves a ............... of milk outside my front door.
5 I’ve got ............... useful information for you about your exam.
6 A ............... of honey with hot water and lemon juice is good for a cold.
7 Would you like ............... coffee? I usually have a ............... at about this time.
8 I can’t come out tonight. I’ve got an important ............... of homework to hand in in the morning.
9 You don’t look at all well. Would you like a ............... of water?
10 For a quick snack, I often have a ............... of milk and a ............... of cheese on toast.

Használjuk a some, any vagy no határozatlan névmást a mondatok kiegészítésére.

0 Do you go to ............... museums or art galleries when you travel?
1 Have you got ............... money? We need to buy ............... food.
2 I’ve got ............... bad news for you. There are ............... trains today because of the drivers’ strike.
3 Do you speak ............... Arabic? Try to learn ............... before you go to Cairo.
4 The refugees are in a desperate situation. A lot of them haven’t got ............... food, and there’s ............... clean water in the area.
5 Let me give you ............... advice. Don’t just take ............... job. Wait until you find the right one.
6 It’s January and there isn’t ............... snow. So there’s ............... skiing for us!

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a/an vagy the névelővel.

0 Can you tell me the way to ............... bus station, please?
1 I’ve got ............... new mobile phone. It’s much better than ............... old one.
2 A: Would you like to go to see ............... film tonight?
   B: Yes, I’d love to see ............... new one by Tarantino.
3 I need to find ............... bank. Is there one anywhere near here?
4 There’s ............... great show on at the theatre. It’s ............... latest musical by Andrew Lloyd Webber.
5 Can I borrow ............... suitcase from you? ............... big one with wheels would be best.
6 Can I turn ............... radio on? I want to hear ............... six o’clock news.
7 Joanne doesn’t like ............... man in ............... library.
8 ............... Queen lives in Buckingham Palace.
Sue és Judy egy kirakat előtt áll. Egészítsük ki beszélgetésüket a one/ones névmás használatával.

SUE: Oh look! I like those trousers!

JUDY: Which ones? The loose, baggy trousers?

SUE: No. The tight, black trousers. What do you think?

JUDY: Not bad. They'd look good on you.

SUE: What about you? Don't you want a new jacket?

JUDY: Well, sort of. I really need a new one. I'd like those leather ones. They've got on the rail over there.

SUE: Go in and try them on, then.

JUDY: There's no point. I haven't got that much money!

Egészítsük ki a szöveget a következőkkel: some, one/ones, no, none, a/an, any, the – de csak ott, ahol szükséges.

A lot of my friends have a pet. Of them have big dogs and others have small cats. I have other friends who prefer cats, but of these friends have as well because, as everybody knows, cats and dogs are not good friends. I have a Alsatian dog; her name is Queenie because she's very clever dog; for example, she always knows when it's time for lunch. She has her food on the big plate in the kitchen; she eats all sorts of food but, like all big dogs, she prefers meat, and obviously if we give her bone, she likes it to be a very big bone. My mother says that Queenie has bad habits. For example, Queenie wakes my mother every morning. But this is because there's food in the garage, so in the morning Queenie is hungry. But I say that with a lovely dog like Queenie, you must forgive bad habits that she has.

Válasszuk ki a zárójelben megadott szavak közül a megfelelőt.

(A – azt jelenti, hogy az adott helyre esetleg semmit sem kell beírni.)

I like ice-cream, especially the Italian kind.

(A/Some) men have smelly feet.

The line is closed. (Any/No) trains come this way nowadays.

We need to buy bread.

I always have milk in my coffee.

Waiter! There are two hairs in my soup.

Margaret's teacher at a university in Spain.

We play tennis three times a week.

The River Arno rises in the Apennines.

In general Peter likes the music but he doesn't like jazz.

There are excellent shops in Regent Street.

The museum has many Italian paintings but it doesn’t have any Italian.

Can you give me some information, please?
A személyes névmás alanyi és tárgyi alakja – I és me

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALANY</th>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>saw Peter and Paul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>saw them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mary helyett használhatjuk a she személyes névmást (alanyi), Peter and Paul helyett állhat them (tárgyi).

2 A személyes névmás alakjai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>9 me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>10 you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>11 him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>12 her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>13 it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>14 us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>15 you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>16 them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Az angol mondatban mindig van alany. They are coming. (NEM: Are coming.) (= Jönnék.)

Előljárósző után a személyes névmás tárgyi alakját használjuk:
I play tennis with her. (= Vele teniszezem.)

3 Figyeljük meg a személyes névmások alanyi illetve tárgyi alakjának használatát a következő párbeszédben:

Sue: Hello, 10 I think I know you. 2 You’re John’s brother, Tom. I sometimes see you together. I’m Sally’s sister.

Tom: Oh, how is she? I don’t often see her.

Sue: She’s fine. And how’s John?

Tom: He’s OK. He’s studying biology. He likes it but he says it’s difficult.

Sue: What do you both do at the weekends? We often play tennis. You can have a game with us if you like.

Tom: It’s fine for me, but I’m not sure about John. He’s got exams soon. They’re next week, I think, and he’s studying hard for them. I must ask him first.

Sue: OK, give me a ring tonight.

4 Az it névmással egyrészt élettelen dolgokra vagy állatokra utalhatunk, másrészt pedig ügynevezett "személytelen alanyaként" használhatjuk, például amikor időjárásról, időről, a hét napjairól, távoliságról beszélünk:

I’m studying economics. It’s a difficult subject. It’s hot today. (NEM: There is/We have hot today.) It’s four o’clock. It’s Tuesday. It’s the third of April. It’s 200 miles to York. Look at that bird! It’s eating the bread.

Gyakorlatok

A írjuk át a következő mondatokat úgy, hogy az aláhúzott mondatrészek helyett személyes névmást használjunk.

0 Helena and I are in the same class. I like Helena a lot.

   We are in the same class. I like her a lot.

1 Richard is the best student. A lot of people ask Richard for help.

2 The other students don’t work as hard as me. I work a lot harder than the other students.

3 The other students and I have exams soon. Are you and your class taking any?

4 David and I sometimes behave badly. The teacher sometimes gets angry with David and me.

5 Our course is quite hard. Some people won’t finish the course.
A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat személyes névmásokkal.

0. I........... see him........, but he........ doesn't see me.........
1. I........... see ..........., but ........... doesn't see ............
2. ........... sees ..........., but ........... doesn't see ............
3. ........... see ..........., but ........... don't see ............
4. ........... see ..........., but ........... doesn't see ............
5. ........... sees ..........., but ........... don't see ............
6. ........... see ..........., but ........... don't see ............
7. ........... see ..........., but ........... don't see ............

James magáról és a családjáról beszél. Egészítsük ki a szöveget személyes névmásokkal.

Hi! 0. I........... 'm James and 1........... live in Australia. 2........... I've got two brothers. 3........... 're called Pete and Mike. My mother works at the hospital. 4........... is a doctor. My father works in a sports shop. 5........... works very hard. The shop makes a lot of money, and 6........... 's always full of people.

A következő mondatokat a személyes névmás tárgyi alakjával (me, you stb.) egészítsük ki.

On Saturdays I work for my father. I help 7........... in the shop, and he gives 8........... some money. On Sundays we go to the beach. We have two dogs, and we take 9........... with us. We also take a ball and they play with 10........... while we swim.

Ezeket a mondatokat pedig a személyes névmás alanyi vagy tárgyi alakjával egészítsük ki.

At the moment I'm at university. I'm studying business. 11........... 's an interesting subject. Two of my schoolfriends are at university with 12........... . Our teachers are good but 13........... give 14........... a lot of work to do. Next week 15........... are all taking our first exams. I want to get good marks in 16........... .
A birtokos névmás – possessive pronouns
(my, your; mine, yours)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:
   *This car belongs to me.* (= Ez az én autóm.)
   *It’s my car.* (= Ez az én autóm.)
   *It’s mine.* (= Ez az énem.)

2 Nézzük meg a táblázatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A SZEMÉLYES</th>
<th>JELZÖI</th>
<th>ÖNÁLLÓ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NÉVMÁS</td>
<td>BIRTOKOS</td>
<td>BIRTOKOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÁRGYI ALAKJA</td>
<td>NÉVMÁS</td>
<td>NÉVMÁS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 `s`
   Az aposztrőf (``) + s főnévhez járul, és birtokviszonyt jelöl. Magyarázata:
   `-nak a ...`, `-nek a ...`
   *Mike’s house.* (= Mike-nak a háza.)

   - Egyes számú főnevek + `s`:
     *Where is Tom’s bike?* (Tom kerékpárja)

   - Rendhagyó többes számú főnevek (pl. men) + `s`:
     *Have you got the children’s books?*
     (A rendhagyó többes számú főnevek a 69. fejezetben találhatók.)

   - Szabályos többes számú főnevek után (pl. teachers) + `s`:
     *Figyelem! A többszám -s jele után nem áll még egy s, csak az aposztróf.*
     *We have eight children. This is the boys’ bedroom.*

3 **my, your** stb.

   - A jelzői birtokos névmást (**my, your** stb.) főnévevel együtt használjuk:
     *my book* __his hands__ __their house__

     Figyelem! A magyarban nincs jelzői birtokos névmás. A birtokviszonyt taldalékkal (a szó végéhez toltott birtokjelével) fejezzük ki (könyvem, könyved stb.).

   - A jelzői birtokos névmás egyes szám harmadik személyben a birtokos neméhez igazodik:
     *Sara and her husband.* __Tony and his wife__

   - Testrészek neve előtt is a birtokos névmást használjuk:
     *Mary has hurt her foot.* (NEM: ... _the foot_)
     (= Mary megütötte a lábat.)

     Figyelem! A magyarban a birtokos személyét hangsúlyozzatjuk, ha a birtokot jelőlő szó elé személyes névmást teszünk (az én könyvem, a te könyved stb.) – az angolban erre nincs lehetőség.

4 **mine, yours** stb.

   - Az önálló birtokos névmást (**mine, yours** stb.) a jelzői birtokos névmás + főnév szerkezet helyett használjuk:
     *My flat is in the centre of town. Where’s yours?* (yours = your flat)

   Az önálló birtokos névmás után nem állhat főnév.

6 **Az `s** birtokos végződést általában csak előlényeket jelentő főnevekhöz tehetjük. Élettelen dolgoknál az of birtokos szerkezetet használjuk:
   *The boys’ room.* (NEM: _The room of the boys_)
   *The end of the film.* (NEM: _The film’s end_)

   Amikor azt mondjuk:
   I’m going to the newsagent’s, the baker’s stb.,
   valójában arra gondolunk: ‘the newsagent’s shop/the baker’s shop’.

7 Birtokos névmás előtt névelőt (a/an/the) nem használunk:
   *It’s a my bag.*
   *It’s the ours.*
   Those books are the Tom’s.

   A friend, colleague, relative, cousin, uncle, aunt stb. szavakat a következő szerkezetben is használhatjuk: a/an + főnév + önálló birtokos névmás (vagy tulajdonnév + `s):
   *Mary is a friend of mine.*
   *The winner was a cousin of Alan’s.*

8 Vigyázat! Az its és az it’s nem ugyanaz:
   I’ve got a new dog. Its name is Pluto.
   (Its = birtokos névmás, az övén)
   *It’s cold today.* (It’s = It is)

208
Gyakorlatok

A Használjunk jelzői (my, your stb.) és önálló (mine, yours stb.) birtokos névmást a következő mondatokban.

0 This car belongs to me.
1 That ticket belongs to you.
2 These shoes belong to her.
3 This house belongs to them.
4 These cups belong to us.
5 Those books belong to him.

This is .......... car.
That’s .......... ticket.
These are ............ shoes.
This is ............ house.
These are ............ cups.
Those are ............ books.

It’s .......... mine
It’s ............
They’re ............
It’s ............
They’re ............

A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat jelzői (my, your stb.) és önálló (mine, yours stb.) birtokos névmás használatával.

0 Those are .......... keys.
1 That book is ...........
2 These pens are ...........
3 That’s .......... money.
4 This bike is ...........
5 That ruler is ...........

6 This is ............. car.
7 Those are ............ sandwiches.
8 Is this bag ........... ?
9 Those photos are ...........
10 This is ............. camera.
11 Is this ............ watch?

B Irjunk mondatokat az’s birtokos és a this is illetve these are szerkezet használatával.

0 This umbrella belongs to Sue.
0 These books belong to the students.
1 These keys belong to Peter.
2 This football belongs to the boys.
3 This house belongs to my teacher.
4 These bikes belong to my sisters.
5 This room belongs to the children.
6 This chair belongs to the manager.
7 These suitcases belong to Mark.
8 These bags belong to the women.
9 This radio belongs to Joan.

This is Sue’s umbrella.
These are the students’ books.
A mutató névmás – demonstrative pronouns
(this, that, these, those)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:  
*This* exercise is difficult.  
*These* are very expensive!  
What is *that*?  
Can you see *those* birds?

2 Egyes és a többes számú alakok:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>this</em> car (= ez)</td>
<td><em>these</em> cars (= ezek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>that</em> car (= az)</td>
<td><em>those</em> cars (= azok)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A mutató névmást általában főnévvel együtt használjuk (pl. *this painting, those apples*):  
*I like* *this* painting.  
*Those* apples are delicious.

A mutató névmás akkor állhat főnév nélkül, amikor a szövegösszeefügghetőből egyértelmű, hogy mire utalunk:

Egy diák épp most fejezte be a házi feladatát, és azt mondja a barátjának:  
*That* was easy! (*That* = a házi feladat)

Mike az édesanyját várja az állomáson.  
Feleremli a csomagait, és azt mondja:  
*These* are heavy! (*These* = a csomagok)

3 A *this* és *these* névmás hozzánk közel lévő, a *that* és *those* pedig távolabb lévő dolgokra mutat:  
Nézzük meg a képeket:

4 Ugyanígy használjuk a *this/these* illetve *that/those* mutató névmást az időben közeli (pl. éppen most történő) illetve távoli eseményekkel kapcsolatban:

John (egy koncerten):  
*Some of these* songs are beautiful.  
John (a koncert után):  
*Some of those* songs were beautiful.

---

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat *this* vagy *these* mutató névmással.

0 I’d like to buy ........................ book, please. How much is it?
1 Could you tell me where ................. bus goes, please?
2 ................. questions are difficult. Could you help me?
3 ................. are mine. Yours are on the table.
4 ................. is wonderful! I love a hot bath after work.
5 Have you got some cheaper pens? ................. are very expensive.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat *that* vagy *those* mutató névmással.

6 Look at ................. clouds. I’m sure it’s going to rain.
7 Did you enjoy ................. film? I thought it was boring.
8 Let’s cross the road. ................. taxi is free.
9 ................. flats are all very expensive, because they’re in the centre of town.
10 ................. was beautiful! I was so hungry.
Nézzük meg ezt a képet.

**Hello. What would you like?**

- 1 pineapples
- 3 lemons
- 5 bananas
- 7 tomatoes
- 0 cucumbers
- 0 oranges
- 2 pears
- 4 cabbages
- 6 potatoes
- 8 melons

Tegyünk fel kérdéseket a vásárló nevében **How much...?** kérdőszó és **these** vagy **those** névmás használatával.

0. **How much are those cucumbers?**

0. **How much are these oranges?**

C. Egészitsük ki a párbeszédet mutató névmásokkal (**this, that, these, those**).

**JIM:** It's very pleasant to sit here on 0. **this** terrace in the middle of 1. mountains.

**ANN:** Yes, and the food is good. 2. grapes are delicious.

**JIM:** Delicious, yes, but 3. one's bad. What are 4. people over there eating?

**ANN:** Oh, 5. is fondue. It's made with cheese. You see, they take one of 6. little pieces of bread and then dip it in 7. pot with the cheese in it.

**JIM:** We can try 8. if we come again.

**ANN:** All the local restaurants serve it. So if we don't come back here, we can have it at 9. little restaurant in the village.

**JIM:** Yes, but in the village you don't have 10. wonderful view of the mountains.
1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:

There aren’t many people in the restaurant.

I don’t have much money. (= Nincs sok pénzem.)

A much (megszámlálhatatlannak főnevek előtt) és many (megszámlálható főnevek előtt) határozatlan névmás jelentése: sok.

A much és many névmást legtöbbször tagadó és kérdő mondatban használjuk. (További információ a 79. fejezetben található.)

I’m so hungry, but we don’t have much food in the house. (= nincs itthon sok ennivaló)

Do many tourists come here?

Is there much snow in the mountains?

How much luggage have you got?

How many times have you been to London?

2 A much/many névmás középfokú alakja:

more (= több):

John has got two biscuits, but he wants two more.

We have some food, but we need some more.

A some more és any more (= valamivel több, még egy kis...) gyakori szókapcsolat:

A: Would you like some more toast?
B: No, thanks. I don’t want any more. But I’d like some more orange juice.

Gyakorlatok

A Írjuk a főnevek elé a much vagy many névmást.

0 How ............... money?  6 How ............... cigars?  14 How ............... times?
0 How ............... films?  7 How ............... sugar?  15 How ............... information?
0 not ............... people  8 How ............... buses?  16 How ............... toast?
1 How ............... snow?  9 How ............... books?  17 not ............... news
2 How ............... tables? 10 How ............... food?  18 not ............... exams
5 How ............... advice? 13 How ............... homework? 21 not ............... museums

B Egészitsük ki a párbeszédeket a következőkkel: much, many, more, how much, how many.

0 A: ............... CDs has your sister got?
B: She hasn’t got ............... ! I’ve got ............... than she has.
1 A: Is there ............... cheese in the fridge?
B: No, and there aren’t ............... eggs, either.

Figyelem! A some more kijelentő mondatban, az any more kérdő és tagadó mondatban használható.

3 A much/many (=sok) és a more (= több) használata:

> much – megszámlálhatatlannak főnevekkel:

much food  much luggage  much snow  much time  much money

> many – megszámlálható főnevekkel:

many things  many books  many records  many people  many tourists  many times (= sokszor)

> more – megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlannak főnevekkel egyaránt:

more toast/juice  more glasses (= több pohár)

> A much/many/more főnév nélkül, önállóan is használható:

How much did that coat cost? (= Mennyibe került az a kabát?)
A: That cake was delicious.
B: Would you like some more (cake)?
2 A: ................ money do you earn?
   B: Not ................, but I earn ................ than my brother.
3 A: Do you have ............... homework?
   B: Yes, because there aren’t ............... days before the exams.
4 A: ................ food do we need?
   B: We haven’t got ............... vegetables, so we need to buy some ............... 
5 A: Is there ............... luggage in the coach?
   B: There aren’t ............... big suitcases, but there are a lot of small ones.
6 A: ............... toast do you want? ............... pieces?
   B: Two please, and without ............... butter.
7 A: ............... spoonfuls of sugar do you take?
   B: No sugar, thank you. I don’t usually eat ............... sugar.
8 A: Are there ............... letters in the post?
   B: No, there’s not ............... news today.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a much, many, vagy more határozatlan névmásokkal.

JENNY: Is that bag heavy? Have you got 0 many ......... books in it?

STEVE: Only three, but I don’t have 1 ............. to do this weekend, so I want to buy some 2 ............. tomorrow.

JENNY: I want to buy a magazine. You know, a magazine with lots of pictures and not 3 ............. words. I don’t have 4 ............. time to read at the moment. We’re so busy at the office. We have a lot of projects and there aren’t 5 ............. people who can do them.

STEVE: How 6 ............. hours a day do you work?

JENNY: Eight hours at the office and then I often do two 7 ............. hours at home.

STEVE: How 8 ............. do you earn? Do you get a good salary?

JENNY: Not bad, but I don’t get 9 ............. holidays. Some people get a lot 10 ............. .

STEVE: How 11 ............. days do you get at Christmas?

JENNY: Five, and three weeks in the summer.

STEVE: That’s quite good. And remember: if we have longer holidays, we need 12 ............. money to pay for them!

D Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat (√), a hibás mondatok mellé pedig tegyünk ikszet (X).

0 I don’t have many work to do today
   X

0 Do you have many meetings this week?
   √

1 We haven’t got many information about the conference.
   .............

2 We need some more people in our department.
   .............

3 I’ve got any more paperwork to do this afternoon.
   .............

4 Have you got any more holiday time this year?
   .............

5 I haven’t got many time, I’m in a hurry.
   .............

6 Is there many news in your department this week?
   .............

7 I haven’t done much today.
   .............

8 Are there much people off sick in your department?
   .............
1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

She’s got a lot of luggage. (= Sok csomagja van.)

(a lot of = nagy tömegű vagy nagy számú)

A beszélt nyelvben állító mondatban much/many helyett inkább az a lot of vagy lots of kifejezést használjuk.

There’s a lot of information in this book. (= Sok információ van ebben a könyvben.)

(NEM: There’s much information in this book.)

I bought a lot of new books today.

(NEM: I bought many new books today.)

A lot of students work in the holidays.

A much/many névmást állító mondatban a so/very/too much/many szókapcsolatban, illetve az írott nyelvben használhatjuk:

There is so much time left.

Britain has many problems.

2 Az a lot of / lots of kifejezés megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt egyaránt állhat:

a lot of luggage

a lot of information

a lot of books  a lot of students

a lot of things  a lot of people

3 A lot of után a megszámlálható főnév többes számban, a megszámlálhatatlan pedig egyes számban áll, és a léteg vagy jelen idejű igét is eszerint egyeztjük:

A lot of students work … (NEM: … works …)

There is a lot of information … (NEM: … are …)

4 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat az a few és a little névmás használatára:

She has a little luggage.

(= Van egy kevés csomagja.)

She has a few bags. (= Van néhány táskája)

Az a few és a little használható a more szóval:

Would you like a little more coffee? (= Kér szívesen még egy kis kávé?)

Az a few és az a little használata:

➢ a little: megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt:

I have a little money, but I don’t have much. (= Van egy kis pénzem, de nem sok.)

➢ a few: megszámlálható főnevekkel

Can you wait a few minutes, John? (= Tudsz várni néhány percet?)

Mindkettő használható főnév nélküli is:

A: Have you got any money?
B: Sorry, I only have a little (money).

6 Az alábbiakban felsorolunk néhány gyakran használt megszámlálhatatlan főnevet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coffee</th>
<th>Milk</th>
<th>Cheese</th>
<th>Cake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>Bread</td>
<td>Money</td>
<td>Advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar</td>
<td>News</td>
<td>Luggage</td>
<td>Homework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea</td>
<td>Toast</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figyelem! A news (= hír) szó végén az s nem a többes szám jele. A szónak nincs többes száma.

This is good news. (= Ez jó hír.)

Gyakorlatok

A: Egészítsük ki a következő, email-üzenetekből vett mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

0 I’ve invited .................. (few/friends) to my house tonight. Would you like to come?
1 .................. (Lots/things) have happened since we last met.
2 Sorry for taking so long. I’ve had .................. (lot/messages) to answer.
3 I saw Mary for .................. (few/minutes) yesterday and she was fine.
4 I’m afraid I can’t come tonight. I’ve got .................. (lots/jobs) to do.
5 I’m going away for .................. (few/days) and I’ll contact you when I get back.
6 I understand that you’re having .................. (few/problems) at the moment.

214
B Mit látunk a képeken? Írjuk le a lot of, a few vagy a little használatával.

1. a few pens
2. THE CHEESE SHOP
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 

C A következő kérdésekben a some határozatlan névmást cseréljük ki az a few vagy a little névmásra.

0. Would you like some coffee?  
1. Can I get you some biscuits?  
2. Can I make some sandwiches for you?  
3. Do you want some more cheese?  
4. Can I bring you some more cake?  
5. Do you want some milk in your tea?  
6. Would you like some more sugar in your coffee?  

D Állapítsuk meg, hogy helyesen használták-e az aláhúzott szavakat a következő mondatokban. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat, a helytelenül használt szavakat pedig húzzuk át és írjuk melléjük a helyes megoldást.

0. There are a lot of tall buildings in New York.
1. I often have lunch with a few friends.
2. A lot of people travel to work by car.
3. She only has a little luggage with her.
4. We need a little tomatoes for this meal.
5. There are a lot of news on TV in Britain.
6. My grandfather gives me a little money every week.
7. Can you give me a few water, please?
8. A lot of children use computers in school.
9. Are you hungry? Can I make you a little toast?
All, most, some, none

1 all (= mind) / most (= legtöbb) / some (= néhány)
   + főnév

   A fenti szerkezetet akkor használjuk, amikor emberekől vagy dolgokról általában beszélünk:
   
   She thinks that all sports are boring.
   Most cities have a lot of shops.
   In some countries life is very hard.

   Az all, a most és a some után nem kell of:
   Most people take exams during their lives.
   (NEM: Most of people ...)

2 Az all használható a morning / afternoon / evening / night / day / week / year
   (pl. all afternoon) szavakkal, a jelentése:
   'az egész', 'elejétől a végéig'.

   They work hard all day.
   I stay in bed all morning on Saturdays.

3 Az all, a most, a some és a none (= egy sem)
   használható a következő szerkezetben is:
   all / most / some / none + of + the / my / his / this + főnév

   Akkor használjuk, amikor bizonyos,
   meghatározott dolgokról vagy emberekől
   beszélünk:
   He spends all of his money.
   Most of my friends are interested in sport.
   I know some of the people at this party.
   Try some of this cake. It’s delicious.

   Figyeljük meg a none használatait:
   None of the students like the new teacher.
   (= A diákok közül semki sem kedveli az új tanárt.)
   A none névmás önmagában is tagadást fejez ki, ezért utána már nem használjuk a not
   tagadószót. Az angol nyelvben rendszerint
   nincs kettős tagadás.
   Az of előjárószó a fenti mondatokból ki is
   hagyniható:
   He spends all his money.

4 all / most / some / none + of + it / them

   A fenti szerkezetet akkor használhatjuk, ha a
   főnév, amelyre az it vagy them vonatkozik, már
   előzőleg elhangzott:
   It’s lovely food, but I can’t eat all of it.
   (it = food)
   It’s hard to find a hotel; most of them are full.
   (them = the hotels)
   That cake looks nice. Can I have some of it?
   (it = the cake)

Gyakorlatok

A Az alábbi táblázatból láthatjuk, hogy melyik tárgyat szeretik (😄) vagy nem szeretik (😢) egyes diákok.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következőkkel: all of, most of, some of. Használjuk a the nevelőt, ahol
szükséges.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>History</th>
<th>Maths</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Biology</th>
<th>Art</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alice</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>😄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>😄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>😄</td>
<td>☹</td>
<td>😄</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

216
0 Alice likes most of the subjects. None of the children dislike all of them.
1 .................. children like French and .................. them don’t like it.
2 David likes .................. subjects and Carol likes .................. them.
3 .................. children like English and .................. them like French.
4 Bill doesn’t like .................. subjects but he likes .................. them.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>all the</th>
<th>none of the</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>some of the</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 .................. European children have to go to school.
0 The classroom is empty because .................. children are outside.
1 We can’t buy anything today because .................. shops are closed today.
2 We like that restaurant. .................. food is expensive, but everything is very good.
3 .................. people say he’s the best tennis player in the world, but I don’t agree.
4 That's a terrible shop. .................. assistants are very helpful.
5 Bill’s very lazy. He reads the newspaper .................. morning.
6 .................. phones here are working. Has anyone got a mobile?
7 It’s a wonderful trip. You have .................. day to see the sights.
8 IMPORTANT NOTICE: .................. passengers must have a valid ticket.
9 If .................. students can answer the teacher’s questions, she explains the point again.
10 We can’t sit down. .................. chairs are wet.
11 .................. cars use petrol and others use diesel.
12 This light works .................. time, but not always.

C Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat a megadott kifejezésekkel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all of the</th>
<th>all of it</th>
<th>all of them</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most of the</td>
<td>most of it</td>
<td>most of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none of the</td>
<td>none of it</td>
<td>none of them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 The people in the audience didn’t understand the jokes and .................. laughed.
1 .................. songs they played were familiar, but one or two were new.
2 This is an interesting play. .................. takes place in an apartment, although there is one scene in a shop.
3 .................. tickets were sold as soon as they went on sale and so thousands of people were disappointed.
4 Before this, she has written four novels but .................. have been successful.
5 He has made 15 films. .................. have been comedies but he has also made one or two more serious films.
6 It is a very complicated film and .................. is easy to follow.
7 The performance was not well received. Some people didn’t watch .................. and left before the end.
8 This is a terrible CD and .................. songs are any good.
9 Everything he produces seems to succeed. He has written four novels and .................. have been bestsellers.
Határozatlan névmások – something, anybody, nothing

1  something/anything (= valami)  
   somebody/anybody (= valaki)  
   someone/anyone (= valaki)  
   somewhere/anywhere (= valahol)

2 A something, somebody, someone és 
somewhere névmásokat rendszerint állító
mondatban használjuk:  
Something is burning.  
I’m going to have something to eat.  
Somebody told me that it was a good film.  
She lives somewhere in the north.

3 Az anything, anybody, anyone és anywhere 
tagadó és kérdő mondatban használható:  
I didn’t know anyone at the party. (= Senkit nem 
ismerem az összejöveteleen.)  
I couldn’t find my bag anywhere. (= Sehol nem 
találtam a táskámat.)  
Did you understand anything she said? (= 
Értettél valamit abból, amit mondott?)

4 nothing (= semmi)  
nobody (= senki)  
no one (= senki)  
nowhere (= sehol)

5 A nothing, nobody, no one és nowhere állító
mondatokban használható:  
Nothing makes Joe unhappy. (= Joe-t semmi 
 nem teszi boldogtalaná.)  
There’s nothing I want to watch on TV. (= Semmi 
nincs a tévében, amit nézni akarok.)

Nobody was there when I arrived. (= Senki sem 
volt ott, amikor odaértem.)  
There is nowhere that I would prefer to live.  
(= Nincs olyan hely, ahol jobban szeretnék élni.)

Figyelem! A fenti mondatokban az igé mindig 
állító alakban van (makes, want, was, is), 
mivel az angol nyelvben nincs kettős tagadás.  
(A magyar ‘senki nem szeret’, angolul nobody 
likes, nem nobody doesn’t like.)

6 Figyeljük meg az everything, everybody, 
everyone és everywhere használatát:  
Everything is ready. (NEM: all things)  
Everyone likes music. (NEM: all people)

7 Az else (= egyéb, más) névmás állhat 
something, anybody, nowhere stb. után:  
Let’s talk about something else. (= Beszéljünk 
valami másról.)  
I don’t like Ian but I like everybody else.  
There is nowhere else I can look for it.

8 A something, anything stb. után melléknév 
is állhat:  
Have I said something wrong? (= Valami 
rosszat mondta?)  
Have you met anybody nice here?

9 Amikor az eddig tárgyalt névmások 
(something, anybody/one stb.) a mondatban 
az alany szerepét töltik be, utánuk az ige 
egyes szám harmadik személyben áll:  
Everybody likes children.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott névmásokkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>something</th>
<th>anything</th>
<th>everything</th>
<th>nothing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>somebody</td>
<td>anybody</td>
<td>everybody</td>
<td>nobody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Don’t go .......................... by car, walk sometimes.
1 Find ................................ who will do exercise with you.
2 If you haven’t got .................... to exercise with you, join a club.
3 In most towns, there is ................... that provides good fitness classes.
4 If you sit around and do .................. all day, you will feel tired and depressed.
5 Remember that if you want to be fit, you must do .................. about it yourself.
6 .......................... can suddenly become very fit; you have to take it slowly.
7 Lots of people don’t do .......................... to stay fit, and this can cause them problems.
8 If you haven’t got ...................... at home to exercise, go to a gym.
9 The best fitness clubs have ...................... you could possibly need in order to get fit.
10 ........................... should do some exercise regularly.

B Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt a zárójelben megadott szavak közül.
0 I’m afraid I ............................... (know/don’t know) anything about this subject.  
1 I rang the doorbell but nobody ........................................... (was/wasn’t) in.
2 I asked a lot of people, but nobody ....................................... (knew/didn’t know) the answer.
3 I .............................................. (know/don’t know) anything about computer programming.
4 Nothing interesting .................................................... (happens/doesn’t happen) in this town.
5 He loves football. Nothing else ........................................ (is/isn’t) important to him.
6 She ................................. (said/didn’t say) anything about her plans for the future.

C Alakítsuk át a következő mondatokat a zárójelben megadott határozatlan névmás és az eredeti mondatban szereplő melléknév vagy az else névmás használatával.
0 A .......................... thing happened yesterday. (something)
  Something strange .............................................. happened yesterday.
0 Let’s listen to some different music. (something)
  Let’s listen to ...........................................................
1 Is there an .................. programme on TV tonight? (anything)
  Is there ......................................................... on TV tonight?
2 You won’t find better food in any other place. (anywhere)
  You won’t find better food .............................................
3 Is there a ............................. place we can go for lunch? (anywhere)
  Is there ......................................................... we can go for lunch?
4 Let’s sit in a different place. (somewhere)
  Let’s sit ...........................................................
5 I’d like a ............................. drink. (something)
  I’d like ......................................................... to drink.

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet some-, any-, every- vagy no- előtagú határozatlan névmással.

DENNIS: Are you reading .......................... interesting at the moment?
SARAH: Yes, ............................... lent me a novel last week and I’m really enjoying it.

DENNIS: What is it about?
SARAH: It’s about ......................... who goes to visit Australia. She’s adventurous and wants to go
  ................................. alone, but a few days after she arrives, ......................... terrible
  happens to her. While she is travelling across Australia, she loses .......................... -
  including her passport and her money. She doesn’t know .......................... who can help
  her and she hasn’t got ......................... to stay.

DENNIS: What happens then?
SARAH: I’m not going to tell you ......................... else! You should read the book yourself.
DENNIS: I think I’ll read ......................... that’s not so depressing.
SARAH: No, read it. You’ll enjoy it. .......................... that I know likes it.
1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

(i) She gave her brother the newspaper.
(ii) She gave the newspaper to her brother.

A newspaper mindkét mondatban az a dolog, amelyre a cselekvés irányul. A magyar nyelvtani elemzés szerint a newspaper (= újságot) mindkét mondatban tárgy, a her brother (= bátyjának) részeshatározó. A magyarban részeshatározónak tekintett mondrész az angolban 'indirect object'-nek, 'közvetett tárgynak' nevezzük.

2 További példák (i):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ DOLOG (direct object)</th>
<th>+ SZEMÉLY (indirect object)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She gave</td>
<td>her brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He sent</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane lent</td>
<td>Frank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He offered</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I cooked</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I fetched</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He sold</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She showed</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You told</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I took</td>
<td>John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They brought</td>
<td>Mary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shirt</td>
<td>a letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my passport</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a job</td>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a plate</td>
<td>a magazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a coffee</td>
<td>his car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the photos</td>
<td>the books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lie</td>
<td>a clean knife</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 További példák (ii):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ DOLOG (direct object)</th>
<th>+ SZEMÉLY (indirect object)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She gave</td>
<td>a shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I sent</td>
<td>postcards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I showed</td>
<td>my card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She lent</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He offered</td>
<td>the chocolates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I took</td>
<td>the books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to her brother</td>
<td>to my friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to my friends</td>
<td>to the clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to her friend</td>
<td>to her friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the others</td>
<td>to John</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ha az 'indirect object' (részeshatározó) a tárgy ('direct object') után következik, előtte a to előjárószót áll. Az ilyen mondatokban gyakran fordulnak elő a következő igék: give, send, show, lend, offer, take.

Azokban az esetekben, amikor azt fejezzük ki, hogy valakiné megteszünk valamit, a for előjárószót használjuk. Gyakori igék ilyen mondatokban: cook, fetch, get (= elhoz vagy beszerez), buy, bring.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ DOLOG (direct object)</th>
<th>+ SZEMÉLY (indirect object)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We cooked</td>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He fetched</td>
<td>the newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got</td>
<td>your book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She bought</td>
<td>some toys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They brought</td>
<td>a clean knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for everybody.</td>
<td>for his father.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for his father.</td>
<td>for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for you.</td>
<td>for them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for them.</td>
<td>for Mary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gyakorlatok

A Tegyünk helyes sorrendbe a mondrézéseket. (A mondathoz egyetlen szót se adjunk hozzá.)

0 (He/lent/his car/Mark)

He lent Mark his car.

1 (a cigarette/Jim/She offered)

2 (Mary/his holiday photographs/He showed)

3 (them/an invitation/Did you send/?)

4 (a birthday present/Did you buy/her/?)
Rendezzük át az előző gyakorlat mondatait to vagy for előljárósző hozzáadásával.

0  He lent ................................................................. his car to Mark.
1  She offered ...........................................................
2  He showed .............................................................
3  Did you send ...........................................................
4  Did you buy .............................................................

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

0  She wrote a letter. ...................................................... (me) She wrote me a letter.
1  They sent an invitation. .............................................. (us)
2  Sheila gave a present. ................................................. (to Mike)
3  I made a sandwich. .................................................... (her)
4  Tom bought a newspaper. .......................................... (for Sally)
5  My uncle sold his camera. .......................................... (me)
6  She left a message. ................................................... (for you)
7  Mary sent some flowers. ............................................. (them)
8  Did you take the money? ............................................. (to the bank)

Tim és Lucy tegnap este étteremben vacsorázott. Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal a példa alapján. Mindegyik cselekvésre két mondatot írjunk.

0  (The waiter/give/the menu.)
   (her) The waiter gave her the menu.
   (to Lucy) The waiter gave the menu to Lucy.

1  (The waiter/fetch/some wine.)
   (them) ............................................................... (for them)

2  (The waiter/show/the bottle.)
   (him) ................................................................. (to Tim)

3  (The chef/cook/a special meal.)
   (them) ............................................................... (for them)

4  (The waiter/give/the bill.)
   (Tim) ................................................................. (to Tim)

5  (Lucy/lend/some money, because he didn’t have enough to pay the bill.)
   (Tim) ................................................................. (to Tim)

6  (The waiter/bring/their coats.)
   (them) ............................................................... (for them)
A visszaható névmás – reflexive pronouns
(myself, yourself stb.)

1 Nézzük meg a táblázatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SZEMÉLYES NÉVMÁS</th>
<th>VISSZAHATÓ NÉVMÁS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALANYI ALAK</td>
<td>TÁRGYI ALAK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I looked at myself in the mirror. (= Megnézem magamat a tükörben.)
She made herself a cup of tea.
She made a cup of tea for herself.
A visszaható névmással hangsúlyozhatjuk, hogy az alany saját maga végzi a cselekvést:
We made the cake ourselves. (= Saját magunk készítettük a süteményt. – nem valaki más)
Peter built the house himself. (= Peter saját maga építette a házat. – senki nem segített neki)
Az enjoy (= élvez) ige tárgya visszaható névmás is lehet:
They enjoyed the party.
They enjoyed themselves (at the party). (= Jól éreztek magukat (a bulin).

2 Hasonlítsuk össze a mondatokat:

(i)

Jenny made Jo a cup of coffee.
(Jenny készített Jo-nak egy csésze kávéit.)

(ii)

Jenny made herself a cup of coffee.
(Jenny készített magának egy csésze kávéit.)

A visszaható névmás (myself, yourself stb.) a mondat alanyára utal:
She hurt herself when she fell off the chair. (= Megütötte magát, amikor leesett a székéről.)

3 Az each other (= egymást) használata:
Tom and Sue were talking to each other. (= Tom és Sue beszéltek egymással. – Tom beszélt Sue-hoz és Sue Tomhoz.)
We like each other very much. (= Nagyon szeretjük egymást. – Én szeretem őt, ő szeret engem.)

Hasonlítsuk össze a themselves és az each other használatait:
Alan and Ruth took these photographs themselves.
(Alan és Ruth maguk csinálták ezeket a fényképeket.)
Alan and Ruth took photographs of each other. (= Alan és Ruth lefényképeztek egymást.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat myself, yourself stb. visszaható névmással.

0 I cooked ... a meal and then I watched television.
1 I'm sure Sara will enjoy ... on her trip.
2 I cut ... while I was preparing the vegetables.
3 We amused ... by playing cards while we were waiting for the plane.
4 The visitors made ... some sandwiches.
5 Did you hurt ... when you were playing football, Mick?
6 Alan cooked ... a meal when he got home.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat visszaható névmással és a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

0 (Be careful with that knife or you/cut/.)
   Be careful with that knife or you'll cut yourself.
1 (It was a very nice trip and we/enjoy/very much.)
   It was a very nice trip and we ...
2 (I/burn/while I was taking the dish out of the oven.)
  I.......................................................... while I was taking the dish out of the oven.
3 (He didn't have lessons. He/teach/.)
  He didn't have lessons. ..........................................................
4 (I think I/buy/a new coat tomorrow.)
...........................................................................................
5 (She/make/a sandwich and ate it in the kitchen.)
.......................................................................................... and ate it in the kitchen.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megfelelő visszaható névmással.
0 Did you paint the room yourself? ~ Yes, it took me three days to do it.
1 If you won't help me, I'll have to do it all ..........................................
2 She makes all her clothes ..........................................
3 The students organized the concert ..........................................
4 We painted the whole house ..........................................
5 He typed the letter ............................................. and then he posted it.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat visszaható névmással és az igék megfelelő alakjával.
0 (She is a very successful singer. She/write/all her songs/.)
  She is a very successful singer. She writes all her songs herself.
1 Could you post this letter for me? ~ (No, I'm sorry, I won't have time. You/have/to post it/.)
  No, I'm sorry, I won't have time.
2 (Nobody helped us, so we/carry/all our luggage/.)
  Nobody helped us, so ..........................................
3 (This is an excellent photograph. you/take it/?)
  This is an excellent photograph. ..........................................
4 (She was wearing a dress that she/make/.)
  She was wearing a dress that ..........................................
5 (I hope you like the present. I/choose/it/.)
  I hope you like the present. ..........................................
6 (Do you like this meal? I/invent/the recipe/.)
  Do you like this meal? ..........................................

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat visszaható névmással vagy az each other kifejezéssel.
0 They spent the whole evening arguing with ..........................................
0 Their house is very beautiful; they designed it ..........................................
1 Mary met John in April, but they didn't see ........................................... again until July.
2 They're not friends; in fact, they don't like ........................................... at all.
3 Don't ask me to help you. You must do it ..........................................
4 We didn't buy it ........................................... A friend bought it for us.
5 I could hear two people shouting at ..........................................
6 We're working in the same office now, so Ron and I see ........................................... every day.
Van, vannak – there is, there are

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:
*There's a big market near the river; it's very good for fruit and meat.*
*There are two buses on Sunday; they both go to the station.*

A *there is* / *there are* (= van/vannak) szókapcsolat általában a mondat elején áll. Akkor használjuk, amikor egy személy vagy dolog meg jelétől a beszéd folyamán még nem esett szó. Ha újra említtük ugyanazt a dolgot, akkor már az *it* (*the big market*), illetve többes számban a *they* névmással (*two buses*) utalunk rá.

Néhány további példa:
*There's a good programme on Sunday; it gives all the sports news.* *(programme → it)*
*There are two schools here; they're both new.* *(schools → they)*

2 A *there is* / *there are* szerkezetet használhatjuk annak meghatározására, hogy valahol hányan vannak. Nézzük meg az alábbi kérdéseket és válaszokat:

A: *How many people are there in your class?*
B: *There are* about twenty.
A: *Is there* a restaurant here?
B: *Yes, there's* one in the next street.

A számnév után használhatjuk az *of us, of them* stb. szerkezetet:
*There are twelve of us.* *(NEM: We are twelve.)*
(*Tizenketten vagyunk.)*

3 Amikor az időjárásról beszélünk, az *it* névmás a mondat alanya ige vagy melléknev előtt. Főnév előtt a *there's, there are* áll.

*It + ige: It rains/snows a lot in winter.*
*it + melléknev: It's foggy/sunny/windy/cloudy.*
*there + főnév: There's a lot of fog/cloud.*

4 A *there* névmás mellett a létige (*be*) bármelyik alakja állhat:
*There weren't any compact discs 20 years ago.*
A: *Have there been any problems this year?*
B: *Yes, there have.*
*There used to be* a park here.
*There may be* some eggs in the fridge.

5 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat az *it takes* (= valamennyi ideig tart) kifejezéssel:
*It takes seven years to become a doctor.* *(= Hét év alatt lesz valaki ből orvos.)*
A: *How long does it take* to make bread?
B: *It takes* several hours *(to make bread).*

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következőkkel: *there's, there are, it's, they're.*

0 ................................. two cinemas in our town; *they're* both near my flat.
1 .................................. one train on Sundays; ......................... an express train.
2 .................................. two national holidays this month, and ...................
    both on a Friday.
3 .................................. three trees in our garden, but .................... not very tall.
4 .................................. a big lake in the park; .......................... very deep.

B Adjunk választ a következő kérdésekre *there are ... of* és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

0 A: *How many people are there in your group?*
   B: *(eight/us)* ................................. *There are eight of us.*

1 A: *How many teams are there in the competition?*
   B: *(six/them).................................

2 A: *How many students are there in your class?*
   B: *(twenty/us).................................

3 A: *How many boys are there in the school orchestra?*
   B: *(twelve/them).................................

224
Alakítsuk át a mondatokat it, it's vagy there's használatával.

0. There's a lot of snow in December.
   (snows a lot) **It snows a lot in December.**

1. It's quite cloudy this morning.
   (quite a lot of cloud) **There's quite a lot of cloud this morning.**

2. There's a lot of rain in April.
   (rains a lot)

3. It's foggy on the motorway this morning.
   (fog on the motorway)

4. It's very windy on the west coast.
   (a lot of wind)

Egészítésük ki a párbeszédet it, they vagy there és a létige megfelelő alakjával, vagy az it takes szókapcsolattal, állító vagy kérdő formában.

Jane: 0. Is it easy to get to your house from the airport?
Alice: Well, there are several ways you can do it.
Jane: 1. a bus service into the city?
Alice: Yes, plenty of buses. quite frequent.
Jane: 2. How long by bus?
Alice: About 40 minutes. taxis too, but quite expensive.
Jane: 3. quicker by taxi, won't it?
Alice: Not necessarily. always a lot of traffic near the airport. Sometimes over an hour to get from there to here. I think the train is the best idea.
Jane: 4. a train I can get?
Alice: Yes, a train service from the airport. quite new.
Jane: 5. quite easy to find it – signs in the airport terminal.
Alice: Yes, trains every 20 minutes into the city. not usually too crowded. And only about 15 minutes to the Central Railway Station. I'll meet you there. not far from my home.
Jane: 6. Where exactly shall we meet?
Alice: 7. two entrances. Go to the one under the big clock and I'll meet you there.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a there és a megadott szavakkal. Mindegyik szót illetve szókapcsolatot csak egyszer használjuk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have been</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>may be</th>
<th>used to be</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>will be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0. an accident on this road almost every day.

1. Last year a terrible fire at that factory.

2. Next Monday at 7 p.m. a meeting of the committee.

3. When I was young, a lot more cinemas than there are now.

4. Since 1900 two world wars.

5. a late-night bus, but I'm not sure if there is.
A melléknév – adjectives (new, big, wonderful, American stb.)

1. A melléknévvel a dolgok vagy személyek tulajdonságairól beszélhetünk. Néhány példa:
   
   old  small  friendly  rich  cheap

   Nezzük meg a következő mondatokat:
   I've got an old table in my kitchen.
   My home town is small and friendly.
   We always have lunch in a cheap restaurant.

2. A melléknév alakja sohasem változik. A melléknévnek nincs többs száma:
   a rich man  a rich woman  two rich men

3. A melléknév (a mondatban jelző) a főnév előtt áll:

   MELLÉKNÉV + FŐNÉV

   I have a beautiful cat.

   A melléknév a léttévével a mondat állítmányát alkothatja:

   be + MELLÉKNÉV

   They are hungry.

   A be helyett néha a következő igéket használjuk:

   look (= valamilyennek látszik)  seem (= valamilyennek látszik)  feel (= valahogy érzi magát)  taste (= valamilyen ízű)  smell (= valamilyen szagú)  sound (= valahogy hangzik)

   Néhány példa:
   She looks happy.
   This cheese tastes wonderful.
   I feel cold. (= Fazom.)

4. Ha a főnév előtt két vagy három melléknév követi egymást, általában nem teszünk vesszőt, és az and kötőszót sem használjuk:
   He's a nice old man.
   a large round red face

   Amikor a főnév előtt két azonos típusú melléknév (pl. színek neve) áll, az and kötőszóval kötjük azokat össze. Három azonos típusú melléknévénél az első után vesszöt teszünk, a második után pedig az and kötőszót:
   a blue and yellow scarf
   a red, white and blue flag

5. Ha több melléknév követi egymást, a megfelelő sorrend a következő:

   A  B  C +  D  E  F

   Ha a melléknévvel véleményünket fejezzük ki (pl. wonderful), az mindig megelőzi a többi melléknévet:

   wonderful  great  fantastic
   beautiful  nice  good
   strange  funny  (un)friendly
   horrible  awful  bad

   Az anyagneveket gyakran használjuk jelzőként:

   a cotton shirt  a silver ring  a plastic bag
   (NEGYM a shirt of cotton)  (NEGYM a ring of silver)

6. Néhány gyakran előforduló nemzetiséget jelentő melléknév:

   American  Greek  Russian
   Australian  Hungarian  Scottish
   Chinese  Irish  South African
   Dutch  Italian  Spanish
   English  Japanese  Swedish
   French  Polish  Turkish
   German  Portuguese  Welsh

Gyakorlatok

A. Anna múzeumban járt, és a következőket írta a képekről. A szövegben az első melléknéveket aláhúzta – húzzuk alá a többi tizenkilencet is.

   This modern picture is strange. It’s like the old picture next to it, but in the new painting the sky is green and the trees are blue. It seems frightening. My favourite picture is one of a large, square room by a Dutch artist. An elegant man sits on a wooden bench in a corner. He has a small black dog at his feet. The dog looks sleepy. Through the open window you can see bright sunshine. When I look at this picture I feel warm and happy.
Ladies and gentlemen! This is Covent Garden. It's a popular place for people and for tourists from abroad. We want you to have an enjoyable visit so the coach waits here a little time. We get on it again at twelve o'clock, in the coach park behind the tower you can see over there. Covent Garden is in fact an enjoyable market but today it is a place where there is entertainment – you don’t have to pay to see anything. But be careful! Like all places, Covent Garden has pickpockets, so look after your money and your possessions like cameras. Have a time and please don’t be late for the coach.

**Look (x3) feel (x2) taste smell sound (x2)**

0. Have one of these apples. They taste delicious!

1. That music is terrible. What is it?

2. You are thirsty. Have a drink.

3. Those flowers look nice and they are good too. What are they?

4. Is Jane ill? She is tired.

5. Close the door, please. It is cold.

6. It’s hot, I’m on holiday and I’m very happy!

7. That new picture is wonderful in your dining-room.

8. Do you know where that song comes from? It is in Spanish.

**A következő mondatokban az aláhúzott melléknevek sorrendje hibás lehet. Pipáljuk ki a hibáit!**

0. She always wears a gold small ring.

1. I have an old Italian painting in my living room.

2. George has a Spanish modern villa near the sea. He goes there every summer.

3. I live in an old white house near the river. I’ve got a black large dog!

4. There’s an interesting Polish young student in my class.

5. Let’s have lunch in the big Japanese new restaurant in the centre of town.

6. I carry all my books in a red plastic bag.
Írjuk le helyes sorrendben a zárójelben megadott szavakat.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>(a/town/beautiful/little)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(a/day/pleasant/sunny)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(a/smile/big/nice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(a/large/coffee/black)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(a/old/coat/horrible)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben lévő melléknevekkel és – ha szükséges – az and kötőszóval.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>The Greek flag is ______________________. (blue/white)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Throw those ______________________ shoes away. (awful/old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I need a ______________________ cup of coffee. (good/strong)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mike's new flat is very ______________________. (light/spacious)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Come and sit by the fire. You look ______________________. (cold/tired)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>The star of the show is a ______________________ girl. (beautiful/young)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>This lemonade tastes really ______________________. (nice/refreshing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Davisons have got a ______________________ house in the country. (lovely/old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>In my opinion, ______________________ photographs are often more effective than colour (black/white)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>You look hungry! Some ______________________ soup will make you feel better. (good/hot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>A ______________________ man lives in that house. (poor/old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kate’s got three ______________________ kittens. (sweet/little/black/white)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevekkel. Ügyeljünk a helyes szórendre.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>We have lunch in a ______________________ restaurant every Saturday. (Chinese/little/nice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Michael Jackson sometimes wears a ______________________ suit. (silk/white/fantastic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sandra drives a ______________________ car. (old/American/big)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kate keeps her money in a ______________________ purse. (leather/small/brown)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>‘Casablanca’ is a ______________________ film. (wonderful/black/old/white)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Polly lives next door to a ______________________ girl. (Irish/friendly/young)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Archaeologists look for things like ______________________ statues. (prehistoric/wooden/strange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Clare has a ______________________ ring. (new/wonderful/diamond)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8 I don’t like the _______________________________________ dress in this picture.
(wedding/short/funny/pink)
9 Look what’s under the bed! A ______________________________________ sock.
(nylon/old/green/horrible)
10 Let’s take down the dirty old plastic lampshade and put this ______________________________________
lantern in its place. (paper/beautiful/Japanese/new)

Keressük meg az egyes főnevekhez tartozó, nemzetiséget jelentő melléknevet, és egészítsük ki a mondatokat, ahogy a példa mutatja.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names:</th>
<th>Nationalities:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mykonos</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Taj Mahal</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macbeth</td>
<td>Scottish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salamanca</td>
<td>Indian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chang</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Trovatore</td>
<td>Alfred Nobel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vodka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A Volkswagen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gérard Depardieu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Batman Forever</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Batman Forever</td>
<td>is an American film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>is a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>is a city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>was a king.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>is an opera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>was an artist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>is an building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>is an island.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>is a drink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>was a chemist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>is an actor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>was an detective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>is a surname.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A fenti mondatok közül néhányat írjunk le újra, a megadott melléknevekkel kiegészítve. Ügyeljünk az a/an névelő megfelelő használatara.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fantastic</th>
<th>terrible</th>
<th>boring</th>
<th>beautiful</th>
<th>typical</th>
<th>intelligent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 Batman Forever is a fantastic American film.
A számnév – numbers (three, third)

1 Nézzük a példákat:
I have three cats.
She lives on the third floor.
A three tőszámév.
A third sorszámnév.

2 Nézzük meg a táblázatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TŐSZÁMÉV</th>
<th>SORSZÁMÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1st first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2nd second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3rd third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4th fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5th fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6th sixth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7th seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8th eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9th ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10th tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>11th eleventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>12th twelfth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>13th thirteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>14th fourteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>15th fifteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>16th sixteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>17th seventeenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>18th eighteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>19th nineteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20th twentieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>21st twenty-first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>22nd twenty-second</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Figyeljük meg, hogyan írjuk, és hogyan mondjuk a dátumot:
13th June: The thirteenth of June.
June the thirteenth.
1994: Nineteen ninety-four.
íg írjuk: 26 March 2005 (26.3.05)
íg mondjuk: The twenty-sixth of March, two thousand and five

Gyakorlatok

A A zárójelben lévő számok mellett egy hibás és egy hibátlan átírás van. Pipáljuk ki a helyeset, és húzzuk át a hibásat.

| 0 (116) | a hundred sixteen | a hundred and sixteen ✓ |
| 1 (49)  | forty-nine        | forty-nine |
| 2 (600) | six hundred       | six hundreds |
| 3 (4th) | fourth            | forth |
| 4 (12th)| twelfth           | twelfth |
| 5 ($2,000)| two thousand dollars | two thousands dollars |
| 6 (23rd)| twenty-three      | twenty-third |
| 7 (78)  | eighty-seven      | seventy-eight |
| 8 (8th) | eighth            | eighth |
| 9 (17)  | seventeen         | seventeenth |
| 10 (5th)| fiveth            | fifth |
| 11 (7,000,000)| seven million | seven millions |
| 12 (9th)| ninth             | ninth |
| 13 (30th)| thirteenth       | thirtieth |
| 14 (395)| three hundred and ninety-five | three hundred ninety-five |
### B
Írjuk le betűvel a következő számokat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>(211)</th>
<th>two hundred and eleven</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(462)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(20th)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(1st)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(12th)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(9,000,000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(310)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(8th)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>(111)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>(14)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>(2nd)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>(5,000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>(68)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>(34th)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>(150)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>(3rd)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>(25th)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>(19th)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C
Fejezzük be a mondatokat a példa és a táblázat alapján.

0. John *lives in flat forty on the fourth floor.*

1. Charles

2. Maria

3. Diana

4. Michael

5. Peter

6. Jane

7. Ann

8. Oliver

### D
Egészítsük ki a kérdésekre adott válaszokat a zárójelben megadott információval. Írjuk a dátumokat végig betűvel.

A: When were you born?
B: I was born on 

\[ \text{the thirteenth of October, nineteen seventy} \]

(13.10.70).

A: When did you go to secondary school?
B: In \( \) (1981).

A: And when did you leave secondary school?
B: Seven years later. My final exam was on \( )\) (16.6.88).

A: Did you start university in the same year?
B: Yes, on \( )\) (29th September).

A: Did you spend three or four years there?
B: Well, I left in \( )\) (1992). That’s four years.

A: And your first job? When was that?
B: I started work in an office on \( )\) (10.1.93).

A: Did you enjoy it? How long did you stay?
B: It was terrible! I left two months later, on \( )\) (9th March).

A: What did you do then?
B: I went to America. I spent two years in New York. I returned to England in 

Melléknevek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs

1

A melléknevek (pl. cold) élő határozószót tehetünk (pl. very), amellyel a melléknev jelentését nyomatékosíthatjuk.

Néhány ilyen határozószó:

**very** (= nagyon) **extremely** (= különösen)

*We were very tired after the trip.*

*I felt extremely nervous before the exam.*

*I'm really angry with you.* (= nagyon mérges)

A határozószóval tömptethetjük is a melléknev jelentését:

**fairly** (= meglehetősen, elégé)

**quite** (= elégé, egészen)

*Our car is fairly old.*

*The meal was quite nice.*

2 Egyes melléknevek valamilyen tulajdonság legnagyobb mértékét fejezik ki:

**freezing** (= rettenetesen hideg)

**enormous** (= óriási)

3 A főnevek jelentős részénél is lehet melléknévi szerepe – amikor két főnév áll egymás mellett a mondatban, az első az azt követő főnév tulajdonságát jelöli, tehát annak jelzője lehet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FŐNÉV</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>FŐNÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>cardboard</td>
<td>box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>cassette</td>
<td>recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>cheque</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>alarm</td>
<td>clock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gyakorlatok

A Egészitsük ki a következő mondatokat a really vagy quite határozószóval.

0 The film was ................. good. I enjoyed it a lot.

1 It’s ................. cold outside, but not very cold.

2 It isn’t a wonderful book, but it’s ................. good.

3 The tickets were ................. expensive – they cost much more than I expected.

4 This programme is ................. popular in my country; millions of people watch it.

5 He’s ................. good at his job, but he sometimes makes bad mistakes.

6 The meal was ................. nice, but it wasn’t worth the money.

7 It’s ................. dangerous to drive so fast in such terrible weather conditions.

8 I’m not a very good tennis player, but I am ................. good.

9 They’re all ................. intelligent students, and they will all pass their exams easily.

10 The company that I work for is ................. big, but it’s not enormous.

232
FRIC: Did you have a good weekend?

CAROL: Saturday was absolutely (very/absolutely) perfect, though Sunday was (really/very) terrible. On Saturday morning we watched my sister take part in an ice-skating competition and she was (fairly/absolutely) brilliant. In the evening we celebrated at an Italian restaurant and I had a (really/very) huge pizza. And then we saw a horror movie and it was (really/absolutely) frightening. Wonderful!

FRIC: And Sunday?

CAROL: Well, it was (extremely/absolutely) cold, and the heating stopped working. So we were (absolutely/very) freezing all day.

A következő mondatok közül húzzuk át azokat, amelyekben helytelenül alkalmazott határozószó + melléknév szókapcsolat van.

0 Sally has an extremely marvellous voice. I'm sure she could be a professional singer.
1 We had a really hot, dry summer last year.
2 It's very essential for you to take your passport with you when you fly to Athens.
3 Dave's parents are quite rich. They live in a really big house.
4 I was quite nervous before I saw the dentist, but she soon reassured me.
5 There was a fairly terrible accident on the M3 motorway late last night.
A melléknév tokozása: közeprok – comparative adjectives
(older, more famous)

1 Nézzük meg, hogyan fokozzuk a melléknéveket:

The Plaza Hotel is cheaper than the Excelsior.
The Excelsior Hotel is bigger than the Plaza.
The Excelsior is more expensive than the Plaza.
The Plaza Hotel is smaller than the Excelsior.

2 A cheaper és a more expensive a melléknév középfokú alakja.
Igy képezzük a középfokot:

Egy szótágú melléknévek

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALAPFOK</th>
<th>KÖZÉPFOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>older</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>newer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow</td>
<td>slower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>fatter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>hotter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> két vagy több szótágú melléknévek:

famous more famous
difficult more difficult
careful more careful
expensive more expensive

(DE: narrow narrower
polite politer)

3 Összehasonlításkor a melléknév + than (= mint) szerkezetet használjuk:

My sandwich is bigger than yours.

Tom is richer than Paul.
Paris is more beautiful than London.
My new car is better than my old one.

4 Ha az összehasonlítást nyomatékosítani akarjuk, a much vagy az a lot szavakkal tehetjük:

London is much/a lot bigger than Edinburgh.
(= London jóval nagyobb, mint Edinburgh.)
J.S. Bach is much/a lot more famous than his sons.
(= J.S. Bach sokkal híresebb, mint a fiai.)

Gyakorlatok

A írjuk le a következő melléknévek középfokú alakját.

0 cold colder
1 big
2 careful
3 expensive
4 good
5 fat
6 famous
7 new
8 modern
9 young
10 cheap
11 delicious
12 rich
13 long
14 hungry
15 nice

(További tudnivalók a melléknév fokozásáról a 364. oldalon a G táblázatban találhatók.)
16 happy .................................. 21 hot ........................................
17 difficult .................................. 22 wonderful ...................................
18 old ........................................ 23 bad ...........................................
19 beautiful .................................. 24 small ........................................
20 friendly .................................... 25 sad ...........................................

6 Hasonlítsuk össze a képeken látható személyeket vagy dolgokat a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

0 (be/tall) Tom is taller than Sam.
1 (be/cold)
2 (be/hungry)
3 (be/small)
4 (be/happy)
5 (be/young)
6 (be/relaxed)
7 (be/friendly)

6 Hasonlítsuk össze a táblázatban szereplő hajókat a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével. Használjuk a much vagy a lot kifejezést, amikor jelentős különbségről van szó.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boats</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Top speed</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Queen Anne</td>
<td>14 metres</td>
<td>35 knots</td>
<td>£9,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Devil</td>
<td>6 metres</td>
<td>72 knots</td>
<td>£23,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jolly Jim</td>
<td>4 metres</td>
<td>28 knots</td>
<td>£6,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 (big) The Red Devil is bigger than the Jolly Jim.
0 (slow) The Queen Anne is much slower than the Red Devil.
1 (cheap) The Jolly Jim is cheaper than the Queen Anne.
2 (small) The Jolly Jim is smaller than the Queen Anne.
3 (fast) The Red Devil is faster than the Jolly Jim.
4 (expensive) The Red Devil is more expensive than the Queen Anne.
5 (big) The Queen Anne is bigger than the Jolly Jim.
6 (slow) The Jolly Jim is slower than the Queen Anne.
7 (expensive) The Queen Anne is more expensive than the Jolly Jim.
8 (small) The Jolly Jim is smaller than the Red Devil.
1 Olvassuk el az alábbi telefonbeszélgetést:
A: Tourist Information. Can I help?
B: Yes, please. I'm coming to Wentbridge this weekend, and I'm looking for a good hotel.
A: Well, the Scotsman is the oldest hotel in Wentbridge, but it's also the most expensive. The Castle is the most beautiful. The Prince is the newest and the biggest...

2 Az oldest (= legrégebbi), most expensive (= legdrágább), newest (= legújabb), felsőfokú melléknevek. Az egy szótágú melléknevek és sok két szótágú melléknév felsőfokú alakját az -est végződéssel képezzük, a többinél pedig a most előtagú összetett alakot használjuk.
Nézzük meg az alábbi táblázatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALAPFOK</th>
<th>FELSŐFOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>the cheapest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>the biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td>the saddest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>the most famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>the most difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>the hungriest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A következő melléknevek fokozása rendhagyó:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>the best</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>the most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>the least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>the farthest/the furthest (= a legtávolabbi/a legtovábbi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(További tudnivalók a melléknév fokozásáról, a 364. oldalon a G táblázatban találhatók.)

3 A felsőfokú melléknév előtt állhat birtokos névmás vagy 's birtokos szerkezet is: Russians consider Tolstoy their greatest writer. The Thames is England's longest river.

Ha valamilyen hely megnevezése követi a felsőfokú melléknevet, az in előjárószó áll előtte: ... the richest man in Europe. (NEM: ... of Europe.)

A felsőfokban álló melléknév után nem feltétlenül szükséges valamilyen főnevet tenni: George and Mary have three children. Mike is the oldest.

A: Which table did you buy?
B: The most expensive. (= A legdrágábbat.)

4 Az ever (= valaha) határozósó gyakran szerepel olyan mondatokban, amelyekben a melléknév felsőfokban, az ige pedig Present Perfect alakban áll:
That was the best film I've ever seen.
(= Az volt a legjobb film, amit valaha látta.)
A: How was your holiday?
B: Fantastic! Iceland is the most beautiful country I've ever visited.

A little (= kevés) szó fokozása rendhagyó. A less jelentése 'kevesebb, kevésbé', a least jelentése 'a legkevesebb, a legkevésbé'
Silver is less expensive than gold. (Az ezüst kevésbé drága, mint az arany.)
It was the least expensive ring in the shop. (Ez a gyűrű volt a legkevésbé drága az üzletben.)

Figyelem! Ha a little melléknév jelentése 'kicsi', középfoka smaller (= kisebb), felsőfoka smallest (= a legkisebb).

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevek felsőfokú alakjával és a the névelővel, ha szükséges.

After Russia, Canada is 0 (large) ................. country in the world, and its lakes, mountains and rivers make it one of 1 (interesting) ................. places in the world. Great Bear Lake is 2 (big) ................. Canadian lake, and 3 (deep) ................. Lake is Great Slave Lake. Canada’s 4 (long) ................. river is Mackenzie River. Although Niagara Falls, on the border with America, is 5 (spectacular) ................. and (popular) .................
waterfall for tourists, Della Falls is 7 (high).......................... Mount Logan in Yukon Territory is the highest and 8 (famous)............................ mountain in Canada. The weather is extreme too. 9 (low)................................. temperature ever recorded in this country was -63 degrees Celsius at a place called Snag, and Canada’s 10 (dry)........................... town is Medicine Hat, where the rainfall is so low that you cannot measure it!

3. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott információk alapján.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>young ______________ old</th>
<th>cheap ______________ expensive rubies – emeralds – diamonds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jane – Claire – Sally</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Claire is ____________ Jane.

Of the three girls, Sally is the oldest.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>small ______________ big</th>
<th>short ______________ long</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domestic cats – panthers – lions</td>
<td>Thames – Rhine – Amazon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Panthers are __________ lions.

2 Domestic cats are __________ members of the cat family.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cold ______________ hot</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sweden – France – Kenya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Sweden is __________ France.

4 Of the three countries, Kenya is __________ .

C. Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével. Használjuk a the + felsőfok és a Present Perfect + ever szerkezetet.

0 (This is/cold/place/1/visit) .This is the coldest place I’ve ever visited.

1 (It’s/big/ship/1/see) ..............................................

2 (He’s/rich/man/1/meet) ..............................................

3 (It was/difficult/exam/1/do) ........................................

4 (It was/sad/film/1/see) ..............................................

5 (She’s/happy/person/1/meet) ........................................

6 (It’s/beautiful/dog/1/see) ...........................................

7 (This is/hot/country/1/visit) ........................................

8 (It’s/small/dog/1/see) ..............................................

D. A következő mondatok mindegyikében hiba van. Húzzuk át a hibás szót, és a helyes megoldást írjuk a mondat mellé.

0 The Plaza is cheaper that the Excelsior. than

1 Mexico City is bigger than London. .........................

2 Platinum is most expensive than gold. ......................

3 I think this song is gooder than the first one. ..............

4 Mary is happenier than she was yesterday. ................

5 Footballers are famooser than rugby players. ..............

6 Tiger Woods is a best golfer in the world. ................
Melléknévek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs (quick, quickly); a határozószók fokozása (more carefully)

1 | MELLÉKNÉV | HATÁROZÓSZÓ |
---|---|---|
| quick | quickly | |
| careful | carefully | |
| easy | easily | |

2 A melléknév rendszerint valamilyen személy vagy dolog tulajdonságára utal, tehát a főnevet egészíti ki:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{MELLÉKNÉV} & \text{FŐNEV} \\
\hline
\text{She's a} & \text{quick} \\
\text{worker.} & \\
\end{array}
\]

A határozószó általában az igét egészíti ki, és a cselekvés vagy történés módját, idejét vagy egyéb körülményeit határozza meg:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{IGE} & \text{HATÁROZÓSZÓ} \\
\hline
\text{She} & \text{works} \\
\text{quickly.} & \\
\end{array}
\]

További példák:
Melléknév + főnév: English is an easy language.
Ige + határozószó: You can learn English easily.
Melléknév + főnév: He's a careful driver.
Ige + határozószó: He drives carefully.

3 Melléknévétől -ly végződéssel határozószót képezhetünk:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
\text{slow} & \text{slowly} & \text{bad} & \text{badly} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Ha a melléknév -y-ra végződik, az y a -ly képző előtt -i-re változik:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
\text{happy} & \text{happily} & \text{easy} & \text{easily} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Egyes melléknévek határozószóként is szerepelhetnek minden alakváltozás nélkül:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
\text{MELLÉKNÉV} & \text{HATÁROZÓSZÓ} & \text{kiegészítő} & \text{alakváltozás} \\
\hline
\text{hard} & \text{hard} (= kemény} & \text{keményen} & \\
\text{fast} & \text{fast} (= gyors} & \text{gyorsan} & \\
\text{late} & \text{late} (= késő} & \text{későn} & \\
\end{array}
\]

5 Középfokban a more szót tesszük a határozószó elé:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
\text{carefully} & \text{more carefully} & \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

You should do your work more carefully. Please drive more slowly.

A well középfoka better, a badly középfoka worse:
She speaks Arabic better than me. Pollution is getting worse.

A fast középfoka faster, a hard középfoka harder:
Could you walk faster? We're in a hurry. You will have to work harder in future.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak egyikével.

0 The train was very .................. (slow/slowly) and I arrived late.
1 The journey took a long time because the train went very .................. (slow/slowly).
2 Mrs Green went .................. (quick/quickly) back to her office.
3 I'm afraid I can't give you an .................. (immediate/immediately) answer; I need to think about it first.
4 The work that the builders did for us was very .................. (bad/badly).
5 The builders did the work for us very ................................ (bad/badly).
6 She organized the party very ........................................... (good/well), and everybody enjoyed it.
7 Everybody said that the party was very ................................ (good/well).
8 She wrote a .................................. (polite/politely) letter asking the company to give her the money back.
9 She wrote to the company and asked them ................................ (polite/politely) to give her the money back.

B Képezzünk határozószót a zárójelben megadott melléknevekből, és írjuk be a szövegbe.

After work Mrs Proctor drove home 0 quickly ............. (quick). She parked the car 1 ................................ (careful) in the garage and opened the front door 2 ............. (quiet). She didn’t want Jack to hear her. She found Jack in his room playing 3 .................. (happy) on his computer. She looked 4 ............... (angry) at him.

‘Jack, you’ve got exams next week. You should be studying 5 .................. (hard) for them. You didn’t do 6 ............... (good) in the last exams but if you prepared for exams 7 .................. (proper), you could 8 .................. (easy) get better marks.’

‘Connie doesn’t prepare for exams and she did 9 .................. (brilliant) last time,’ said Jack. ‘In any case, you have to write 10 .................. (neat) and do everything 11 .................. (perfect) because if you don’t, they don’t give you the marks. And they don’t give you enough time. You know that I write 12 .................. (slow) and in the exams you have to write 13 .................. (fast). Teachers just don’t treat slow writers very 14 .................. (kind).’ ‘Jack,’ said his mother, ‘you always have an excuse, but you’ll certainly do 15 .................. (bad) in the exams if you keep playing those computer games.’

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a melléknév helyett határozószót használva.

0 Peter is a bad tennis player. Peter plays tennis badly.
1 He’s a dangerous driver. He drives ..........................................
2 She’s a fast swimmer. She swims ..........................................
3 Martin is a good cook. ..........................................................
4 I’m a slow writer. ..........................................................
5 She’s a brilliant chess player. .............................................
6 Sheila is a hard worker. ....................................................
7 They aren’t quick learners. ..............................................

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevekből képzett középfokú határozószóval.

0 You must do your work more carefully .................. (careful) in future.
1 He has run the 100 metres ........................................ (fast) than any other athlete in the world this year.
2 Everyone else did the test ........................................ (good) than me.
3 You can travel ........................................ (cheap) at certain times of the year.
4 He plays ........................................ (confident) than he did in the past.
5 I’m sorry I’ve made so many mistakes. I’ll try .............. (hard) in future.
6 You will be able to sit ........................................ (comfortable) in this chair.
7 This aspirin isn’t working. My headache is getting ............ (bad)
8 The roads are very wet. You should drive .................. (slow)
Összehasonlítás – comparison (as ... as)

1 Az as + melléknév + as szerkezetet két személy vagy dolog hasonlóságára utalhatunk:

\[\text{The chair is as expensive as the table.} \quad (= \text{A szék ugyanolyan drága, mint az asztal.})\]

\[\text{You’re as old as me.} \quad (= \text{Annyi idős vagy, mint én.})\]

Ha a hasonlító szerkezet után személyes névmás van, akkor a névmás tárgyi alakját használjuk: as me/as him/as her/as us/as them), nem: as i/as he/as she stb.

\[\text{She’s as strong as him.} \quad (\text{Nem: ... as he.})\]

\[\text{I’m as fast as them.} \quad (\text{Nem: ... as they.})\]

Ha két tárgy vagy személy különbözőségéről beszélünk, a not as ... as (= nem olyan, mint) szerkezetet használjuk:

\[\text{The two star hotel isn’t as big as the four star hotel.} \quad \text{I’m not as clever as her.}\]

2 Az as ... as szerkezetet határozószóval is használhatjuk (pl. as well as):

\[\text{Jean cooks as well as Tom.} \quad \text{He couldn’t run as quickly as Maria.}\]

(A határozószókról további tudnivalók a 90. fejezetben találhatók.)

3 Az as many + többes számú főnév + as (= annyi, mint) szerkezetet két dolog mennyiségének egyezésére utalhatunk:

\[\text{Jane has got as many friends as Mary.}\]

A not as many … as (= nem annyi, mint) jelentése: két dolognak nem azonos a mennyisége:

\[\text{I don’t have as many books as you.}\]

4 Az as much + megszámlálhatatlan főnév + as szerkezetet ugyancsak két dolog mennyisége hasonlítjuk össze (pl. as much money as). A megszámlálhatatlan főneveknek nincs többes számuk (pl. money, work, luggage, traffic):

\[\text{Helen earns as much money as Colin.} \quad \text{Jack doesn’t do as much work as me.}\]

Figyelem! A money megszámlálhatatlan főnév. (A megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevekről bővebb információ a 70. fejezetben található.)

Gyakorlatok

A A példa alapján írjunk hasonlító mondatokat az as ... as szerkezettel.

0 Sweden is bigger than Britain.

\[\text{Britain isn’t as big as Sweden.}\]

1 The other students learn more quickly than me.

\[\text{I don’t learn as quickly as the other students.}\]

2 You’re very angry and I’m very angry also.

\[\text{I’m as angry as you.}\]

3 The seats at the front are more expensive than the seats at the back.

\[\text{The seats at the back aren’t as expensive as the seats at the front.}\]

4 Central Park in New York is bigger than Hyde Park in London.

\[\text{Hyde Park in London isn’t as big as Central Park in New York.}\]

5 Her last film was very good and her new film is also very good.

\[\text{Her new film is as good as her last film.}\]

6 The other students work harder than him.

\[\text{He doesn’t work as hard as the other students.}\]

240
Contextual translation. The page contains a set of exercises with the word "as". Here's the translation:

**Exercise A**

Egészítsük ki a képekhez tartozó mondatokat az as ... as szerkezet és a megadott szavak segítségével. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

| long | clean | fast | fresh | tall | big | cheap | strong | wide | full |

0 The carrots aren’t as cheap as the cabbages.
1 The black car is going as fast as the white car.
2 The footballers aren’t as tall as the basketball players.
3 Janet’s hair is as long as Kathy’s hair.
4 The car on the left isn’t as fast as the car on the right.
5 The flowers on the right aren’t as big as the flowers on the left.
6 The big glass isn’t as wide as the little glass.
7 Jane isn’t as strong as Matthew.
8 High Street isn’t as wide as Main Street.
9 The black book is as clean as the white book.

**Exercise B**

A zárójelben megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat as much ... as vagy as many ... as használataival.

0 (I’ve got about 50 books. Jack’s got about 100.)
   I haven’t got as many books as Jack.
0 (You’ve done a lot of work. I’ve done a lot of work also.)
   I’ve done as much work as you.
1 (Alan earns a lot of money. Sheila only earns a little.)
   Sheila doesn’t earn as much as Alan.
2 (George has been to five countries. I’ve also been to five countries.)
   I’ve been to as many as George.
3 (You’ve had five jobs. I’ve only had two.)
   I haven’t had as many jobs as you.
4 (Tom has a lot of luggage. Jane has a lot of luggage too.)
   Jane has as much luggage as Tom.
5 (Mary answered most of the questions. I only answered about half.)
   I didn’t answer as much as Mary.
6 (Ruth spent £50. I also spent £50.)
   I spent as much as Ruth.
A táblázatban található információ segítségével egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknévek középfokú alakjával és a than előljárószóval.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Alison</th>
<th>Bernard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>1.6m</td>
<td>1.75m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income</td>
<td>£15,000 per year</td>
<td>£70,000 per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family</td>
<td>2 brothers</td>
<td>1 brother and 2 sisters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>very big</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Alison is ................................................. (short) Bernard.
1 Bernard is .................................................. (tall) Alison.
2 Alison is ................................................... (old) Bernard.
3 Bernard is ................................................... (rich) Alison.
4 Alison’s income is ........................................ (low) Bernard’s.
5 Bernard’s family is ...................................... (big) Alison’s.
6 Alison’s house is ......................................... (small) Bernard’s.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknévek középfokú alakjával és a than előljárószóval.

0 I think that Formula One is ...................................... (interesting) tennis.
1 This question is ................................................ (easy) the last one.
2 I’m a good player, but Eric is .................................. (good) me.
3 The group’s first record was .................................. (successful) their second record.
4 We both played well, but he was ................................ (lucky) me.
5 Your car is ...................................................... (powerful) mine.
6 This computer is ................................................. (useful) that one.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknévek felsőfokú alakjával.

0 Anna is the ............................................... (young) person in her class.
1 We stayed in .................................................. (bad) hotel in the whole city.
2 People say that it is ......................................... (funny) film of the year.
3 What is .......................................................... (tall) building in the world?
4 Her teachers say that she is ................................ (good) student in the school.
5 This is ........................................................... (expensive) camera in the shop.
6 Many people say that Venice is ................................ (beautiful) city in the world.

D Pótoljuk a hiányzó részeket a zárójelben megadott melléknévek közép- vagy felsőfokú alakjával és ennek megfelelően a than előljárószóval vagy a the névelővel.

0 A: Why did you choose that hotel? It’s a long way from the centre of town.
   B: I chose it because it was ................................... (cheap) the hotel in the centre.
0 A: Shall we sit in the living-room?
   B: Yes, it’s .................................................. (warm) room in the house.
1 A: Did you enjoy being a student?
   B: Yes, they were ........................................... (happy) years of my life.
2 A: Is he famous in this country?
   B: Yes, he’s ........................................ (famous) any other singer.
3 A: I’m not a very good cook.
   B: I’m sure I’m ........................................ (bad) you. I can’t cook anything well.
4 A: Do you like this programme?
   B: Yes, I think it’s ........................................ (good) programme on TV.
5 A: What did you have for dinner?
   B: I chose ........................................ (expensive) dish on the menu.
6 A: How is your new course going?
   B: It’s ........................................ (difficult) the last one I took.
7 A: What’s the weather going to be like today?
   B: They say that today is going to be ........................................ (wet) yesterday.
8 A: Are you happy in your new flat?
   B: Yes, it’s ........................................ (comfortable) my last one.

Irjunk hasonlító mondatokat a példa alapján.

0 (a pearl ring/a diamond ring) expensive
   A diamond ring is more expensive than a pearl ring.

1 (India/Scotland) hot

2 (physics/geography) difficult

3 (living in a city/living in the country) stressful

4 (a kilometre/a mile) long

5 (Edinburgh/London) big

6 (Italian films/American films) good

7 (travelling by train/travelling by plane) slow

8 (Michael Jackson/Madonna) famous

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a példa alapján.

0 Chemistry ........................................ is the most difficult subject we study at school. (difficult)
1 ........................................ is ........................................ band I’ve ever heard. (good)
2 ........................................ is ........................................ film star I’ve ever seen. (beautiful)
3 ........................................ is ........................................ book I’ve ever read. (bad)
4 ........................................ is ........................................ I’ve ever been from home. (far)
5 ........................................ is ........................................ film I’ve ever seen. (sad)
6 ........................................ is ........................................ subject we study at school. (interesting)
G Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevek közép- vagy felsőfokú alakjával. (Felsőfoknál ne feleddkezzünk meg a the névelőről.)

0 I think Helen is much nicer than her sister.
0 Susie is the prettiest baby I've ever seen.
1 Mary says that (happy) time of her life was when she was a little girl.
2 Tom has lost weight. He used to be a lot (fat) than he is now.
3 Malta is (small) state in the European Union.
4 After a day on the ski slopes I felt (hungry) than I had ever felt before.
5 Travelling by bus is (cheap) than travelling by train, but I find the train (comfortable).
6 Sally has just passed her test, but she is already a (good) driver than her father.
7 I've always found twentieth century literature (interesting) than nineteenth century literature.
8 The Caprice is (expensive) restaurant in town.

H Egészítsük ki ezt a földrajzi vetélkedőn elhangzott párbeszédet a zárójelben megadott melléknevek megfelelő alakjával.

SUE: Ready? Right, first question. What is the highest mountain in the world?
SAM: That's easy. Mount Everest.
SUE: Good. Now, is the Nile (long) than the Amazon?
SAM: I'm not sure. I think the one is about as (long) as the other.
SUE: Yes, geographers do not agree, but in any case they are the longest rivers in the world. Now, is Australia as (big) as the United States?
SAM: Yes, in fact it's (big), I think.
SUE: No, although it often looks (big) on maps, in fact it's (small). Now, where are the most active volcanoes in the world?
SAM: I don't know. New Zealand?
SUE: A bit (close) to Europe than that. Indonesia. Finally, where is the salty sea in the world?
SAM: That's easy. It's the Dead Sea in Israel.
SUE: Very good! You're the (good) competitor this week.

I Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott határozószók középfokú alakjával.

0 Ruth isn't a bad cook, but her husband cooks better than she does. (well)
1 We all pushed, but we couldn't get the car to start. 'Push!' Mike shouted. (hard)
2 The school choir sang in this year's concert than I've ever heard them sing before. (well)
3 Laura treated Tony badly when she went out with him, but she treated Paul even worse! (badly)
4 After the accident, Sandra finally started driving carefully. (carefully)
5 Can you walk a bit slower? You walk too fast for me! (slowly)
6 The nightingale sings than any other bird. (beautiful)
7 Anna is often late for work, but this morning she arrived much than usual, and the manager asked her to go and see him. (late)
George has a gift for speaking foreign languages. He seems to learn them ................. than the rest of us. (easily)

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az as ... as szerkezettel és a megadott melléknevekkel. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

cold expensive rich amusing tall big hard old

1 My flat has four rooms. Janet’s flat has six.
   My flat isn’t .................................... Janet’s.

0 I am about 160cm tall. So is John.
   John is ....................................... me.

1 The temperature today is -2° centigrade – the same as yesterday.
   Today is ...................................... yesterday.

2 Sonia has £5,000 in the bank, but Amy has £30,000.
   Sonia isn’t ................................. Amy.

3 The red dress costs £80. The black one costs the same.
   The black dress is ............................. the red one.

4 Platinum is harder than gold.
   Gold isn’t ................................. platinum.

5 Mary sometimes makes us laugh, but Sue tells really funny jokes!
   Mary isn’t .................................. Sue.

6 Diana is eighteen. So is her friend James.
   Diana is ................................. James.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az as much vagy as many szókapcsolattal.

0 I drink about five cups of coffee every day, and so does Pam.
   Pam drinks ................................... coffee as me.

0 Sue has six cousins. George has six, too.
   George has ................................. cousins as Sue.

1 I worked all day, but Dave stopped at lunch time.
   Dave didn’t do ............................... work as me.

2 Tony and Liz both watch television for about three hours every day.
   Tony watches .............................. television as Liz.

3 I took two chocolates from the box, but he took a handful!
   I didn’t take ............................... chocolates as him!

4 Mark buys two new CDs every week, and so does Jane.
   Jane buys ................................... new CDs as Mark.

5 Dan’s house is full of books, but we’ve only got a few.
   We haven’t got ................................ books as Dan.

6 Alan makes a lot of long phone calls, and so does Clare.
   Clare makes ................................. long phone calls as Alan.
-ed vagy -ing végű melléknevek (frightened, frightening)

1. Hasonlitsuk össze a **frightened** és a **frightening** mellékneveket:

Az -ed végződésű mellékknév az emberben keltett érzésre utal:

**frightened**

Az alany (Ann) az, aki megijedt.

Az -ing végződésű mellékknév az adott érzést kiváltó személyre vagy dologra utal:

**frightening**

A mondat alanya (the ghost) változta ki az ijedtséget.

2. Hasonlitsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:

**We are all surprised by the news.**
I was very **tired** at the end of the journey.
(= Fárad voltam az utazás végére.)
He was **excited** by the way the game ended.
I'm **interested** in your idea. (= Érdekel az ötleted.)
The students were **bored** during the lesson.
(= A diákok unatkoztak az órán.)
Were you **disappointed** by the film?
I wasn't nervous before the exam; I was **relaxed**.
The children were **entertained** by three clowns.
Jack was totally **convinced** by Ann’s explanation.

**The news is surprising.**
The journey was very **tiring**.
(= Az utazás fárasztó volt.)
The end of the game was **exciting**.
Your idea is **interesting**. (= Érdekes az ötleted.)
The lesson was **boring**. (= Az óra unalmas volt.)

Was the film **disappointing**?
I went for a **relaxing** walk.
The clowns were **entertaining**.
Ann’s explanation was **totally convincing**.

Az -ing végződésű mellékknév lehet a léttégyével alkotott állítmány része, de lehet főnél előtt álló jelző is. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

**The journey was very tiring.**
It was a very **tiring** journey.

Gyakorlatok

A. Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt a zárójelben megadott melléknekvekből közül.

0. It was a terrible play and I was **bored** ........................................ (bored/boring) from start to finish.
1. I'm very ........................................ (excited/exciting) because I’m going to New York tomorrow.
2. Are you ........................................ (surprised/surprising) or were you expecting this news?
3. I'm reading a very ........................................ (interested/interesting) book at the moment.
4. I've had a very ........................................ (tired/tiring) day at work today and I want to go to bed.
5. Most people were ........................................ (surprised/surprising) that he won the championship.
6. I'm ........................................ (bored/boring). Let’s go out for a cup of coffee somewhere.
7. Visit our ........................................ (excited/exciting) new shop!
8. His speech was very long and very ........................................ (bored/boring).
LIZ: When I go to the cinema, I like to be entertained.

CRAIG: What sort of films do you like?

LIZ: I like films that tell a good story. And I mean a story that you can follow, not the sort that goes backwards and forwards in time. I find those very boring.

CRAIG: And what sort of films do you find entertaining?

LIZ: Well, I like films that are not necessarily intelligible, it’s not necessarily events or endings – things that you can’t possibly know at the beginning.

CRAIG: For me the most important thing is that the actors must be convincing so that you really believe that they are the person they are acting.

LIZ: If that’s true, I imagine that you are most of the time because, well, for example, Harrison Ford is always Harrison Ford. I’m never that he’s somebody else.

CRAIG: Yes, but it’s often not important in his films because they’re escapist – if you’re feeling tense about work or something, you have a good laugh and you come out feeling and happy with the world.

LIZ: I’m that you like his films. Although the special effects are good, the story is always terribly simple.

CRAIG: He’s not my favourite, but his films are not bad.
Túlságosan, eléggé – too, enough (too big, big enough)

1. Nézzük meg a példát:

   The case is too heavy. He can’t carry it.
   A too jelentése: több, mint ami egy bizonyos helyzetben kívánatos vagy megfelelő.

2. A too használata:

   too + MELLÉKNÉV:
   I don’t want to go out. I’m too tired. (túl fáradt)

   too many + FŐNÉV TÖBBES SZÁMBAN:
   I couldn’t find her at the concert because there were too many people there. (túl sok ember)

   too much + MEGSZÁMLÁHLATLAN FŐNÉV:
   (pl. too much work/money/food/noise/salt/information/time/bread)
   Our teacher gives us too much work.
   (= A tanár túl sok munkát ad.)

3. A too használható to + főnévi igenév szerkezetben is:

   She’s too young to drive.
   (= Túl fiatal ahhoz, hogy vezessen.)

   Ebben a szerkezetben a for előljárószó is használható:
   It’s too cold for us.
   It’s too cold for us to swim.

4. Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:

   This case is big enough. I can put all my clothes into it.
   The small case isn’t big enough.

   Az enough jelentése: annyi, amennyire szükség van. A not enough jelentése:
   kevesebb, mint amennyire szükség van.

5. Az enough használata:

   MELLÉKNÉV + enough:
   Is your room warm enough? (elég meleg)

   enough + FŐNÉV TÖBBES SZÁMBAN:
   I’ve got enough potatoes, thanks. (elég krumpli)

   enough + MEGSZÁMLÁHLATLAN FŐNÉV:
   I can’t talk to you now. I haven’t got enough time. (= Nincs elég időm.)

6. A not ... enough + to + főnévi igenév szerkezettel azt mondjuk meg, hogy valaki miért nem csinálhat valamit:

   She isn’t old enough to drive.

   Ebben a szerkezetben a for előljárószót is használhatjuk:
   It’s not warm enough for us.
   It’s not warm enough for us to swim.

Gyakorlatok

A. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat too vagy enough és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

   0. I can’t eat this soup because it’s too hot.
   0. We couldn’t buy the tickets because we didn’t have enough money.
   0. We didn’t buy the car because it wasn’t big enough.
   1. I couldn’t see her because it was too dark.
   2. I can’t decide what to do because I haven’t got enough information.
   3. You can’t change the situation now. It’s too late.
   4. Have you had enough food, or would you like some more?
   5. He did badly in the exam because he was too nervous.
   7. He shouldn’t play in the team because he isn’t good enough.
   8. I haven’t got enough clothes. I must buy some more.
Írjunk mondatokat a példa alapján too vagy enough és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

0 I can’t drink the coffee because there’s a lot of sugar in it. (There’s/sugar/coffee)
   There’s too much sugar in the coffee.

0 If we walk to the station, it takes ten minutes. We’ve got fifteen minutes. (We’ve got/time/walk to the station.)
   We’ve got enough time to walk to the station.

1 I can’t read all the books that I’ve got. (I’ve got/books/read.)

2 We can’t go for a walk because it isn’t warm. (It isn’t/warm/go for a walk.)

3 You can’t move on those buses because there are a lot of people on them. (There are/people/on those buses.)

4 I’ve got £10 and the CD costs £15. (I haven’t got/money/buy the CD.)

5 We’ve got three players and the game needs four players. (We haven’t got/players/for the game.)

Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat too vagy enough + főnévi igenév (pl. to do, to go) használatával.

0 Clare couldn’t sleep. She was too worried.
   Clare was too worried to sleep.

0 I can’t go on holiday. I haven’t got enough money.
   I haven’t got enough money to go on holiday.

1 I can’t do any more work. I’m too tired.

2 Judy won’t pass the exam. She hasn’t worked hard enough.

3 Clive can’t play basketball. He’s too short.

4 His girl-friend couldn’t go to the party. She was too ill.

5 David couldn’t pay the bill. He didn’t have enough money.

6 Shall we go to the beach? Is it hot enough?

7 I can’t see you tonight. I’m too busy.

8 I don’t want to go home. It’s too early.

9 Chris couldn’t repair the car. He didn’t have enough tools.

10 I didn’t visit all the museums. I didn’t have enough time.
Gyakoriságot kifejező határozószók – adverbs of frequency (always, never stb.)

1 Nézzük meg, mit hányszor, hány napon csinál Jane egy évben:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She has a cup of tea at breakfast</td>
<td>365</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She goes to the cinema</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She walks to work</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She goes swimming</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She goes on holiday</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Igy is megfogalmazhatjuk:
- She **always** has a cup of tea at breakfast.
- She **sometimes** goes to the cinema.
- She **never** walks to work.
- She goes swimming **every week**.
- She goes on holiday **twice a year**.

2 A következő határozószók a cselekvés gyakoriságára utalnak:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0%</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5%</td>
<td>hardly ever</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10%</td>
<td>rarely</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30%</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Az **often** szóban t hangot nem ejtünk.)

Az **always**, **usually** stb. határozószók a mondatban a **be** vagy a segédige (pl. **have**, **must**) után állnak:

- He is always late.
- I’ve often been to Spain for my holidays.
- You must never swim after a big meal.

Ha az állitmány nem **be** vagy valamilyen több tagból álló igéalkak, akkor ezek a határozószók a főige elé kerülnek:

- I **usually** walk to work.
- She **rarely reads** a newspaper.

**Never** és **hardly ever** mellett a **not** tagadószót nem használjuk:
- I **never watch** TV at weekends.
  (= Het végén soha nem nézek tévét.)
- I **hardly ever drink** coffee.
  (= Szinte soha nem iszom kávét.)

Figyelem! Az angol mondatban nincs kettős tagadás. A **never** (soha) és a **hardly ever** (szinte soha) önmagában is tagadást fejez ki, tehát a következő szerkezet nem helyes: 
- **never don’t drink** vagy **hardly ever don’t watch**!

3 Ha pontosan megmondjuk, milyen gyakran csinálunk valamit, a következő határozószókat használjuk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>every ...</td>
<td>once a ...</td>
<td>twice/two times a ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three times a ...</td>
<td></td>
<td>four times a ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ezek általában a mondat végén állnak.

Néhány példa:
- I **run round the park every day**.
- I **play tennis once a week**.
- She drinks coffee **three times a day**.
- I **go skiing once a year**.
- He drives to London **twice a month**.

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Helyezzük el a mondatban a zárójelben megadott szavakat.

0 I work late at the office.
  (often) **I often work late at the office.**

1 You must lock the front door when you leave.
  (always) ..............................................................

2 Steve and Jill play tennis.
  (twice a month) ......................................................

3 I eat a sandwich for lunch.
  (usually) ..............................................................

4 I go to jazz concerts at the weekend.
  (sometimes) ............................................................

5 My teacher gives me a lot of homework.
  (every day) ............................................................

6 We see our Mexican friends.
  (hardly ever) .........................................................
7. They go to Morocco for their holidays.
   (often) ..........................................................

8. Bill and Marie go to the theatre.
   (four times a year) ...........................................

9. They are at home in the evening.
   (rarely) ..........................................................

B. A táblázat és a példa alapján alkossunk gyakoriságot kifejező mondatokat Liz és Ken tevékenységeivel kapcsolatban.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>10%</th>
<th>20%</th>
<th>30%</th>
<th>40%</th>
<th>50%</th>
<th>60%</th>
<th>70%</th>
<th>80%</th>
<th>90%</th>
<th>100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 walk to work</td>
<td>Liz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 get up early</td>
<td>Liz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 watch TV</td>
<td>Liz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 take a taxi</td>
<td>Liz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 have supper at home</td>
<td>Liz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Liz sometimes walks to work. Ken never walks to work.

1

2

3

4

C. Írunk mondatokat John rendszeres tevékenységeiről a táblázat és a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>day</th>
<th>week</th>
<th>month</th>
<th>year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a newspaper</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his mother</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shower</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abroad</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 (He/go/swimming) He goes swimming twice a week.

1 (He/buy/a newspaper) ........................................

2 (He/phone/his mother) ......................................

3 (He/have/a shower) .........................................

4 (He/go/abroad) ............................................... 

5 (He/visit/his sister) .......................................

6 (He/play/tennis) ...........................................
1 A **here** határozószó arra a helyre utal, ahol a beszélő van, a **there** egy attól távolabb helyre. Kötetlenebb stílusban mondhatjuk azt is, hogy **over here**, illetve **over there**.

*I’ll stay here with the camera; you go over there.*

Helyet jelentő határozószók: **abroad, ahead, away, back, left, right, upstairs, downstairs, nearby, inside, out, outside, forward(s), backwards(s), sideways**.

*Mary is abroad but she’s coming back soon. Go upstairs and turn left and you’ll see the bathroom. (= Menj fel ...)*

Figyelem! Az **abroad** (= külföldön, külföldre), az **upstairs** (= fenn, fel) és a **forwards** (= előre) élő nem teszünk előjárószót: **She went abroad — NEM **to-abroad; She went upstairs — NEM **to-upstairs; The people moved forwards to see the stars arrive. — NEM **to-forwards.**

Az **outside** nem csak azt jelenti, hogy egy épületen kívül, hanem azt is, hogy valahol a közében, pl. a kertben; az **out** jelentése, hogy nincs otthon, illetve nincs benn a munkahelyén; az **away** pedig azt, hogy sem otthon nincs, sem a munkahelyén, pl. egy időre elutaszott:

*A: Where is everybody?  
B: Your mother’s outside, working in the garden; your brother’s gone out, to the cinema, I think; and granny’s gone away for the week.*

2 Ha iránty adunk meg, a következő határozószókat használhatjuk: **straight on, on/to the left/right, up/down/along** (this road, stb.), **as far as** (the corner, stb.) (Id. 101. fejezet):

*Go along this road. You’ll see a church on the left, but continue straight on. Walk as far as the church (= a templomig) on the right. Turn left and the station is in front of you.*

Figyelem! Az **as far as** jelentése: ‘-ig’, de csak helyhatározói értelben, pl. **as far as the corner** = a sarokig, időhatároként nem. **NEM**: as far as ten o’clock; **HELYESEN**: till ten o’clock.

3 A cselekvés helyének meghatározására az **at** előjárószót használhatjuk: **at school/work/home**, irányával kapcsolatban pedig a **to**-t: **to school/work**. Figyelem: a **home** élé nem kell, pl. **She is going home. (= Hazafelé megy.)** Ha valaki nincs a munkahelyén, hiányzik, mert például beteg, az **off** előjárószót használhatjuk: **off school/work**:

*My children are at school and my wife is at work.  
I take Mary to school in the car, but she comes home by bus.  
A lot of people are off work with flu.*

4 Sorrendet a következő határozószókkal nevezzünk meg: **first, second, third** stb. (ld. 86. fejezet), **last** vagy **lastly** vagy **finally** (= végül). To make a phone call, **first**, insert the coins; **second**, dial the number, **third**, keep your call brief; **last**, take any money that is left.

Több egymás után következő cselekvés leírását kezdhetjük a **first** szóval, majd a **then**, **next, afterwards** és **after that** kifejezéseket használhatjuk: **We went shopping. First we bought some bread; then we went to the fruit market, after that we had a coffee; and finally we got some pizzas.**
We took the train to Central Station. 0 Outside there is a bus-stop, but we decided to
1 walk along Church Street. First, 1 we called at a bank, Lindley’s Bank, I think. And then
2 we walked as far as the church. 3 Before the church we noticed a school on the right.
4 At the church we turned right and 5 saw the market straight ahead. 6 Nearby there was
an ice-cream shop where we bought two ice-creams. Then 7 we walked back to the
station along Market Street.

0 X ..... 0 . . . . . 1 . . . . 2 . . . . 3 . . . . 4 . . . . 5 . . . . 6 . . . . 7 . . . .

Az előző gyakorlatban szereplő térkép és a megadott kifejezések segítségével egészítsük ki a
következő útbaigazításokat.

ahead along (x2) along this road as far as (x4) left on the left (x3)
on the right (x3) right (x2) straight on

A: Can you tell me how to get to the post office please?
B: Yes, walk 0 along ................................ this road, Church Street, 1 ......................... the
school. The school is 2 ..................................... . Turn 3 ................................. and the post
office is 4 .............................................

A: Excuse me. Is there a police station near here?
B: Yes, walk 5 .............................. it’s called Station Road. Don’t take the first road on the
right. Walk 6 ................................. the library 7 .............................. . Turn
8 ................................. . Walk along Broad Lane 9 .............................. the next road –
and you’ll find the police station 10 ..............................

A: Which is the best way to the market please?
B: Go 11 .............................. this road – it’s called Church Street – and you will see a school
12 .............................. Go 13 .............................. 14 .............................. the
church 15 .............................. . Turn 16 ................................ and you will see the market
straight 17 ..............................
A határozó helye a mondatban

1 A határozó három helyen állhat a mondatban: az alany előtt, az állítmány előtt, vagy a mondat végén.

Sometimes I play classical music.
I sometimes play classical music
I play classical music sometimes.

A határozót nem tehetjük a tárgy elé:
I play classical music sometimes.

Nem minden határozó állhat a három hely bármelyikén.

2 Rendszerint azok a határozók állnak az ige előtt, amelyek
► kétfélet, meggyőződést vagy bizonyosságot fejezznek ki – pl. probably, certainly,
    definitely stb.: They will probably take the train.
► (megkézölő) mérték jelölők – pl. quite, almost, nearly stb.: Molly nearly had an accident.
► gyakoriságot fejezznek ki (ld. 95. fejezet), vagy a cselekvés vagy esemény idejére utalnak – pl. soon, once, still, recently, immediately, suddenly, eventually, just (= éppen), already (ld. 19. fejezet): I once had a trip in a helicopter.
Tim suddenly realized that he was in danger.
► egy szó vagy mondat jelentését hangsúlyozzák – pl. also, even, just (= csak, egyszerűen), only:
I’ve only passed two subjects.

A fent említett határozók a létige (am/is/are/was/were) után állnak a mondatban:
He is probably from Milan.
We were also very hungry.

3 A módhatározó – amely azt határozza meg, hogy valami hogyan vagy milyen minőségben történik – (pl. well, badly, quickly, slowly, carefully, hard stb.) általában a tárgy után áll:
You must clean the shoes carefully.
Mike’s sister read her poem perfectly.

Ha nincs a mondatban tárgy, akkor a módhatározó a főige után következik:
They walked slowly towards the town.
Mary sings beautifully.
They slowly walked towards the town.

4 A mondat végén álló too (= is, állítás után) és either (= sem, tagadásnál) a mondatban említett mindkét lehetőségre utal:
Jenny sings and she plays the piano, too.
(= Jenny énekel is, zongorázik is.)
I don’t eat meat and I don’t eat eggs, either.
(= Nem eszem húst sem, és tojást sem.)

Az either… or (= vagy… vagy) szerkezet segítségével két lehetőséget fogalmazunk meg (ld. 131. fejezet):
Either they’re not at home or they can’t hear the phone. (= Vagy nincsenek otthon, vagy nem hallják a telefon.)
Either you love me or you leave me.
(= Vagy szeretsz, vagy elhagysz.)

5 A több szóból álló időhatározók, mint pl. in the morning, last Saturday, during the holidays, stb. vagy a mondat elején, vagy a mondat végén állnak:
Last Saturday Mary earned twenty pounds.
Mary earned twenty pounds last Saturday.

Ugyancsak a mondat végén állnak az egyéb, több szóból álló határozók: to the market, under the trees, with a knife stb.
The scouts put their tents under the trees.
Mrs Owen opened the letters with a knife.

A különböző határozók sorrendje a mondatban a következő:
módhatározó, helyhatározó, időhatározó
The children were playing happily in the garden.
Susan worked hard yesterday.
We went to France last summer.

Gyakorlatok

A írjuk át a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott határozószó beillesztésével.

0 (probably) They will take the train. They will probably take the train.
1 (definitely) She comes from Leeds. She comes from Leeds.
2 (often) Philip was in trouble. Philip was in trouble.
3 (suddenly) We noticed that Timmy wasn’t with us. We noticed that Timmy wasn’t with us.
4 (certainly) Mrs Jackson is very helpful. Mrs Jackson is very helpful.

254
(recently) They have changed the traffic signals. They ........................................ the traffic signals.

(eventually) Anne will understand the problem. Anne ........................................ the problem.

(just) Those boys are terrible. Those boys ........................................ terrible.

(never) I take the car into town. I ........................................ into town.

(almost) Penny won the race. Penny ........................................ the race.

(already) The actors were on the stage. The actors ........................................ on the stage.

A kosszunk mondatokat a megadott szavakkal. Ügyéljünk a helyes szórendre.

(hard/worked/yesterday) Susan ........................................ worked hard yesterday.

(all day/have/well/worked) They ........................................

(after lunch/in the sea/swam) The children ........................................

(during the night/heavily/rained) It ........................................

(before supper/did/in my room/my homework) I ........................................

(better/last week/played) Our team ........................................

(differently/in Scotland/do/things) They ........................................

(outside the cinema/patiently/waited) The young people ........................................

(for half an hour/in the bathroom/was) My son ........................................

(breakfast/have/in the dining room/never) We ........................................

(almost/missed/the train/yesterday) Alan ........................................

Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

Bath is 0 in the south west of England an interesting city, an interesting city in the south west of England. Thousands of tourists 1 in the summer visit it, visit it in the summer. Some of them 2 will just visit will visit just the ‘Roman Baths’ but most tourists 3 will also take a look will take also a look at the ‘Royal Crescent’, a row of historical houses. After that, they can either 4 walk through slowly walk slowly through one of Bath’s beautiful parks like the ‘Royal Victoria Park’ with its botanical gardens, or 5 drink tea elegantly drink elegantly tea in the eighteenth-century ‘Pump Room’! The writer Jane Austen 6 once lived in the centre lived in the centre once of the city, and wrote the two novels Persuasion and Northanger Abbey in Bath. There’s also a classical music festival in May and June but note that 7 people sometimes buy people buy sometimes tickets a year in advance. Outside Bath, you can visit the unusual ‘American Museum’ or you 8 just can drive can just drive around the countryside. Bath is 9 an important UK tourist attraction definitely definitely an important UK tourist attraction, so you may need to book your hotel in advance.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1 Margaret biztosan dublini.

2 Azonnal felhívjuk az orvost telefonon.

3 Vagy alszanak még, vagy elmentek a boltba.

4 Anna nem beszél spanyolul, és franciául sem.

5 István augusztus óta egy irodában dolgozik.

6 Az unokatestvéreim soha nincsenek otthon vasárnap.

7 Tracy nem tud énekelni, és még tánclni sem tud.

8 A távcsővel tisztán láttuk az állatokat.
Ilyen, olyan – so, such

A so és a such szavakkal a melléknév jelentését hangsúlyozzuk. Hasonlók észek a kettőt:

1

**So**
Helen got all the answers right. She is so clever.

A so melléknév vagy határozószó előtt állhat. Melléknév előtt csak akkor, ha a melléknév után nem áll főnév.

This tea is so sweet! Tom's feet are so big!

They get up so late. Maria sang so beautifully!

**Such**
Helen got all the answers right. She is such a clever person.

A such a/an szerkezet melléknév + egyes számú főnév előtt áll. A such (a/an nélkül) többes számú főnevek (pl. feet) és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek (pl. food) előtt áll:

It was such an amazing car! He has such big feet! That was such excellent food.

(A megszámlálhatatlan főnevekről szóló tudnivalók a 360. oldalon a B táblázatban találhatók.)

2

A so a many/much határozatlan névmás előtt is állhat:

- **so many** + többes számú főnév:
  *There were so many people in the shop.*

- **so much** + megszámlálhatatlan főnév:
  *We had so much work to do.*

A such a lot of kifejezéssel is használható:

- **such a lot of** + többes számú főnév:
  *There were such a lot of people in the shop.*

- **such a lot of** + megszámlálhatatlan főnév:
  *We had such a lot of work to do.*

3

A so és a such segítségével valaminek a következményét is kifejezhetjük:

- **It was so dark**
  *He arrived so late, we didn't see him. He missed his train.*

- **It was such a dark night**
  *It was such a lovely day, we went to the beach.*

Gyakorlatok

A Két kamaszlány kedvenc énekeséről beszélget. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a so, such vagy such a/an használataival.

**EVE:** I think he's got so much** a** lovely smile.

**ANN:** And his eyes are so beautiful.

**EVE:** And he's got so lovely hair.

**ANN:** And the way he moves about on the stage – that's so sexy.

**EVE:** What about his hands? He's got so wonderful hands!

**ANN:** And so voice! So incredible voice!

**MOTHER:** And you two buy so many of his records that he must be incredibly rich as well.
B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **such** vagy **such a/an** használatával.

1. Edinburgh is ............... wonderful city.
2. Motorbikes are ............... dangerous machines.
3. I love skiing. It’s ............... exciting sport. But it’s a dangerous sport, too.
4. My cousin had ............... terrible accident. He almost died.
5. I like these new dresses. They are ............... pretty colours.
6. We had ............... wonderful meal. The food was excellent.
7. Susan Strange is ............... interesting writer.

C Alkossunk mondatokat **so, such, such a/an** és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével. Úgyeljünk a megfelelő ijeidő használatára.

1. I can’t believe that Tom is only thirteen. (He/have/grow/tall)
   **He has grown so tall!**

2. I never believe those boys. (They/be/always/tell/stupid lies)
   **They are always telling such stupid lies!**

3. I enjoy John’s cooking. (He/be/creative cook)

4. I can’t hear anything. (Those people/be/make/much noise)

5. Fred won three prizes. (He/be/lucky)

6. Sara always looks lovely. (She/wear/pretty clothes)

7. We had three ice-creams each! (They/be/delicious)

8. I don’t smoke. (It/be/unhealthy habit)

D Alakítsuk át a mondatokat **so ... that** használatával a példa alapján.

1. We decided not to phone them because it was very late.
   **It was so late that we decided not to phone them.**

2. Sally didn’t finish the exam because she worked very slowly.
   **She worked ...............**

3. We didn’t buy the camera because it was very expensive.
   **The camera was ...............**

4. Paul didn’t go out because he was very tired.
   **Paul was ...............**

5. Peter couldn’t see the holes because they were very small.
   **The holes were ...............**

6. I couldn’t finish the food because there was too much of it.
   **There was ...............**

7. She couldn’t interview everybody because there were too many people.
   **There were ...............**
Helyet jelölő előljárószók – prepositions of place
(in, on, under stb.)

1 A következő előljárószók segítségével helyet határozhatunk meg:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>at</th>
<th>under</th>
<th>behind</th>
<th>outside</th>
<th>near</th>
<th>between</th>
<th>in front of</th>
<th>above</th>
<th>next to/beside</th>
<th>opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2 Nézzük meg a képet és a példamondatokat:

There is a woman in the phone box.
The people are outside the cinema.
The clock is on the pavement.
The cinema entrance is under the clock.
The bank is next to/beside the cinema.

The phone box is opposite the cinema.
The bank is between the cinema and the café.
There is a hill behind the town.
The car is in front of the bank.

3 ➢ next to/beside, near (= mellett, a közelében)

A is next to/beside B.
A and B are near C.

➤ opposite (= szemben)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cinema</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone box</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The phone box is opposite the cinema.

Figyelem! Az opposite (= szemben) után nem áll még egy előljárószó, nem opposite with/to the cinema, HANEM opposite the cinema.

➤ at

Az at előljárószó után a főnév előtt általában határozott névelő (the) áll: at the bus stop, at the cinema.
Vannak azonban olyan főnevek, amelyek előtt nem használunk névelőt: at work (= a munkahelyén), at home, at school:
Ruth is at work, Jane's at school, and I'm at home.

➤ on

He works on the third floor.
Don't walk on the grass!

Gyakorlatok

A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat előljárószóval.

A                      B                      C

0                      1                      2

3                      4                      5

6                      7                      8

9

258
0 The file is on the desk.
1 She’s her parents.
2 Do you like the picture the door?
3 He works an office.
4 The car is parked my house.
5 Where’s the waste-paper basket? It’s the desk.
6 The woman John on the plane has got a big hat.
7 The safe is the picture.
8 They live a caravan.
9 A young man with long hair is the man with no hair.

8 Egészitsük ki a szöveget a megadott előjárószókkal.

in front next on (x 2) at (x 2) in above under near

My name is Mike. I live Manchester in England. I have a flat
1 the fifth floor of an apartment block. My friend Paul lives
2 me in a flat 3 the sixth floor. I know that he’s
4 home now, because I can hear his music!

Hi! I’m Sue. I live in Flat 22 and my sister lives to me in Flat 23.
I’m a secretary and because I live my office, I can walk there in
the morning. I start work the office at nine o’clock.

I’m Pete. I’m not happy. There’s a train tunnel my house, and a
very busy road of it. I’m always tired because I don’t sleep very
much.

C Az alábbi képet leíró állításokban lévő előjárószók használataiban tévedés lehet. Javítsuk ki a hibákat, illetve pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat.

0 There is a TV on the table.
0 There is a dog on the floor.
1 The dog is behind the table.
2 The cat is next to the flowers.
3 The keys are beside the flowers.
4 The flowers are in the vase.
5 There is a big book in front of the flowers.
6 There is a picture under the table.
7 The cat is above the table.
8 There is a bird on a cage.
Idő jelű előljárószók – prepositions of time (in, on, at stb.)

1 Az in, on, at előljárószót időhatározóban is gyakran használjuk.
   - Az in előljárószót akkor használjuk, ha napokról, hónapokról, évvakonokról vagy évkezről beszélünk:
     in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening
     in January, in February, in March
     in the spring, in the summer, in the autumn
     in the winter
     in 1542, in 1686, in 1995
   - Az on előljárószót akkor használjuk, amikor valamilyen napról vagy dátumról beszélünk:
     on Wednesday, on Thursday evening
     on Christmas Day, on her birthday
     on April 9th (Kiolvasva: on April the 9th)
     on the 9th of April
   - Az at előljárószóval napokról, napkezéről vagy évrekézéről időpontokról beszélhetünk:
     at 11 a.m., at three o’clock
     at breakfast, at lunch-time, at tea-time,
     at dinner

A következő szókapcsolatokban is at előljárószót használunk:
   - at night, at the weekend
   - at Christmas, at Easter

2 Az in, on és at előljárószó helyett a következő szavak is használhatóak:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>this</th>
<th>next</th>
<th>last</th>
<th>every</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m going home { in April. this April.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m playing tennis { on Wednesday. next Wednesday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She left { at the weekend. last weekend.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He visits Jane { on Saturday. every Saturday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figyelem! This, next last és every előtt nem áll előljárószó. NEM: in this week, HANEM this week (= ezen a héten), NEM: on every Saturday, HANEM every Saturday (= minden szombatson).

3 A from ... to ... (= ...-tól ...-ig) szerkezetet időtartomot fejezünk ki:
   The museum is open from 10 a.m. to 6 p.m.
   She’s staying here from Sunday to Tuesday.
   We have a tea-break from 3.30 to 4 p.m.

A from előljárószóval alkotott szókapcsolat önállóan is állhat:
   I will be in Paris from Wednesday.

   Monday Tuesday Wednesday
   in Paris

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat in, on vagy at előljárószóval.

   0 I went to Turkey in July.
   1 We must leave five o’clock.
   2 We’ll have a break the afternoon.
   3 She’s arriving Monday.
   4 It’s very cold here night.
   5 I was born 1970.
   6 I never work the weekend.
   7 We can play tennis the summer.
   8 School starts September 5th.
   9 I’ll see you lunch-time.

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal.

   two o’clock summer 1990 winter weekend Saturday birthday

ANN: Are you going on holiday in the summer?
TOM: No, but I went skiing in Italy in the first, and I’m going to America at the second. I’ll be in New York on the third; then I’m travelling south to Texas. What about you? Are you going away this year?
ANN: Yes. In fact, I’m flying to Morocco at tomorrow.
TOM: Really? It’s a wonderful country. I was there in.
ANN: Just think! I’ll be on a Moroccan beach on my birthday!
C Olvassuk el a következő levelet. Ahol az aláhúzott szavakat helyesen használták, pipáljuk ki, ahol nem, húzzuk át, és írjuk le a helyes megoldást.

Dear Ina

How are you? The weather isn't very good here, but it's always very cold in the winter here. It certainly gets very cold at night. It will be Christmas soon. We often go to my grandparents at Christmas - we went last year and the year before, but in this year we're staying at home.

Suzanne was 21 the last month. We went out at her birthday and at dinner she told us she was getting married. We were all really surprised.

I'm hoping to see you in the summer. Are you still going to come over on next June? Let me know.

Lynn

D Ebbe a táblázatba a következő napokra (today, this week) és hónapokra (in December, next year) tervezett programokat írtuk.

| 0 | (play/volleyball) | → | the afternoon |
| 1 | (meet/Steve) | → | Wednesday morning |
| 2 | (go/to the bank) | → | 10 a.m., Friday |
| 3 | (go/sailing) | → | the weekend |
| 4 | (start/a new job) | → | next Monday |
| 5 | (visit/Egypt) | → | December |
| 6 | (get/married) | → | January 10th |
| 7 | (go/to Mexico) | → | the spring |
| 8 | (learn/to ski) | → | April |
| 9 | (buy/a new boat) | → | next year |

Alkossunk mondatokat a táblázatban megadott kifejezésekkel folyamatos jelen (I'm doing) és a szükséges előjárószók (in, on stb.) használatával.

0 I'm playing volleyball in the afternoon.
1 I
2 I
3 I
4 I
5
6
7
8
9

E Fejezzük be a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott információ segítségével.

0 (2 to 3) The shop is closed from 2 to 3.
0 (Friday) She will be on holiday from Friday.
1 (June August) The beach is busy.
2 (ten o'clock) I'll be at the sports centre.
3 (March) The new motorway will be open.
4 (Monday Friday) We work.
6 (January) She will be in Hong Kong.
Mozgást és irányt jelölő előljárószók – prepositions of motion and place (into, out of stb.)

1. Előljárószókkal mozgást vagy irányt is kifejezhetünk:

   - She walked out of the house.
   - I ran into the station to catch the train.
   - I'm flying to Italy tomorrow from London Heathrow.
   - He jumped over the wall.
   - She walked under the bridge.
   - She put the flowers on (to) the table.
   - Then she took them off the table.
   - We walked through the gate.
   - The cat ran across the road.

   - We walked along (= végigsétált) the path.
   - The bus went past the bus stop without stopping.
   - He ran up the steps and knocked on the door.
   - We cycled down the hill.
   - He ran between two players and scored a goal.
   - She walked towards the house.
   - She got on the bus and he got off the bus. De He got into the car. He got out of the car.
   - He ran round the track. (= Körbefutotta a pályát.)

Gyakorlatok

A. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott előljárószókkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>under</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>through</th>
<th>down</th>
<th>between</th>
<th>along</th>
<th>out of</th>
<th>into</th>
<th>across</th>
<th>over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. She walked ......................................... the road that goes to the farm.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. She swam ........................................ the pool from one side to the other.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. We ran ................................................ the hill until we reached the bottom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I climbed ........................................ the stairs to the top of the building.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The dog hid ........................................ the table, so that we couldn’t see it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I jumped ........................................ the sea and swam to the boat.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The horse jumped ................................ the last fence and won the race.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The vase is ........................................ the photograph and the clock.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. The rain came ..................................... the roof and into the house.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I walked ........................................ the house and went to my car.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. I went ........................................ the shops and bought some food.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The race starts at the Town Hall. The runners go across the Town Hall and they run along the main square, to the river. Then they run over New Bridge and they go past the road beside the river for about 200 yards. They go under the theatre and down Castle Hill. They turn right in front of the Castle, and they go past Steep Hill. Then they go through the tunnel and they finish at the station.

Tourists from many different countries visit Mayfield. While they are there, they can enjoy a railway trip from Mayfield to Eastwood. They get on the train at the little station in Mayfield. First the train runs past rocks and tall trees and then suddenly it goes through a tunnel. It takes two minutes to go through the tunnel. The train then goes along the river and runs past the coast; at one point it goes under a castle on a hill. Then the train turns inland and travels through the distant hills, but soon it turns again and stops at the station in Eastwood. And that’s where the tourists get off the train. They can then spend a pleasant afternoon walking in Eastwood.
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: előljárószók (99–101. fejezet)

A Hol tartózkodnátképén látható személyek? Írjuk a számokat a megfelelő kifejezés mellé.
1 in the supermarket
2 on the supermarket
3 under the supermarket
4 behind the supermarket
5 in front of the supermarket
6 next to the supermarket
7 near the supermarket
8 above the supermarket

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat in, on vagy at előljárószóval.
0 Peter lives in Turkey.
1 There were some beautiful pictures on the walls of their living-room.
2 The children play on the grass near the park.
3 Does this bus stop at the railway station?
4 The books were on a shelf above the garage.
5 Ecuador is South America; it lies at the equator.
6 The gun was in the pocket of a dress that was hanging in the cupboard.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott előljárószókkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>onto</th>
<th>at</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>into (x3)</td>
<td>onto (x2)</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 The march started in the park. From there we marched to the Town Hall.
1 The tiger escaped from its cage and jumped into the lake. It took a long time to get it out of the lake and back to its cage.
2 Stupidly, Simon drove his car off the beach and then he couldn't move it, because the wheels sank into the sand. He needed eight people to push it out of the beach and back to the road.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a kép alapján.

0 There is a road beside the river.
1 There are some boats beside the river.
2 The Town Hall is beside the theatre.
3 The post office is beside the theatre.
4 The theatre is beside the Town Hall.
5 The post office is beside the theatre and the police station.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott előljárószókkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

behind, outside, in front of, out of, under, over, next to, on, into, through

0. He picked up the money and put it **into** his pocket.
1. The man in the seat ...................... me was very tall and I couldn’t see the game.
2. I keep a lot of useless things on the floor ...................... the bed.
3. She got .................................. the pool after a few minutes because the water was very cold.
4. I always like to sit ...................... the window on aeroplanes, so that I can look at the view.
5. Henry kicked the ball and it went ...................... the window and into the kitchen.
6. He was ...................... me, so I didn’t see him.
7. The book you need is ...................... the bottom shelf.
8. The ball went ...................... my head, and I couldn’t catch it.
9. The manager told me to wait ...................... her office because she was busy.

Fejezzük be a mondatokat a naptár lapja és a zárójelben megadott kérdések segítségével. Minden mondatban használjunk előljárószót.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>April 1999</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20 Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interview Kate Bell in the London office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0. (the year?) I interviewed Kate **in 1999.**
1. (the month?) I interviewed Kate ......................
2. (the date?) I interviewed Kate ......................
3. (the day?) I interviewed Kate ......................
4. (the part of the day?) I interviewed Kate ........
5. (the time?) I interviewed Kate ......................
6. (the season?) I interviewed Kate ......................

Adjunk rövid választ a kérdésekre a kép alapján.

0. Who’s sitting behind Sue?  **Frank**
1. Who’s sitting in front of Emma?  **Nobody**
0. Who’s sitting next to Alison?  ......................
1. Who’s sitting in front of Carol?  ......................
3. Who’s sitting behind Tracey?  ......................
4. Who’s sitting between Jeff and Eric?  ......................
5. Who’s sitting beside Tony?  ......................
6. Who’s sitting behind Penny?  ......................
Egészítsük ki a következő beszélgetést a megadott előljárószókkal. Az egyik üres helyre semmilyen előljárószó nem szükséges.

outside from (x2) in (x2) under opposite at

JULIE: Is this seat free?
KEVIN: Yes. I’ll move my bag and put it under the seat in front.
JULIE: Thank you. This is the train for Chester, isn’t it?
KEVIN: Yes, it is.
JULIE: Thank goodness! I’ve got an interview this afternoon the law school there.
KEVIN: Oh yes, I know it. It’s right the centre, the museum.
JULIE: Do you live in Chester?
KEVIN: No, I live in Eccleston. It’s a small village Chester.
JULIE: What do you do?
KEVIN: I’m a trainee teacher a large secondary school. Some of the students come the city and the others come the surrounding villages.
JULIE: It’s August so you must be on holiday now.
KEVIN: Yes, that’s right, but next term starts soon.

A kép alapján állapítsuk meg, hogy melyik állítás igaz, és melyik hamis.

0 There’s a boat sailing across the bay.  Igaz
0 There is an airbed in the pool.  Hamis
1 The pool is between the hotel and the bar.  
2 There are three people in the pool.  
3 We can see some tables behind the bar.  
4 A man is standing at the bar.  
5 A child is jumping out of the pool.  
6 Some people are sunbathing beside the pool.  
7 A man is walking into the hotel.  
8 A waiter is taking drinks from the table.  
9 A woman is sitting on her balcony.  

266
Javítsuk ki az előző gyakorlat hamis állításait a megfelelő előljárószóval.

0. **There is an airbed beside the pool.**

1. ...........................................................................................................................

2. ...........................................................................................................................

3. ...........................................................................................................................

4. ...........................................................................................................................

Pipaíjuk ki a hibátlanul használt előljárószókat a következő mondatokban, a hibákat pedig javítsuk ki.

0. I live in London. ✓

0. John lives in Paris. □

1. When you want to see a film, you often wait out the cinema. .................

2. Mary is not in home today. ............

3. We can sit on the beach and watch the boats. ..............

4. She works on Room 36 on the third floor. ............. ............

5. We can play on Saturday on the afternoon. .................

6. The train must go along three tunnels. ............

7. The man opened the door and walked into the shop. ............

8. Move those books of that table and take them at Mary. ..........

9. They arrived in Tuesday on lunch-time. .................

10. They walked through the fields towards the village. ............

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1. Találkozzunk a stadionnál a meccs előtt!

2. A templom mellett laksz?

3. A bank a postával szemben van.

4. Csütörtökön este nyolckor érkezem.

5. A boltok reggel 9-től este 8-ig tartanak nyitva ebben a városban.

6. Hét végén otthon szoktál lenni?

7. Judy a születésnapján leutazott a tengerhez.

8. A postás az ajtón kívül áll.

9. A koncert végén valaki leesett a színpadról.

10. Ha a konyhába akarsz menni, menj át ezen a szobán!
Előljárószók – prepositions (in, with, by)

1 Az in előljárószóval öltözékre, ruhára is utalhatunk:
Jane is the woman in a red dress.
I went to the interview in my new suit.
It was a sunny day, and everyone was in summer clothes.
Are you allowed to go to work in jeans?
We saw some soldiers in uniform.

2 Testrészekhez kapcsolódó tulajdonságokat általában with előljárószóval említhetünk:
A small boy with red hair came into the shop.
(= Egy vörös hajú kislány jött be az üzletbe.)
Our teacher is a tall man with a beard.
Lisa is a pretty girl with blue eyes.
Jack was talking to a man with a big nose.
Állatok leírásakor is használhatjuk a with előljárószót:
A rabbit is an animal with big ears and a small tail.

3 A with segítségével bizonyos dolog egy részéről, külső tulajdonságáról vagy tartozékáról is beszélhetünk:
They live in a white house with a flat roof.
(= Lapos tetejű fehér házban laknak.)
I bought a shirt with red stripes.
I used the pot with the wooden handle.
He has a hi-fi with very big speakers.

4 A with előljárószót használhatjuk a cselekvés eszközének megnevezésekor:
You clean your teeth with a toothbrush.
You open a tin with a tin opener.
I cleaned the table with a cloth.
Please eat with your knife and fork.

5 Amikor a cselekvés módjára utalunk, a by + -ing (pl. by doing) szerkezetet használhatjuk:
You start a car by turning the key. (= Az autó a kulcs elfordításával indítható.)
She learnt French by listening to tapes.
She became successful in business by working very hard.
The prisoners escaped by climbing over a wall.

6 A without + -ing szerkezettel bizonyos cselekvés vagy esemény hiányára utalhatunk:
They left without waiting for me. (= Úgy mentek el, hogy meg sem vártak.)
She passed the exam without doing a lot of work.
(Nem ... without-to do ...)
He did the work without making any mistakes.

7 Ha járművel való utazásról beszélünk, a by előljárószót használjuk:
We went to the concert by car/b by bus/b by train/b by taxi/b by bike/b by plane.
Ha megmondjuk, melyik vagy milyen autón, az in előljárószót használjuk:
We went to the concert in my car/in Ann’s car.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat in vagy with előljárószóval.

0 A young man .................. a moustache was driving the car.
1 He showed me a photograph of a woman .................. blue eyes.
2 We live in a house .................. a green door.
3 A lot of businessmen .................. suits were on the train.
4 There was a plant .................. big, green leaves in the corner of the room.
5 John was walking down the street with a woman .................. a black coat.
6 Look at that bull .................. those enormous horns!
7 One of the children was a girl .................. long, dark hair.
8 A man .................. a hat came into the café.
9 Soldiers .................. uniform were standing at the entrance to the building.
10 She wanted to buy a computer .................. a screen, a keyboard and a mouse.
11 We booked a hotel room .................. a bathroom.
12 It was cold, so I went out .................. a coat and scarf.
13 We bought a television a big screen.
14 He arrived for the meeting a grey jacket.

6 Keressük meg a számozott mondatok befejezését a jobb oldali oszlopban, és pótoljuk a hiányzó előljárószót.

0 You must speak to the woman a a sharp knife.
1 A giraffe is an animal b sitting in the sun.
2 I want a shirt c plane.
3 She cleans her teeth d lots of sugar.
4 They live in a house e beards.
5 I like my coffee f my sister’s car.
6 We went from Scotland to Canada g the green skirt.
7 I usually go to town h breaking a window.
8 You should always cut meat i four chimneys.
9 They got into the house j uniform.
10 The soldiers do all their exercises k salt and water.
11 She has a car l a very long neck.
12 He dried his hair m a round collar.
13 You can’t make an omelette n breaking eggs.
14 Some women prefer men o four-wheel drive.

6 Üljük át a két mondatot egyetlen mondattal by vagy without előljárószó + -ing használatával.
0 He opened the door. He turned the key.

   He opened the door by turning the key.
1 He repaired the car. He changed some of the parts.
2 She answered the question but she didn’t read it carefully.
3 He left. He didn’t say thank you.
4 She got the money because she sold her car.
5 I threw the letter away. I didn’t open it.
6 We worked all day and we didn’t eat anything.
7 He lost weight. He went on a strict diet.
8 I went out, but I didn’t lock the door.
1 Vannak olyan igék, amelyeket általában egy bizonyos előljárószóval együtt használunk (pl. for, to, on):

**IGE + ÉLŐLJÁRÓSZÓ**

agree with (= egyetért): I don’t agree with you.
apologize for (= elnézést kér valamiről): They apologized for their late arrival.
apply for (= folyamodik valamiről): He applied for another job.
argue about (= vitatkozik valamiről): They always argue about money.
ask for (= kér/elkér valamit): Did you ask for the bill? (NEM Did you ask the bill?)
believe in (= hisz valamiben): Do you believe in ghosts?
complain about (= panaszkodik valami miatt): I complained about the bad service.
derepend on (= függ valamitől): The salary depends on your age. (NEM from)
hear about (= hall valamiről): Did you hear about Bill? He won the lottery!
listen to (= hallgat valamit/valakit): She listens to the radio a lot.
shout at (= kiabál valakiire): My dad shouted at me because I arrived home late.
think about (= gondolkodik valamin): It’s a difficult decision. I need to think about it.
wait for (= vár valamire): I was waiting for a bus.

2 Nézzük meg a példákat:

- **arrive at/in** (megérkezik valahova):
  - We arrived at the airport. (a repülőtérrre –adott helyre, pl. egy épületbe)
  - We arrived in Portugal. (Portugáliaba – valamilyen országa vagy városba)
  (NEM arrive to)

- **look at** (néz) **look for** (keres):
  - Look at that strange man over there!
  - I’m looking for my diary.

- **talk to/about** (beszél valakihez/valamiről):
  - She was talking to some friends.
  - They were talking about politics.

3 **Which, where, what, who vagy how many kérdőszóval kezdődő kérdéseken az előljárószó rendszerint a mondat végére kerül:**
Which school did you go to?
Where are you from?
How many jobs have you applied for?

4 Sok ige után általában nem áll előljárószó:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>_phone/ring</th>
<th>(= felhív telefonon):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He phoned/rang me last night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEM He phoned/rang to me last night</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>discuss</strong></td>
<td>(= megvitat):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We often discuss sport.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEM We often discuss about sport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>answer</strong></td>
<td>(= válaszol):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She didn’t answer me.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEM She didn’t answer to me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reach</strong></td>
<td>(= megérkezik):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I reached the office at nine o’clock.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEM I reached to the office at nine o’clock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Figyeljük meg a különbséget: **pay someone** (= fizet valakinek), **pay for something** (= fizet valamiért) és **pay someone for something** (= valakinek fizet valamiért):

- She paid Mr Peters. (Mr Petersnek)
- She paid for the books. (a könyvekért)
- She paid Mr Peters for the books.

Ha számla kifizetésről beszélünk: **pay a bill**: I’ll pay the bill.

Nézzük meg az **ask ige használatát**: **ask someone** (= kérd valakihez/valamiről), **ask for something** (= kérd valamiért) és **ask someone for something** (= kérd valakihez/valamiről):

- Who did you ask? ~ I asked Pat.
- I asked for some water.
- I asked Pat for some water.
  (NEM I asked some water from Pat.)
A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat előljárószóval (to, for stb.), ahol szükséges.

0 I’m waiting for a telephone call.
0 We reached the airport after eleven o’clock.
1 I’ll ask some information.
2 Let’s listen some music.
3 Where do I pay this shirt?
4 Let’s discuss the arrangements for tomorrow.
5 Who’s going to pay the taxi driver?
6 We paid the bill and left the restaurant.
7 I’ll phone the theatre and book two tickets.
8 The price of the holiday depends when you want to travel.
9 He walked out of the room without answering me.
10 A lot of people don’t agree you.
11 I’ve applied a visa.

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget előljárószókkal, ahol szükséges.

When Jack arrived, he was waiting him. ‘Where have you been?’ she asked him. ‘We can talk that later,’ said Jack. ‘I tried to phone you to say that I was going to be late, but you were out. Let’s go into the concert.’ ‘OK,’ said Alice, ‘but, as you were late, you have to pay the tickets!’ ‘What?’ said Jack, ‘All right. I don’t want to argue it, but I don’t agree you. It’s not fair!’

C Alkossunk kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavak és az igének megfelelő előljárószó használatával.

TIM: What are you doing here, Pam?
PAM: I’m just waiting.
TIM: (who/you/wait) Who are you waiting for?
PAM: Sara. She’s talking to the boss.
TIM: (what/they/talk) She wants more money.
PAM: I don’t know, but she’s thinking about looking for a new job.
TIM: (how many jobs/have/she/apply) Five or six, I think. By the way, is that a new walkman that you’ve got?
PAM: It’s new but it’s not mine.
TIM: And (what/you/listen) The new Ricky Martin album. It’s great!
Dear Sam,

We arrived in Greece at about eleven o'clock. We got a taxi from the airport to the port, and then we took a lovely little boat to the island. I enjoyed looking at the scenery on the way. When we reached the island, we looked for our villa but we couldn't find it.

I talked to a local man, and I asked directions. He offered to take us there. When we arrived at the villa, I offered to pay him, but he didn't want any money. The weather's lovely.

I'll ring you when we get back from our holiday.

Love,

Tina
Egészitsük ki a kérdéseket a megadott igékkel és a hozzájuk tartozó előljárószóval (ha szükséges), majd keressük meg a kérdésekre adott választ, ahogy a példa mutatja.

argue  ask  believe  listen  phone  look  talk

0 What kind of music do you  listen to?
1 What do you and your parents ..........................................................
2 Are you allowed to ........................................ your friends whenever you want?
3 What kind of job are you going to ..................................... when you leave school?
4 What do you and your friends usually ........................................... ?
5 Do you get pocket money every week or do you just ......................... your parents for money when you need some?
6 Do you ................................................................. love at first sight?
a I’m going to try and find a job in computing.
b I get a fixed amount of pocket money each week.
c Mostly rap and techno.
d No, I don’t. I think it takes time to fall in love.
e Yes, but I can’t stay on the phone too long as it’s very expensive.
f We often don’t agree about how late I can stay out.
g Oh, the usual things – school and our love lives!


Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

1 Vannak emberek, akik nem hisznek az evolúció elméletében.
2 Melyik felszolgálóra panaszkodtál?
3 Sajnálatom, hogy hibáztam.
4 Havazott, amikor Szóciába érkeztünk.
5 Kivel beszélgettél, amikor találkoztunk?
6 Megbeszéltem a problémát a tanárnővel.
7 Jim kérezdett valamit, de senki nem válaszolt neki.
8 Nyolckor értük el a határt.
9 Ki fogja kifizetni az orvost?
10 Fred mindig az evésre gondol.
11 Tina pénzt kért a bátyjától.
12 Melyik rádiót hallgatod?
Melléknév + eloljárószó – adjective + preposition
(angry with, afraid of)

1 Bizonyos melléknévek után előljárószó + főnév
(vagy névmás) áll:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MELLÉKNÉV + ELOLJÁRÓSZÓ + FŐNÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m afraid of dogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s good at maths.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

angry with (= mérgező valakire): John is very angry with me.

annoyed with (= bosszúzásodik valaki miatt): I was annoyed with my sister.

bored with (= un valamit): I’m bored with grammar!

brilliant at (= kiváló valamiben): Jenny is brilliant at maths.

busy with (= el van foglalva valamivel): Tom was busy with his work.

careless with (= gondatlan valamivel): Bill is careless with his money.

cruel to (= kegyetlen valakivel): Ann’s mother was cruel to her.

famous for (= hires valamiről): France is famous for its cheese.

fed up with (= torkig van valamivel): I’m fed up with your behaviour!

fond of (= kedvel valakit): Peter is very fond of children.

frightened of (= fél valamitől): Our cat is frightened of your dog.

full of (= tele van valamivel): The rooms were full of old furniture.

good at (= jó valamiben): Are you good at sport?

grateful for (= hálás valamiért): They were grateful for our help.

interested in (= érdeklődik valami iránt): She’s interested in old coins.

keen on (= lelkesedik valamiért): He’s very keen on chess.

kind to (= kedves valakivel): Your sister was very kind to us.

lucky at (= szerencsés valamiben): I’m often lucky at games.

pleased with (= örül valaminek): Ian was pleased with the result.

proud of (= büszke valamire): They’re proud of their children.

sure about (= bizonyos valamiben): Are you sure about her name?

surprised by (= meg van lepve valami miatt): I was surprised by her anger.

worried about (= aggódik valami miatt): I’m worried about my new job.

2 Vannak olyan melléknévek, amelyek után előljárószó + -ing-es alak áll:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MELLÉKNÉV + ELOLJÁRÓSZÓ + -ING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He is sick of washing dishes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I’m not very good at running.
Robert is very fond of talking.
Ann is used to working at night.

3 Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi két mondatot:
Ann is used to working at night.
Peter used to work at night.
Az első mondat azt jelenti, hogy Ann rendszeresen éjjel dolgozik. A be used to + -ing jelentése: megszokta, ezt csinálja. Ezt a szerkezetet múlt és jelen időben is használjuk.
Ann will/was used to working at night.
A második mondat a múltra vonatkozik, más ijeidőben ez a szerkezet nem létezik. A used to + főnévi igenév jelentése: valamikor a múltban csináltam, de ma már nem (ld. 28. fejezet).

4 Van néhány olyan melléknév, amely után az -ing-es alak előljárószó nélkül áll:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MELLÉKNÉV + -ING-ES ALAK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They were busy getting things ready.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s no good worrying about the weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s not worth taking the car; we can walk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(= nem ért meg)

Gyakorlatok

A Pótoljuk a hiányzó előljárószókat (pl. with, of).

0 Mary is pleased ...................... her exam results. She got good marks in most subjects.

1 Thank you very much. I am very grateful ...................... your help.

2 It was the day of the concert, and everyone was busy ...................... the preparations.

3 Sandra was very brave. We are very proud ...................... her.

4 I like geography and I’m very interested ...................... history as well.
5 We’ve got plenty of food. The fridge is full …………………… things to eat.
6 John is very clever. He’s brilliant …………………… physics and chemistry.
7 Jane doesn’t like small animals, but she’s very fond …………………… horses.
8 Susan and Jane like sports. They are particularly keen …………………… hockey.

Írjunk kérdés-válasz párokat a zárójelben lévő szavak használatával. Ne feledkezzünk meg a szükséges előjárószókról (pl. with, of, at).

0 A: (Jane, why/be/you/angry/Peter?) ~ B: (Because he/be/very careless/his money)
   A: ………………………………………………………………………………………………
   B: Because he is very careless with his money.

1 A: (be/their daughter/good/school work?) ~ B: (Yes, in fact she/be/brilliant/everything)
   A: ………………………………………………………………………………………………
   B: ………………………………………………………………………………………………

2 A: (Why/be/Mr Bell’s dog/afraid/him?) ~ B: (Because he/be/often/cruel/it)
   A: ………………………………………………………………………………………………
   B: ………………………………………………………………………………………………

3 A: (be/Laura/fond/classical music?) ~ B: (Yes, she/be/very keen/Bach, for example)
   A: ………………………………………………………………………………………………
   B: ………………………………………………………………………………………………

4 A: (be/you/pleased/Peter’s exam results?) ~ B: (Yes, we/be/very proud/him)
   A: ………………………………………………………………………………………………
   B: ………………………………………………………………………………………………

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott melléknevekkel és a szükséges előjárószókkal.

busy famous full good interested kind
no good sick used worried worth

TERRY: How did your job interview go?

PENNY: All right, I think. The company director was quite 0 kind to ……………………………………… me.

TERRY: What does the company make?

PENNY: Clothes. It’s 1 ……………………………………… its sports clothes, in fact. I had to wait outside the office for a while because the director was 2 ……………………………………… talking to some clients. The corridor where I waited was 3 ……………………………………… boxes with clothes in them.

TERRY: And what did he ask you?

PENNY: He asked me if I was 4 ……………………………………… maths. I told him that maths was my best subject at school. He asked me if I was 5 ……………………………………… working under pressure, and I told him that I prefer to be busy at work so that it was no problem. Then he asked me why I was 6 ……………………………………… changing jobs, and I said that I was 7 ……………………………………… working hard for so little pay. I’m a bit 8 ……………………………………… that answer now; perhaps it wasn’t the best thing to say.

TERRY: It’s 9 ……………………………………… thinking about it now. What do you think your chances are?

PENNY: I’m not sure but I think it’s 10 ……………………………………… going to an interview from time to time because it gives you practice.
Kifejezések előljárószókkal – phrases with prepositions
(at first, by post stb.)

Egyes főnevek bizonyos előljárószókkal állandó kifejezéseket alkotnak.

1 Az at a következő állandó kifejezésekben fordul elő: at best/worst, at most/least, at first, at last, at the beginning/end of:
At worst we'll have to wait a week.
(= Legrosszabb esetben egy hetet várunk kell.)
The credits are at the end of the film.

Sebesség megadásakor is az at előljárószót használjuk:
He was going at 90 kilometres an hour.

2 A by előljárószóval járművön történő utazást fejezhetünk ki: by car/bike/bus/plane/train stb. (de: on foot):
She goes to work by bus.
They went to Scotland by car.

Ha megmondjuk, hogy milyen autóval, az előljárószó in lesz:
They went to Scotland in Jane's car.
A by előljárószóval arra is utalhatunk, hogy valami milyen módon jut el valahova: by mail/post/fax/airmail/phone/hand, by cheque (de: in cash), by means of:
We will send the parcel by post/airmail. You can order tickets by phone.
Do you want to pay by cheque or in cash?
They get information by means of street interviews.

Egyéb kifejezések: by accident (= véletlenül), by mistake (= tévedésből).

3 A for előljárószó a következő kifejezésekben szerepelhet: for ever, for example, for sale és for her/My/your stb. sake:
The flat next to ours is for sale. (eladó)
I'm only doing this for your sake. (csak a te kedvedért)

4 A következő kifejezésekben az in előljárószó szerepel: in advance, in the beginning/end, in a hurry, in brief/short/conclusion, in charge (of), in connection/contact/touch (with), in control, in danger, in fact, in fashion/style, in favour (of), in focus, in general, in love, in my/your stb. opinion, in order, in pain/tears, in private/public, in progress, in spite of, in time:
In brief, we need to put the records in order.
In the end they fall in love.

A következőkben is in az előljárószó: in writing, in ink, in pencil:
We need permission in writing.
Egyéb kifejezések: in this/that/any case, in these/some cases, stb.:
In some cases we have to operate.

5 Az on előljárószót a következőkben használhatjuk: on behalf of, on board, on business/holiday/a trip, on purpose, on strike, on the internet, on (the) television/TV/the radio/the phone, on the contrary, on time, on top/the left/the right (of), on the boat/bus/train/plane, on the whole:
Mrs Thomas is away on business. The pilots are on strike.
She always does her homework on the bus.

Figyeljük meg a következőket: on my own, on your own stb., és by myself, by yourself stb.:
She decorated the room on her own/herself.

6 Az out of az in ellentéte: out of control/danger/fashion/focus/style:
Nowadays hats are out of style.
(= Ma már nem divat a kalap.)
Az out of szerepel még a következő kifejezésekben: out of date, out of order, out of place, out of reach, out of touch, out of work:
My sister has been out of work for two months.

7 Gyakran használt kifejezések még: under age, under control, under cover, under pressure, up to date, up to no good, up to two/three stb., months, up to you/him stb., with regard/respect to, within reach, without delay, without doubt, without exception, without fail.

8 Ugyancsak gyakran használt előljárószó az except és az instead of:
Everybody came except Brian.
I'm using oil instead of butter.

9 Nem feltétlenül használunk előljárószót, ha súlyról vagy sebességről beszélünk:
Those apples are two pounds a kilo.
Fifty miles an hour. (= NEM in an hour.)
Gyakorlatok

A
Egyszítsük ki a mondatokat előljárószókkal.

0 They are very much in love.
1 Everyone came in car Peter. He came in foot.
2 You have to complete the form in ink and send it in post.
3 We’re in a hurry; we must leave in delay.
4 In my opinion, you should do your homework in your own.
5 Someone moved the camera in accident and so all the photos were in focus.
6 In regard to your different suggestions, I’m in favour of the first one.
7 Nobody is in control of the machines because everybody is in strike.
8 Jeans used to be in fashion. Everybody wore them. But now they’re in style.
9 I heard in the radio that the house next door is in sale.
10 In general, I don’t like group work. I prefer to work in myself.

B
Keressük meg a mondatok befejezését.

0 People under a the left.
1 My sister has been out of b date.
2 In Britain they drive on c TV tomorrow night.
3 Mrs Jackson is away on d purpose.
4 We arrived just in e age can’t buy cigarettes.
5 By tomorrow your notes must be up to f work for a month.
6 Mary says she made the mistake on g time for the film.
7 I don’t know who’s in h charge of the sports centre.
8 My mother’s going to be on i business until the end of the week.

C
Egyszítsük ki a következő levélrészletet a megadott szavak és a hiányzó előljárószó használatával.

first holiday once hurry charge ever example mistake

Dear Pete
I’ve been living in this city for a couple of months now. It’s a very busy place and everyone seems to be in a hurry all the time. Nobody is willing to wait for anything, they want to have it. I see this all the time. I was in a restaurant the other day and the man at the next table demanded to speak to the person because he’d been waiting five minutes! When the waiter then brought the wrong meal, he went completely mad. I thought I’d like living here but now I’ve decided it’s a good place to visit but I wouldn’t want to live here.

Rick
A Pótoljuk a hiányzó előljárószókat, ahol szükséges.

0 When I was ... the train, I met an old friend.
0 He visits Jane ... every Saturday.
1 My friends went to the party ... car but I went ... foot.
2 They came ... home ... Christmas.
3 I gave her a lift ... my car.
4 We travelled to the airport ... coach.
5 Nobody planned it; it simply happened ... accident.
6 ... the plane, I sat next to a woman from Dublin.
7 We went ... the car because it was raining.
8 Did you see a man ... curly hair ... a brown suit?
9 I go to work every day ... the bus.
10 We got to the island ... boat.
11 Who paid ... the bill ... last Sunday?
12 We went for a ride in the countryside ... our bikes.
13 Jim keeps ... touch ... his friends ... email.

B Válasszuk ki a megfelelő a zárójelben megadott előljárószók közül.

0 (on, in, at) They live ... a small flat.
1 (across, along, through) The train went ... a long tunnel.
2 (at, on, in) We’re going skiing ... Easter.
3 (through, by, with) The boys got in ... breaking a window.
4 (at, on, in) Jill’s very good ... languages.
5 (at, on, by) Tim usually goes to work ... foot.
6 (in, by, with) We’ll have to go ... Sally’s car.
7 (with, by, without) The police came in ... knocking on the door.
8 (under, along, across) There’s a bridge ... the river about a mile from here.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott kifejezésekkel.

afraid of believe in busy with grateful for in favour instead of out of order in fact in pain on strike on the contrary on their own out of focus without delay

0 Part of the photo was ... out of focus.
1 There were no buses because the drivers were ...
2 Nobody helped them; they prepared the meal all ...
3 My parents were ... the arrangements for the wedding.
4 Jack was unconscious, so at least he wasn’t ...
5 I’m not ... ghosts because I don’t ... them.
6 Penny was ... all the help that she got.
Dear Jane,

Last Saturday I met a wonderful boy \textit{at Richard's party}. He was tall, \textit{a beautiful dress} Africa annoyed asked asked dark hair fashion first full interested love me proud \textbf{Richard's party} Sunday talked talking taxi the end the end think wait

I managed to join the group of people who were listening to his story about wild animals his other adventures. But then he noticed me. 'Hello,' I said, 'I enjoyed the story, but I'm a bit Richard because he hasn't introduced us. My name's Ingrid.' (I was quite myself because I didn't him to say something first.) Anyway, his name is Robin and we spent the rest of the evening together, everything: music, sports, films, and so on. We seem to be the same sorts of things. \textit{of the party, I his telephone number and I gave him mine. Then I went home}, \textit{Robin phoned me the next day and we are going to meet again I'm not sure whether I'm with him, but I certainly him all the time.}

Write soon with all your news,

Pamela
A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal és a szükséges előljárószókkal.

0. a cloth
1. a country road
2. a tropical beach
3. arrived
4. business
5. cash
6. cheque
7. control
8. danger
9. frightened
10. herself
11. holiday
12. Italy
13. listening
14. order
15. over
16. ninety
17. kilometres
18. an hour
19. place
20. reach
21. shouted
22. some trees
23. the garage
24. the bridge
25. the ladder
26. the radio
27. time

280
0 Jimmy is frightened of big dogs.
1 The boss gave the lazy workmen who were sitting to get it for him.
2 Charles was lying .
3 Mel was cycling .
4 The box was for Timmy, but his sister climbed to catch the train.
5 The boat was and the sailors were .
6 Sally was sitting , cleaning her bike .
7 The car was going very fast .
8 Mary paid but Tom paid .
9 Gina was one of her favourite singers .
10 They the station .
11 Most of the books were but one was .
12 Terry is this week; he’s there .

Egészítük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal és a szükséges előjárószókkal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>age a hurry advance apologize bored brilliant example fond least lucky my car public purpose train used work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 They didn’t go by bus; they went by train .
0 I don’t like cats but my wife is quite them.
1 It certainly wasn’t an accident. Mary broke the glass .
2 We had very little time so I told the taxi driver that we were .
3 My brother hasn’t got a job; he’s been for six months.
4 Sally won fifty pounds last night. She’s very cards.
5 At first I found London very noisy, but now I’m the noise.
6 Jack and Gina didn’t say they were sorry. They never anything.
7 Some animals, dogs, can hear very well.
8 My sister sings very well, but she has never sung .
9 You’ll get half of the money and the rest when the work is finished.
10 Pam is only fifteen. She can’t buy drinks because she’s .
11 If you want a lift, you can come with me .
12 All Mike’s classmates are coming, so there’ll be twenty people at the party.
13 Let’s do something different. I’m this game.
14 Zoli’s not very good at science, but he’s languages.

Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.
1 Philip mindig autókról beszél, és ez engem nem érdekel.
2 Jack megpályázott egy állást a helyi bevásárlóközpontban.
3 A kapunál piros levélszerekrény volt, benne néhány levéllel.
4 Vacsora közben eldöntöttük, hogy ki fizeti majd a számlát.
5 Elegem van Péterből. Nem fogom hallgatni az ostoba történeteit.
A szenvédő szerkezet – the passive (1); Present Simple és Past Simple

1 A szenvédő szerkezet a be ige megfelelő alakjából és befejezett melléknévi igénévből áll:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am/is/are +</th>
<th>BEFEJEZTETT</th>
<th>MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cotton</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>grown in the USA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ÁLLITÁS
This programme is shown on TV every Thursday. (= Ez a műsor csütörtökönként megy a tévében.)

TAGADÁS
These computers aren’t produced any more. (= Ezeket a számítógépeket már nem gyártják.)

KÉRDÉS
When is breakfast served? (= Mikor szolgálják fel a reggelt?)

(A szabályos befejezett melléknévi igenevek az E táblázatban, a 362. oldalon találhatóak, a rendhagyó alakok a 363. oldalon, az F táblázatban.)

2 A szenvédő szerkezet múlt időben a be ige múlt idejű alakjából és befejezett melléknévi igénévből áll:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>was/were +</th>
<th>BEFEJEZTETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The data</td>
<td>was put into the computer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ÁLLITÁS
‘Romeo and Juliet’ was written by Shakespeare. (= A Rómeó és Júliát Shakespeare írta.)

TAGADÁS
The goods weren’t delivered yesterday. (= Az árut tegnap nem szállították le.)

KÉRDÉS
When was your camera stolen? (= Mikor loptak el a fényképezőgépet?)

3 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ: They sell</th>
<th>TÁRGY: cold drinks here.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SZENVEDŐ: Cold drinks</td>
<td>are sold here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figyelem! Magyarálp a két mondat fordítása ugyanaz. A cselekvő mondat tárgya (cold drinks) egyezik a szenvédő mondat alanyával, These cars are made in Japan. (= Ezeket az autókat Japánban gyártják.)

Azt nem kell hozzátennünk, hogy ki gyártja: … by Japanese workers.

This castle was built in the twelfth century. (= Ez a kastély a 12. században épült.)

Nem tudjuk, ki építette.

Így kérdezzünk a különböző mondatrészekre: Where are these cars made?

When was this castle built?

4 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:

(i) Alfred Hitchcock was a great film maker. He directed this film in 1956.

(ii) This is a wonderful film. It was directed by Alfred Hitchcock.

A második mondatban szenvédő szerkezetet használnunk, mert a cselekvés tárgya (a film) fontosabb a beszélő számára, mint a cselekvő (Hitchcock). A cselekvőt ilyenkor by előljárószó segítségével nevezhetjük meg. This film was directed by Hitchcock.

A cselekvő személyre így kérdezhetünk: Who was this film directed by?

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék és szenvédő szerkezet használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre (egyszerű jelen vagy múlt).

- build check found hold make produce repair sell speak write

0 Scotch whisky is made in Scotland.
0 The car was repaired last week.
1 The Olympic Games ....................................... every four years.
2 English ................................................. in many countries.
3 ‘Yesterday’ ........................................... by John Lennon and Paul McCartney.
4 Car speeds ........................................... by radar.
5 The Channel Tunnel .................................. to connect Britain with Europe.
6 Souvenirs ............................................. at all popular tourist places.
7 The first Volkswagen Beetles ....................... in 1937.
8 The Times newspaper .................................. in 1785.

B Tegyünk fel kérdéseket az előző gyakorlat mondataira.

0 Where is Scotch whisky made?
0 When was the car repaired?
1 How often
2 Where
3 Who
4 How
5 Why
6 Where
7 When
8 When

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

0 We sell tickets for all shows at the Box Office. (Tickets for all shows/sell/at the Box Office)

  Tickets for all shows are sold at the box office.

1 Edison invented the electric light bulb. (The electric light bulb/invent/by Edison)

2 Someone painted the office last week. (The office/paint/last week)

3 Several people saw the accident. (The accident/see/by several people)

4 Where do they make these video recorders? (Where/these video recorders/make)

5 Six countries signed the agreement. (The agreement/sign/by six countries)

D Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt az aláhúzott szerkezetek közül.

Fiat 0 started/was started by a group of Italian businessmen in 1899. In 1903, Fiat 1 produced/was produced 132 cars. Some of these cars 2 exported/were exported by the company to the United States and Britain. In 1920, Fiat 3 started/was started making cars at a new factory at Lingotto, near Turin. There was a track on the roof where the cars 4 tested/were tested by technicians. In 1936, Fiat 5 launched/was launched the Fiat 500. This car 6 called/was called the Topolino – the Italian name for Mickey Mouse. The company grew, and in 1963 Fiat 7 exported/was exported more than 300,000 vehicles. Today, Fiat is based in Turin, and its cars 8 sold/are sold all over the world.
A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (2); igeidők

1 Az alábbiakban példákat láthatunk a szenvedő szerkezet használatára különböző igeidőkben. A szenvedő szerkezet a létige (be) megfelelő alakjából és befejezett melléknévi igenévből (pl. typed, taken) áll. (További információ a befejezett melléknévi igenévvel kapcsolatban a 362 és 363 oldalon lévő E illetve F táblázatban található.)

Egyszerű jelen:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Someone types the letters.</td>
<td>The letters are typed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Egyszerű múlt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Someone took my camera.</td>
<td>My camera was taken.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present Perfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She has packed the books.</td>
<td>The books have been packed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Perfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bob had paid the bill.</td>
<td>The bill had been paid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Folyamatos jelen:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They are mending the car.</td>
<td>The car is being mended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Folyamatos múlt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They were building it.</td>
<td>It was being built.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

will, can, must stb.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We will finish the job.</td>
<td>The job will be finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We must do the work.</td>
<td>The work must be done.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jövő – be going to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They are going to wash the car.</td>
<td>The car is going to be washed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At this time next week, they will have announced the news.</td>
<td>At this time next week, the news will have been announced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A szenvedő szerkezetű mondat magyar fordítása többsnyire megegyezik a cselekvő mondat fordításával, ha az alany somebody (= valaki).

Ha az alany he/she, pl. She has packed the books. – The books have been packed. a lehetséges fordítás: ‘ Becsomagolta a könyveket.’ illetve ‘A könyveket becsomagolók.’

Ha az alany they, a magyar mondat fordítása többs szám harmadik személy használata javasolt. The job will be finished (= A munkát be fogják fejezní).

2 Ha a szenvedő mondat alanya egyes számban van, akkor a létige is egyes számú, ha többes számú az alany, a létige is többes számba kerül.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSELEKVŐ</th>
<th>SZENVEDŐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The house is being built.</td>
<td>The houses are being built.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Így alkotunk kérdést szenvedő szerkezetű mondatokból:

Are the letters typed?
Have the books been packed?
Where is the car being mended?
When will the job be finished?
Must the work be done today?
Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék és szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

0 Bread is made (someone makes) from flour.
0 I was at school when these houses were being built (someone was building).
1 Cakes (someone makes) from flour.
2 We lived in a caravan while our house (someone was building).
3 These letters (someone must type) before five o’clock.
4 All the windows (someone has cleaned) this week.
5 These cups (someone broke) when we arrived.
6 Some money (someone has stolen) from Tom’s jacket.

B Tegyünk fel kérdést a zárójelben megadott mondatokra.

0 (That car was made in Germany.)
   Where was that car made?
1 (Mary was examined by the doctor this morning.)
   When?
2 (The food will be prepared on Friday.)
   When?
3 (This window has been broken three times.)
   How many times?

C Alakítsuk tagadóvá az előző gyakorlat mondatait.

0 That car was not made in Germany.
1 Mary
2 The food
3 This window

D Alakítsuk szenvedővé a következő mondatokat. Használjuk a by előljárószt is.

0 Your manager must write the report.
   The report must be written by your manager.
1 The French team has won the silver medal.
   The silver medal
2 A woman was training the guard dogs.
   The guard dogs
3 People of all ages can play this game.
   This game
4 The secretary sent a reply.
   A reply
5 Two different teachers have marked the exams.
   The exams
6 A police car is following that green van.
   That green van
A következő jelentésből szeretném kihagyni, hogy név szerint melyik alkalmazott milyen tevékenységet végez a vállalati ünnepek előkészítésével kapcsolatban. Írjuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

Mrs Jones approved the plan for the centenary celebrations on 12 March. She appointed three people to carry out the work. We completed the first stage last week: Branstons delivered the decorations last Monday and Jill has stored the boxes in Office 23. I have ordered the food and drink and Tamoko is writing the main speech in both English and Japanese. We will decorate two of the departments next Wednesday and we will decorate the Sales Department on Thursday. In this way we will have decorated all the departments before the big day. On Friday, the caterers must prepare the dining room during the morning and the workers must stop all the machines at 12.30. The caterers will serve the lunch at one o'clock.

The plan for the centenary celebrations was approved on 12 March.

Three people
The first stage
The decorations
The boxes
The food and drink
The main speech
Two of the departments
The Sales Department
All the departments
On Friday the dining room
All the machines
The lunch
6 Tegyük fel kérdéseket az előző gyakorlat szenvedő szerkezetű mondataira a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

0 (When/the plan) \textit{When was the plan approved?}
1 (How many people/to carry out the work) ..............................................
2 (When/the first stage) ............................................................................
3 (When/the decorations) .........................................................................
4 (Where/the boxes) ..................................................................................
5 (Who/the main speech/by) .....................................................................
6 (When/the Sales Department) .................................................................
7 (When/the dining room) .........................................................................
8 (What time/lunch) ...............................................................................
9 (Who/the lunch/by) ..............................................................................

H Olvassuk el a következő szöveget, amely a Lambridge városában folyó közúti munkálatokról szól.

The city engineers are redesigning London Road. Workers from the Parks Department are turning Central Square into a children’s playground and planting trees along all the central roads. The highway engineers are installing new street lamps. They are also extending the bus station and building a new car park.

A szöveg alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és folyamatos jelen használatával anélkül, hogy a cselekvő személyét említenénk.

0 Changes .................................................... to the centre of the town.
1 London Road .................................................................
2 Central Square ............................................................... into a children’s playground.
3 Trees ........................................................................... along all the central roads.
4 New street lamps ..............................................................
5 The bus station .................................................................
6 A new car park .................................................................

I Fordítsuk le a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

1 Befejezték a múzeum felújítását.
2 Mikor javították meg az autódat?
3 Sok munkás meghalt, mialatt a Panama-csatornát építették.
4 Ezt a ruhát nem szabad forró vízzel mosni.
5 Ki írta ezeket a verseket?
6 A könyveket nem tették dobozba.
7 Nem vehetem fel a fekete cipőmet, mert éppen javítják.
8 Melyik építész tervezte ezt az épületet?
9 Ezt az ajtót minden este be kell zární.
10 Az összes képet a nővéred fényképezte?
11 Hova tették ki a vizsgaeredményeket?
12 Mire a pincér odajött, a nagybátyám már kifizette a számlát.
A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (3); ige + két tárgy

1 Egyes igék után (az angol nyelvtan szerint) két tárgy áll a szenvedő szerkezetű mondatban:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
<th>TÁRGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>élőlény</td>
<td>élettelen tárgy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*They gave Diana a camera for her birthday.*

(= Dianaának egy fényképezőgépet adtak a születésnapjára.)

Ebben az esetben a két szó bármelyike lehet a szenvedő mondat alanya.

(Figyelem! Az ilyen mondatokban az élőlényt jelentő tárgy a magyarban részeszhatalrozó.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELŐLÉNY</th>
<th>ÉLLETELEN TÁRGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diana</td>
<td>a camera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Diana was given a camera for her birthday.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ÉLLETELEN TÁRGY</th>
<th>ELŐLÉNY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A camera</td>
<td>Diana</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ha az élőlényt jelentő főnév konkrét személy (pl. Diana), akkor ez lesz a szenvedő mondat alanya. További példák:

*The Prime Minister was asked a lot of questions.*  
*Sylvester Stallone is paid a lot of money.*  
*Were you told the price?*

A következő igék esetében gyakori a két tárgy:

*pay*  
*offer*  
*sell*  
*promise*  
*tell*  
*teach*  
*show*  
*send*

2 Nézzük meg a következő mondatot:  
*She told Mark to be quiet.*  (= Azt mondta Marknak, hogy legyen csendben.)

A mondat szerkeze: alany + létige + to + főnévi igenév (ld. 18. fejezet). Ez a típusú szenvedő szerkezet gyakran fordul elő utasítást, kérést vagy engedélyt kifejező igékkel. A létige bármilyen igeidőben lehet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SZEMÉLY + Szenvedő Alak + to + főnévi igenév</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mark was told to be quiet.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

További példák:

*I was asked to give a speech.*

*The children were warned not to touch the fire.*

*Will we be allowed to leave early?*

3 Nézzük meg a következő mondatot:

*I left the car for two minutes and the radio got stolen!* (= Két percre hagytam ott a kocsit, és a rádiót ellopta.)

A köznyelvben használják a get + befjezet molléknévi igenév szerkezetet, de nem minden esetben. Többnyire akkor, ha valami váratlan vagy kellemetlen esemény történik:

A: What happened to the window?  
B: It got broken when we were playing football.  
*James got thrown out of the restaurant because he was rude to the waiter.*

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Írjuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezzettel. Az új mondatot kezdjük a megadott szavakkal.

0 A relative gave Peter fifty pounds for his birthday.

*Peter was given fifty pounds for his birthday.*

1 The company will pay you eight pounds an hour.

*You .................................................................

2 An agency has offered Pamela a better job.

*Pamela .................................................................

3 In the oral exam an examiner will ask you ten questions.

*In the oral exam you ................................................

4 One of the teachers told the pupils their results.

*The pupils ............................................................

5 A guide showed us the house where Shakespeare was born.

*We .................................................................

6 Three months ago somebody promised my father a rise in salary.

*Three months ago my father ........................................
A következő táblázat egy tábor első napjának programját mutatja:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MORNING</th>
<th>AFTERNOON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introductory talk</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windsurfing</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distribution of equipment</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstration</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A nap végén a táboriak összegzik, hogy mi történt. Írjunk szenvedő szerkezetű mondatokat a táblázat és a zárójében megadott igék segítségével.

0 (tell about) **We were told about safety at the camp.**

1 (give)

2 (show)

3 (teach)

4 (tell)

5 (give)

6 (show)

7 (teach)

Az alábbi helyzetekben valaki utasítást vagy tanácsot ad a másiknak. A példa alapján írjunk mondatokat a zárójében megadott szavak és szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

0 ‘You must take a different route,’ the police officer said to us.

(We/tell) **We were told to take a different route.**

1 ‘You should go to the dentist’s, Jane,’ said the boss.

(Jane/advise)

2 ‘Please come back later, Mr Bridges,’ said the secretary.

(Mr Bridges/ask)

3 ‘You can do the exercise in pairs,’ the teacher said to the pupils.

(The pupils/allow)

4 ‘Don’t go near the dogs,’ the lady said to the boys.

(The boys/warn/not)

5 ‘Remember to confirm your reservation,’ the travel agent said to me.

(I/remind)

A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázatban szereplő kifejezésekkel, got és szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

- (soak) by a bee
- (steal) so he couldn’t read
- (sting) in a rainstorm
- (break) at the airport
- (tear) in a fight

0 Fred’s pocket **got torn in a fight.**

1 Mary’s camera

2 Timmy’s glasses

3 Bill’s clothes

4 Sally
A műveltető szerkezet – causative (have something done)

1. Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

| Mary and Tom repaired their car. (= Mary és Tom megjavították a kocsijukat.) | Sheila is going to cut her hair. (le fogja vágni) |
| A mondatból megtudjuk, hogy Mary és Tom maguk javították meg a kocsit. | Sheila is going to have her hair cut. (le fogja vágatni) |

Most figyeljük meg a következő mondatot, amelyben a have something done (= valamit elvégeztek) műveltető szerkezet szerepel:

| Jenny and John had their car repaired. (= Jenny és John megjavították a kocsijukat.) | She washes her car every Sunday. (lemossa) |
| Ez a mondat azt jelenti, hogy Jenny és John szükségesnek látta a javítást, és ezt valaki mással elvégezették. | She has her car washed every Sunday. (lemosatja) |

2. További példák:

| IGE + TÁRGY + BÉFEJEZETT MELLÉKÉVI IGENÉV |
| I have mended my bike. |
| I have had my bike mended. |

3. Kérdő és tagadó mondatban a do segédgét használjuk:

I don’t have my teeth checked very regularly. (nem ellenőriztem) Where did you have your hair cut? (vágattad)

4. A műveltető szerkezetben have helyett a get ige is használható:

I must get my suit cleaned.

Gyakorlatok

A. Fejezzük be a mondatokat műveltető szerkezet használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre.

0. Tom’s windows were dirty, but he didn’t have time to clean them himself.
   Last Saturday, Tom had his windows cleaned.

1. The shop delivers Mary’s food to her house for her.
   Mary delivers Mary’s food to her house for her.

2. The shop developed Fred’s holiday photos in an hour.
   Fred developed Fred’s holiday photos in an hour.

3. The hairdresser cuts Rachel’s hair about twice a year.
   Rachel cuts Rachel’s hair about twice a year.

4. Last week, the optician checked Mr Stone’s eyes.
   Last week, Mr Stone had his eyes checked.

5. Mrs Frost’s doctor says to her: ‘When you come next week, I’ll check your blood pressure.’
   Next week, Mrs Frost says to her: ‘When you come next week, I’ll check your blood pressure.’

6. Last week, the garage serviced Jane’s car.
   Last week, Jane had her car serviced.

7. A builder is going to mend the roof on our house.
   We have the roof of our house mended.
A reklámfeliratok és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével alkossunk műveltő mondatokat arról, hogy ezek a feliratok milyen gondolatot ébresztetnek az arra haladóban. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő idegődő használatára.

0 WE REPAIR ALL KINDS OF BOOTS AND SHOES. (I/must/my brown boots/repair)
   That reminds me. .................................................................
   I must have my brown boots repaired.

1 LET US CLEAN YOUR CARPETS AND CURTAINS. (They/their carpets/clean/there)
   My parents use that company. ............................................

2 CAN WE CHECK YOUR OIL AND TYRES? (I/must/the tyres on my car/check)
   That reminds me. ....................................................................
   I'd almost forgotten. .............................................................

3 WE MAKE KEYS OF ALL TYPES. (I/ought to/new key/make/for the front door)
   Our speciality: PAINTING HOUSES AND FLATS. (our flat/paint)
   I don't think I can afford to ...................................................

4 WE MEND WATCHES AND CLOCKS. (I/my watch/mend/there last week)
   That shop isn't expensive. ....................................................

5 WE TEST YOUR EYES FREE. (My husband/his eyes/test/there last winter)
   Ah, yes! ..............................................................................

6 WE REMOVE ALL KINDS OF STAINS FROM CLOTHES. (I/that coffee stain/remove)
   Wonderful! I'll take my suit there and ...................................

C Írjunk kérdéseket a have vagy get (something done) szerkezet segítségével.

0 A Where  do you have your shoes mended?
   B I have my shoes mended at that shop next to the post office.

0 A Where  did you get your eyes tested?
   B I got my eyes tested at General Optics.

1 A When ..............................................................................
   B We had the house decorated this summer.

2 A Where ..............................................................................
   B I get my photos developed at Waltons.

3 A Where ..............................................................................
   B I had my suit cleaned at Allclean.

4 A Where ..............................................................................
   B I got my passport photos taken at the post office.

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1 Festetünk kellene a lakást.
2 Mary megvizsgáltatta a szemét a kórházban.
3 Hol vágattad le a hajad?
4 A király és a királyné portrét festettt magáról.
5 Jövő nyáron kitapetázattuk a lakást?
6 Mr Jones virágokat ültetettet a kertjébe.
7 Elkészítettük a fényképeket az új útleveleunkhoz.
A zárójelben megadott szavakból írjunk mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és egyszerű múlt használatával.

0 (St. Paul’s Cathedral/completed/in 1710) **St. Paul’s Cathedral was completed in 1710.**
0 (The first radio signals/send/across the Atlantic in 1901) **The first radio signals were sent across the Atlantic in 1901.**
1 (The planet Pluto/discovered/in 1930) .................................................................
2 (Two atomic bombs/dropped/on Japan in 1945) ....................................................
3 (Slavery/abolished/in the United States in 1863) ....................................................
4 (The first Apple computers/produced/in the 1970s) ..................
5 (The Eiffel Tower/constructed/a hundred years ago) ........................................................................................
6 (The first jet planes/made/in Germany) .................................................................
7 (The Taj Mahal/constructed/in the 17th century) ..................................................
8 (In 1957 millions of pounds/stolen/from a train in England) .........................
9 (Queen Elizabeth/crowned/in 1953) .................................................................
10 (In the old days, horses/used/for transport) ......................................................
11 (The first books/printed/in the 15th century) ....................................................
12 (London/destroyed/by fire in 1666) .................................................................

B Alakítsuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és a by előljárósszó használatával.

0 Picasso painted Guernica. **Guernica was painted by Picasso.**
1 Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin. ...........................................................
2 Agatha Christie created the detective Hercule Poirot. ........................................
3 Verdi composed *La Traviata.* ..............................................................................
4 Ian Fleming wrote the *James Bond* books. .......................................................
5 Alexander Bell invented the telephone. ..............................................................
6 Frank Whittle designed the jet engine. ..............................................................
7 Steven Spielberg directed *Jurassic Park.* .........................................................
8 Leonardo da Vinci painted the *Mona Lisa.* ....................................................

C Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott igékekkel, szenvedő szerkezet és folyamatos múlt használatával.

| arrange | erect | make | paint | put down | sweep | test |

When I got to the railway station, I was surprised to see that preparations were being made for a royal visit. The floor was a brighter colour. The loudspeakers and a bandstand were and flowers in vases. Everybody was very busy.
They asked John a lot of difficult questions.  
John was asked a lot of difficult questions.

They gave Mary some flowers.  
Mary

They offered Jane a wonderful job.  
Jane

He will give all the children a present.  
All the children

Somebody sent me a strange letter.  
I

They will pay Mrs Jenkins over five hundred pounds.  
Mrs Jenkins

Her parents have promised Ann a bicycle for her birthday.  
Ann

They gave Enrico Fermi the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1938.  
Enrico Fermi

They didn’t tell us the truth.  
We

Írjunk egész mondatokat a következő szalagcímekből szenvedő szerkezet és Present Perfect használatával.

0 FAMOUS FOOTBALLER ARRESTED  
A famous footballer has been arrested.

1 FOUR BRIDGES DESTROYED IN FLOODS

2 DISCOTHEQUE CLOSED BY POLICE

3 THREE PICASSO PAINTINGS SOLD FOR TWO MILLION DOLLARS

4 FILM STAR HURT IN CAR CRASH

5 BONES DISCOVERED IN LONDON CELLAR

6 DRUG DEALER SENT TO PRISON

7 TWO SINGERS ACCUSED OF STEALING

8 TOWER OF PISA STRUCK BY LIGHTNING

9 GIRL ATTACKED BY SAVAGE DOG
Egészítsük ki a rövid párbeszédeket a megadott igékkal, műveltő szerkezet és be going to vagy egyszerű múlt használatával.

0 A: Your hair’s very long.
   B: I know. I .................................................. tomorrow. (cut)

0 A: Those are professional photos of you, aren’t they?
   B: Yes, I .................................................. when I left school. (take)

1 A: Your shoes have got holes in them.
   B: I know. I .................................................. tomorrow. (mend)

2 A: I like Claudia’s dress.
   B: She .................................................. specially. It was very expensive. (make)

3 A: I don’t think your computer’s working properly.
   B: No, it isn’t. I .................................................. next week. (check)

4 A: That’s a portrait of your mother, isn’t it?
   B: Yes, she .................................................. when she was 18. (paint)

5 A: The clock’s working again, isn’t it?
   B: Yes, we .................................................. last week. (repair)

6 A: Perhaps you get headaches because there’s something wrong with your eyes.
   B: Yes, I .................................................. later this week. (test)

Pamela állásinterjúon vett részt egy londoni cégnél. Egészítsük ki beszámolóját a megadott kifejezésekkel. Használjuk a zárójelben lévő igéket múlt idejű szenvedő szerkezetben.

a lot of questions a cup of coffee around the offices to do a test by two managers the money for my travel expenses to ask questions about the job and conditions that there were over 100 applicants for the job

was shown around the offices .................................................., which were very modern.

1 I (give) .................................................. , although I was so nervous I couldn’t drink it.

2 I (interview) ..................................................

3 I (ask) ..................................................

4 I (made) .................................................. which was quite difficult.

5 I (allow) ..................................................

6 I (tell) ..................................................

7 I (offer) .................................................. as I had come on the train from Oxford.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék, szenvedő szerkezet és a megfelelő igeidő használatával.

0 The children’s names (check) .................................................. every morning.

0 These projects (must, finish) .................................................. today.

1 Last year the school trip (organize) .................................................. by the students themselves.

2 There is a bomb scare. The students are outside at the moment because the rooms (search)

..................................................

3 Our P.E. teacher is a well known athlete. So far this year she (interview)

.................................................. on the radio three times.
4 Our school has finally got new science laboratories. They (start) ........................................
when I first came to this school three years ago, and they (finish) ................................................
only last month.
5 We are going to have a photography competition and the winning picture (publish)
........................................ next month in the local newspaper.
6 Someone has been playing around with the computers and now they (can't/open)
........................................ without a special password.
7 The teacher asked which of us had broken the window, but it (break) ........................................
by one of the window cleaners.
8 We produced a school magazine last term. All the articles (write) ........................................ by
the students.
9 During the trip tomorrow you (accompany) ........................................ by a guide.
10 The situation might change because in six months' time a new government (have/elect)
..............................................

I Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő szenvedő alakjával.

The Beetle was the original Volkswagen and 0 was produced (produce) in 1935. It 1 ................. (design) by Ferdinand Porsche and it 2 ................. (intend) to be a popular car (Volkswagen means 'people's car'). Between the 1930s and the 1990s the basic design 3 ................. not .................. (change) although many details
4 ................. (improve). It was indeed a very popular car: millions 5 .................
(sell) during this period. In the 1990's the Beetle 6 ................. completely ..................
(redesign) and this 'New Beetle' 7 ................. first .................. (see) at the Geneva
Motor Show in 1998. But it is more expensive than the 'people's car' and sales
8 ................. now ................. (count) in thousands, not millions. It 9 .................
still ................. (consider) to be a German car but the new design 10 ................. in
fact ................. (produce) in California and the car 11 ................. (build) in Mexico.

I Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.
1 Milyen gyakran etetik az állatokat ezen a tanyán?
2 Ezeket a leveleket ma postázni kell.
3 A fegyvert eltűntettké, mielőtt a rendőrség megérkezett.
4 A nyertesek nevét holnap fogják bejelenteni.
5 Majd megmutatják neked, hogyan kell bánni a mérgekígyókkal.
6 Nem mondta, hogy hozz magaddal edzőcipőt?
7 Kérjük a turistákat, hogy ne fényképezzenek a múzeumban!
8 Miért bocsátották el Pétert a munkahelyéről?
9 Sokba került elkészítetni a meghívókat?
10 A múlt héten megjavítattam az órát.
1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

I like **listening** to music.

(= Szeretek zenét hallgatni.)

(Az igék *-ing* végződésű alakjáról a 361. oldalon a D táblázatban találunk további tudnivalókat.)

Bizonyos igék (pl. like) után használhatjuk az igé *-ing* végződésű alakját:

- **like/dislike** enjoy love
- **hate** keep finish stop
- **mind** give up imagine
- **admit** deny suggest avoid

She doesn’t like cooking.

He **dislikes** washing up.

Do you **enjoy** driving?

They love **living** in a village.

I **hate** going to the dentist.

He keeps **saying** the same things.

(= Egyfolytatában ugyanazt mondja.)

Have you finished eating?

Suddenly she stopped talking.

I don’t mind waiting.

(= Nem bánom, ha várni kell.)

I **gave up** smoking last month.

(= A múlt hétén abbahagytam a dohányzást.)

**Imagine** being famous for a day; it’d be great!

He **admitted** stealing the bicycle, but denied damaging it.

He suggested going to the cinema.

(= Azt javasolta, hogy menjünk moziba.)

(NEM He **suggested to go**.

He will do anything to avoid cleaning his room.

Figyelem! Magyarra az ilyen mondatokat főnévvel (Befejezted az évet?), főnévi igenévvel (Szeretnél falun lakni?) vagy összetett monddal (Azt javasolta, hogy menjünk moziba.) is fordíthatjuk.

2 **go + -ing**

A go + *-ing* szerkezettel példaúl sportolásról, időtöltséról, vásárlásról beszélhetünk (go shopping):

We often go skiing in the winter.

Let’s go swimming this afternoon.

She gets dancing at weekends.

I’m going shopping this afternoon.

A come + *-ing* szerkezetet is használhatjuk:

Do you want to come camping with us?

Figyelem! A camping nem főnév, hanem a camp (= kempengezék) *-ing* végződésű alakja. Amit magyarul kempingnek nevezünk, az angolul camp (site).

3 Az előző példákban az *-ing* végződésű alak a mondat tárgya. Ez az alak azonban alany is lehet, különösen akkor, ha a mondat állítmánya a be *-ing* névszó szerkezet:

Smoking is bad for you.

Swimming keeps you healthy.

Driving can be dangerous.

Planning takes time.

Az *-ing* végződésű alaknak lehet tárgya vagy határozója, valamint állhat előtte jelző is:

Smoking cigarettes is bad for you.

Swimming regularly keeps you healthy.

Driving a car fast can be dangerous.

Careful planning takes time.

4 Az *-ing* alak felíratokban is gyakran szerepel:

NO PARKING HERE (= Parkolni tilos!)

SMOKING FORBIDDEN (= Tilos a dohányzás!)

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott első igé jelen vagy múlt idejű alakjával és a második igé *-ing*-es alakjával.

0 She ................................ (like/play) tennis, but she .................................... (not/like/watch) it.

1 The buses .................................................... (stop/run) at midnight.

2 I ................................................................. (not/mind/listen) to his problems.

3 He’s not very good at playing chess, so he ........................................ (keep/lose).

4 She ......................................................... (enjoy/go) to other countries and she ........................................ (like/meet) new people.
5 When the police questioned him, he .................................. (admit/rob) the bank.
6 They usually ........................................ (finish/eat) at about 8.30 in the evening.
7 We were bored, so John ........................................ (suggest/go) to the cinema.
8 I ........................................ (give up/study) Chinese. It was too difficult!

A képek alapján írj le, mit csinált John a múlt héten. Használjuk a go igét és a megfelelő ige -ing-es alakját.

![Diagram with days of the week and activities]

1 On Monday ........................................ he went shopping.
2 On Tuesday ...........................................
3 On Thursday ...........................................
4 On Friday .............................................
5 On Saturday ..........................................  

Égészítsük ki a mondatokat like/not like + a zárójelben megadott ige + -ing használatával.

1 She ........................................ doesn’t like working (work) here. She hates this job.
2 I ........................................ (live) in this town. I have lived here for many years.
3 I ........................................ (get up) so early every morning, but I have to do it.
4 I ........................................ (watch) television all the time; I think it’s a waste of time.
5 Mary ........................................ (lie) on the beach when she’s on holiday. She is too lazy to go on trips.
6 Jane ........................................ (go) to parties; she always enjoys them.
7 Bruce ........................................ (cook), so he often eats in restaurants.

Égészítsük ki a filmrendező és a színész beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

DIRECTOR: So you want to be a film star.
SALLY: Oh, I don’t know. I can’t really 0 ........................................ imagine being (imagine/be) a film star. But I’ve always 1 ........................................ (love/act) in plays at school.
DIRECTOR: I see that you’re seventeen so you’ve probably 2 ........................................ (finish/grow) by now. You see, I’m looking for someone who is not too tall.
SALLY: No, I’m not very tall. When I was young I 3 ........................................ dislike/be small for my age, but now I just 4 ........................................ avoid/think about it.
DIRECTOR: OK. Would you 5 ........................................ (mind/read) the speech that you have prepared?
SALLY: Right. I’m leaving. Once I loved you but now I hate you and I 6 ........................................ hate/live like this. You 7 ........................................ keep/tell me you love me but it’s not true. You’re a liar. A man like you always 8 ........................................ deny/have affairs with other women, but I know your tricks.’
DIRECTOR: Thank you. That was nice. I 9 ........................................ enjoy/listen to you. You obviously 10 ........................................ (like/put) a lot of feeling into the words.
A főnévi igenév – infinitive (I want to go, I can go)

1. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
<th>some stamps.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A következő igék után to + főnévi igenév szerkezetet (to do, to start stb.) használunk:

want  decide  
agree  promise  
forget  offer  
hope  plan  
arrange  try  
refuse  learn  
manage  mean  
pretend  deserve  
seem  afford

She agreed to lend him some money.  
He forgot to book the tickets.  
I'm hoping to get a new bike soon.  
I've arranged to play tennis tonight.  
He refused to come to the party.  
The ship managed to avoid the rocks.  
She pretended not to hear me.  
He seems to have a lot of money.  
They've decided to start a new company.  
You promised to help me.  
She offered to do the washing-up.  
We're planning to go away this weekend.  
He's trying to learn French.  
John learned to use the computer in a week.  
Sorry, I didn't mean to hurt you.  
That film deserved to win a prize!  
I can't afford to go on holiday this year.

2. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He can</th>
<th>FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
<th>Spanish.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will ('ll) should may might can must could</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'll see you soon. I won't forget.  
Where should I sit?  
We may go by train.  
It might rain.  
Can I park here?  
I couldn't hear her.  
We must pay now. (NEM: We must to pay …)

3. would rather + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV

Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:  
I don't want to go to the cinema. I would rather go to a pizzeria. (= Inkább a pizzériába mennék.)  
A would rather szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy valamit szívesebben csinálhnánk; ez vonatkozhat a jelenre vagy a jövőre. Az összevont alak: 'd rather.  
I'd rather go to a pizzeria. (NEM: I'd rather to go)  
A tagadó alak: 'd rather not:  
I'd rather not go out tonight; I'm tired.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben lévő főnévi igenév megfelelő alakjával (to-val vagy to nélkül).

0. You can't smoke. (smoke) here. Smoking is not allowed in this building.
1. I'm sorry I forgot phone you yesterday. I was very busy.
2. Don't worry. The exam may not be very difficult.
3. He didn't mean to break the window. It was an accident.
4. It's not a very good film. You won't enjoy it.
5. She didn't want to wait any longer, so she left.
6. When are you planning to eat tonight?
7. She couldn't reply because she didn't know what to say.
8. Where would you rather go – to the cinema or to a club?
9. It was difficult but I managed to save enough money for a new car.
10. They might not receive the letter until next week.

298
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat úgy, hogy jelentésük hasonló legyen a zárójelben lévő mondat jelentéséhez.

0 (I don’t think it’s a good idea to argue with him.)
   I don’t think you should  

1 (I won’t be able to come to the meeting on Friday.)
   I can’t  

2 (I’m meeting some friends tonight.)
   I’ve arranged  

3 (Your eyes are closed but I know you are not asleep.)
   I know you are pretending  

4 (It’s important that you lock the door when you go out.)
   Don’t forget  

5 (Perhaps we’ll go out for a meal this evening.)
   We may  

6 (You said that you would lend me the money.)
   You promised  

7 (I’d like to do a course in Art History.)
   I want  

8 (He said, ‘I’ll pay the bill’.)
   He offered  

9 (She studied very hard and won the first prize.)
   She deserved  

10 (I asked him to help me but he said no.)
   He refused  

11 (Perhaps he’ll phone you tomorrow.)
   He might  

12 (It’s possible that Tom won’t be angry with you.)
   Tom might not  

13 (I don’t want to watch TV. Let’s listen to music.)
   I’d rather  than watch TV.

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben lévő főnévi igenév megfelelő alakjával (to-val vagy to nélikül).

CHARLIE: I want to do (do) something interesting this weekend. Can we do something together?

CAROL: Well, I’ve arranged (go) on a trip to the coast with some friends. Do you want (come) with us?

CHARLIE: Yes, that sounds good. When are you planning (leave)?

CAROL: Well, we’ve decided (start) early in the morning tomorrow, and I’ve promised (take) the others in my car. We’re hoping (reach) the coast by lunchtime. So, you must meet me here at 6.30 a.m.

CHARLIE: OK, good. I won’t (be) late.
1 Vannak olyan ígek, amelyek után egyaránt használható a to + főnéviigenév szerkezet és az -ing alak is.
  My sister promised to help me.
  Have they finished painting the garage?

2 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:
  It started to rain.
  It started raining.
  A két mondat pontosan ugyanazt jelenti. Az alábbi íge esetében sincs lényeges különbség a kétféle szerkezet jelentése között:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>begin</th>
<th>continue</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>intend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  Ha a like íge jelentése 'szeret', inkább az -ing szerkezettel használjuk:
  I like meeting new people.

  A like + to + főnéviigenév szerkezzettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy valamit helyesen tartunk:
  I like to go to the gym at least twice a week.

  A would hate/like/love/prefer után a to + főnéviigenév szerkezetet használjuk.
  Hasonlóképp össze az alábbi mondatokat:
  She likes painting.
  She would like to be an artist.
  Peter hates washing up.
  Peter would hate to work in a restaurant.

  Ha valamit ajánlunk vagy kérünk, a would like + főnéviigenév szerkezetet használjuk, amely azt jelenti, hogy valaki valamit szeretne vagy akar:
  Would you like to come for dinner? (ajánlat)
  I'd like to leave work early, please. (kérés)

3 A következő íge esetében az -ing alak és a to + főnéviigenév szerkezet között jelentésbeli különbség van, tehát nem mindegy, hogy melyiket használjuk:

  try remember forget stop

  ► I tried to lift that heavy stone.
  (= Megkíséreltem felemelni azt a nehéz követ)
  If you can't read where you are, try sitting nearer the window. (= Ha nem tudod elolvasi ott, ahol vagy, próbáld azt, hogy közelebb mész az ablakhoz.)
  ► I stopped working. (= Abbahagytam a munkát.)
  I stopped to have a cigarette. (= Megálltam, hogy rágyújtsak.)
  ► Remember to go to the bank. (= Ne felejts el elmenni a bankba!)
  She remembers going to the bank. (= Emlékszik, hogy volt a bankban.)
  ► Don't forget to phone Mrs Grey. (= Ne felejtsd el Mrs Grey-t felhívni!)
  I'll never forget visiting Disneyland. (= Ne felejtsd el Disneylandot felhívni!)
  I'll never forget seeing that rainbow. (= Soha nem fogom elfelejteni, hogy láttam azt a szívnévet/ellátogattam Disneylandbe.)

  A remember és forget íge után az -ing alak a múltra utal, olyasmire, ami már megtörtént (seeing that rainbow, visiting Disneyland).

Gyakorlatok

A Egészitsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott íge megfelelő alakjával.

  0 I can’t imagine living................. (live) in the country.
  1 We’ve decided ....................... (go) to the beach.
  2 I stopped ......................... (play) tennis when I got married.
  3 I meant ......................... (buy) some butter, but I forgot.
  4 Did you promise ....................... (take) the children to the zoo?
  5 Have the men started ....................... (repair) the roof yet?
  6 I’d love ....................... (visit) China.
  7 You shouldn’t avoid ....................... (talk) about your problems.
  8 Peter refused ................... (help) us.
  9 Would you prefer ....................... (pay) now or later?
  10 I couldn’t afford ....................... (live) in London.
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék -ing vagy to + főnévi igenévi alakjával.

0 'You say that I've met Janet, but I can't remember her.'
   I can't remember ........................................ (meet) Janet.
1 Please remember that you must buy some stamps.
   Please remember ........................................ (buy) some stamps.
2 We wanted to open the door, but we couldn't.
   We tried .................................................. (open) the door.
3 We saw an accident, so we got out of the car and checked that everyone was all right.
   We stopped ............................................. (check) that everyone was all right.
4 John met Madonna once. He'll never forget it.
   John will never forget .................................. (meet) Madonna.
5 Sheila intended to phone Peter, but she forgot.
   Sheila forgot ............................................ (phone) Peter.
6 Jenny had a headache. She took an aspirin, but it didn't help.
   Jenny tried ............................................. (take) an aspirin for her headache.
7 Be quiet! Don't talk any more!
   Stop ...................................................... (talk)!
8 I have a special soap that will probably get your hands clean.
   Try ....................................................... (wash) your hands with this special soap.
9 It will not be easy to do all the work today.
   We'll try ................................................ (finish) the work before tonight.
10 I stayed in Jane's flat while she was on holiday. I remembered that I had to feed her cats.
   I remembered .......................................... (feed) Jane's cats while she was on holiday.
11 Remember that you must invite Mary to the party next week.
   Don't forget ............................................. (invite) Mary to the party next week.
12 You work too hard. It's bad for you and you must stop it.
   You must stop .......................................... (work) so hard.
13 I was walking along the street. I saw some lovely shops so I looked in the windows.
   I stopped ............................................... (look) in the shop windows.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1 Mary szeret külföldön dolgozni.
2 Próbáltuk kinyitni az ablakot, de a levegő nem lett frissebb.
3 Meleg estéken a szüleim jobban szeretnék a kertben üldögélni.
4 Bill egy évre hagya abba a dohányzást.
5 Sohasem fogom elfelejteni, hogy átutaztam a Szaharán.
6 Semmi nincs vacsorára. Elfelejtettem bevásárolni.
7 A bátyám nagyon szeretne Finnországba utazni.
8 Próbált meg eljönni a hangversenyre! Csupánatos lesz!
9 Nincs meg a kulcsom, de nem emlékszem, hogy ott hagytam volna valahol.
10 Jim szeret focizni, de nem szereti mások játékát nézni.
11 Ne felejts el levelet írni a nagybátyádának!
12 Nagyon szeretek a belvárosban sétálni és kirakatot nézni.
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: ige + to vagy -ing (113–15. fejezet)

A Az első mondatban lévő információ segítségével fejezzük be a második mondatot. Ügyeljünk az ige megfelelő alakjának használatára (to do, doing).

0 The boss asked Helen to work late, but she refused.
   Helen refused to work late.

0 ‘You’ll have to wait half an hour. Do you mind?’
   ‘Do you mind waiting half an hour?’

1 Peter took the money. He admits it.
   Peter admits.

2 ‘Could you lend me five pounds?’ asked Jim. ‘OK, here you are,’ Irene replied.
   Irene agreed.

3 Philip met the King when he was young. He remembers it.
   Philip remembers.

4 Brenda wears glasses, but she hates it.
   Brenda hates.

5 ‘Have you made a decision yet, Sharon?’ ‘Yes, I have. I’m going to accept the job.’
   Sharon has decided.

6 ‘Did you buy some butter, Eric?’ ‘Oh, no. I forgot.’
   Eric forgot.

7 ‘Does Harry still smoke?’ ‘No, he gave it up a year ago.’
   Harry gave up.

8 Terry doesn’t argue with his colleagues. He avoids it.
   Terry avoids.

9 Shirley isn’t going to move house. She can’t afford it.
   Shirley can’t afford.

10 ‘You moved all the furniture. How did you manage it?’
   ‘How did you manage?

B Egészítsük ki Janet és Sharon beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

JANET: What do your children want to do when they leave school?

SHARON: Well, Ann enjoys writing. (enjoy/write), so she’s hoping to work (hope/work) for a newspaper. But I don’t know about Paul. He give up/study months ago. He seems to nothing now. He doesn’t deserve/pass his exams. And he refuse/listen to us, when we tell him to keep/study.

JANET: With our children, in the past, if we offer/help them, they always promise/study hard. Nowadays if they want/talk to us, that’s fine, but I’ve learnt to stop/ask them questions. I suppose they dislike/listen to my suggestions. They
11 ................................ (seem/think) that they don’t 12 .................................................................
(need/study) hard, but one day they’ll 13 ................................................................. (have/find) a job.

C Alkossunk mondatokat az adott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk a helyes alakok használatára.

0 Jill deserves to get fat because she never stops eating.
Jill deserves to get fat because she never stops eating.

1 Pam has suggested to go to the theatre but I was hoping not to spend any money this weekend.

2 Saul keeps complaining about his cough but has he tried drinking hot lemon?

3 I’d rather not do the shopping today; I don’t mind doing it tomorrow on my own.

4 Betty has arranged to see the doctor; she wants to ask about her headaches.

5 I plan to go alone because I don’t like visiting museums with other people.

6 She admits telling him what had happened, but she didn’t mean to hurt him.

7 Phil didn’t deserve to pass the exam so he shouldn’t complain.

8 When you’ve finished doing your homework, we’ll go shopping.

9 Can you imagine living in the middle of the desert?

10 We’ll be able to go skiing if we manage to save some money.

D Liz és Martin nyári terveiről beszélget. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott igék megfelelő alakjával (do, to do, doing).

argue ask do go (x2) lend promise sit spend talk think walk

LIZ: What would you like to do next summer?

MARTIN: You keep 1 ................. the same question. You seem to forget that you promised 2 ................. to the Alps with me. You know how I enjoy 3 ................. in the mountains. And Uncle Ben has offered 4 ................. us his tent.

LIZ: I haven’t forgotten 5 ................. to you about it but I don’t remember 6 ................. anything. Personally, I’d rather 7 ................. to a beach somewhere.

MARTIN: You know that I hate 8 ................. on beaches. I don’t want 9 ................. two weeks looking at the sea.

LIZ: OK. Let’s stop 10 ................. about it now, and let’s try 11 ................. of something that we can do together.
F Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott ígérek megfelelő aljakával (to do, doing).

0 A: Why didn’t you tell me you couldn’t come?
   B: I tried to tell you, but when I phoned, you had already left.

1 A: Why are you so angry?
   B: I forgot to pay the gas bill and they’ve cut off the gas!

2 A: Have you seen Peter lately?
   B: Yes, I saw him in town the other day and stopped to have a chat with him.

3 A: Yesterday I was talking to someone from California who says she knows you.
   B: I can’t remember to meet anyone from California.

4 A: Aren’t you and Simon friends any more?
   B: I don’t know. He’s stopped to talk to me but I don’t know why.

5 A: How do you feel about winning the 100 metres?
   B: It’s fantastic! I don’t think I’ll ever forget to cross the finishing line!
6 A: Is there a Chinese restaurant in town?
   B: I don’t know. Have you tried (look) in the Yellow Pages?
7 A: Make sure you post that letter. It’s really important.
   B: Don’t worry. If I keep it in my hand, I’ll remember (post) it.
8 A: It’s only eleven o’clock. Why are we going to the club so early?
   B: It’s very popular. We tried (get in) after midnight last weekend, but it was already full.

G Moira választ ír levelezőpartnerének. Egészítősük ki a levelet vagy a főnévi igenével to-val vagy to néklől, vagy pedig az -ing alakkal.

‘It was nice to hear from you. You asked me to tell you about myself, so I will! To begin with, I don’t like cooking (cook). And I hate (wash) up. I can’t
2 (drive), but I’m planning (learn) next year! I gave up
4 (smoke) ten years ago. What else can I (tell) you? I go
6 (dance) on Saturdays. I’ve recently decided (get) fit.
8 (Jog) regularly makes me feel better and I don’t mind (jog)
in the rain, but I don’t like (cycle), and I love (eat)
chocolate! If you want me to continue, you’ll have to write back! (But I’d rather
12 (hear) about you.)’

H Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.
1 A szüleim továbbra is azt mondják, hogy egyetemre kell mennem.
2 A növéd abba hagyta a dohányzást?
3 Tavaly nyáron majdnem minden nap mentünk úszni.
4 Hány éves korodban tanultál meg sielni?
5 A portás úgy tett, mintha aludna.
6 Nem szabad elfelejtenünk kenyeret venni.
7 Abba tudná hagyni egy percre a munkát, kérem?
8 Ha nem tudsz elaludni, próbálj meg bárányokat számolni!
9 Emlékszem, hogy valahova letettem az útlevelem, de képtelen vagyok megtalálni.
10 Kerültük, hogy az anyja betegségéről beszéljünk.

I Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget.

Anna tizenhatodik születésnapján elhatározta, hogy beféjezi az iskolát. Nagyon szerettet

tanulni; nem ez volt a probléma. Nem tetszett neki, hogy mindig a szüleitől kér pénzt. Amikor
beszélt velük elhatározásáról, először hallani sem akartak róla. Azt mondta, hogy nincs sok
pénzük, de viszonylag jól élnek, és remélők, hogy Anna egyetemen tanul majd tovább.

Ezután Anna mamája így folytatta: – Nem kell aggódnod, hogy fizetünk azért, hogy
tanulhass! Mindenünk megvan, amire szükségünk van.

Anna ezt válaszolta: – Nem akarok hálálat lenni, de el szeretném kerülni, hogy bármiben is
öleletek függjék. Szeretnék pénzt keresni. Ne nyugtalankodjatok! Találok olyan munkát, amely
lehetővé teszi, hogy tanuljak esténként. Folytatni akarom a tanulást.

Végül Anna szülei megértették, hogy miért akarja otthagyni az iskolát, elfogadták döntését, és
megígérték, hogy segítenek neki megfelelő állást találni.
Mire való? (What's it for? ~ It's for making bread.)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi párbeszédet:
   A: What's this machine for?
       (= Mire való ez a gép?)
   B: It's for making bread. (NEM for make)
       (= Kenyér készítésére.)
   A What is it for? kérdés a dolgok, eszközök
   rendeltetésére kéréde (tehát arra, hogy valami
   mire használható). A válaszban a for + -ing
   szerkezetet használhatjuk:
   This is a machine for killing mosquitoes.
   (szűnyogirtásra)
   This stuff is used for cleaning the floor.
   (a padló tisztítására)

2 Nézzük meg az alábbi párbeszédet:
   A: What does he need my camera for?
       (= Miért kell neki az én fényképezőgépem?)
   B: He needs it for his work.
       (= A munkájához van rá szüksége.)
   A what ... for? (= miért/mi célból?)
   szerkezetel a cselekvés szándéka, illetve a
   cselekvés rendeltetése iránt is érdeklobbhatunk.
   A válaszban a for + főnév szerkezetet
   használhatjuk:

A: What did he go to the shops for?
   (= Miért ment az üzletbe?)
B: He went to the shops for some fruit.
   (gyümölcsért)
I buy the newspaper for the sports news.
   (= Az újságot a sporthírek kedvéért szoktam
   megvenni.)

3 Nézzük meg a következő párbeszédet:
   A: What does he need my camera for?
   B: He needs it to take some photos.
       (= Hogy csináljon néhány fényképet.)
   Amikor a cselekvés céljáról beszélünk, a to +
   főnévi igenév szerkezetet is használhatjuk:
   A: What has Tim gone to the shops for?
   B: He's gone to buy some fruit.
       (hogy gyümölcsöt vegen)
   (NEM for buy; NEM for to buy)
   A: Why did John phone the police?
   B: He phoned them to tell them about the burglar.
       (NEM for tell; NEM for to tell)

Gyakorlatok

Írjuk le, mire használhatók a képeken látható tárgyak az A és B oszlopban lévő kifejezések segítségével.

A drill – tool
cashpoint – machine
hammer – tool
telescope – instrument
answerphone – machine
thermometer – instrument
key – thing

B look at the stars
get money
lock doors
record telephone messages
measure temperature
knock in nails
make holes

A hammer is a tool for knocking in nails.
A) Alkossunk kérdés-válasz párokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. A kérdésben a What ... for?, a válaszban pedig a for + főnév szerkezetet használjuk.

0 A: (/did/Tom/go/to the park/?)  
   B: (He/go/to the park/some fresh air)  
   **What did Tom go to the park for?**  
   **He went to the park for some fresh air.**

1 A: (/does/Mary/want/the money/?)  
   B: (She/want/the money/a train ticket)  

2 A: (/does/Philip/want/the flour/?)  
   B: (He/want/the flour/a cake)  

3 A: (/did/Bill/go/to the butcher’s/?)  
   B: (He/go/to the butcher’s/some sausages)  

4 A: (/does/Helen/want/the polish/?)  
   B: (She/want/it/her shoes)  

5 A: (/did/Alison/go/to the library/?)  
   B: (She/go/to the library/a book on India)  

6 A: (/did/Jane/buy/a newspaper/?)  
   B: (She/buy/a newspaper/the football results)  

B) Írjuk át az előző gyakorlatban szereplő válaszokat a megadott igék to + főnévi igenévi alakjának használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>borrowed</th>
<th>buy (x2)</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>makes</th>
<th>see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 Tom  **went to the park to get some fresh air.**

1 Mary .................................................................

2 Philip ...............................................................

3 Bill ........................................................................

4 Helen ......................................................................

5 Alison .....................................................................

6 Jane ........................................................................

C) Javitsuk ki a következő mondatokban talált hibákat.

0 This machine is for make bread.  **This machine is for making bread.**

1 For what did he come? ....................................................

2 A bus is for carry passengers. ........................................

3 She went to the post office for to buy some stamps. ........

4 The mayor came for give the prizes. ...............................  

5 The woman jumped into the river to saving the child. ........

6 I’m training hard for to get fit. ........................................

7 This is a computer program for make three-dimensional drawings.  

8 Can I use your pen for signing this letter? ........................
Ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév (I asked her to come)

1 Figyeljük meg az alábbi példákat:
My father likes people to come early. (= Az apám szereti, ha az emberek korán jönnek.)
Sue wanted John to dance.
(= Sue azt akarta, hogy John táncoljon.)
I’ve invited Tom to have dinner with us.
(= Meghívtam Tomot, hogy vacsorázzon velünk.)
We’ll need somebody to collect the tickets.
(= Szükségnünk van valakire, aki elhozza a jegyeket.)
A szerkezet a következő:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IGE</th>
<th>+ TÁRGY</th>
<th>+ TO</th>
<th>+ FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>John</td>
<td>to dance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>to dance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Főnévi helyett a személyes névmás tárgyi alakja (me, her, him, us stb.) is állhat:
Sue wanted him to dance.
My mother taught us to swim.

Ebben a szerkezetben a következő ígéket használhatjuk: allow, bribe, cause, dare, enable, encourage, expect, force, get, help, invite, leave, like, love, need, prefer, teach, want; valamint azokat az ígéket, amelyekkel kérést, tanácsot és parancsolatot vezetünk be (ld. 127. fejezet).

2 Figyeljük meg, hogy az igeidőt a mondatban az első ige mutatja, a második mindig to + főnévi igenév alakban marad:

Yesterday I invited Tom to have supper.
(invited – egyszerű múlt)
I often invite Tom to have supper.
(invite – egyszerű jelen)
I will invite Tom to have supper.
(will invite – jövő)

3 Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:
We saw a woman come out of the bank.
(= Lättük, hogy kijön egy nő a bankból.)
We saw the crowds coming out of the stadium.
(= Lättük, amint a tömeg kifelé jön a stadionból.)
Az első mondatban a cselekvés tényét állapítjuk meg (tehát azt, hogy a cselekvés megtörtént), míg a másodikban a cselekvés folyamatára utalunk (tehát arra, hogy a cselekvés már elkezdődött, és az adott pillanatban még tartott).
Mindkét szerkezetet nagyon gyakran használjuk érzékelést kifejező ígékkal (feel, hear, notice, watch stb.):
I heard a car crash.
(lejátszódott esemény – a kocsik ütközött)
I heard the children singing.
(folyamat – abban a pillanatban, amikor hallottam, a cselekvés éppen tartott)
Sally felt the table move. (megtörtént esemény – a beszélő a mozgás tényére utal)
The manager watched the men packing the radios.
(folyamat – a beszélő számára lényegtelen, hogy a cselekvés beféjeződött-e vagy sem)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk a helyes igeidő és a névmások megfelelő alakjának használatára.

0 They don’t know/what/cause/that train/crash/last week
They don’t know .............................................................

0 The next time I see Cilla I invite/she/have/a meal with us.
The next time I see Cilla I’ll invite her to have a meal with us.

1 I gave John the general idea and/1/leave/he/think/about the details.
I gave John the general idea and ...........................................

2 I know they work quite well but now/1/want/they/work/harder.
I know they work quite well but now ....................................

3 We had a match last Saturday but/the terrible weather/force/we/cancel/it.
We had a match last Saturday but .........................................

4 If you want to play bridge/1/get/my mother/teach/you.
If you want to play bridge ..................................................
I didn’t want to take the money but they persuaded me to take it.

I didn’t want to take the money but

---

My name is Helen. I have a brother called Peter and a sister called Anne. Our parents want us to be musicians. When we were young, my mother taught the piano. When we were a bit older and we needed us different instruments, my parents wanted to a music school. I thought that was all right, but Peter said that he prefers to our house. Anne didn’t like the idea of a teacher at all so my parents helped the flute. Now she likes to play and in fact she plays well. My parents expect every day except Sunday — on Sunday they allow television and so on. They also encourage to concerts and they always get when we have visitors. Anne likes to play for people now and she loves that she plays well. Peter is not so keen and my parents have to bribe for visitors because he’s a bit shy.

---

I saw Tim drop his pen. I saw what happened.

I saw Tim drop his pen.

The children often play in the garden. When Jill came home, she heard them. When Jill came home, she heard the children playing in the garden.

In autumn the leaves fall from the trees. I noticed this on my walk. It was early November. On my walk I noticed.

It wasn’t a big earthquake. The ground shook once.

We felt.

Tom signed his name in the presence of a policeman.

A policeman watched.

It rained heavily all night and the water ran down the road all day.

When I woke that morning, I heard.

We waited a long time but suddenly the door opened.

Suddenly we saw.

A policeman guards the Prime Minister’s house.

When I walked past, I noticed.

The lightning struck a tree. John saw it.

John saw.

The workers repaired the road last Saturday. I watched them for a few minutes.

For a few minutes I watched.
A feltételes mondat 1. típusa – first conditional (If I am...)

1 Figyeljük meg:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>if</th>
<th>+ egyszerű jelen</th>
<th>+ egyszerű jelen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If  I eat too much,</td>
<td>I feel bad.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(= Ha sokat eszem, rosszul érzem magam.)

Ez a szerkezet (if + egyszerű jelen + egyszerű jelen) olyan cselekvés vagy esemény kifejezésére használható, amely a mellékmondatban (if...) szereplő feltételek mindig megfelel. Az ilyen feltételes mondatot általános feltételek (zero conditional) nevezhetjük:

If I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired.

(= Ha nem alszom eleget, fáradt vagyok.)

2 A tagmondatok sorrendje felcserélhető:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Egyszerű jelen</th>
<th>if</th>
<th>+ egyszerű jelen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I feel bad if I eat too much.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figyeljük meg, hogy az if előtt nincs vessző.

3 Most nézzük meg a következő szerkezetet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>if</th>
<th>+ egyszerű jelen</th>
<th>+ will/won't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If I am late, she'll be angry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(= Ha elkezem, mérges lesz.)

Ezt a szerkezetet (if + egyszerű jelen + egyszerű jövő) akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy esemény a mellékmondatban (if...) szereplő feltétel teljesülésekor meg fog történni.

A feltételes mellékmondatban egyszerű jelent, a főmondatban will/won't segédigét és to nélküli főnévi igénevet használunk. A feltételes mondatnak ezt a típusát valóságos feltételek (first conditional) nevezhetjük:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lehetőség a jövőben</th>
<th>+ eredmény</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If we don't hurry, we won't finish.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 A tagmondatok sorrendje itt is felcserélhető: She'll be angry if I'm late.

5 Figyelem! Az if kezdetű feltételes mellékmondatban nem használjuk a will/won't alakokat:

NEM: If I will be late, she’ll be angry.

6 Ha az eredmény csak valószínű, a might (NEM will) segédigét használjuk:

If it's hot, we might go to the beach.

(= Ha meleg lesz, talán lemegyünk a tengerpartra.)

7 Az if ... not szerkezet helyett használhatjuk az unless (= hacsak nem) kötőszót is:

We will go to the mountains on Saturday unless it rains. (= if it doesn't rain.)

Unless you pay for the broken window, I'll phone the police. (= If you don't pay ...)

Gyakorlatok

Az adott tények alapján alkossunk feltételes mondatokat if + egyszerű jelen + egyszerű jelen szerkezzettel, mindkét tagmondatban a you általános alanyt használva.

0 Doctors treat people who are ill.

If you're a doctor, you treat people who are ill.

1 Vegetarians don't eat meat.

If you’re a vegetarian, ...

2 People who live in a hot country don’t like cold weather.

If you live ...

3 Teachers have to work very hard.

If you’re a teacher, ...

4 People who do a lot of exercise stay fit and healthy.

If you ...

5 Mechanics understand engines.

If you’re a ...
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott ígérek megfelelő alakjával (a feltételek mondat 1. típusának szabályai szerint).

If you 0 **study** (study) hard, you 0 **will pass** (pass) your exams. If you 1 **pass** (pass) your exams, you 2 **be able** (be able) to go to technical college. You 3 **get** (get) professional training if you 4 **go** (go) to technical college. If you 5 **get** (get) professional training, companies 6 **want** (want) to employ you. You 7 **get** (get) a good job if companies 8 **want** (want) you. If you 9 **get** (get) a good job, you 10 **be able** (be able) to afford a nice house.

A fenti szöveg mondatait alakítsuk át tagadóvá.

If you 0 **don’t study** hard, you 0 **won’t pass** your exams. If you 1 **your exams**, you 2 **able** (be able) to go to technical college. You 3 **professional training** if you 4 **to technical college**. If you 5 **professional training**, companies 6 **to employ you**. You 7 **a good job** if companies 8 **you**. If you 9 **a good job**, you 10 **able** (be able) to afford a nice house.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **will** vagy **might** segédigével.

0 If it rains this weekend, we **will** definitely stay at home.
0 If the weather is fine this weekend, we **might** go for a drive in the country but we haven’t decided yet.
1 Jack is quite sure what he wants to do; if he gets a good degree, he **become** a university professor.
2 ‘Where is Jane going for her holidays this year?’ ~ ‘She isn’t sure, but if she can afford it, she **go** to South Africa.’
3 The manager has made up his mind; if John is fit, he **play** in the match on Sunday.
4 I haven’t decided yet; I **buy** a car if I get a salary increase, or I **move** to a new flat.

Írjuk át az aláhúzott mellékmondatot a zárójelben megadott kötőszó használatával.

0 They won’t let her in to the concert **unless she has a ticket**.
(if) They won’t let her in **if she doesn’t have a ticket**.
0 We won’t go and see that film **if you don’t want to**.
(unless) We won’t go and see that film **unless you want to**.
1 The doctor will not see you **if you do not telephone first**.
(unless) The doctor will not see you.
2 You can’t go and stay at the Johnsons’ **unless they invite you**.
(ii) You can’t go and stay at the Johnsons’ **unless you want to**.
3 You can’t be a sailor **unless you can swim**.
(if) You can’t be a sailor.
4 Our team will be in trouble **if we don’t win on Saturday**.
(unless) Our team will be in trouble.
A telítetlen mondat 2. típusa – second conditional
(If he was...)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

**TENY: He doesn't work hard. So he doesn't do well.** (= Nem dolgozik keményen. Igynem is megy neki jól.)

És most nézzük meg ezt a másik mondatot:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If + EGYSZERŰ MÜLT + would/d'd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>If he worked</em> harder, <em>he would do</em> better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= Ha keményebben dolgozna, jobban boldogulna.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Az if + egyszerű múlt + would + to nélküli főnévi igenév szerkezetet akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy esemény a mellékmondatban (if... szerződő feltétel teljesülése esetén megtörténhet. A feltételés mellékmondatban egyszerű múltat, a főmondatban *would/wouldn't* segédigét és to nélküli főnévi igenevet használunk. A feltételés mondatnak ezt a típusát lehetséges feltételek (second conditional) nevezhetjük:

*I'd buy a new car if I had enough money.* (= Új autót vennék, ha lenne elég pénzem. – Nem veszek új autót, mert nincs elég pénzem, de ha lenne, vehetném.)

Figyeljük meg, hogy az if előtt nincs vessző.

2 A cselekvés vagy esemény valószínűsége a feltétel szempontjából lényegileg:

**If + EGYSZERŰ MÜLT + would/d'd**

*If I won a lot of money, I'd buy a big house.* (= Ha sok pénzt nyernék, vennék egy nagy házat.)

3 Tagadáskor a mellékmondatban az egyszerű múlt tagadó alakját (didn't live), a főmondatban a *wouldn't* alakot használjuk:

*If I didn't live in Hungary, I'd like to live in America.* (= Ha nem Magyarországon élnék, akkor Amerikában szeretnék élni.)

*If more people used public transport, there wouldn't be so much pollution.*

4 **Would** helyett *could* vagy *might* segédigé is használható:

*If I didn't have other plans, I could come with you.* (= ... el tudnánk menni veled.)

*If he told someone his problems, he might feel better.* (= ... talán jobban érezné magát.)

5 Az if költső után a létig alakja minden személyben lehet *were* (akkor is, ha az alany *I/he/she/it*):

*If I were (VAGY was) a racing driver, I'd drive for Ferrari.* (= Ha autóversenyző lennék, akkor a Ferrari csapatban versenyeznek.)

*If he were (VAGY was) taller, he could join the police.* (= Ha magasabb lenne, beállhatna rendőrnek.)

A közvetlen stílusú beszéd nyelv elfogadja a *was* használatát is.

6 Az **If I were you** (= Ha a helyedben lennék) kifejezésben a köznyelv is általában a *were* alakot használja:

*If I were you, I'd go to the police.* (NEM was)

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat.

0 If Sally lived in Brighton, ............................................ (she/be) near her parents.

0 Fred would read more if ........................................... (he/not/work) so hard.

1 If Elizabeth didn’t have to work in the evenings, ........................................... (she/go) to concerts.

2 Susan wouldn’t go to work by car if ........................................ (she/live) near a train station.

3 Alan wouldn’t be overweight if ........................................ (he/not/eat) so much.

4 If Peter didn’t live in a flat, ........................................... (he/have) a dog.
5 Pam would definitely learn French if ........................................... (she/get) a job in France.
6 If Mark wanted to be healthy, ................................................... (he/not/smoke).

B A következő állítások a közeli jövőre vonatkoznak.

| It is unlikely that astronauts will visit Mars.          |
| It is unlikely that governments will stop buying guns. |
| It is unlikely that doctors will find a cure for cancer.|
| It is unlikely that they will discover oil in Ireland.  |
| It is unlikely that young people will stop listening to pop music. |

A fenti állítások és a példa alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat.

0 If ........................................... , the world would be safer.
1 If ................................................ , the Irish would be very happy.
2 If ................................................ , this terrible disease would disappear.
3 If ................................................ , the popular music industry would disappear.
4 If ................................................ , we would learn a lot about the planet.

C Egészítsük ki a feltételes mondatokat az állítások alapján. Használjuk a zárójelben megadott szavakat is.

0 People don’t do enough exercise, so there is a lot of heart disease.
   (more, less) If people ................................................., there .........................................
1 There are too many cars. The city is very polluted.
   (fewer) If there ...................................................... , then the city wouldn’t be so polluted.
2 People drive too fast, so there are a lot of accidents.
   (more slowly) If people ................................................., then there would be fewer accidents.
3 People watch too much TV, so they don’t have much time for reading.
   (more) If people watched less TV, they ......................................................
4 People have bad teeth because they eat too many sweets.
   (fewer) People would have better teeth if they ......................................................
5 Not enough people travel by bus, so the roads are crowded.
   (more) If ...................................................... , then the roads would be less crowded.

D Kapcsoljuk össze az első és második oszlopban lévő tagmondatokat. Az üres helyekre írjuk be a
zárójelben megadott szavak megfelelő alakját.

0 If cats ........................................... (not/have) very good eyes,
   a if nobody ........................................... (commit) any crimes.
0 I would ........................................... (live) in a big house
   b if there ........................................... (be) more public transport.
1 If chameleons ........................................... (not/can) change colour,
   c if I ........................................... (be) rich.
2 Life on earth ........................................... (disappear)
   d they ........................................... (not/can) protect themselves.
3 People ........................................... (not/use) their cars so much
   e they ........................................... (not/can) see in the dark.
4 If everybody ........................................... (live) a healthier life,
   f if the sun ........................................... (not/exist).
5 The police ........................................... (not/have) much work
   g we ........................................... (not/need) so many hospitals.

0 .... e 0 .... c 1 ....... 2 ....... 3 ....... 4 ....... 5 .......
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a feltételes mondat 1. és 2. típusa (119–20. fejezet)

A

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat egy-egy szóval, ahol szükséges.

0 If you heat water to 100 degrees, it ................. boils.
1 Mary .......... be happy if she wins a prize tomorrow.
2 If I get a better job, I ............... change my car, but I’m not sure.
3 If Jill had the chance to visit America, she ............... definitely go.
4 If my cousins ............... visit us this weekend, we’ll go to the zoo.
5 We won’t be able to have a holiday ............... we save more money.
6 Switzerland ............... lose its winter tourism if it was a flat country.
7 If people ............... taller, everybody would play basketball.
8 Shakespeare would work in Hollywood if he ............... alive today.
9 Mary is not doing well at school. She won’t pass her exams ............... she studies harder.
10 If .......... you, I’d take an aspirin.
11 This machine is easy to operate if you ............... follow the instructions.
12 If drivers were more careful, there ............... be so many accidents.
13 If Anne ............... in a bad mood, it’s impossible to speak to her.
14 If we all work hard, we ............... finish the project today, but it’s not certain.
15 I would enjoy trips abroad if I ............... speak different languages, but I can’t.
16 It’s not a good idea to swim if you ............... very tired.
17 If you eat all the cakes, there ............... be any for other people.
18 Jim lives in a flat, but if he ............... live in a flat, he’d have a cat.
19 I wouldn’t say anything, if I ............... you.
20 If you ............... tell John a secret, he never tells anybody.

B

A volt diákok osztálytalálkozóra készülnek. Az alábbi táblázatból láthatjuk, hogy ki mikor érne rá.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Friday (1 p.m.)</th>
<th>Saturday (1 p.m.)</th>
<th>Sunday (1 p.m.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amanda</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A táblázat alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a will/will not vagy might be able to szerkezet és a come ige használatával.

0 If the meeting is on Saturday, Robert and Carol ............... will be able to come.
1 If the meeting is on Sunday, Amanda ............... might be able to come.
2 If the meeting is on Friday, Amanda ............... will be able to come.
3 If the meeting is on Saturday, Paul ............... might be able to come.
4 If the meeting is on Sunday, Carol ............... will be able to come.
5 If the meeting is on Friday, Robert ............... might be able to come.
Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. Használjunk egyszerű jelent illetve will/won't segédgét.

0 A: We must be at the airport at two o'clock.
  B: Well, if we take (we/take) a taxi at one o'clock, we won't be (we/not/be) late.

1 A: I'd like a newspaper.
  B: Well, I'll buy (I/buy) one for you if I go to the shop later.

2 A: Has John phoned yet?
  B: No, and if he not phone (he/not/phone) this afternoon, I'll phone (I/phone) him this evening.

3 A: Is Fiona there, please?
  B: No, but if you want (you/want) to leave a message, I'll give (I/give) it to her.

4 A: Is Tim going to pass his exam?
  B: Well, he'll fail (he/fail) if he not work (he/not/work) harder.

5 A: Could I have some information about this year's concerts, please?
  B: Yes, if you fill in (you/fill in) this form, I'll send (I/send) it to you in the post.

Pamela pályaválasztási tanácsadónál járt. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

ADVISOR: What is your present situation?
PAMELA: Well, I'm twenty years old. I finished school so I have the school certificate but the marks are not very good.

ADVISOR: I see. If you were (be) a couple of years younger, I'd suggest that you repeat the year to get better marks. Now, I'm not sure. If I suggested going back to full-time study now, what (you/say)?
PAMELA: Well, I think about it, of course, but I've been working for two years and I think it be difficult to study again.

ADVISOR: I understand, but if you study (study) with people of your own age, it's not really like school.
PAMELA: Well, one thing is certain. If it be (be) anything like my school, then I wouldn't want to go there.

ADVISOR: The problem these days is that if you have (not/have) higher qualifications, it's difficult to get a skilled or responsible job.
PAMELA: OK. What would my job chances be if I go back to school?

ADVISOR: Now, listen. If you not have (not/have) the school certificate, then I'd definitely recommend school. But in your case, it be (be) much better if you tried technical college, for example.
PAMELA: All right, if that was my decision, what (I/can) do there?

ADVISOR: Well, computer skills, for example. That help (help) you to get a better job. Of course, if that doesn't appeal to you, we have (have) to think of something else.
PAMELA: OK. If you think it's a good idea, I think (give) it a try.
Egészítsük ki a feltételes mondatokat will vagy might segédje és a megfelelő ige használatával.

0  'Are you going to London tomorrow?' ~ 'Yes, perhaps, if I get up early enough.'
   If I get up early enough tomorrow morning, I **might go to London.**

0  'Will Gary bring his new CD to the party?' ~ 'Yes, of course, if he comes.'
   If Gary comes to the party, he **will bring his new CD.**

1  'Will you see Peter this morning?' ~ 'Perhaps, if I catch the early train.'
   If I catch the early train this morning, I ...........................................

2  'Will your parents let me stay the night?' ~ 'Yes, perhaps, if they're in a good mood.'
   If my parents are in a good mood, they ...........................................

3  'Will they let you into that club in jeans?' ~ 'No, definitely not.'
   If you wear jeans, they ..............................................................

4  'Will this shop give us a discount on these books?' ~ 'Yes, if we show our student cards.'
   If we show our student cards, this shop ...........................................

5  'Will Sarah get into university?' ~ 'Yes, definitely, if she works hard this year.'
   If Sarah works hard this year, she ..............................................

F Mi törtéenne, ha...? Alkossunk 2. típusú feltételes mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

0  **If I won the lottery, I'd put the money in the bank.**

1  meet/Tom Cruise/ask him for his autograph.

2  become/a film director/live in Hollywood.

3  see/a UFO/sell my story to a newspaper.

4  grow/to be two metres tall/be a basketball player.

5  be/famous film star/like to make a film with Robert de Niro.

6  marry/somebody very rich/give up my job.

G A következő mondatok mindegyikében van hiba. Írjuk át a mondatokat hibátlanul.

0  **If it rains tomorrow, I won't go jogging.**

0  **If John phones tonight, I might go out with him, but it depends how I feel when he calls.**

1  I'm warning you. You will get stomach ache if you will eat too many apples.
   I'm warning you. You ..............................................................

2  People would fall off the earth if there is no gravity.
   People ..............................................................

3  I'll walk out if I won't like the concert this evening.
   I ..............................................................
4 If you will do a lot of exercise, you get hungry.
   If you .................................................................
5 You can’t drive a taxi unless you had a special licence.
   You .................................................................
6 I don’t like big cities. If I lived in the USA, I hadn’t a flat in New York.
   I don’t like big cities. If I ........................................
7 You never know. If we do the lottery this week, we will become millionaires!
   If we .................................................................
8 You’re English, but if you are French, where would you like to live?
   You’re English, but if you ........................................
9 If you didn’t live in Italy, where will you live?
   If you .................................................................

A krimik és kalandregények sokszor eléggé kiszámíthatóak. A kitalált könyvcímek alapján írjunk 1. típusú feltételese mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

0 Inspector Green and the Missing Diamond
   If Inspector Green looks (look) for the diamond, he will find (find) it.
1 Harry Hathaway and the Chicago Mystery
   Harry Hathaway solves (solve) the mystery if he follows (follow) the clues.
2 Miss Morcroft and the Case of the Dead Horse
   If Miss Morcroft accepts (accept) the case, she discovers (discover) why the horse died.
3 Beth Buchanan and the Bad Boxer
   Beth Buchanan wins (win) if he fights (fight) the bad boxer.
4 G. G. Rogers and the Brussels Murders
   If G. G. Rogers investigates (investigate) the murders, he brings (bring) the murderer to justice.
5 Liam Langley and the International Gang
   If Liam Langley finds (find) the Gang, he returns (return) to England a hero.
6 Detective Smedley and the Lost Little Boy
   The little boy’s parents are (be) very pleased if Detective Smedley solves (solve) the mystery.

Fordítuk le a következő mondatokat.
1 Angliában nem lesz elig viz, ha nem esik sok eső a következő télen.
2 Jim nem tud moziba jönni velünk, hacsak nem adunk neki kölcsön egy kis pénzt.
3 Ha nem kérzsz bocsánatot, többé nem állok veled szóba.
4 Anyám azt mondja, hogy ha takarékoskodom, talán elég pénzem lesz a nyaraláshoz.
5 Ha lehetne a Holdra utazni, én is elmennék.
6 A helyedben senkinek sem mondanám el, mi történt.
7 Rendezhetnénk pikniket, ha jobb lenne az idő.
8 Ha szépen kérned, apa talán kölcsönadná a kocsiját.
9 Ha az emberek nem vezetnének ilyen gyorsan, nem lenne ennyi baleset.
A feltételes mondat 3. típusa – third conditional
(If he had been...)

1. Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

TÉNY: I didn’t hear my alarm clock. So I didn’t arrive at school on time. (= Nem hallottam az ébresztőórámát, így nem értem be időben az iskolába.)

És most a következők:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If + PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>+ would have/’d have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ PAST PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>(az ige 3. alakja)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If I had heard my alarm clock, I would have arrived on time.

(= Ha hallottam volna az ébresztőórámát, időben érkezem volna.)

Az if + Past Perfect illetve would have + ige 3. alakja szerkezetet akkor használjuk, amikor az említtet cselekvés vagy esemény már nem történhet meg, de elképeljük, mi lett volna, ha megtörténik. A feltételes mondatnak ezt a típusát lehetetlenné tett felteletnek (third conditional) nevezhetjük:

TÉNY: Jane didn’t come on her usual train. So I didn’t see her.

If Jane had come on her usual train, I would have seen her. (= Ha Jane a szokásos vonattal jött volna, akkor láttam volna.)

Tagadáskor a főmondatban a wouldn’t have + 3. alak szerkezetet, a mellékmondatban a Past Perfect tagadó alakját (hadn’t + 3. alak) használjuk:

John F. Kennedy wouldn’t have died in 1963 if he hadn’t gone to Dallas. (= John F. Kennedy nem halt volna meg 1963-ban, ha nem ment volna Dallasba.)

I would have phoned you if I hadn’t lost your phone number. (= Felhívaltak volna, ha nem vesztettem volna el a telefonszámodat.)

I wouldn’t have gone to the museum if I had known it was shut. (= Nem mentem volna a múzeumba, ha tudtam volna, hogy zárva van.)

2. Would helyett could vagy might segédige is használható:

If you had told me, I could have helped you.

(= ... tudtam volna segíteni.)

John might have come to the party if you had asked him nicely.

(= John talán eljött volna az összejövetelre ...)

Gyakorlatok

A Olvassuk el a következő történetet.

In May 1992 Ellen lost her job in London. She didn’t have much money in the bank, so she was very worried. She looked in the newspapers and she saw an advertisement for a job as a translator from German into English. She didn’t speak German very well, so she didn’t apply for it. In June, she heard about some teaching jobs abroad because a friend phoned to tell her about them. She phoned the company, and they asked her to go for an interview with the director. Ellen thought the interview went badly, but in fact the director was happy with the interview and offered Ellen a job in Spain. However, Ellen couldn’t start at once because she didn’t know any Spanish. She took a course to learn the language. She was good at languages and she made rapid progress. So by September she had a new job, and she still had a little money left in the bank.

A zárójelben megadott szavakból alkossunk 3. típusú feltételes mondatokat.

0 (If Ellen/have/a lot of money in the bank, she/not/be/so worried)

If Ellen had had a lot of money in the bank, she wouldn’t have been so worried.

0 (If she/not/look/in the newspapers, she/not/see/the advertisement)

If she hadn’t looked in the newspapers, she wouldn’t have seen the advertisement.
1 (If she/speak/German very well, she/apply/for the job)

2 (If her friend/not/phone, she/not/hear/about the teaching jobs)

3 (If she/not/contact/the company, they/not/ask/her to go for an interview)

4 (If the interview/go/badly, the director/not/offer/Ellen a job)

5 (If Ellen/now/some Spanish, she/start/at once)

6 (If she/not/be/good at languages, she/not/make/rapid progress)

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben között ténylek alapján.

0 (Sam didn't get the job as translator because he failed the exam.)
   Sam \textit{would have got the job as a translator if he hadn't failed} the exam.

1 (Alan lost our phone number, so he didn't phone us.)
   If Alan ................................................ our phone number, he
   ............................................ us.

2 (Sally broke her leg, so she didn't go on holiday.)
   If Sally ............................................. her leg, she ..................................
   on holiday.

3 (We didn't make a cake because we forgot to buy any eggs.)
   We ......................................... a cake if we .......................................
   to buy some eggs.

C A példa alapján írjunk 3. típusú feltételese mondatokat az adott helyzetekhez.

0 'Why didn’t you eat your dinner, Mark?’ ~ ‘Because I had a big lunch at Joe’s house earlier.’
   Mark \textit{would have eaten his dinner if he hadn’t had a big lunch at Joe’s house earlier}.

1 'I thought you were going to the concert last night, Deborah.' ~ ‘I wanted to, but I had a lot of
   homework.’
   Deborah .................................................................

2 'Didn’t you get some new trainers, Nick?' ~ ‘No, the shop was closed.’
   Nick ........................................................................................................

3 'You said you would come home early, Tom.' ~ ‘Yes, but there was a bus strike.’
   Tom ........................................................................................................

4 'Didn’t you have volleyball practice, Michael?' ~ ‘No, the coach was ill.’
   Michael .....................................................................................................

5 'Why didn’t you send the letter, Peter?' ~ ‘I didn’t have a stamp.’
   Peter ........................................................................................................

6 'Didn’t you buy some new books, Diane?' ~ ‘No, I lent all my money to Terry.’
   Diane ........................................................................................................
Kivánság – wish (I wish he was... , I wish he had been...)

1 Nézzük meg a példát:

![Illustration of a dog and a boy]

(= Bárcsak tudnál beszélnél!)  

A wish + egyszerű múlt szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy jó lenne, ha valami másképp lenne, mint ahogy van. (A 120. fejezetetben található hasonló szerkezet: if + egyszerű múlt.)

*I live in London, but I wish I lived in the country.*  
(= Londonban élek, de bárcsak valahol videkén élnek.)

*He wishes he didn’t live in London.*  
(= Azt szeretné, ha nem lakna Londonban.)

*Jane wishes she knew German.*  
(= Jane azt kívánja, bárcsak tudna németül.)

2 A wish ige után a létige alakja írott nyelven minden személyben was(were), de a mai beszélt nyelven I/he/she/it alanny mellett a was alakot is használjuk:

*He wishes he was/were younger.*  
(= Azt szeretné, ha fiatalabb lenne.)

3 A wish után a would ('d) segédige használata elégedetlenséget és a dolgok megváltozatására irányuló erős vágyat fejezhet ki:

*I wish they'd stop playing their music!*  
(= Bárcsak abbahagyják a zenélést!)  

*I wish the phone would ring.*  
(= Bárcsak megszólalna a telefon!)  

4 Nézzük meg ezt a példát:

![Illustration of a teacher and a student]

(= Bárcsak keményebben dolgoztam volna az iskolában!)  

A wish + Past Perfect szerkezett a múltban lezárult eseménnyel kapcsolatos vágyat fejez ki – ilyenkor azt kívánjuk, hogy ami történt, bárcsak ne úgy történt volna:

*I woke up very late this morning. I wish I had gone to bed earlier last night.*  
(= Nagyon későn ébredtem fel ma reggel. Bárcsak korábban feküdtem volna le tegnap este!)  

Tagadáskor a Past Perfect tagadó alakját (hadn’t + 3. alak) használjuk:

*Many people wish that John F. Kennedy hadn’t gone to Dallas.*  
(= Sokan azt kívánják, bárcsak ne ment volna John F. Kennedy Dallasba.)

5 Az I wish... / he/she wishes... szerkezet helyett az if only (= bárcsak) kifejezést is használhatjuk:

*If only I was rich!*  
(= Bárcsak gazdag lennék!)  

*If only he’d studied harder!*  
(= Bárcsak jobban tanult volna!)

---

Gyakorlatok

A Írjunk a következő állításokhoz megjegyzést az I wish szerkezet segítségével.

| 0 | You don’t have a driving licence. | I wish I had a driving licence. |
| 0 | You can’t type. | I wish I could type. |
| 1 | You don’t have good eyesight. | I wish... |
| 2 | You can’t speak German. | I wish... |
| 3 | You don’t have a degree. | I wish... |
| 4 | You are not eighteen. | I wish... |
3 Alkossunk mondatokat a megadott szavak és a wish ... would szerkezet használatával.

0 Why are those boys following me?
   I/they go away. I wish they would go away.

1 Why don’t you concentrate when I’m talking?
   I/you listen more carefully.

2 Why are those children making so much noise?
   I/they play more quietly.

3 Why are you wearing that ridiculous hat?
   I/you take it off.

4 Why hasn’t the neighbours’ party finished?
   I/they go to bed.

3 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a példa alapján. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igealak használatára.

0 Paul smokes. Paul wishes he didn’t smoke.

0 Peter didn’t see the film. Peter wishes he had seen the film.

1 Jill didn’t tell the truth. Jill wishes she told the truth.

2 Ann can’t afford a new coat. Ann wishes she could afford a new coat.

3 Tim bites his nails. Tim wishes he didn’t bite his nails.

4 Bill stayed in bed all morning. Bill wishes he had stayed in bed all morning.

5 Penny lives on the coast. Penny wishes she lived on the coast.

6 Jack didn’t buy a ticket. Jack wishes he had bought a ticket.

7 Frank doesn’t dance well. Frank wishes he danced well.

8 Carol invited Tom. Carol wishes she hadn’t invited Tom.

3 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat úgy, hogy az adott helyzethez kapcsolódó kívánságot fejezzének ki.

0 Ian wasted his time at school; now he’s sorry.
   Ian wishes he hadn’t wasted his time at school.

0 I would like to have curly hair.
   If only I had curly hair!

1 Sally regrets that she spent all her money.
   Sally wishes she hadn’t spent all her money.

2 You don’t listen to what I say.
   If only you would listen to me.

3 Lesley would like to have a better job.
   Lesley wishes she had a better job.

4 Philip regrets that he ate so much ice cream.
   Philip wishes he hadn’t eaten so much ice cream.

5 We are sorry that we didn’t take an umbrella.
   If only we had taken an umbrella.
A

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk az igék megfelelő alakjának használatára.

0 If Mary ............... (work) in the library, she probably knows my sister.
1 Sebastian wishes he ............... (not/be) called Sebastian.
2 I live in a flat but if I ............... (live) in the country, I ............... (have) a couple of dogs.
3 It was lucky that we met Sara. We ............... (not/know) where to go if we ............... (not/meet) her.
4 You ............... (be) able to go on the trip next week unless you ............... (pay) by Saturday.
5 When the rain started, I got very wet. I ............... (not/get) so wet if I ............... (take) an umbrella with me.
6 A drop of blood should sink in water. If it ............... (float), you ............... (be) probably anaemic.
7 If Terry’s girlfriend ............... (not/live) so far away, he ............... (not/have) such a big telephone bill.
8 If I ............... (be) you, I ............... (not/touch) those wires.

B

Alkossunk 2. típusú feltételes mondatokat a következő állítások alapján.

0 Petra doesn’t go to the theatre because she doesn’t live in London.
   Petra would go to the theatre if she lived in London.

0 Jane has a good job so she can save for her holidays.
   If Jane didn’t have a good job, she couldn’t save for her holidays.

1 Philip does a lot of sport so he’s very fit.
   If .........................................................., Philip is very fit.

2 Angie doesn’t eat fish because she’s allergic to it.
   .......................................................... if ..........................................................

3 Sally reads the newspaper so she knows the latest news.
   If .........................................................., she knows the latest news.

4 We can’t go out because it’s so cold.
   .......................................................... if ..........................................................

5 Peter likes French films because he understands the language.
   .......................................................... if ..........................................................

6 Kate has a lot of headaches so she buys a lot of aspirins.
   If .........................................................., she buys a lot of aspirins.

7 Colin can’t go to the cinema because he doesn’t have a lot of spare time.
   .......................................................... if ..........................................................

8 The US is a powerful country so people know the President’s name.
   If ..........................................................
Olvassuk el az alábbi beszámolót, majd a szöveg alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat 3. típusú feltételes szerkezetekkel.

I had a day off work last Saturday so I went to watch a football match at the Redbridge sports centre. Gilford, the visiting team, had only ten players so they asked if anyone was prepared to play. I offered to play, but I needed some size eleven boots. They said they had a pair, so I was able to play.

The missing player was the goalkeeper so I played in goal. I saved two penalties, so Gilford won the match. The Redbridge goalkeeper didn't play very well, so the Redbridge captain asked me to play in the next match.

That's the good news, but the bad news is that the match finished late so I was late leaving. In fact, I was such a long time at the sports centre that the police gave me a parking fine. However, my mother offered to pay the fine because she was pleased about the football match.

0 If I hadn't had a day off last Saturday, I wouldn't have gone to watch a football match.

1 The Gilford players if anyone was prepared to play if they eleven players.

2 If they a pair of size eleven boots, I to play.

3 I in goal if the missing player the goalkeeper.

4 If I two penalties, Gilford the match.

5 The Redbridge captain me to play in the next match if the club goalkeeper very well.

6 I late leaving if the match late.

7 If I such a long time at the sports centre, the police me a parking fine.

8 My mother to pay the fine if she pleased about the football match.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat megfelelő igealakokkal.

0 Pam smokes. Pam wishes she didn't smoke.

0 Peter didn't see the film. Peter wishes he had seen the film.

1 Tom didn't go to bed early. Tom wishes he to bed early.

2 Sara can't afford a holiday. Sara wishes she a holiday.

3 Simon lives in a tiny flat. Simon wishes he in a tiny flat.

4 Anne lent her car to Bob. Anne wishes she her car to Bob.

5 Peter can't play the piano. Peter wishes he the piano.

6 Karen didn't wait for her sister. Karen wishes she for her sister.

7 Mrs Thomas changed jobs. Mrs Thomas wishes she jobs.

8 Jack doesn't speak German. Jack wishes he German.
A következő beszélgetés egy művelődési ház vezetője és pénzügyi tanácsadója között zajlik. A táblázatban található adatok segítségével egészítsük ki a párbeszédet 2. típusú feltételezés szerkezet,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What members want</th>
<th>What some members agree to</th>
<th>What members don’t want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Find a local sponsor</td>
<td>Increase price by 50%</td>
<td>Increase price by 100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More table tennis tables</td>
<td>Close weekday afternoons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improve the disco lighting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find a DJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open longer at the weekend</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MANAGER: What could we do to improve things?

ADVISOR: For a start, you could increase the price of membership. It is very cheap compared with other things that young people do, and if you increased (increase) it by, say, 50%, you would have (have) more money to spend on improvements. Most people think it isn’t expensive – not many complain (complain) unless you put (put) it up by 100% or more. Another way to get more money is to find a local sponsor. If you be (be) willing to accept a few adverts, and if you (find) a local business that was interested, you (have) even more money to spend.

MANAGER: Right. If we (have) more money, what changes (improve) things most?

ADVISOR: Well, personally, I would start with the indoor sports facilities. If you (buy) a couple of new table tennis tables, people (not/have) to wait so long for a game, so everybody (get) more practice and, possibly, you (find) a champion among the members.

MANAGER: OK. And what would you do to improve our weekly disco session?

ADVISOR: First, I would install some better lighting. I also think that if you (ask) among the members, you (find) somebody to be a DJ. If you (find) a good DJ, people (enjoy) the sessions a lot more.

MANAGER: What about opening times?

ADVISOR: At the moment you open six days a week, afternoon and evening. But very few people come on weekday afternoons. If you (not/open) on weekday afternoons, nobody (care). You (save) on electricity and then you (open) longer at weekends. I think a lot of people be (be) happier if you (stay) open longer on Saturdays and Sundays.
Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

MRS HILL: What time did you come home last night?
TONY: Oh, I don’t know. At about one o’clock, I think.
MRS HILL: It was after three o’clock.
TONY: I didn’t say the exact time because it’s always the same: if I tell (tell) the truth, you get (get) cross with me.
MRS HILL: Why don’t you go out earlier and come home earlier?
TONY: Nothing opens early. If I went out earlier, I not/see (not/see) anyone I know.
MRS HILL: But what about school work? If you (stay) out till three o’clock, you (not/get) up until midday.
MRS HILL: And you be (be) tired for the rest of the day.
TONY: But I’m doing all right at school. I passed all my exams last term. The headmaster phone (phone) you if I not/pass (not/pass) everything.
MRS HILL: But these days a pass isn’t enough. If you have (have) passes, you get (get) a good job when you leave school. If somebody (have) better marks than you, they (get) the job. And if you only have (have) poor marks, there (always/be) someone better than you.
TONY: But school is so boring. If I not/go (not/go) out at the weekend, my whole life would be boring.
MRS HILL: The way you speak to us! If I speak (speak) to my parents like that when I was your age, they (not/let) me go out for a week. And they (not/give) me any pocket money, either.
TONY: If grandad be (be) still alive, I ask (ask) him. I’m sure he wasn’t as bad as you say.
MRS HILL: If you not/stop (not/stop) contradicting your father, things get (get) worse.
TONY: OK, I promise to believe you and to work harder at school. Is that better?
MRS HILL: Well, it’s a start.

Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

1. Ha vidéken vagy, több csillagot látsz az égen.
2. Tom segíteni fog, ha megkered.
3. Ha a helyedben lennék, bevennék egy aszpirint.
4. Tisztábbak lennének a folyóink, ha jobban vigyáznánk rájuk.
5. Ha a hét végén jobb lett volna az idő, kimentünk volna a strandra.
6. Ha Sally beszélne nyelveket, idegenvezető lehetne.
7. Bárcsak ne lennének ilyen szigorúak a szüleim!
8. Jó lenne, ha a testvéreim nem költözték volna el.
9. Ha Péter óvatosabb lett volna, nem történt volna baleset.
10. A nővérem adott volna pénzt, ha kérünk tőle.

325
A függő beszéd – reported speech (1) (say/said, tell/told)

1 Amikor a beszélő szavait nem szó szerint idézzük, és az eredeti szöveget bizonyos szerkezeti változtatással (pl. szörend, igeidő) közvetítjük, függő beszédről (reported/indirect speech) beszélünk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EREDETI MONDAT</th>
<th>FÜGGŐ BESZÉD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Egyszerű jelen</td>
<td>Egyszerű múlt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I live in a small flat,' she said.</td>
<td>'She said (that) she lived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in a small flat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folyamatos jelen</td>
<td>Folyamatos múlt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I'm leaving on Tuesday, I said.'</td>
<td>'I said (that) I was leaving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on Tuesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyszerű múlt Present Perfect</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I learned a lot,' he said.</td>
<td>'He said (that) he had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>learned a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'She said (that) Mr Jackson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>had left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I'll help you,' she said.</td>
<td>'She said (that) she would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>help me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are going to</td>
<td>was/were going to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'We're going to be late, I said.'</td>
<td>'I said (that) we were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>going to be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I can't find my money,' he said.</td>
<td>'He said (that) he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>couldn't find his money.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ha a függő beszédben idézett mondat röviddel a függő beszédben történő megismételés előtt hangzott el, az igeidőt nem kell megváltoztatni. A bevezető ige (say, tell stb.) lehet akár jelen, akár múlt időben:
She says/said she lives in a small flat.
He says/said he can't find his money.

2 A that (= hogy) kötőszó használata nem feltétlenül szükséges függő beszédben:
She said (that) she knew the answer.

3 Figyelem! A magyar nyelvben az igeidőt nem változtatjuk meg, amikor valainak a szavait megismételjük, csak a személyes névmásokat. Amikor az ilyen mondatokat magyarra fordítjuk, vigyázzunk, hogy a said stb. kezdetű mondatot követő mellékmondatban az egyszerű múlt időt ne múlt időnek, hanem jelen időnek fordítsuk. She said she lived ...

4 Hasonlóan össze a say és a tell igék használatát a következő mondatokban:
She said (that) she lived in a small flat.
She told me (that) she lived in a small flat.

A 'say something to someone' szerkezet helyesek, a 'say-someone-something' helytelen.
She said she was going to be late.

A tell someone something szerkezet helyes, a tell-something nem.
He told me he was happy.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a said vagy told igéalakkal.

0 She .......................... she wasn’t feeling very well.
1 Alex .......................... me that he would buy the tickets.
2 They .......................... that the train was going to be late.
3 She .......................... him that she was very angry with him.
4 She .......................... him that she couldn’t help him.
5 Who .......................... you that I was leaving? It’s not true!
6 They .......................... us that they were leaving in the morning.
7 He ................................ that he didn’t know what was wrong with the car.
8 She ................................ she had four sisters.
9 She ................................ me that Tom worked in a factory.
10 He ................................ me that he was a doctor, but he ....................
Anna that he was a dentist.

B Írjuk át a következő beszélgetést függő beszédbbe.

NICOLE: How long have you been in France? CLAUDIA: Six weeks.
NICOLE: Are you enjoying your stay? CLAUDIA: Yes, I’m enjoying it a lot.
NICOLE: Have you been here before? CLAUDIA: Yes, I’ve been to France many times.
NICOLE: What are you doing here? CLAUDIA: I’m on holiday.
NICOLE: Are you staying in a hotel? CLAUDIA: No, I’m staying with some friends.
NICOLE: Where do they live? CLAUDIA: They have a flat in the city centre.
NICOLE: How long are you staying? CLAUDIA: I’m leaving in March.
NICOLE: Can you speak French very well? CLAUDIA: No, I can’t. I’m going to have some lessons.
NICOLE: I’ll teach you.

0 Claudia said ................................ in France for six weeks.
1 Claudia said ................................ her stay a lot.
2 Claudia said ................................ to France many times.
3 Claudia said ................................ on holiday.
4 She said ................................ with some friends.
5 She said ................................ a flat in the city centre.
6 She said ................................ in March.
7 She said ................................ French very well.
8 She said ................................ some lessons.
9 Nicole said ................................ Claudia.

C A képek alapján írjuk le függő beszédben, hogy ki mit mondott, amikor a repülőtérer ellenőrizték az ütlevelét.

0 ............................................................ that she had been
1 ............................................................ her stay a lot.
2 ............................................................ to France many times.
3 ............................................................ on holiday.
4 ............................................................ with some friends.
5 ............................................................ a flat in the city centre.
6 ............................................................ in March.
7 ............................................................ French very well.
8 ............................................................ some lessons.
9 ............................................................ Claudia.

0 He said ............................................................
1 She said ............................................................
2 He said ............................................................
3 They said ............................................................
4 She said ............................................................
5 They said ............................................................
A függő beszéd – reported speech (2) (névmások és határozószók)

1 Tételezzük fel, hogy Mary elmondja Jane-nak: ‘I love Tom.’ Jane azt mondja Susannak:
Mary says (that) she loves Tom.
Jane pedig megmondja Tomnak:
Mary says (that) she loves you.
Végül Mary közli Tommal:
I told Jane (that) I love you.
A fenti három mondat függő beszédben van. A személyes névmás függő beszédben értelmszerűen megváltozik (pl. 'I' → 'she', 'Tom' → 'you' stb.)

2 Tételezzük fel, hogy Mary és Tom reggelt az autóbusz megállóban búcsúzik egymástól.
Mary azt mondja: ‘I’ll meet you here at seven o’clock.’
Tom azt mondja a barátjának az irodában:
Mary says she’ll meet me at the bus station at seven o’clock.
Ha Mary azt mondja: ‘I’ll come to your house at seven o’clock’, Tom, már otthon, ezt mondja a barátjának:
Mary says she’ll come here at seven o’clock.
A személyes névmás ezekben a mondatokban is megváltozott. (’you’ → ’me’; ’I’ → ’she’)

3 Másnap Mary ezt mondja a barátnőjének: ‘I saw Jane yesterday, and I’ve seen Tom three times this week.’
A barátnő valaki másnak elmondja:
Last Friday Mary said (that) she had seen Jane the day before, and she had seen Tom three times that week.
A ‘yesterday’ megváltozik, ‘the day before’ (= az előző napon) lesz belőle, a ‘this week’ (= ezen a héten) ’that week’ (= azon a héten) lesz. (Egyéb, a függő beszédben bekövetkező változásokkal kapcsolatos tudnivalók a 125. fejezetben találhatók.)

Figyeljük meg, hogy a változtatások nem feltétlenül, automatikusan következnek be, a helyzettől is függnek, amelyben a beszélgetés történik.

A leggyakoribb változások:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AZ EREDETI</th>
<th>A MEGVÁLTOZOTT NÉVMÁS, IGE VAGY HATÁROZÓ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I; we</td>
<td>she, he; they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me; us</td>
<td>her, him; them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my; our</td>
<td>her, his; their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>the previous day/day before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>the next/following day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come, bring</td>
<td>go, take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gyakorlatok

Állíts fel a következő párbeszédet, majd pótoljuk a hiányzó névmásokat (illetve az egyik esetben főnevet) a függő beszédben írt szövegben.

SARA: I’m not happy. I think things between us are going badly.
JOE: I still love you, but I think you’ve changed.
SARA: You’re not nice to me any more.
JOE: I’ve heard rumours about you.
SARA: I don’t believe you.
JOE: I think you’re seeing someone else.
SARA: Yes, I’ve been out with Tony a couple of times. I feel happy with him.
JOE: But he’s not in love with you.
SARA: I’m too young to have just one boyfriend. I want to be free.
Sara begins the story: I wasn’t happy. I told Joe \(^0\) I thought things between 1 \(^2\) were going badly. He said 2 \(^3\) still loved 3 \(^4\) but 4 \(^5\) thought that 5 \(^6\) had changed. I told him that 6 \(^7\) wasn’t nice to 7 \(^8\) any more. He said 8 \(^9\) had heard rumours about 9 \(^10\) and I said that 10 \(^11\) didn’t believe 11 \(^12\).

Tony continues: Joe said he thought Sara was seeing someone else. Sara said that she had been out with 12 \(^13\) a couple of times and that 13 \(^14\) felt happy with 14 \(^15\). Joe said that 15 \(^16\) was not in love with 16 \(^17\). Sara said that 17 \(^18\) was too young to have just one boyfriend and that 18 \(^19\) wanted to be free.

Fejezzük be a táblázat jobb oldali oszlopában lévő mondatokat függő beszéddel a bal oldali oszlopban található információ alapján.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original situation</th>
<th>Reporting situation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **0** Place: Paris  
Jane said, ‘I’ve been here for six months.’ | Place: London  
Jane told me that **she’d been there for six months.** |
| **1** Place: London  
Ken said, ‘We’re leaving tomorrow.’ | Place: London  
Ken said that |
| **2** Place: London  
Sally said to Tom, ‘I can’t marry you.’ | Place: London  
Sally told Tom that |
| **3** Place: New York  
Bill said to Ella, ‘I’ll write to you every day.’ | Place: London  
Bill told Ella that |
| **4** Place: London Zoo  
Date: June 1998  
Alice said to me, ‘I often come here.’ | Place: My home  
Date: 2001  
Alice told me that |
| **5** Place: London  
Date: June, 1999  
Anne said, ‘My brother is going to visit me.’ | Place: Paris  
Date: 2000  
Anne said that |
| **6** Place: Madrid  
Date: 16 June 2000  
Derek said, ‘We arrived here yesterday.’ | Place: London  
Date: 12 July 2000  
Derek said that |
| **7** Place: New York  
Date: 18 May 2000  
Bill said, ‘I’ve been here for a week. I’m staying at the Dickens Hotel.’ | Place: London  
Date: 10 June 2000  
I saw Bill in New York last month. He told me that and that |
A függő beszéd – reported speech (3) (kérés, utasítás stb.)

1 Kérést többféle módon is kifejezhetünk:
   SARAH: 'Please wait a minute, Tom.'
   SARAH: 'Tom, could you wait a minute, please?'

Mindkét kérés függő beszéddé való alakításakor az ask igét használjuk:
   Sarah asked Tom to wait a minute. (= Sarah arra kérte Tomot, hogy várjon egy percet.)

2 Utasítást is többféle módon adhatunk:
   'Stand up, John.' 'You must work harder.'

Utasítást vagy kevésbé udvarias kérést a tell/told igével tehetünk függő beszédben:
   He told John to stand up.
   (= Azt mondta Johnnak, hogy álljon fel.)

3 A következőképpen adunk tanácsot:
   'You ought to stop smoking, Jane.'
   'You should get married, Peter.'

Ezekben a mondatokban függő beszédben az advise (= tanácsol) igét használhatjuk:
   He advised Jane to stop smoking. (= Azt tanácsolta Jane-nek, hogy hagyja abba a dohányzást.)

4 Az ask, tell és advise ige használata függő beszédben:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ige</th>
<th>+ tárgy</th>
<th>+ to + főnévi ige/név</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>asked Tom</td>
<td>to wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>told him</td>
<td>to stand up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>advised Jane</td>
<td>to stop smoking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Az ige + tárgy + to + főnévi ige/név szerkezetet az alábbi igékkel használhatjuk:
   advise, ask, tell, order, persuade, remind, forbid, warn

5 Ha tiltó mondatot alakítunk függő beszéddé (Don't laugh), utasítást stb. a not + to + főnévi ige/név szerkezetet használjuk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ige</th>
<th>+ tárgy</th>
<th>+ not + to + főnévi ige/név</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>told Tom</td>
<td>not to laugh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>warned Ian</td>
<td>not to borrow money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>reminded John</td>
<td>not to be late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*NEM ... to not laugh*)

6 Vannak olyan igék, amelyeket nem használhatunk függő beszédben, és nem állhat utánuk tárgy. Néhány példa:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ige</th>
<th>to + főnévi ige/név</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>refused to help me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Visszautasította, hogy segítsen.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>promised not to be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Megígérte, hogy nem fog elkészni.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ige</th>
<th>elojárásozó + -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>apologized for being late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Elnézést kértünk a késésért.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ige</th>
<th>-ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>suggested going to the cinema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Azt javasolta, hogy menjünk moziba.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>denied taking the money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Tagadta, hogy elvitte volna a pénzt.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ige</th>
<th>that + mellékmondat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>complained that the food was cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Panaszkodott, hogy az étel hideg.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a kifejezéseket a megfelelő szó kiválasztásával.

0 Beth asked me to help/helping her.
1 I've told Tim cleaning/to clean his shoes.
2 Jack denied to break/breaking the window.
3 The teacher reminded them to bring/bringing their dictionaries.
4 Mum warned us not to speak/speaking to strangers.
5 I persuaded my parents letting/to let me go to the disco.
6 The doctor advised me to eat/eating more fruit.
7 My cousin refused apologizing/to apologize for hitting me.
A Válaszoljunk a kérdésekre a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével a példa alapján. Úgyeljünk a megfelelő igedő (egyszerű múlt) és a not tagadószó használatára.

0 A: Did you tell the children to clean the car? B: (Yes, but I/tell/to use too much water.)
Yes, but I told them not to use too much water.

1 A: Did you ask Bill to come to the meeting? B: (Yes, and I/tell/to be late.)

2 A: Did the doctor tell your sister to keep warm? B: (Yes, and she/warn/to go outside the house.)

3 A: Did you ask Michael to post the letters? B: (Yes, and I/tell/to forget the stamps.)

4 A: Did the policeman advise everyone to stay indoors? B: (Yes, and he/tell/to go near the windows.)

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat függő beszéddé a zárójelben megadott igék segítségével.

0 Fred said, ‘Anne, would you lend me five pounds, please?’
(ask) Fred asked Anne to lend him five pounds.

1 I said to John, ‘Remember to phone Sally.’
(remin) I reminded John to phone Sally.

2 Anna said to Barbara, ‘I’ll help you with your homework.’
(offer) Anna offered to help Barbara with her homework.

3 Paul said, ‘I’m sorry I broke the window.’
(apolog) Paul apologized for breaking the window.

4 She said, ‘Children, stay away from the water.’
(warn) She warned the children to stay away from the water.

5 Mark said, ‘Let’s go out for a pizza.’
(suggest) Mark suggested going out for a pizza.

6 I said, ‘I’ll phone as soon as I arrive.’
(promise) I promised to phone as soon as I arrived.

D Egészítsük ki a függő beszéddé alakított mondatokat a megadott igék és a megfelelő névmás segítségével. (Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.)

advise ask order remind tell warn

0 The official said to Gerry, ‘Go to Room 23.’ The official told him to go to Room 23.

1 ‘Girls, you mustn’t touch these wires. It can be dangerous,’ said the guide.
The guide told the girls not to touch the wires.

2 ‘The bus is all right, Anne, but it’s better for you to take the train,’ we said.
We advised Anne to take the train.

3 ‘Bring the money, Simon. Don’t forget,’ Mrs Walters said.
Mrs Walters reminded Simon to bring the money.

4 ‘This is the police,’ the voice said. ‘Spectators must leave at once.’
The police told the spectators to leave at once.

5 I said, ‘Please come in, Mr Tufnell.’ I let/ask Mr Tufnell in.
A függő kérdés – reported questions (She asked if …)

1 Eldöntendő (yes/no) kérdésben a be ige megfelelő alakját (pl. is, are) vagy segédigét (pl. do, can, have) használunk:

‘Are they English?’
‘Can John type?’

A függő kérdés főmondatában az ask igét használjuk, a mellékmondatot pedig az if vagy whether (= vajon) kötőszóval kapcsoljuk a főmondatóhoz:

She asked if they were English.
She asked if John could type.

VAGY:
She asked whether they were English.
She asked whether John could type.

A függő kérdés nem kérdő szerkezet, tehát szörendje megegyezik az állító mondat szörendjével: alan, állitmány stb.

2 A kiegszőtendő kérdés kérdőszóval kezdődik (who, what, where stb.):

‘Where does Alan live?’
‘Why has Jane gone?’

A függő kérdés főmondatában itt is az ask igét használjuk, az összetett mondat kötőszáva az eredeti kérdőszó lesz. Itt is állító szörendet használunk.

They asked where Alan lived.
They asked why Jane had gone.

3 Nézzük meg a következő szerkezetet: ask someone if, where, stb.:

The manager asked me if I could type.
(= A főnök megkérdezte, tudok-e gépét.)
They asked him where Sarah lived.
(= Megkérdeztek tőle, hol lakik Sarah.)

4 Figyeljük meg, hogy amikor egy kérdést függő kérdéssé alakítunk, általában megváltoztatjuk az igéidőt (ld. 125. fejezet):

‘Can John swim?’
He asked if John could swim.

Figyelem! A magyar fordításban az igéidő nem változik: could swim= tud-e úszni.

A leggyakoribb igéidő változások:
▸ jelen → múlt: am/is → was are → were
is living → was living live → lived
▸ Present Perfect → Past Perfect: has gone → had gone
▸ egyszerű múlt → Past Perfect: arrived → had arrived
▸ segédigék: will → would can → could

Gyakran más szavakat is megváltoztatunk:

‘Have you finished, Mike?’
She asked Mike if he had finished.

5 Az asked helyett mondhatjuk, hogy wanted to know vagy wondered:

She wanted to know if they were English.
She wondered why Jane had gone.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk függő kérdést a zárójelben megadott kérdésekből, a függő kérdéseket pedig alakítsuk át egyenes kérdéssé. A mondatok végére tegyük pontot vagy kérdjelet.

0 (Did they come?) She asked if they had come.
1 (Do you speak English?) They asked me I spoke English.
2 (I wanted to know why he had taken my key.) did you take my key...
3 (How many people came to the party?) I asked people had come to the party...
4 (Does Ann work on Saturdays?) I asked Ann worked on Saturdays...
5 (Can we meet tomorrow?) I asked we could meet tomorrow...
6 (I asked what he had done.) has he done...
7 (Was Tom born in 1965 or 1966?) I asked them Tom was born...
(Why has Jane gone home?) I wondered .................. Jane had gone home ...
(Where do you go for your holidays?) I wanted to know ............... they went for their holidays ...
(Is Bill coming to the party, Jane?) I asked Jane .................. Bill was coming to the party ...

B Forditsuk le a kérdéseket, majd a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével írjunk függő kérdést.
0 Hova ment Anna? Where has Anna gone?
   (ask) I asked where Anna had gone.
1 Jim gyakran jár focizni? ..................................................
   (wonder) .................................................................
2 Mit ettek a gyerekek? ..................................................
   (she/want to know) ....................................................
3 Hova megy Mark? .........................................................
   (wonder) .................................................................
4 Mikor jön a következő busz? ........................................
   (ask) ..........................................................
5 Hány tanuló jön az utazásra? ........................................
   (Sara/wonder) ........................................................
6 Mary beszél franciául? .............................................
   (wonder) .................................................................
7 Miért vett Vicky új biciklít? ........................................
   (ask) ..........................................................
8 Hol dolgozik Péter? ..................................................
   (wonder) .................................................................

C Steven Ellis betőrt egy bankba. A rendőrség Steven egyik elfogott cinkostársának a következő kérdéseket tette fel a kihallgatáson:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>How long have you been out of prison?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Have you worked since then?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Does your sister give you money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Who else gives you money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Do you know Steven Ellis?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>How long have you known Steven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Have you seen Steven recently?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A következőkben a rendőrfelügyelő a kihallgatásról számol be. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a fenti kérdések átalakításával.

0 I asked him how long he had been out of prison ........., and he replied that he had left prison six months ago.
1 Then I asked him .............................................. He told me that he hadn’t found a job.
2 I asked him ...................................................., and he said she gave him some money, but not very much.
3 Then I asked him .............................................. He replied that nobody else did.
4 I asked him ...................................................., and he said that he and Steven were friends.
5 So I asked him ...................................................., and he said that he had known him for six years.
6 Then I asked him ...................................................., and he said that he couldn’t remember.
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a függő beszéd (125–8. fejezet)

A Alakítsuk át a következő mondatokat függő beszéddé.

0 Paul said: ‘Atlanta is a wonderful city.’

   Paul said (that) Atlanta was a wonderful city.

1 Ruth said: ‘I go jogging every morning.’

2 Anna said: ‘Jenny isn’t studying for her exams.’

3 Jim said: ‘I can’t swim.’

4 Jane said: ‘Mary works in a bank.’

5 Jim said: ‘I’m staying with some friends.’

6 Mike said: ‘I’ve never been to Russia.’

7 Ella said: ‘Tom can’t use a computer.’

8 Jill said: ‘Everybody must try to do their best.’

9 Rachel said: ‘Jane may move to a new flat.’

10 Bill said: ‘I’ll stay at home on Sunday.’

B Írjuk át a mondatokat függő beszéddé a példa alapján.

0 Andy said: ‘Julie, I love you.’

Later, Julie said to her sister: Andy said that he loved me.

1 Anna said: ‘You can rely on me, Tom.’

Later, Tom said to his brother: Anna said that.

2 Susan said: ‘Jane, your mother has been very kind.’

Later, Jane said to her mother: Susan said that.

3 Mary said: ‘Jenny is staying with me, Peter.’

Later Peter said to Jenny: Mary said that.

4 The teacher said: ‘Class! You’re making too much noise.’

Later, the pupils said to their parents: The teacher said that.

5 Mark said: ‘John may come to your party, Andrew.’

Later, Andrew said to John: Mark said that.
C

írjuk át a zárójelben megadott mondatokat a say iге helyett tell használatával.

0 (Norman said to Rosa (that) he would be late.)
   
   *Norman told Rosa (that) he would be late.*

1 (She said to him (that) she liked his paintings.)

2 (You said to me (that) you liked that film.)

3 (Tom said to Ann (that) he felt ill.)

4 (She said to Bill (that) she was leaving.)

5 (I said to you (that) I couldn’t find it.)

6 (Mary said to him (that) she would send the letter.)

7 (We said to them (that) we would arrive at six.)

D

Egészitsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék megfelelő alakjával az idézett mondat alapján. Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.

advise apologize ask deny offer remind promise say tell warn

0 ‘I come from Scotland.’
   Ian ........................................................................ from Scotland.
   
   *said he came*

0 ‘We didn’t steal the apples.’
   They ........................................................................ the apples.
   
   *denied stealing*

1 ‘You should leave early.’
   The attendant ................................................. us ........................................ early.

2 ‘Remember to collect your shoes.’
   Gary ................................................................. his wife ........................................ her shoes.

3 ‘Please take a seat.’
   The lawyer ...................................................... us ........................................ a seat.

4 ‘Let me drive you home.’
   Mrs Proctor ................................................... me home.

5 ‘I’m sorry I dropped the plate.’
   The waiter ...................................................... the plate.

6 ‘I live in Edinburgh.’
   Ian ................................................................. us ........................................ in Edinburgh.

7 ‘I’ll send the money immediately.’
   My cousin ...................................................... the money immediately.

8 ‘Don’t touch the wires, children. They’re dangerous.’
   Mrs Mackay ...................................................... the children ........................................ the wires.
   She said they were dangerous.
Craig: How old are you?
Sheila: I'm fifteen.
Sheila: How old are you?
Craig: I'm sixteen.
Where do you work?
Kate: I work in Bradford.

What will you do?
I'll go to the police.

When did you write the letter?
I can't remember.

What happened to your hand?
A dog bit me.

Tom: What a surprise! Celia: How old is she?
Celia: She is fifteen.

Lyn: What a surprise! Robert: How old is he?
Robert: He is sixteen.

Colin: What a surprise! Alan: How old is he?
Alan: He is sixteen.

Kate: What a surprise! Philip: How old is he?
Philip: He is sixteen.

F Olvassuk el a következő párbeszédet, amely egy diáklány és a munkaközvetítő alkalmazottja között zajlott. Ezután egészítsük ki Julie barátjának írt levelet.

WOMAN: Good morning. What can I do for you?
JULIE: Good morning. I want to find a job for the summer. Do you have anything?
WOMAN: Have you thought about what kind of job you'd like?
JULIE: Well, I have a friend who's going to be an au pair in Quebec. I'd like to do that.
WOMAN: All right, fill in this form, please. Now, you'll probably need French to work in Quebec. Can you speak French?
JULIE: Yes, I studied it for five years at school.
WOMAN: Good. Do you have any experience as an au pair?
JULIE: I've done a lot of baby-sitting.
WOMAN: Well, I'll probably be able to get you something, but I can't guarantee you anything. I'll phone you in a couple of weeks. In the meantime, it would be a good idea for you to ask about insurance. Most importantly, don't go to Canada without the promise of a job. It's too risky.
JULIE: Thank you. I'll speak to you in a couple of weeks then. Goodbye.
Dear Wendy,

How are you? I hope you’re well.

Yesterday I went to a job agency and I spoke to a very nice woman. I told her that I wanted a summer job and I asked her if she had anything. She asked me what kind of job and I told her an au pair in Quebec. She asked me a form and then she asked me French. I said it for five years at school and she seemed happy with that. She asked me experience as an au pair and I told her a lot of baby-sitting. She said something but she anything. She told me in a couple of weeks. She advised me insurance and warned me Canada without the promise of a job. So for the moment that’s all my news, but I hope I’ll know something definite soon. It’s very exciting!

Why don’t we go together? Write soon and tell me what you think.

Love,

Julie

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

1 Jim azt mondta, hogy nem tud új autót venni.
2 Miért mondtad az ellenörnek, hogy nincs jegyed?
3 Az orvos azt tanácsolta apámnak, hogy ne dolgozzon olyan sokat.
4 Pamela megkért, hogy menjek el a bankba.
5 A tűzoltók azt mondtták, hogy mindenki elhagyta az épületet.
6 Kérjük meg Tonyt, hogy segítsen.
7 Jack megkérdezte, hogy mikor küldtem el a levelet.
8 Néhány barátom mondta, hogy a következő héten meglátogat.
9 Kati azt kérdezte, hogy telefonált-e valaki.
10 Megkérdeztem a rendőrt, merre van a múzeum.
1 Az and (= és) és a both ... and (= is ... is) kötőszavakkal két hasonló dolgot kapcsolunk össze:

She is tired. She is hungry.  
She is tired and hungry.  
She is both tired and hungry.

We found both our tickets and our money.

2 A but (= de), a however (= azonban) és az although (= habár) kötőszavakkal két dolog különbségét mutatjuk meg:

He swims. He doesn't play tennis.  
He swims, but he doesn't play tennis.

A but előtt vesszőt teszünk:  
I live in Bristol, but I work in London.

A however az előző mondatban foglaltakkal ellentétes közlést vezet be:  
I live in Bristol. However, I work in London. (= Bristolban lakom, viszont Londonban dolgozom.)

Az although állhat a mondat elején, és két tagmondat között is:  
Although I live in Bristol, I work in London. (= Noha Bristolban élek, ...)  
I work in London although I live in Bristol.

A however és az although formálisabbak, mint a but, és inkább az írott nyelvben használatosak.

3 A so (= így, ezért) az adott helyzetet és annak az eredményét kapcsolja össze:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELYZET</th>
<th>EREDMÉNY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired.</td>
<td>I'm going to bed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

They were late, so they missed the train.

Gyakorlatok

A Kössük össze a mondatokat a both ... and szerkezet használatával.

0 Jane owns a shop. She owns a restaurant.

Jane owns both a shop and a restaurant.

1 This restaurant is cheap. It is good.

2 Christine bought a dress. She bought a jumper.

3 They play volleyball. They play tennis.

4 The film was funny. It was exciting.

B Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget az although, but, though, however vagy so kötőszó használatával.

The United States, Canada and Australia have a majority of English speakers, 0 but there are also speakers of many other languages in all three countries. In the US there has been a lot of immigration from Spanish-speaking countries 1 many US citizens speak English and Spanish. 2 Australia is an enormous country, all Australians speak English with the same accent. 3 there are also more than 200 Aboriginal
languages. Not many people speak these languages today. In most of Canada, English is the official language, in the province of Quebec, the official language is French. There are always arguments about who speaks the best English. British people sometimes say: “Americans don’t speak proper English. We usually understand them.”

C Írjuk át a mondatokat however vagy although használatával, a példa alapján.

0 There were a lot of clouds. However, the climbers decided to continue.

   *Although there were a lot of clouds, the climbers* decided to continue.

0 Although the team is playing very badly, we still have the same manager.

   The team is playing *very badly. However, we still* have the same manager.

1 Although there is a good train service, Victor insists on going to work by car.

   There is a **insists on going to work by car.

2 We read the instructions carefully. However, we didn’t understand them.

   *understand them.

3 The police searched all day. However, they didn’t find the body.

   *find the body.

4 Although Tom’s grandmother had a lot of money, she didn’t leave any of it to him.

   Tom’s grandmother *leave any of it to him.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat but illetve so kötőszóval.

0 The film was very long, *but* it was interesting.

   *we got home late.

1 The restaurant is very expensive, *so* the food is terrible.

   *only rich people go there.

2 I’m studying hard, *so* I don’t have much free time.

   *I’m not making much progress.

3 I’ve got her address, *but* I can write to her.

   *I haven’t got her phone number.

4 We wanted to swim, *but* we went to the seaside.

   *the sea was too cold.

5 They didn’t have any money, *but* they wanted to eat in a restaurant.

   *they couldn’t go to a restaurant.

E Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott szavakkal.

   although and both but however so (x2)

Thank you for your letter. The cheque. You asked me to buy a T-shirt you didn’t say what size. Please let me know soon. I have plenty of time to find a nice one. I have difficulty when people speak to me, I am really enjoying my stay in Scotland because the weather and the people are kind to me. I’m not too happy with the food. I sometimes have a pizza in an Italian restaurant.

Andrea
Both (… and); either (… or); neither (… nor)

1 A both (= mindkettő), az either (= egyik, valamelyik) és a neither (= egyik sem) segítségével két dologról vagy két személyről beszélünk. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát a both … and kötőszavakkal:

This jumper is nice.

Both the white jumper and the black jumper are nice. He doesn’t know which one to buy.

(= Mind a fehér, mind a fekete pulóver szép.)

Így is mondhatjuk: Both jumpers are nice.

(= Mindkét pulóver szép.)

2 Nézzük meg a példát az either … or (= vagy … vagy) használatára. Az either szót nem feltétlenül kell beletenni a mondatba:

Chris will visit us on (either) Monday or Tuesday.

(= Chris vagy hétfőn, vagy kedden fog minket meglátogatni.)

Jeff’s company is going to send him to (either) Australia or India, but he doesn’t know which.

Az either tagadó mondatban is használható:

Jeff hasn’t been to either country. (= Jeff egyik országban sem járt. – a kettő közül)

Figyelem! Ha az igét tagadjuk (hasn’t been), további tagadás a mondatban már nem lehetséges, tehát either, nem neither.

3 Nézzük meg a neither … nor (= sem … sem) használatát:

Neither the black jacket nor the white jacket fitted her. (= Sem a fekete, sem a fehér dzseki nem volt jó rá.)

Így is mondhatjuk: Neither jacket fitted her.

(= Egyik dzseki sem volt jó rá.)

Figyelem! A neither és a neither … nor után az ige állító alakban van (fitted), mert a tagadást a neither és a nor fejezi ki:

Nem: Neither jacket didn’t fit her.

Jeff hasn’t been to neither country.

4 A both, either és neither kötőszavakat így is használhatjuk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both (mindkettő)</th>
<th>either (egyik, valamelyik)</th>
<th>neither (egyik sem)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of the</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these</td>
<td>+ FÖNÉV TÖBBES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SZÁMBAN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both of these suitcases are heavy.

I haven’t seen either of the films.

Neither of his sisters was/were there.

Így is mondhatjuk:

**both/either/neither + of + them/us**

He has two cars, but neither of them works.

(= Két autója van, de egyik sem működik.)

A both, az either és a neither önállóan, főnév nélkül is használható, ha kiderül a szövegkörnyezetből, kiről/miről van szó:

A: What do you think of the two cars?

B: I like both. (= Mind a kettő tetszik.)

C: Well, I don’t like either. (VAGY: I like neither.)

(= Egyik sem tetszik.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat either vagy neither kötőszóval.

0 I’m going to buy .... the green shirt or the blue shirt.

1 She lent me two books, but I haven’t read .......... of them.

2 John looked at Jim, but they didn’t speak .......... of them said anything.

3 .......... of the two jobs seemed very attractive, so I didn’t apply for .......... of them.
4 You can have ................. fish or chicken for dinner.
5 There were two films on TV, but ................. of them looked very interesting.
6 I haven't seen ................. James or Julie this week, and ................. of them has phoned me.
7 I looked for my bag in the living-room and in the kitchen, but it wasn't in ................. room.
8 I rang two friends, but ................. of them was at home. They had gone out.
9 You can catch ................. the number 12 bus or the number 15 bus to the city centre.
10 She didn't get ................. of the jobs she applied for.
11 I asked two people, but ................. of them could give me directions.
12 We can see the film ................. tonight or tomorrow night.

A táblázatban megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a both of them vagy neither of them szókapcsolattal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grand Hotel</th>
<th>Landmark Hotel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It has a swimming pool.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is in the city centre.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It costs more than £100 a night.</td>
<td>❌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It offers lower prices at weekends.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It organizes tours of the city.</td>
<td>❌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It accepts credit cards.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It meets guests at the airport.</td>
<td>❌</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Both of them have swimming pools.
1 ................. are in the city centre.
2 ................. costs more than £100 a night.
3 ................. offer lower prices at weekends.
4 ................. organizes tours of the city.
5 ................. accept credit cards.
6 ................. meets guests at the airport.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a both/either/neither + of + us/them (pl. neither of us) szerkezettel.

0 I went to the concert with Mary, but ................. enjoyed it very much because it was very boring.
1 There are two flights we can catch to New York. Both flights cost the same amount, so we can choose ................. .
2 I played two games against Harry, and I lost ................. because he is a much better player than me.
3 I saw Jane and Alison walking down the street and I waved at them, but ................. saw me because they were talking.
4 I looked at George, and George looked at me. Then ................. started to laugh because it was such a funny situation.
5 A man spoke to us but ................. could understand him, so we didn't answer.
6 Tim and I wanted to go to the game, but ................. could get tickets, so we watched it on TV.
7 I wanted to buy a new camera. There were two cameras in the shop that I liked, but they were very expensive. I couldn't afford ................. , so I didn't buy anything.
8 Ann and I worked very hard all day. ................. were very tired in the evening, so we didn't go out.
9 We went into two restaurants, but ................. were full. We couldn't get a table at either.
1 A since (= óta) előljárószó után időpont (pl. 6 o'clock, yesterday) évzám (pl. 1945) vagy esemény (pl. the end of the war) állhat: 
There hasn’t been a world war since 1945. 
Things have changed a lot since the end of the war.

A since + időpont szerkezettel olyan
cselekvésre vagy eseményre utalunk, amely
az említett időpontban kezdődött, és a beszéd
pillanatában még tart, vagy éppen most ért
véget:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
múlt & 1945 & 1946 & 1947 \\
\text{since} & 1945 & & \\
\end{array}
\]

A since előljárószóval alkotott szerkezet mellett
általában Present Perfect (have changed) áll.
Ha az időpontot mellékmondattal nevezzük
meg, a mellékmondatban egyszerű múltat
(ended) használunk:
Things have changed a lot since the war ended.

2 A for előljárószó bizonyos időtartamra (pl. hat évig) utal, és a How long? kezdetű kérdésre
válaszol:
A: How long did the war continue?
B: The war continued for six years.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
múlt & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\
\text{for six years} & & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

Az előző példában az ige egyszerű múltban
van (continued), de a for előljárószó más
típusú mondatokban is használható, és más
igeidő is állhat mellette: jelen, jövő vagy
Present Perfect.
A: How long is Mary staying?
B: She’s staying for five days. (= Ót napig.)

It will probably snow for several hours.

3 Amikor az időtartam kezdetéről és végéről
beszélünk, a from ... to ... (= ...-tól ...-ig)
(NEM: since) előljárószót használjuk:
The war lasted from 1939 to 1945.

4 Az ago (= valamennyi idővel ezelőtt) névutóval
alkotott szókapcsolat előtt egyszerű múltat
használunk:
A: When did the Second World War start?
B: It started over sixty years ago.

5 Az alábbi mondatokban a first azt jelenti,
‘először’, a last jelentése ‘utoljára’:
Jane and Bill first met ten years ago.
The planet Pluto was first seen in 1940.
A: When did you last visit Scotland?
B: I last visited Scotland two years ago.

Gyakorlatok

A válaszoljunk a kérdésekre a megadott időhatározókkal az összes lehetséges módon. A cselekvő
személye (they) minden mondatban más emberekre vonatkozik.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for three years</th>
<th>for three years</th>
<th>from 1980 to 1989</th>
<th>in 1999</th>
<th>in 1999</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>since 1996</td>
<td>since the war</td>
<td>six months ago</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When did they live in Japan?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 They lived in Japan ...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 They lived in Japan ..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 They lived in Japan ..........</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long have they lived here?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 They have lived here ..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 They have lived here ..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 They have lived here ..........</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When did they come here?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 They came here ..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 They came here ..........</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B Egészítsük ki a Winston Churchillról szóló mondatokat **ago, for, first, from** vagy **to** és a megadott adatok használatával.

| Born 1874 | Chancellor of the Exchequer 1924–29 |
| Army officer 1895–1899 | Prime Minister 1940–45, 1951–55 |
| Member of Parliament 1900-1915, 1916–1965 | Died 1965 |

Churchill was born over 130 years ago. He was in the army for 4 years. He became an M.P. in 1900. He was Chancellor of the Exchequer (Finance Minister) 5 years. He became Prime Minister over 60 years ago and was Prime Minister a total of 9 years. He died over 40 years ago.

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben lévő szavakkal az adott információ alapján **for, since** vagy **ago** használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő időpontokra.

0 I haven’t seen Bill since his birthday. That was four months ago.
(1/not/see/Bill/four months) **I haven’t seen Bill for four months.**
(2/last/see/Bill/four months/) **I last saw Bill four months ago.**

1 We haven’t spoken to Jane since her accident. That was two weeks ago.
(3/not/speak/to Jane/two weeks) ...
(4/last/speak/to Jane/two weeks/) ...

2 Helen last visited Rome twenty years ago when she was a student.
(5/not/visit/Rome/twenty years) ...
(6/not/visit/Rome/she/be/a student) ...

3 Mary got married two years ago. We haven’t seen Mary since her wedding.
(7/not/see/Mary/two years) ...
(8/not/see/her/she/get/married) ...

D Olvassuk el a következő szöveget.

The film *The Storm* was made in 1972. The stars were Anna Strong and Douglas Wild; they had never met before. The film took eleven months to make, from January to November 1972, and it cost a lot of money. Luckily, it was an enormous success and it was shown in cinemas from 1972 to 1977. Anna and Douglas met for the last time in 1992; they did not see each other again as Anna died in a car accident in 1993.

A szöveget alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat.

0 A: When **was** *The Storm** **made**?
   B: It **was made** over thirty years ago.

1 A: .................. Anna and Douglas first meet?
   B: They .............. in 1972, when they made *The Storm*.

2 A: .................. did the film take to make?
   B: It ................ eleven months to make, ............. January to November.

3 A: When ................ Anna and Douglas ............... meet?
   B: They last ............... in 1992.

4 A: .................. has Anna been dead?
   B: She .............. dead ............... 1993.
Because, in case, so, so that

1 A cselekvés okára a **why** (= miért) kérdőszóval kérdezünk, a kérdésre pedig a **because** (= mert) kötőszóval kezdődő monddattal válaszolhatunk.

**Jack’s in bed because of his flu.**

(= ... mert influenzás.)

A: Why didn’t you go out?
B: (We didn’t go out) because it was raining.

(= ... mert esett az eső.)

**Okhatározói mellékmondatban az as és since (= mivel) kötőszókat is használhatjuk.**

It was raining on Tuesday. As / Since it was raining, we didn’t go out.

(= Mivel esett az eső, ...)

A **because of (= miatt) után főnév áll** (pl. flu, storm, noise):

**Jack’s in bed because of his flu.**

**We couldn’t go out because of the storm.**

**I couldn’t sleep because of the noise.**

2 Az **in case** jelentése ‘hátha’ ‘arra az esetre, ha’:

I’m taking an umbrella in case it rains. (= Viszek ernyőt, hátha esik/esni fog.)

I’ll phone John now, in case he wants to come with us.

3 A **so** (= így, ezért) kötőszó után a cselekvés vagy esemény következményét közöljük:

**Konkret**

I was in a hurry, so I took a taxi. (= Siettem, ezért ültem taxiba.)

Jack has got the flu, so he’s in bed. The weather was terrible, so we couldn’t go out. My neighbours were having a party and making a lot of noise, so I couldn’t sleep.

4 A **so that** (= azért, hogy) segítségével a cselekvés célját adjuk meg:

**Cel**

I took a taxi so that I would arrive on time.

(= Azért ültem taxiba, hogy idejében odaérjek.)

I listen to the news in the morning so that I know what’s happening in the world.

Tom goes jogging every day so that he won’t get fat. (= ... hogy ne hízson meg.)

I took a taxi so that my friends would not have to wait for me.

A főnévi igenév + **to** szerkezettel is célt fejezhetünk ki (ld. 117. fejezet).

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példák alapján.

0 Tom didn’t want to go out because he had a cold.

**Tom didn’t want to go out** ........................................... because of **his cold**.

0 Take some money because you might need to take a taxi.

**Take some money** ........................................... in case **you need to take a taxi**.

0 John and I asked for a drink because we were thirsty.

**John and I were thirsty** ........................................... so **we asked for a drink**.

1 Mary went to bed because she was tired.

.............................................................., so ..............................................................

2 I couldn’t sleep because it was so hot.

.............................................................. the heat.

3 Jill doesn’t like apples, so she doesn’t eat them.

.............................................................. because ..............................................................
4 The streets were crowded because of the football match.

5 I’ll give Jane a key to the house because she might get home before me.

B Fejezzük be a mondatokat because, in case vagy so kötőszó és a megfelelő tagmondat segítségével.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I’ll take a book to read</th>
<th>I want to lose weight</th>
<th>there is a power cut this weekend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>they had to wait for the next one</td>
<td>his passport was out of date</td>
<td>she’s at home</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 They missed one bus, .................................................................

1 I don’t know where my sister is, but I’ll try phoning her .................................................................

2 I’m eating less these days .................................................................

3 Peter had trouble at the airport .................................................................

4 It’s a long journey, .................................................................

5 We’ve bought some candles .................................................................

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal.

because (x2) because of in case since so (x2) so that to (x2) why (x2)

CATHY: Hello, Jenny! What are you doing here?

JENNY: I’m looking for some walking shoes.

CATHY: And why is that?

JENNY: 1 tomorrow is a big day for me. I’m taking a group of visitors up the highest hill in Derbyshire. They’re in England 2 ....... learn English, but I suggested this trip 3 ....... they can see our countryside as well. They liked the idea but they want to practise their English at the same time 4 ....... I’ve invited some English friends as well.

CATHY: And 5 are you the leader?

JENNY: 6 my experience, of course! No, 7 be serious, it’s 8 I suggested it.

CATHY: And 9 you suggested it, you have to do the work. But I know that you’re not very experienced, 10 you might get lost.

JENNY: That’s possible, but don’t worry. I’m taking two good maps 11 that happens.

D A következő mondatok némelyikében hiba van. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat, a hibákat pedig javítsuk ki.

0 A: Why are they tired? .................
B: Because their long journey. .................

1 I can’t come tomorrow, so that I came today. .................

2 Take a sandwich with you in case you get hungry. .................

3 Julie had to go to the shops so she needed something for lunch. .................

4 A: Why are you here? .................
B: I’m here for have a medical examination. .................

A: Well, since you’re here, so we can check your teeth as well. .................
1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

*John married a woman.*

*John married a woman who works in his office.*

(= John feleségül vett egy nőt, aki az irodájában dolgozik.)

A who vagy that vonatkozó névmással kezdődő mellékmondatban fontos információt közlünk a személyről, akire a névmás utal. Az ilyen típusú jelzői mellékmondatot, amely meghatározza, hogy melyik vagy milyen személyről van szó, kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatnak (defining relative clause) nevezzük. A mellékmondat előtt — a magyarral ellentétben — nem teszünk vesszőt.

További példák:

*Have you met Jackie? She’s the girl that sits next to Mike in class.*

(= Ő az a lány, aki Mike mellettlül.)

*The people who live downstairs are from Scotland.*

(= ... akik a földszinten laknak ...)

2 Ha élettelen dologról vagy állatról beszélünk, a which vagy that névmást használjuk:

*He took the job which paid the highest salary.*

(= Azt az állást választotta, amely a legmagasabb fizetést biztosítja.)

*Animals that live in the desert must conserve water.*

(= Az olyan állatoknak, amelyek a sivatagban élnek ...)

3 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

*I know a man whose wife won a million pounds on the lottery.*

(= Ismerek egy embert, akinek a felesége egy millió fontot nyert a lottón.)

A jelzői mellékmondatban a whose

(= akinek a ...) vonatkozó névmást is használhatjuk. A whose általában előlénnyre vonatkozik.

*The man whose dog bit me didn’t apologize.*

(= A férfi, akinek a kutyája megharapott, nem kérte elnézést.)

4 A where (= ahol) névmással helyre utalunk:

*I know a good restaurant where you can eat very cheaply.*

(= Ismerek egy jó éttermet, ahol nagyon olcsón lehet enni.)

Ha valamilyen helyről beszélünk, három lehetőség van: where, that vagy which, vagy csak egy előjárósózó:

*The shop where he works is going to close.*

(= Az üzlet, ahol dolgozik ...) 

*The shop (that/which) he works in is going to close.*

(= Az üzlet, amelyben dolgozik ...)

---

**Gyakorlatok**

A Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat who vagy which névmás használatával.

0 We chose the hotel. It seemed to be the nicest.

*We chose the hotel which seemed to be the nicest.*

1 She spoke to the man. He was standing next to her.

2 I read the letters. They came in the morning post.

3 He likes the other people. They work in his office.

4 She’s that singer. She was on television last night.

5 Next week there is a festival. It takes place in the village every summer.
B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet who, which vagy where vonatkozó névmással.

CAROL: Did you watch Schooldays last night? It's a new series which started last night.

DAVID: No, I didn’t see it. Was it good?

CAROL: Yes. It was about a group of friends who were at school together. Well, Rupert...

DAVID: Who was Rupert?

CAROL: He was an old student of the school who had become a doctor. He went to a party where he met a lot of people who had been at school with him many years before. They talked about their schooldays and their lives since then. Then suddenly, Rupert looked across at the dance floor where he saw an old girl-friend who was dancing with John...

DAVID: Don’t tell me any more. It’s getting too complicated!

C Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat who vagy which használatával.

0 The person phoned. He didn’t leave a message.

1 The bus goes to the airport. It leaves every twenty minutes.

2 The picture was hanging near the door. It was horrible.

3 The instructor taught me how to drive. He was very patient.

4 The girl was sitting next to me. She started talking to me.

5 The children sang in the choir. They were very good.

6 The racing car went over some oil on the track. It crashed.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat who, which vagy where és a megadott kifejezések használatával.

| belongs to the Queen | Shakespeare was born |
| choose the cabinet ministers | there is a lot of street entertainment |
| is famous for its market | was married to Prince Charles |
| led Britain during the Second World War | wrote Hamlet and many other plays |
| many famous poets are buried | |

0 The Prime Minister is the person who chooses the cabinet ministers.

1 Balmoral is a castle in Scotland.

2 Westminster Cathedral is a church.

3 Shakespeare is the author.

4 Stratford on Avon is the town.

5 Princess Diana was the woman.

6 Portobello Road is a road in London.

7 Churchill is the Prime Minister.

8 Covent Garden is a place.
A kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat – defining relative clauses (2)

1. Figyeljük meg a következő mondatokat:

   Jane is the woman who came for dinner.
   She came for dinner.

   (= Jane az a nő, aki ebédre jött.)

   Nézzük meg ezt a példát:

   Jackie is the girl who you kissed last week.
   You kissed her.

   (= Jackie az a lány, akit a múlt héten megcsókoltál.)

   Ebben a példában a who névmás a mellékmondat tárgya.

   Amikor a who, which vagy that névmás a mellékmondat tárgya, akkor a vonatkozó névmás elhagyható:
   Jackie is the girl you kissed last week.

   Nézzünk meg egy hasonló példát:
   The radio that I bought broke after only a week.
   (= A rádió, amit vettem, már egy hét múlva elromlott.)

   VAGY: The radio I bought broke after only a week.

2. Figyeljük meg:

   You were talking to a girl. I think I know her.
   I think I know the girl who you were talking to.
   (= Azt hiszem, ismerem azt a lányt, akivel beszélgetttél.)

   VAGY: I think I know the girl you were talking to.

   A who, which és that akkor is kihagyható a mondatból, ha az igéhez előjárószó tartozik (to). Figyeljük meg az előjárószó helyét a mondatban.

3. Ha a who névmás a mellékmondat tárgya, a whom alakot is használhatjuk, de a mai beszélt nyelvre ez nem jellemző:
   She is the girl whom you kissed. (= Ő az a lány, akit megcsókoltál.)

4. A szükséges előjárószót hivatalos (elsősorban írott) nyelvben a which névmás elé is tehetjük – that névmást ezzel a szórenddel nem használhatunk:
   The job for which he applied was in Canada.
   (= Az állás, amelyet megpályázott, Kanadában volt.) (NEM: The job for that he applied …)

   A mai beszélt nyelv a következő szórendet használja:
   The job (that) he applied for was in Canada.

Gyakorlatok

A Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat who, which vagy that névmás használataival.

0. She chose the books. She wanted to buy them.
   She chose the books that she wanted to buy.

1. We ate the sandwiches. Jack made them.

2. I’m doing some work. I have to finish it today.

3. She’s an old woman. I often see her when I go to the shops.

4. He’s an actor. A lot of people like him.

5. It’s a magazine. I read it sometimes.

6. She was wearing a red dress. She wears it for parties.
A zárójelben megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a that vonatkozó névmás használatával.

0 (Jack made a table. It’s not very strong.)
   The table .............................................. is not very strong.
   that Jack made

1 (I read about a new computer. I had seen it on TV.)
   I read about the new computer ..........................................

2 (Jane made a cake. Nobody liked it.)
   Nobody liked the cake ..........................................

3 (I was waiting for a bus. It didn’t arrive.)
   The bus ............................................. didn’t arrive.

4 (My sister wrote an article. The newspaper is going to publish it.)
   The newspaper is going to publish the article ..........................

5 (I was talking to an old lady. She was 103 years old.)
   The old lady .............................................. was 103 years old.

6 (Mary sent me a letter. It was very funny.)
   The letter ............................................. was very funny.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a who vagy that névmással, de csak ahol szükséges.

0 The match ............... we saw was boring.
   0 Did I tell you about the people ........ live next door?
   0 The horse ............... won the race belongs to an Irish woman.

1 I love the ice-cream ............... they sell in that shop.

2 The book ............... I’m reading is about jazz.

3 The woman ............... came to see us was selling magazines.

4 We’ll go to a restaurant .......... has a children’s menu.

5 The factory ............... closed last week had been there for 70 years.

6 Have you read about the schoolgirl ............... started her own business and is now a millionaire?

7 Jane says that the house ............... Tom has just bought has a beautiful garden.

Állapítsuk meg, hogy hol szükséges a következő párbeszédben who illetve that névmást használni. Ahol a névmást feleslegesnek tartjuk, húzzuk ki.

PAULA: Have I shown you my holiday photos yet, Bob?

BOB: What? Oh ... well, I haven’t got much time ...

PAULA: Come on, just a quick look. This is the hotel 0 that we stayed at. Isn’t it lovely?
      And these are the people 0 who stayed in the room next to us.

BOB: Very nice. That’s that?

PAULA: Oh, that’s the restaurant where we usually had dinner. And here’s a picture of the waiter 1 who always served us.

BOB: Great! What a lot of photos you took!

PAULA: Well, we saw so many wonderful things. Look! Here’s an old castle 2 that we went to look at, and this is the guide 3 who showed us around it.

BOB: Well, you’re certainly a keen photographer.

PAULA: Oh yes. Everyone 4 who I’ve shown them to says I have a gift for it.

BOB: That’s great Paula, but now I really must run ...

PAULA: But Bob, you can’t! There are three more packets 5 that you haven’t looked at yet!
Az értelmező jelzői mellékmondat – non-defining relative clauses

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi két mondatot:

- London is the capital of the United Kingdom.
- London, which has over 6 million inhabitants, is the capital of the United Kingdom.

A which has over 6 million inhabitants mellékmondat információt ad Londonnal kapcsolatban, de ahhoz, hogy a várost meghatározzuk, erre a kiegészítő információra nincs szükségünk – a főmondat enélkül is érthető. Ezt a mellékmondatot értelmező jelzői mellékmondatnak (non-defining relative clause) nevezzük, és vesszôvel választjuk el a főmondattól. A that névmást itt nem használhatjuk.

2 A which vonatkozó névmással élettelen dolgokra és állatokra utalunk:

Fred sold his computer, which he no longer needed, to his cousin. (NEM: … that he no longer needed …)

In the summer we stay in my uncle’s house, which is near the sea.

3 Ha a mellékmondat személyre utal, a who vonatkozó névmást használjuk (a that névmást nem):

Umberto Eco, who wrote The Name of the Rose, is a university professor.

(= Umberto Eco, aki ’A rózsa neve’ címû könyvet írta, egyetemi tanár.)

Ha a névmás a mellékmondat tárgya, who helyett a whom névmást is használhatjuk (ez a mindennapi beszélt nyelvre nem jellemző):

My boss, who (VAGY whom) I last saw before Christmas, is very ill.

4 A whose névmást értelmező jelzői mellékmondatban is használhatunk:

Marilyn Monroe, whose real name was Norma Jean, was born in Los Angeles.

5 Amikor a névmás nem egy szóra, hanem a főmondatban megfogalmazott tényre vonatkozik, mindig a which névmást használjuk:

Ann did not want to marry Tom, which surprised everybody.

(= Ann nem akart hozzámenni Tomhoz, ami mindenkit meglepett.)

Ebben az esetben a which arra a tényre utal, hogy Ann nem akart hozzámenni Tomhoz.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk összetett mondatokat a példa alapján. A mellékmondatban who vagy which vonatkozó névmás és az aláhúzott mondatrész szerepeljen.

0 Mont Blanc is between France and Italy. It is the highest mountain in the Alps.

Mont Blanc, which is between France and Italy, is the highest mountain in the Alps.

0 Arnold Schwarzenegger was born in Austria. He became one of the most successful actors in Hollywood.

Arnold Schwarzenegger, who was born in Austria, became one of the most successful actors in Hollywood.

1 The sun is really a star. It is 93 million miles from the earth.

2 John F. Kennedy died in 1963. He was one of the youngest American Presidents.

3 Mel Gibson is from Australia. He is a famous Hollywood actor.
The 1996 Olympics were held in Atlanta. It is in the southern state of Georgia, USA.

Walt Disney. (He created Mickey Mouse.) He started the most successful animation company in the world.

Football. (It first started in Britain.) It is now one of the most popular sports worldwide.

Margaret Thatcher. (She was the Prime Minister of Britain for eleven years.) She studied science at Oxford University.

Michelangelo. (He lived until he was ninety.) He was one of Italy’s greatest artists.

Michael Jackson. (His brothers and sisters were also singers.) He is now one of the richest solo artists in the world.

The Nile. (It runs through several countries.) It is the longest river in Africa.

Gandhi. (He helped secure India’s independence.) He was assassinated in 1948.

Elephants. (They are found in Africa and India.) They are hunted for their ivory.

Bill Clinton. (His wife is a brilliant lawyer.) He became President of the USA in 1993.

The Beatles. (Their music is still popular.) They were probably the most famous pop group in the world.

Brands Hatch. (It is not far from London.) It is famous for its motor races.

Alice in Wonderland, which is one of the most popular children’s books in the world, was written by Lewis Carroll, real name was Charles Dodgson. Carroll, had a natural talent as a story-teller, loved to entertain children, including Alice Liddell, father was a colleague of Carroll’s at Oxford University. One day Carroll took Alice and her sisters for a trip on the River Thames, flows through Oxford. After the trip, Carroll wrote in his diary that he had told the children a wonderful story, he had promised to write down for them. He wrote the story, illustrated it with his own drawings, and gave it to the children. By chance, it was seen by Henry Kingsley, was a famous novelist, and he persuaded Dodgson to publish it.
Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jelzői mellékmondat (134–6. fejezet)

 questões de gramática de atrasos

0 Mary found a watch. It belongs to my brother.
   Mary found the watch that belongs to my brother.

0 They were listening to a song. I recognized it.
   I recognized the song they were listening to.

1 Jack applied for a job. He didn’t get it.
   Jack didn’t ………………………………………………………………………………

2 A girl is talking to your brother. Do you know her?
   Do you know ……………………………………………………………………………

3 The boys laughed at a joke. Paula didn’t like the joke.
   Paula didn’t ……………………………………………………………………………

4 A man was looking for his dog. I helped him.
   I helped …………………………………………………………………………………

5 A stranger paid for the drinks. Bill thanked him.
   Bill thanked ……………………………………………………………………………

6 I asked for a CD. The shop didn’t have it.
   The shop didn’t ………………………………………………………………………

Egészítsük ki B mondatait a who, which vagy whose vonatkozó névmással, és keressük meg a mondatok folytatását a jobb oldali oszlopban.

0 A: There are two towns called Birmingham.
   B: I know. I mean the one which a started the famous prizes.

1 A: There are several sorts of grapes.
   B: I know. I mean the sort b first name was Audrey.

2 A: There were eight English kings called Henry.
   B: I know. I mean the one c became a film star.

3 A: There were two film stars called Hepburn.
   B: I know. I mean the one d was made in black and white.

4 A: There were several Swedes called Nobel.
   B: I know. I mean the one e is in the United States.

5 A: There are several films called Hamlet.
   B: I know. I mean the one f is used to make champagne.

6 A: There were two writers called Dumas.
   B: I know. I mean the one g is used in racing.

7 A: There are different kinds of horses.
   B: I know. I mean the sort h had six wives.

8 A: Charlie Chaplin had several daughters.
   B: I know. I mean the daughter i wrote The Three Musketeers.
Egészítsük ki a következő meghatározásokat a who, which vagy where névmással és a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

allows you to see distant objects makes people laugh people eat people go to dance
sells meat takes photos tells you the time writes newspaper articles
you can buy almost anything you can see animals you can use anywhere

**thing which takes photos.**

0 A camera is a .................................................................
1 A butcher is a .................................................................
2 A restaurant is a .................................................................
3 A zoo is a .................................................................
4 A comedian is .................................................................
5 A mobile phone is .................................................................
6 A disco is .................................................................
7 A telescope is .................................................................
8 A journalist is .................................................................
9 A hypermarket is a .................................................................
10 A clock is a .................................................................

D A következő mondatokban hiba van. Húzzuk át a nem megfelelő szót, és írjuk a mondat mellé a helyes megoldást. (Ha a szó helyett nem kell mást használnunk, húzzunk egy vonalat.)

0 Mary is the person who she gave me the pen. —.............
0 Did you see the man which left early? who
1 Jill knows a woman who's son works for the government. ..............
2 There's a restaurant which you can eat English or Chinese food. ..............
3 The number 59 is the bus which it goes to the airport. ..............
4 The tall man is the one Mary spoke to him. ..............
5 The food we ate it was not very good. ..............
6 We got tickets from a man his wife works at the theatre. ..............
7 The shoes that I bought them were quite cheap. ..............
8 Please take me to someone which can explain what is wrong. ..............
9 There's a girl in Anne's class her mother wrote a novel. ..............
10 Is there a shop near here which you can buy foreign newspapers? ..............

E Egészítsük ki a következő – Elton Johnról szóló – szöveget a who, which, where vagy whose vonatkozó névmással.

Elton John, 0.................. was born in London in 1947, became one of the world’s greatest pop stars in the seventies. Elton, 1.................. real name is Reginald Kenneth Dwight, was a talented child. He attended the famous Royal Academy of Music, 2.................. he studied mainly classical music. His father, 3.................. was an officer in the Royal Air Force, didn’t want Reginald to listen to American music, but his mother let him listen to American singers when his father was away. After his studies he joined a band called Bluesology, 4.................. played in small clubs. The band included John Baldry and Elton Dean, 5.................. names he borrowed to become ‘Elton John’. Soon he met Bernie Taupin, 6.................. has helped to write many of Elton’s most famous songs, like Candle in the Wind, 7.................. Elton sang at the funeral for Princess Diana.
Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat who, which vagy whose névmással.

0 Oxford lies on the River Thames. It is famous for its university.
   **Oxford, which is famous for its university, lies on the River Thames.**

1 Many Scots speak Gaelic. It is very different from English.

2 John Lennon was killed when he was forty years old. He was a pacifist.

3 Joseph Conrad wrote dozens of novels in English. His first language was Polish.

4 The Atlantic and the Pacific are joined by the Panama Canal. It was opened in 1914.

5 The British Prime Minister in the 1980s was Margaret Thatcher. She was known as The Iron Lady.

6 Loch Ness is famous for its monster. It is very deep.

7 Pelé was a famous Brazilian football player. His real name is Edson Arantes.

8 Mark Spitz acted in several films. He won seven Olympic gold medals in 1972.

9 Jules Verne wrote *Around the World in Eighty Days*. It was made into a famous film.

10 Hillary Clinton became a US Senator in 2000. Her husband was the US President.

Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példa alapján.

0 The shop where he works is going to close.
   **The shop (that) he works in is going to close.**

0 There was a big fire in the town that they live in.
   **There was a big fire in the town where they live.**

1 They gave us a bedroom that Shakespeare had slept in.

2 The house where my grandmother was born has been sold.

3 Lots of people visit the club that the Beatles sang in.

4 What’s the name of the road they live on?

5 Is Leicester one of the places where the coach stops?

6 This is the cupboard that we keep the glasses in.
Húzzuk alá azt a részt (akár az egész főmondatot), amelyre a which névmás vonatkozik.

0 Ann did not want to marry Tom, which surprised everybody.
1 We wanted to try kangaroo meat, which has very little fat.
2 We had to call at the chemist's, which is opposite the bank.
3 We asked for the restaurant's speciality, which is fish cooked in wine.
4 The story has many characters, which makes it difficult to follow.
5 Dr Talbot is an expert on malaria, which has no real cure.
6 Dr Talbot is an expert on malaria, which is why she was invited.

Alkossunk jelzői mellékmondatot tartalmazó összetett mondatot a megadott szavakból a who, whose vagy where vonatkozó névmás hozzáadásával.

0 (again/been/came/hasn't/last/man/month)
   The ________________________________
   The man who came last month hasn't been again.

1 (close/going/is/John/shop/to/worked)
   The ________________________________
   The ________________________________
2 (a/died/dog/later/the/prize/week/won)
   The ________________________________
   The ________________________________
3 (any/born/doesn't/exist/house/more/Napoleon/was)
   The ________________________________
   The ________________________________
4 (arrived/following/I/letter/sent/the/week)
   The ________________________________
   The ________________________________
5 (died/going/is/man/remarry/to/wife)
   The ________________________________
   The ________________________________
6 (helpful/I/spoke/to/very/was/woman)
   The ________________________________
   The ________________________________

Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

1 Az iskolában van egy barátom, akinek a mamája a BBC-nél dolgozik.
2 Az emberek, akik a felső emeleten laknak, még nem ismerik a szomszédait.
3 Ibiza az a hely, ahova sok angol jár nyaralni.
4 A motorkerékpárokat, amelyek nagy zajt csapnak, nem engedik be ebben az utcában.
5 A bátyám, aki autószerelem, nem szereti a modern kocsikat.
6 Terry megbukott a vizsgán, ami mindenként meglepett.
7 A Kilimandzsáro, amely Tanzániában van, Afrika legmagasabb hegye.
8 A ház, ahol lakunk, a tengerparton van.
9 Az olyan sofőrökök, akik isznak, nagyon veszélyesek lehetnek.
10 A férfi, aki az ajtónál áll, egy levelet hozott.
11 Mi a cím a könyvnek, amelyet keresel?
12 A lány, akivel tegnap megismertedtél, a nővérem.
Előtagok – prefixes (im-, dis-, over-)

1. Az angolban nemcsak toldalékkel (képzővel), hanem a szó elejéhez ragasztott előtaggal is képezhetünk új szavakat (pl. practical – impractical, honest – dishonest). Nézzünk meg néhány gyakran használt előtagot:

- dis- \(\Rightarrow\) disagree (= egyetért – nem ért egyet); moral – immoral (= erkölcsös – erkölcsöstelen); dependent – independent (= valamitól független); 
- im- \(\Rightarrow\) unlucky (= szerencsés – nem szerencsés).

További példák:
- disadvantage (= hátrány), disappear (= eltűnik), dislike (= nem szeret), disapprove (= helytelenít), distrust (= nem bizik benne), disorganized (= szervezetlen)
- impatient (= türelmetlen), impossible (= lehetetlen), immature (= éretlen), imperfect (= nem tökéletes), impersonal (= személytelen)
- indirect (= közvetett), independent (= független), inadequate (= nem megfelelő), incapable (= képtelen), inconvenient (= kényelmetlen)
- unable (= képtelen), uncertain (= bizonytalan), uncomfortable (= kényelmetlen), uncommon (= nem szokásos), unemployed (= munkanélküli), unconscious (= eszméletlen), unfair (= nem tiszteletességes), unfortunate (= szerencsétlen), unhappy (= boldogtalan), unnecessary (= felesleges), unfriendly (= barátságtalan), unpleasant (= kellemetlen), untidy (= rendetlen), unusual (= szokatlan)

2. over-
Az over- előtag hozzávetőleges magyar jelentése:
- ‘felső, fölé’ – pl. overcoat
- ‘át, végig, túl’ – pl. overnight, overtake
- ‘túl, túlságosan’ – pl. overbook, oversleep, overcharge

3. under-
Jelentése:
- ‘alatt, alá, kevésbé’ – pl. underground, underline, undergraduate, underwear, underdeveloped
- ‘nem eléggé’ – pl. undercooked, undervalued

4. re-
Jelentése: ‘vissza, újra’ – pl. replay, replace, rebuild, refreshing, repay, return, repeat.

Gyakorlatok

A. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és egy-egy odaílló előtag használatával.

1. It was very ............... (lucky) that we lost the match.

2........ (organized) He’s absolutely ............... (capable) of putting anything in the right place.

2. The rich countries have everything but the ............... (developed) countries don’t have enough to eat, which is so ............... (fair).

2. We couldn’t get on our flight because the airline had ............... (booked) it. I wrote to complain but all I got back was a standard ............... (personal) letter.

2. It’s not ............... (common) for ............... (graduate) to leave university without taking a degree.

2. My daughters were very ............... (happy) when they came home from the meeting. They said that there was a lot of arguing and the atmosphere became extremely ............... (pleasant).

2. When the fog got worse, the planes were ...............(able) to leave and we had to stay in Brussels ............... (night).
Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavak és over- vagy under- előtag használatával.

| night | graduate | line | ground | charged | booked | time | slept |

0 The tourists were furious when the manager explained that there were no vacant rooms because the hotel had been overbooked.
1 My sister is still an un................., but she’ll probably finish university next year.
2 There’s an un............................ train to Barcelona which leaves at 10.00 in the evening and arrives at 8.00 the next morning.
3 Our block of flats has an un............... garage.
4 The lecture started at 9.00 a.m., but I un................. and didn’t get there until 9.30.
5 The teacher asked us to un..................... the important parts of the text.
6 This bill is for £34, but it should be £29. I think you have un.................... me.
7 I don’t mind working un....... on Sundays as long as they pay
un.................... me more!

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat re- előtagot tartalmazó szóval.

0 On TV on Sunday evenings they always re...................... the best goals from the weekend’s important football matches.
1 I didn’t understand, so I asked her to re..................... what she had said.
2 The tyres on your car are very worn. You ought to re..................... them.
3 I have to re............................. the loan to the bank within three years.
4 After the Second World War most of Berlin had to be completely re......................

Keressük meg az alábbi kifejezések párhát, és pótoljuk a hiányző előtagot.

0 It’s getting harder to find work these days.
1 Look at that idiot driver!
2 A lot of people don’t pay their taxes.
3 I like an ice-cold drink on a hot summer’s day.
4 Can’t you find your keys?
5 This meat is still raw in the middle!
6 I really can’t wait another minute.

d 1 ...... 2 ...... 3 ...... 4 ...... 5 ...... 6 ......

a Yes, it’s definitely un............. cooked.
b No, they seem to have just un............. appeared.
c Don’t be so un............. patient!
d Yes, I know. So many people are un............. employed.
e Yes, I think they are very un............. honest.
f He’s trying to un............. take a lorry on a bend!
g Me too. It’s so un............. freshing.

Írjuk át az aláhúzott szavakat a megadott előtaggal kezdődő, azonos jelentésű szavakkal.

0 Fiat 500s are quite rare now in Britain.
Fiat 500s are un............................ now in Britain.
1 The smell from that factory really isn’t nice.
The smell from that factory really is un............................
2 Political commentators are not sure who will win the election.
Political commentators are un............................ who will win the election.
3 I don’t like these enormous supermarkets. The service is so cold and unfriendly.
I don’t like these enormous supermarkets. The service is so un............................
4 Andrew is so childish. He behaves more like a young boy than an adult.
Andrew is so un............................. He behaves more like a young boy than an adult.
Képzők – suffixes (-able, -less, -ian)

1 A képzők az adott szóból egy másik szófajhoz tartozó szó képzésére szolgálnak (pl. comfort – comfortable (= kényelmes), work – worker (= dolgozó).
Az angolban a következő képzők a leggyakoribbak:

2 -able -ible -ous -ive -y

Ezekkel a képzőkkel melléknevet képezhetünk: enjoyable (= élvezetes), favourable (= kedvező), sensible (= értelmes), dangerous (= veszélyes), famous (= híres), poisonous (= mérgéző), attractive (= vonzó), effective (= hatékony), hungry (= éhes), lucky (= szerencsés), rainy (= esős).

3 -less -ful

Szintén mellékknév képzésére szolgálnak: a -ful valami meglétére, a -less valami hiányára utal – pl. cheerful (= vidám), successful (= sikeres), useful (= hasznos), wonderful (= ovatlan), harmless (= ártatlan), hopeless (= reménytelen), painless (= fájdalommentes).

4 -ness -ment -tion/-sion -ance/-ence

Ezekkel a képzőkkel főnevet képezhetünk: happiness (= boldogság), politeness (= udvariasság), argument (= érv), development (= fejlődés), government (= kormány), observation (= megfigyelés), pollution (= környezetszennyezés), selection (= válogatás), translation (= fordítás), discussion (= megvitatás), disappearance (= eltűnés), insurance (= biztosítás), correspondence (= levelezés), patience (= türelm), intelligence (= intelligencia).

5 -an -ian -ist

Nemzetiséget és foglalkozást vagy más tevékenységet jelentő szavak képzésére szolgálnak – pl. American, African, Indian, Italian, Argentinian, Russian, politician (politiikus), librarian (könyvtáros), musician (zenész), scientist (tudós), physicist (fizikus), artist (művész), pacifist.

6 -er -or

Ezeket a képzőket foglalkozást vagy valamilyen társadalmi szerepet jelentő főnevek képzésére használjuk – pl. director (rendező), actor, singer, footballer, writer, painter, examiner, baby-sitter, manager.

Gyakorlatok

A táblázat és a példa alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat -er, -or, -ist vagy -ian képző használatával.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 Spielberg</td>
<td>America</td>
<td>directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Pavarotti</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>opera singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Gandhi</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>pacifism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Enrico Fermi</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Mandela</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>politics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Maradona</td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>football</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Tolstoy</td>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>writing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Spielberg is an .................................................................
1 Pavarotti is an .................................................................
2 Gandhi was an .................................................................
3 Enrico Fermi was an ...........................................................
4 Mandela is a .................................................................
Maradona was an ..........................................................
Tolstoy was a ..........................................................

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakból képzett főnevekkel.

0 I had an ................. (argue) with my brother because he insisted that Mozart was a painter. (paint).
1 ................. (pollute) is the result of industrial ................. (develop).
2 If you want to be a ................. (baby-sit), you’ll need a lot of ................. (patient).
3 Careful ................. (observe) is fundamental in the work of an ................. (art).
4 As a young man my grandfather was a poorly paid ................. (work), but later he became a ................. (manage).
5 I would like to work in a job that involved either ................. (translate) or ................. (correspond) with other countries.
6 The ................. (Govern) has now accepted the United Nations ................. (Declare) of Human Rights.
7 Before the school trip we had a ................. (discuss) about what sort of ................. (insure) we should have.

Keressük meg a számozott mondatok második részét, és pótoljuk a hiányzó mondatrészeket a megadott szavakból képzett melléknevekkel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>danger</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>fame</th>
<th>hunger</th>
<th>luck</th>
<th>sense</th>
<th>attract</th>
<th>poison</th>
<th>wonder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sand</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Famous film stars are often

1 The police warn that it is ................. to drive fast
2 We couldn’t stop eating because we were .................
3 I’m not sure whether they are clever or .................
4 We had a very ................. day at the coast
5 It’s ................. not to eat wild mushrooms
0 c 1 2 ...... 3 ...... 4 ...... 5 ......

D Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat -ful vagy -less végződésű melléknévvel.

Does it matter whether someone is ugly or ................. (beauty)?
1 Paul’s writing is so ................. (care); it’s full of mistakes.
2 His health is not very good but he’s usually quite ................. (cheer).
3 In Europe mosquitoes are usually ................. (harm).
4 You have to work hard if you want to be ................. (success).
5 Mobiles are more ................. (use) than fixed phones.
6 Those families have lost everything; their situation is ................. (hope).
7 Everybody likes my mum because she is so ................. (help).
8 Giving blood is virtually ................. (pain). You hardly feel a thing.
### A táblázat A főnév többes száma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>EGYES SZÁM</th>
<th>TÖBBES SZÁM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s</td>
<td>book</td>
<td>books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kilo</td>
<td>kilos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tyre</td>
<td>tyres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -es</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dress</td>
<td>dresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dish</td>
<td>dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wish</td>
<td>wishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>beach</td>
<td>beaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y → -ies</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>family</td>
<td>families</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lorry</td>
<td>lorries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>story</td>
<td>stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-f/-fe → -ves</td>
<td>leaf</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>life</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shelf</td>
<td>shelves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thief</td>
<td>thieves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Az -o-ra végződő főnevek többes száma -es:</td>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rendhagyó többes számú főnevek:</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>woman</td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>child</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>foot</td>
<td>feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B táblázat Megszámlálhatatlan főnevek

|                  | ice, water, rain, snow, heat, noise, cotton, glass, petrol, money, luggage, information, work, homework, advice, news, meat, milk, butter, bread, marmalade, food, tea, coffee, sugar, toast, cheese |
|                  | petrol (NEM petrols) |
|                  | bread (NEM breads)  |
|                  | I always have toast and marmalade for breakfast. |
|                  | I’d like some tea, please. |
|                  | the: Look at the snow outside. |
|                  | much: How much luggage have you got? |
|                  | such: We’ve had such wonderful news. |
|                  | Néhány főnév lehet megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan is: |
|                  | I heard a noise from downstairs. (megszámlálható) |
|                  | I can’t sleep. The neighbours are making so much noise. (megszámlálhatatlan) |
**C táblázat  Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>make</td>
<td>makes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>say</td>
<td>says</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>work</td>
<td>works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -es</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td>catches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>finishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pass</td>
<td>passes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>teaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td>does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mix</td>
<td>mixes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y → -ies</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>try</td>
<td>tries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carry</td>
<td>carries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>study</td>
<td>studies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D táblázat  Az igék -ing-es alakja**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
<th>IGE + -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -ing</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td>going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e + -ing</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hoping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>live</td>
<td>living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>take</td>
<td>taking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ie → -ying</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>dying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>get</td>
<td>getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jog</td>
<td>jogging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>run</td>
<td>running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>borrow</td>
<td>borrowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>visiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wonder</td>
<td>wondering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nincs mássalhangzókettőzés,**

- -y vagy -w után (pl. *run, swim, jog*) ez a mássalhangző írásban megkettőződik:

- borrow → borrowing
- buy → buying
- draw → drawing
- stay → staying
- listen → listening
- visit → visiting
- wonder → wondering

**Az ige végén lévő -l hangsúlytalan szótagban is megkettőződik (pl. *TRAvel*):**

- cancel
- travel

---

* Mássalhangzók: b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z
  Magánhangzók: a e i o u
  Szótagok: |hit| = 1 szótag  |vi|sit| = 2 szótag  |re|mem|ber| = 3 szótag

361
### E táblázat  Szabályos igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett melléknévi igenév

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
<th>MÚLT IDEJŰ ALAK</th>
<th>BEEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ed</strong></td>
<td>happen</td>
<td>happened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A legtöbb ige -ed végződést kap:</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-d</strong></td>
<td>live</td>
<td>lived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Az -e-re végződő igék -d végződést kapnak:</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td>phoned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-y → -ied</strong></td>
<td>study</td>
<td>studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A mássalhangzó + -y végű igéknél az -y-ból -ie lesz:</td>
<td>try</td>
<td>tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-y</strong></td>
<td>grab</td>
<td>grabbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A rövid nél magánhangzót követő rövid mássalhangzóra végződő igéknél (pl. stop) ez a mássalhangzó írásban megkettőződik:</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-w</strong></td>
<td>allow</td>
<td>allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nincs mássalhangzókettőzés ➤ -y vagy -w után (pl. enjoy), ➤ amikor az utolsó szótág nem hangsúlyos (pl. disCOVer, LISten, Open):</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-w</strong></td>
<td>discover</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>listened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>open</td>
<td>opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Az ige végén lévő -l hangsúlytalan szótágban is megkettőződik (pl. TRAvel):</strong></td>
<td>cancel</td>
<td>cancelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>travelled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Mássalhangzók: b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z
  Magánhangzók: a e i o u
  Szótágok: | hit | = 1 szótág | vi | sit | = 2 szótág | re | mem | ber | = 3 szótág

362
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Főnévi Igenév</th>
<th>Múlt Idejű Alak</th>
<th>Befejezett Melléknévi Igenév</th>
<th>Főnévi Igenév</th>
<th>Múlt Idejű Alak</th>
<th>Befejezett Melléknévi Igenév</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rung</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown/showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sung</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stolen</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone/been</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

363
### G táblázat  A melléknév közép- és felsőfoka

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ALAPFOK</th>
<th>KÖZÉPFOK</th>
<th>FELSŐFOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-er/-est</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>the cheapest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Az egyszótagú melléknевek -er/-est végzödést kapnak:</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>longer</td>
<td>the longest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>warm</td>
<td>warmer</td>
<td>the warmest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -r/-st</td>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>the latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e-re végződő melléknевek:</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
<td>the nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Az egyszótagú, rövid magánhangzót követő rövid mássalhangzóra végződő melléknевeknél (pl. big) ez a mássalhangzó írásban megkettőződik:</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>the biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-w-nél nincs kettőzés:</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>the hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wet</td>
<td>wetter</td>
<td>the wettest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>few</td>
<td>fewer</td>
<td>the fewest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more/the most</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>more beautiful</td>
<td>the most beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Két vagy több szótagú melléknевeknél a more/the most szót használjuk:</td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>more expensive</td>
<td>the most expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>polluted</td>
<td>more polluted</td>
<td>the most polluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y → -ier/-est</td>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>dirtier</td>
<td>the dirtiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A melléknев végén lévő -y (pl. happy) -i-re változik:</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easier</td>
<td>the easiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier</td>
<td>the happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>luckier</td>
<td>the luckiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rendhagyó melléknевek:</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther</td>
<td>the farthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>the least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feweres/less</td>
<td>There are fewer shops in the centre of town than there used to be.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A fewer alakot többes számú főnevekkel (pl. shops), a less alakot pedig megszámlálhatatlan (pl. money) főnevekkel használjuk:</td>
<td>John earns less money than Mary.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### H táblázat  Határozószók

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MELLEKNÉV</th>
<th>HATÁROZÓSZÓ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -ly</td>
<td>polite</td>
<td>politely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A legtöbb melléknévnből -ly képzővel határozószót képezhetünk:</td>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>slow</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Megjegyzés:</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ A melléknév végén lévő -y-i-re változik:</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>luckily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ A melléknév -ble végződéséből kiesik az -e:</td>
<td>probable</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>remarkable</td>
<td>remarkably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rendhagyó határozószók:</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>late</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Mássalhangzók: b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z
Magánhangzók: a e i o u
Szótagok: | hit | = 1 szótag | vi | sit | = 2 szótag | re | mem | ber | = 3 szótag

364
A
a few 79
a little 79
a lot
+ középfokú melléknév (a lot
  bigger) 88
a lot of 79
such a lot of 98
a/an 71, 73
+ megszámálható főnév 70–3
  vagy the 71–2
-able (végződés) 139
able to 49
above 99
abroad 96
absolutely 87
across
  'phrasal verbs'—ígei kifejezések
    (come across) 67
  mozgást jelző előjárószó 101
admit + -ing (admit doing) 113
advise
  advise someone to do
    something 127
  függő beszédféle 127
afford to (do something) 114
afraid of 105
after
  after that 96
  + jövő idő (After the rain
    stops, we'll ...) 36
  'phrasal verbs'—ígei kifejezések
    (look after, take after) 67–8
  afterwards 96
ago 22, 132
agree
  agree to do something 114
  agree with something 104
ahead 96
alany 40
  személyes névmások 75
all 80
allow
  allow someone to do
    something 118
  be allowed to 50
almost 97
along 96, 101
already
  a határozó helye a mondatban
    97
  Present Perfect + határozószó
    19
also 97
although 130
always 8, 95
am 1–2
-an (végződés) 139
an 71–2
-ance/-ence (képző) 139
  and 130
angry with 105
annoyed with 105
answer, előjárószó nélkül
  használt igék 104
any
  any more 78
  any vagy some 73
anybody 81
anyone 81
anything 81
anywhere 81
apologize
  apologize for doing
    something 127
  apologize for something 104
apply for (something) 104
are 1–2
argue about (something) 104
arrange (to do something) 114
arrive at/in 104
as
  as + melléknév/határozószó
  + as (as big as) 91
  as far as 96
  as many/ much as 91
  as soon as, jövő idő 36
ask
  ask for something 104
  ask someone 104
ask someone to do something
  118, 127
  függő beszéd 127
  függő kérdés (She asked if ...)
  128
at
  kifejezések (at best/ worst) 106
  at vagy to (at school) 96
  'phrasal verbs'—ígei kifejezések
    (call at, laugh at) 67–8
  hely 99
  idő 100
  sebesség (at 90 kilometres an
    hour) 106
  atfirst 106
avoid + -ing (avoid doing) 113
away 96
  'phrasal verbs'—ígei kifejezések
    (put away, throw away) 67–8
B
back 96
  'phrasal verbs'—ígei kifejezések
    (bring back, get back) 67
backward(s) 96
bad
  worse (melléknév) 88
  worst (melléknév) 89
badly
  worse (határozószó) 90
be
  + melléknév 39
  am/is/are, állítás és tagadás 1,
    40
  am/is/are, kérdés 2, 40
  am/is/are, Present Simple 1–2
  been, Present Perfect 18
  kérdés 40
  was/were, Past Simple 12
be able to 49
be going to 31
  vagy Present Continuous 34
  vagy will 34
  múlt idő (was/were going to)
    37
  szenvédő szerkezet 109
be used to + -ing 105
because 133
been vagy gone 18
  befejezett melléknévi igenév 17
  szenvédő szerkezet 109
  Present Perfect 26
  Present Perfect 17
  rendhagyó igék
    363. old. F táblázat
  szabályos igék 362. old. E
  táblázat
before
  jövő idő 36
  + Past Perfect 26
begin to do/begin doing 115
beginning: at the beginning of
  106
behind 99
believe in (something) 104
belong to 68
beside 99
best 89
at best 106
better 88
between
  hely 99
  mozgás 101
birtokos névmások (my, your)
  76
bizonyosság (She must be rich.) 54
a múltban 55
tagadás 54–5
bored with 105
borrow és lend 65
both 130, 131
break into 67
bribe (someone to do something) 118
brilliant at 105
bring
bring back 67
bring something for someone 82
bring up 68
bring és take 65
busy
busy with 105
+ -ing (busy working) 105
but 130
buy (something for someone) 82
by
by accident/chance/mistake 106
by car/train 103, 106
by cheque 106
by email/post/fax/phone 106
by means of 106
by myself/by yourself 106
by the time 26
szervedő szerkezet 108
+ -ing (by doing) 103

C
call
call at 68
call for 67
call off 68
call on 68
call out 68
can 49
Can I?, Can you? 50
can’t, lehetőség tagadása (She can’t be poor.) 54
can’t, múltbeli lehetőség tagadása (He can’t have been ...) 55
can’t/cannot 49
+ főnévi igenév 114
careless with 105
carry
carry out 68
carry és fetch 65
case, in case 133
catch
catch up on 48
catch up with 68
cause (someone to do something) 118
cél, rendelletés 117
certainly 97
clean up 68
clear up 68
come
come across 67
come round 67
come up with 67
+ -ing (come camping) 113
complain
complain about something 104
complain that 127
consist of 68
continue to do/continue doing 115
cook (something for someone) 82
cost 66
could 49
could have, a feltételes mondat 3. tipusa 122
Could I?, Could you? 50
could not/couldn’t 49
függo beszéd 125
+ főnévi igenév 114
a feltételes mondat 2. tipusa 120
valósznúság 54, 55

D
dare (someone to do something) 118
date 86
deal with 68
decide to (do something) 114
definitely 97
deny + -ing (deny doing) 113
depend on (something) 104
deserve to do (something) 114
did/didn’t 13
dis- (előtag) 138
discuss, igék előjárószó nélkül 104
dislike + -ing (dislike doing) 113
do
do/does és don’t 4–5
vagy make 62
down
irány 96
‘phrasal verbs’- igék kifejezések (turn down) 67
mozgás 101
downstairs 96
dress up 68

each other 83
-ed
melléknév (frightened) 93
vagy -ing, melléknévek (frightened vagy frightening) 93
befeljezett melléknévi igenév 17, 362. old. E táblázat 363. old. F táblázat
Past Simple (egyszerű mult) 13
either
either (... or) 97, 131
I’m not either 48
előjárószók 39
melléknév + előjárószó (angry with, afraid of) 105
kér désben 104
kifejezések előjárószókkal (in a suit) 103
hely 99
mozgás és hely (into/out of) 101
idő 100
ige + előjárószó (wait for, listen to) 104
előtagok (dis-, un-) 138
else 81
enable (someone to do something) 118
-ence, -ist (képző) 139
encourage (someone to do something) 118
end, at the end of 106
enjoy
enjoy myself/themselves 83
+ -ing (enjoy doing) 113
enough 94
-er (képző) 139
értelmező jelzői mellékmondat
(London, which has over 6 million inhabitants, ...) 136
even 97
eventually 97
ever
hardly ever 95
+ Present Perfect 18
felsőfok után (best film ever) 89
every (every day/week) 42, 95, 100
everybody 81
everyone 81
everything 81
everywhere 81
except 106
expect (someone to do something) 118
extremely 87

366
forget to do something 114, 115
'statikus' ige 66
forward(s) 96
look forward to 67
főnevek 39
névelővel és névelő nélkül 71–2
megszámlálhatatlan főnevek 70, 360. old B táblázat
megszámlálható főnevek 70
a főnév többes száma 69, 360. old A táblázat
főnevek 39
jelzőként használt főnevek (a cardboard box) 85, 87
az értelmező jelzői mellékmondat 136
főnévi igenév
to-val vagy to nélkül 114
szenvedő szerkezet + to +
főnévi igenév 110
ige + to, célhatározó (He’s gone to buy some fruit.) 117
ige + to vagy -ing 115
ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév (I asked her to come.) 118
frightened 93
frightened of 105
from
távolság (from ... to) 42
mozgás 101
idő (from ... to) 22, 42, 100, 132
front, in front of 99
ful (képző) 139
full of 105
Future Continuous (folyamatos jövő) 37
Future Perfect Continuous 37
Future Perfect 37
függő beszéd 125–8
függő kérdés (She asked if ...) 128
névmások és határozósok 126 kérés, utasítás, stb. 127
say / said és tell / told igevel 125
get 62
+ melléknév 62
get at 67
get away 67
get away with 68
get back 67
get off 67
get on 67
get on with 67
get over 68
get someone to do something 118
get something done 111
get something for someone 82
get through 68
get to 62
get up 67
have got 61, 66
have got to 52
szenvedő szerkezet + get / got
(it got stolen) 110
give
give in 68
give someone to do something 82
give up + -ing (give up doing) 113
go
go off 67
go on 67
go out 67
go out with 68
go over 68
go with 67
+ -ing (go shopping) 113
going to to. be going to
gone
vagy been 18
Present Perfect 18
go + -ing (go skiing) 113
gone
vagy been 18
good
dúszéfok better 88
felsőfok best 89
good at 105
no good 105
got ld. get
grateful for 105
grow up 68
H
had
had better 57
had to do 59
Past Perfect 26
had better 57
hand in 67
hard 90, 364. old. H táblázat
hardly ever 95
has ld. have
határozatlan névmások 81
határozósok 39
+ melléknév (very hot) 87
határozósok és melléknevek
(quick, quickly) 90
értéket jelölő határozósok 97
összehasonlítás határozósóval
(more carefully) 90
alaptok összehasonlítás
határozósóval (as quickly as) 91
irányt jelölő határozószók (up, down) 96
határozószók függő beszédben 126
kétletny vagy meggyőződést
dezelő határozószók 97
határozószó képzése
melléknevből 90, 362. old. H táblázat
gyakoriságot jelölő
határozószók (always, never) 4, 95, 97
rendhagyó határozószók 364.
old. H táblázat
helyet jelölő határozószók
(here, there) 96
módhatarozók 97
a határozók sorrendje 90, 97
sorrendet jelölő határozószók
(first, second) 96
időt jelölő határozószók 97
hate
hate to do 115
+ -ing (hate doing) 113, 115
'statikus' ige 66
would hate to + főnévi igenév 115
have
didn't have to 59
have és have got 61
have got to 52
have something done 111
have to do vagy must do 53
have to/don't have to 52
Present Perfect 17
'statikus' ige 66
have got to 52
he 75
head for 68
hear
hear a car crash/the children
singing 118
hear about something 104
'statikus' ige 66
help (someone to do
something) 118
her 75, 76
here 96
hers 76
herself 83
him 75
himself 83
his 76
hold on 67
hope 123
hope to do something 114
how
+ melléknév 42
+ határozószó 42
How? 41, 44
How far? 42
How is ...? 44
How long? 24, 42
How many? 42, 78
How much? 42, 78
How often? 42
How old? 42
however 130
I
I (személyes névmás) 75
-ian (végződés) 139
-ible (végződés) 139
if
if only 123
függő kérdés (She asked if ...) 128
általános feltétel (If I am ...) 119
a feltételek mondat 1. típusa
(If I am ...) 119
a feltételek mondat 2. típusa
(If he was ...) 120
a feltételek mondat 3. típusa
(If he had been ...) 122
ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév
(I asked her to come.) 118
ige + to vagy -ing 115, 118
igeidők
jövő idő 31–4, 37, 109
Past Continuous (folyamatos múlt) 15, 16, 109
Past Perfect 26, 27, 29, 109
Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 12–13, 16, 21–2, 27, 108, 109,
'phrasal verbs' – igei
kifejezések,
363. old. F táblázat
Present Continuous
(folyamatos jelen) 7–8, 10, 34,
109
Present Perfect 17–19, 21–2, 25,
109
Present Perfect Continuous 24,
25
Present Simple (egyszerű jelen) 1–5, 10, 33, 108, 109, 361. old.
C táblázat
ige 39
segédigék 39
szelekvést jelentő igék 66
+tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév
(I asked her to come.) 118
ige + részhatározó + tárgy 82
függő beszéd 125–8
kérdés 41–5
szennyező szerkezet 108–10
felszólítás 11
+ -ing (I like dancing) 113,
361. old. D táblázat
rendhagyó igék 363. old. F
táblázat
módbeli segédigék (can, could,
may, stb.) 49–59, 114
+ to + főnévi igenév 114–15
+ to vagy -ing 115
szórend 40
'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések
67–8
+ előjárószó (wait for, listen
to) 104
Szabályos igék 'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések
+ előjárószó + főnévi igenév 114
'statikus' ige 66
jövő idő 31–8
múlt idő 12–30, 'phrasal
verbs' – igei kifejezések,
363. old. F táblázat
Jelen idő 1–10, 361. old. C
táblázat
im- (előtág) 138
imagine + -ing (imagine doing) 113
immediately 97
in
kifejezések (in a suit) 103
hely jelölése 106
'phrasal verbs' – igei
kifejezések (join in, give in)
67–8
helyet jelölő előjárószó 99
időt jelölő előjárószó 100
in- (előtág) 138
in case 133
in front of 99
include, 'statikus' ige 66
-ing
mellék név (frightening) 93
mellék név + -ing (busy,
working) 105
am/is/are -ing. Present
Continuous 7–8
come + -ing (come camping) 113
a mondat alanyként
(Smoking is bad for you.) 113
go + -ing (go skiing) 113
have/has been + -ing. Present
Perfect Continuous 24
is used to + -ing (is used to
working) 105
feliratok (NO PARKING) 113
vagy -ed, mellék név
(frightened vagy
frightening) 93
előjárószó + -ing (by without
doing) 103
ige + to vagy -ing 115, 118
ige + -ing (enjoy doing) 113,
361. old. D táblázat
was/were -ing. Past
Continuous 15
inside 96
instead of 106
intend to do/intend doing 115
interested in 105
into
'phrasal verbs' – iget
kifejezések (break into) 67
mozgás jelölése 101
invite (someone to do something) 118
irány meghatározása 96
is 1–2
-ist (képző) 139
it rains/snows 84
it takes an hour 84
it 75
it’s (= it is) 76
its 76
itself 83
-ive (végződés) 139

J
jelen idejű igék + when, as soon as, until, stb. 36
jelen ld. Present Continuous;
Present Simple
jelzői mellékmondat
kijelölo 134–5
értelmező 136
jelzők sorrendje 85
join in 67
jövő
Future Continuous (folyamatos jövő) 37
Future Perfect 37
szenvedő szerkezet 109
Future Perfect Continuous 37
jövő
eyeb szerkezetek 37
be going to 31
be going to, szenvedő
szerkezet 109
szenvedő szerkezet 109
Present Continuous
(folyamatos jelen) a jövőre
vonatkozó jelentéssel 33
Present Continuous vagy be
going to 34
Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)
a jövőre vonatkozó jelentéssel
33
jelen idejű igék + when, as
soon as, until, stb. 36
will és shall 32
will vagy be going to 34
just
a határozó helye a mondatban
97
+ Present Perfect 19

K
keen on 105
keep
+ -ing (keep doing) 113
keep off 68
képző (-ence, -ist) 139
kérő mondat
be (Am I? Are you?) 2
függő beszédben 128
How? 41
How far? 42
How long? 42
How many? 42
How much? 42
How often? 42
How old? 42
függő kérdés (She asked if ...)
128
szórend 40–1, 43
előjárószó a kérdés végén 104
Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)
5
a kérdőjevemés tárgyi alakja 43
'question tags' – utókérdés (It’s
..., isn’t it?) 47
What? 41, 43
What ... like? (What’s she
like?) 44
When? 41
Where? 41
Which? 41
Who? 41, 43
Whose? 41
Why? 41
kérő mondatok 41–4
kérőfogó beszédben 127
kifejezések előjárószókkal 106
kijelölo jelzői mellékmondat
134–5
kind to 105
know
'statikus' igle 66
want to know 128

L
’ll ld. will
last
first/last 132
at last 106
last weekend 100
last/lastly 96
late 90, 364. old. G táblázat
laugh at 68
lead to 68
learn (to do something) 114
least
a melléknev felsőfoka (least
expensive) 89
at least 106
leave (someone to do
something) 118
left (left/right) 96
lehetőség, valószínűség (She
may/might be out.) 54
a múltban 55
lend
e és borrow 65
lend something to someone 82
less
a melléknev fokozása (less
expensive) 89, 364. old. G
táblázat
e és fewer 364. old. G táblázat
-less (föszkökz) 139
let
let’s 32
let vagy make 63
like
+ -ing (like doing) 113, 115
like someone to do something
118
like to do 115
'statikus' igle 66
What ... like? (What’s she
like?) 44
would like to + főnévi igenév
115
listen to (something) 104
little, a little 79
live 25
live up to 68
long. How long? 42
look
+ melléknev 39, 85
look after 67
look at/for 104
look forward to 67
look into 67
look through 68
look up/up to 67
'statikus' igle 66
What ... look like? 44
look forward to 67
lot
+ a melléknev középfoka (a lot
bigger) 88
a lot of/lots of 79
such a lot of 98
love
+ -ing (love doing) 113, 115
love someone to do
something 118
love to do 115
'statikus' igle 66
would love to + főnévi igenév
115
lucky at 105

369
make
  make for 68
  vary do 62
  vary let 63
manage to (do something) 114
many 78
  How many? 42, 78
  as many as 91
  so many 98
  too many 94
matter, 'statikus' ige 66
may
  + főnévi igenév 114
May 17 50
lehetőség, valószínűség (She may be out.) 54
lehetőség a múltban (she may have gone out.) 55
me 75
mean
to do something 114
  'statikus' ige 66
melléknévek 39, 85
  a melléknév középfoka (older, more famous) 88, 364. old. G táblázat
a rendhagyó középfok 88, 364. old. G táblázat
összehasonlítás alapfokon (as strong as) 91
-ed vagy -ing (frightened vagy frightening) 93
get + melléknév 62
melléknévкént használt
  főnevek (a cardboard box) 85, 87
sorszámok 86
  a főnév előtt álló jelzők
  sorrendje 85
  + előljárószó (angry with, afraid of) 105
a melléknév felsőfoka (the oldest, the most famous) 89, 364. old. G táblázat
a rendhagyó felsőfok 88, 364. old. G táblázat
-ment (képző) 139
might
  + főnévi igenév 114
  might have a feltételekes mondat
  3. típusa 122
  a feltételeles mondat 1. típusa 119
  a feltételeles mondat 2. típusa 120
lehetőség, esetlegesség a múltban (She might have gone out.) 55
esetlegesség (She might be out.) 54
mind + -ing (mind doing) 113
mine 76
műdőbeli segédigék a múltban 55
  ld. még: Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous, Past Simple,
  Present Perfect műdőbeli segédigék 49-59
mondat
feltételeles mondat 119-22
szórend 40
kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat
  (... the girl who won.) 134-5
értelmező jelzői mellékmondat
  (London, which has over 6 million inhabitants, ...) 136
more
  a melléknév középfoka (more famous) 88, 364. old. G táblázat
  any more 78
  a határozósző középfoka
  (more carefully) 90
  more food 78
  some more 78
most
  a melléknév felsőfoka (the most famous) 89, 364. old. G táblázat
  at most 106
  most of 80
  most people 80
  much 78
  + a melléknév középfoka
  (much bigger) 88
How much? 42, 78
as much as 91
so much 98
too much 94
must
bizonyosság (She must be rich.) 54
bizonyosság a múltban (He must have been ...) 55
  + főnévi igenév 114
must do vagy have to do 53
must/mustn't 51
feltételezés (They must earn a lot.) 54
mutató névmások 77
my 76
myself 83
by myself 106

N
near 99
nearly 96
need
  need someone to do something 118
  need/needn't 58
  'statikus' ige 66
neither
  neither (... nor) 131
  neither am I 48
nemzetiség 85
-ness (képző) 139
névelők (a/an, the) 71-2
  a névelő elhagyása 72
never 95
  + Present Perfect 18
next
  next to, helyre utaló
  előljárószó 99
  sorrendje 96
  idő (next Wednesday) 100
no (no food) 73
  no good + -ing (no good worrying) 105
  no one 81
  nobody 81
  none 73
  none of 80
nor
  (neither ...) nor 131
  nor am I 48
  normally 95
  not worth + -ing (not worth taking) 105
nothing 81
notice
  notice something
  move/ moving 118
  'statikus' ige 66
  nowhere 81
O
  of 76
  'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések (consist of) 68
off
  off work/school 96
  'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések (go off, put off) 67-8
  irány jelölése 101
offer
  + két tárgy 110
  offer something to someone 82
  offer to do something 114
often 95
How often? 42
old, How old? 42
on
kifejezések előjárószóval 106
‘phrasal verbs’ – igei kifejezések
(called on, put on) 67–8
hely 99
mozgás/irány 101
idő 100
once
once a day/week 95
a határozó helye a mondatban 97
one
no one 81
és ones 69
Which one/ones? 69
only 97
onto 101
opposite 99
–or (végződés) 139
or, either … or 97
order
függő beszéd 127
order someone to do
something 127
ought to 57
our 76
ours 76
ourselves 83
–ous (képző) 139
out 96
out of (kifejezés előjárószóval) 106
out of (mozgást jelölő előjárószó) 101
‘phrasal verbs’ – igei
kifejezések (work out, sort out) 67–8
outside
helyhatározó 96
helyet jelölő előjárószó 99
over
over here/there 96
‘phrasal verbs’ – igei
kifejezések (get over, go over) 68
mozgás jelölése 101
over- (előtag) 138
own
on my own/on your own 106
‘statikus’ ige 66
 önálló birtokos névmások (mine, yours) 76
összehasználás
melléknév 88, 364. old. G
táblázat
határozószó 90
alapfokú hasonlítás (as strong as) 91
P
Past Continuous (I was doing) 15
vagy Past Simple 16
szenvedő szerkezet 109
Past Perfect (I had finished) 26,
‘phrasal verbs’ – igei
kifejezések 362. old. E
táblázat
vagy Past Perfect Continuous 29
vagy Past Simple 27
szenvedő szerkezet 109
Past Perfect Continuous
vagy Past Simple Continuous 29
Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 13
Past Simple (I did) 13,
‘phrasal verbs’ – igei
kifejezések, 363. old. F táblázat
be 12
vagy Past Continuous 16
vagy Past Perfect 27
vagy Present Perfect 21–2
vagy used to 28
szenvedő szerkezet 108, 109
past, mozgást jelölő előjárószó 101
pay
+ két tárgy 110
pay someone 104
pay someone for something 68, 104
persuade
függő beszéd 127
persuade someone to do
something 127
phone, ige előjárószó nélkül 104
‘phrasal verbs’ – igei
kifejezések (get up, put on) 67–8
pick up 68
plan (to do something) 114
please 11
pleased with 105
prefer
prefer someone to do
something 118
prefer to do/prefer doing 115
‘statikus’ ige 66
would prefer to + főnévi
igenév 115
Present Continuous (folyamatos
jelen – I am doing)
állítás és tagadás 7
jövőre vonatkozó jelentés 33
kér dés 8
vagy be going to 34
vagy Present Simple 10
szenvedő szerkezet 109
Present Perfect (I have done) 17
+ ever, never, gone, been 18
+ just, already, yet 19
vagy Past Simple 21–2
vagy Present Perfect
Continuous 25
szenvedő szerkezet 109
Present Perfect Continuous (I
have been doing) 24
vagy Present Perfect Simple 25
Present Simple (I do) 1–2, 4–5, 361. old. C táblázat
állítás és tagadás 4
be, állítás és tagadás 1
be, kérdés 2
jövőre vonatkozó jelentés 33
kér dés 5
vagy Present Continuous 10
szenvedő szerkezet 108, 109
pretend to do something 114
probably 97
promise
+ két tárgy 110
promise to do something 114
proud of 105
put
put away 67
put off 68
put on 67
put up 68
put up with 68
Q
‘question tag’ – utókérdés (It’s ...
... isn’t it?) 47
quite 97
+ melléknév 87
R
rarely 95
rather, would rather 114
re- (előtag) 138
reach
within reach 106
ige előjárószó nélkül 104
really 87
recently 97
recognize, ‘statikus’ ige 66
refuse (to do something) 114
relative clause – jelzői
mellékmondat 134–6
remember
remember to do/remember
doing 115
‘statikus’ ige 66
remind
függő beszéd 127
remind someone to do
something 127
rendeltetés, cél 117
right (right/left) 96
ing, ige előljárászó nélkül 104
round
'phrasal verbs'– igei
kifejezések (come round) 67
mozgás/irány jelölése 101
rüvid válasz (Yes, I am.) 46
rub out 67
run away 68

S
's birtokos 76
say/said
függő beszéd 125
vagy tell/told 125
sebesség kifejezése (at 90
kilometres an hour) 106
see
see something move/moving
118
see to 68
seem
+mellékév 39, 85
see to do something 114
segédjegyek, igék 39
sell/sold két tárggyal 82
send (something to someone)
82, 110
set off 68
shall és will 32
she 75
short answer – rüvid válasz (Yes,
I am.) 46
should
+főnévi igenév 114
vagy ought to vagy had better
57
should have done 59
shouldn’t/shouldn’t 56
shout at (something) 104
show
show something to someone
82
to be shown something 110
shut up 68
sick of 105
sideways 96
since 22, 132
-sion (képző) 139
smell
+mellékév 85
'statikus' ige 66
so
eredmény 130, 133
cé1 133
so am I 48
so many/much 98
so that 133
és such 98
some 80
+ megszámlálható és
megszámlálhatatlan főnév 70
vagy any 73
some more 78
some of 80
somebody 81
someone 81
something 81
sometimes 95, 97
somewhere 81
soon
a határozó helye a mondatban
97
as soon as, utalás a jövőre 36
sorrend 96
sorszámítóv (first, third) 86,
96
sort out 68
sound
+ mellékév 85
'statikus' ige 66
speak and talk 65
stand for 68
start to do / start doing 115
stay in 68
still
a határozó helye a mondatban
97
+ Present Perfect 19
stop + -ing (stop doing) 113, 115
straight on 96
such
és so 98
such a lot of 98
suddenly 97
suggest + -ing (suggest doing)
113
sure about 105
surprised by 105
számnevek
ütészámok (one, three) 86
sorszámítóv (first, third) 86,
96
twice a day/week 95
személyes névmások 39
tárgyi alak (me, him) 75
függő beszéd 126
kérés alanya és tárgyra 43
önálló birtokos névmások
(mine, yours) 76
vonatkozó névmások (who,
that) 134
visszaható névmások (myself,
yours) 83
alan (I, he) 75
személyes negerzet
a get igevel 110
igeidők 109
+ to + főnévi igenév 110
Past Simple 108
Present Simple 108
ige két tárggyal (She was
given a camera.) 110
Szórend 40
jelzők sorrendje 85
határozószók sorrendje 90
függő beszéd 127
szórend 40

T
tagadás,
szórend 40
a létige (be) múlt idejű alakjai
was not/ were not 12
Past Continuous (folyamatos
múlt) 15
Past Perfect 26
Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 13
Present Continuous (folyamatos jelen) 7
Present Perfect 17
Present Perfect Continuous 24
Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)
4
a létige (be) jelen idejű alakjai
am not, is not, are not) 1, 40
take
e és bring 65
take after 68
take off 67
take something to someone 82
take up 68
talk
vagy speak 65
talk to/about 104
tárgy és részeshatározó (She
gave him a book.) 82
szórend 40
személyes negerzet tárggyal és
részeshatározóval 110
a személyes névmás tárgyi
alakja (me/him) 75
ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi
igenév (I asked her to come.)
118
taste
+ mellékév 85
'statikus' ige 66
teach 25
+ két tárgy 110
teach someone to do
something 118
tell
függő beszéd 125, 127
+ két tárgy 110
tell someone to do something
127
tell/told vagy say/said 125
than (richer than) 88
that
after that 96
függő beszéd (She said that...
) 125
that car 77
the + megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnév 70 vagy a/an 71–2
their 76
theirs 76
them 75
four of them 84
themselves 83
then 96
there helyre utaló határozószó 96 és it/they 84
there is/there are 2, 84
these 77
they 75, 84
think about (something) 104
think of 68
'statikus' iге 66
this idő jelölése (this April) 100
this car 77
those 77
through 'phrasal verbs' – iгеi kifejezések (look through) 68
mozgás/irány jelölése 101
throw away 68
tiltás 11, 51
fügő beszéd 127
times (three times a day) 95
tion/sion (képző) 139
to távolság/irány (from ... to) 42
to + főnévi igenév, cel 117
vagy at (to school) 96
szenvedő szerkezet + to + főnévi igenév 110
'phrasal verbs' – iгеi kifejezések (look up to, live up to) 67–8
mozgás/irány jelölése 101
idő jelölése 100
ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév 118
ige + to + főnévi igenév 114–15
told ld. tell
too I am too 48
a határozó helye a mondatban 97
too big 94
too much/many 94
towards 101
tőszámnevek (one, three) 86
try + -ing (try doing) 115
try on 68
try to do something 114–115
turn turn down/off 67
turn up/on 67
U ugye kérdés ('question tag') 47
un- (előtag) 138
under kifejezések előljárószókkal 106
hely 99
mozgás/irány 101
under- (előtag) 138
understand, 'statikus' iге 66
unless 119
until jövő idő 36
idő jelölése 100
up 96
'phrasal verbs' – iгеi kifejezések (look up, take up)
67–8
Mozgás/irány jelölése 101
up to 106
upstairs 96
us 75
five of us 84
used to 28
is used to + -ing (is used to working) 105
usually 95
V very 87
visszaható névmások (myself, yourself) 83
W want 'statikus' iге 66
want someone to do something 118
want to do something 114
wanted to know (fügő kérdés) 128
warn függő beszéd 127
warn someone not to do something 127
was/were 12
+ -ing, Past Continuous 15
wash up 68
watch (something
move/moving) 118
we 75
well középfok better 90, 364. old. H
tablázat a határozó helye a mondatban 97
as well as 91
were 12
If I were ... 120
+ -ing, Past Continuous 15
what függő kérdés 128
What? 41, 43
What ... like? (What's she like?) 44
What? kérdés alanya és tárgyra 43
What ... for? 117
when jövő idővel (When the rain stops, we'll ...) 36
+ Past Continuous 15
+ Past Perfect 26
+ Past Simple 21
When? 41
where függő kérdés 128
kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok 134
Where? 41
whether (He asked whether ...) 128
which kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok 134–5
értelmező jelzői mellékmondatok 136
Which? 41
Which one/ones? 69
while + Past Continuous 15
who függő kérdés 128
kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok 134–5
értelmező jelzői mellékmondatok 136
Who? 41
Who? kérdés alanya és tárgyra 43
Who's she like? 44
whom 135
whose kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok 134
értelmező jelzői mellékmondatok 136
Whose? 41
Why? 41
will + főnévi igenév 114
vagy be going to 34
feltételes mondat 119
és shall 32
wish (I wish I was/had been ...) 123
with
  kifejezések (with red hair) 103
  'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések (go with, catch up
  with) 67–8
with regard/respect to 106
within (within reach) 106
without
  + -ing (without doing) 103
  without delay/doubt/exception/fail 106
won't Id. will
wondered (fűggő kérdés) 128
word order – szörend 40
work 25
  work out 67
worried about 105
worse (határozószó) 90
  worse (melléknév) 88
worst
  a melléknév felsőfoka 89
  at worst 106
worst (melléknév) 89
worth (not worth) 105
would
  fűggő beszéd 125
  would a feltételes mondat 2. típusa 120
  would hate/like/love/prefer + to + főnévi igenév
  115
  would have a feltételes mondat 3. típusa 122
  would rather do something 114

Y

-y (végződés) 139
yet + Present Perfect 19
you 75
your 76
yours 76
yourself 83
  by yourself 106
yourselves 83
Unit 1

A 1 is 5 is
  2 is not 6 are not
  3 is 7 are
  4 am 8 is
B 1 isn’t 6 ’s
  2 ’s 7 ’re
  3 ’re 8 aren’t
  4 aren’t 9 aren’t
  5 isn’t 10 ’m
C 1 You’re 6 I’m
  2 not 7 aren’t
  3 isn’t 8 not
  4 This 9 isn’t
  5 are 10 We’re
D 1 isn’t, It’s 4 It’s, We
  2 is, He’s 5 It’s
  3 She’s 6 are

Unit 2

A 1 Is he cold?
  2 Are they happy?
  3 Is he afraid?
  4 Is she bored?
  5 Is he hungry?
  6 Are they sad?
  7 Are they tired?
B 1 There isn’t
  2 There are
  3 There aren’t
  4 There are
  5 There’s/There is
  6 There isn’t
  7 There are
  8 There’s/There is
C 1 Are you a teacher?
  2 Are they bored?
  3 Is he afraid?
  4 Is she tired?
  5 How are you?
  6 Is it cold today?
  7 Is she Spanish?
  8 Are they from London?
D 1 Are you a singer
  2 Are your parents famous
  3 Are they politicians
  4 Is your father a film star
  5 Is you mother a film star
  6 Is she a singer
  7 Is your father Kirk Douglas
  8 Are you Michael Douglas
E 1 Are 5 is
  2 ’m/am 6 ’s/is
  3 ’m/am 7 ’s
  4 Are
F 1 It’s in the east of Ireland.
  2 They’re in the south of England.
  3 They’re in the east of England.
  4 It’s in the north of Scotland.
  5 It’s in the north/east/north-east of England.
  6 It’s in the south of Wales.
  7 It’s in the east of Northern Ireland.
  8 They’re in the north of England.

Unit 3

A 1 are 6 ’m
  2 I’m 7 ’re
  3 is 8 ’s
  4 are 9 ’re
  5 We’re 10 are
B 1 No, I’m not hungry, but I’m thirsty.
  2 I am too.
  3 There’s a coffee bar.
  4 It’s cold here.
  5 Yes, but it’s very cold in Budapest too.
  6 Oh yes, January is a cold month at home.
C 1 Are 7 there are
  2 It’s 8 I’m
  3 it isn’t 9 are
  4 is 10 There’s
  5 we’re 11 isn’t
  6 there’s 12 are
D 1 And is that Tower Bridge?
  2 Is it an old bridge?
  3 Are we in the centre of London?
  4 Are we near to your house?
  5 Is it easy to travel in London?
  6 Is it cheap to travel by taxi?
  7 Is there a tube station near your house?
E 1 The City and the West End are
two important parts of London.
The City is the business centre.
The major banks, the Stock
Exchange, and the insurance
companies are all in the City, but
there is also St. Paul’s Cathedral.
The City is always very busy.
There are lots of department
stores in the West End –
Harrods, for example – and there
are museums, cinemas, theatres,
art galleries and a lot of
restaurants: French, Italian,
Japanese or Chinese.
Buckingham Palace and the
Houses of Parliament are also in
the West End.
But England is more than
London! There are a lot of
beautiful old cities and other
lovely places in England,
Scotland, Wales and Ireland.

Unit 4

A 1 teaches 5 finishes
  2 ✅ 6 watches
  3 goes 7 does
  4 walks 8 ✅
B 1 flies 6 love
  2 visits 7 eat
  3 live 8 do
  4 tries 9 drinks
  5 forgets 10 play
C 1 doesn’t eat
  2 don’t live
  3 doesn’t speak
  4 don’t get up
  5 doesn’t go
D 1 plays, doesn’t watch
  2 go, don’t play
  3 plays, doesn’t help
  4 doesn’t go
  5 go, don’t help
  6 plays, doesn’t go
  7 doesn’t play
  8 doesn’t play, watches
  9 don’t play, go

Unit 5

A 1 Does ... have a swimming pool?
  2 Do all the banks change
tourists’ money into pounds?
  3 Does the number 38 bus stop
at the railway station?
  4 Do the restaurants serve
typical English food?
  5 Does the concert finish
before eleven p.m.?
  6 Does the sightseeing tour
start here?
7 Does the museum sell souvenirs?

B 1 Do you speak any foreign languages?
2 Do you watch TV?
3 Does John listen to the radio?
4 Does John like dogs?
5 Do you like films?
6 Does John drink coffee?
7 Do you drive a car?
8 Does John play a musical instrument?
9 Do you like pop music?
10 Do you go to the theatre?
11 Do you read books?
12 Does John smoke?

C 1 likes coffee.
2 doesn’t like films.
3 loves reading books.
4 hates dogs.
5 likes classical music.
6 doesn’t like cigarettes.

D 1 Where does your cousin live?
2 Do they want a cup of tea?
3 Where does Ellen play tennis?
4 Why do cats like milk?
5 Does she play classical music?
6 Does he like his new CD?
7 When does she start work?
8 How often does Kate practise English?

J 1 ✗ Do they go to bed after midnight?
2 ✓
3 ✗ Where does your sister work?
4 ✗ She plays tennis every Saturday.
5 ✗ Carlos and Maria work in Mexico City.
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 ✗ The shops close at five o’clock.
9 ✗ She doesn’t come from France.

K 1 He’s a doctor.
2 She’s a photographer.
3 She’s a dentist.
4 She’s a pop star.
5 He’s an artist.

L Robert is sixteen. He lives in Norwich with his parents. He gets up at half past seven every day. He has a bath, he gets dressed, and then he has breakfast. He (usually) drinks milk and eats some buttered toast and jam for breakfast. After breakfast he cleans his teeth. He leaves for school at half past eight. He meets his friends in front of the school. They don’t have to wear a uniform. They (usually) wear jeans and trainers. They talk for a while, and they go into school. School starts at 8.50. They have six lessons every day. They have history, geography, and French today; they don’t have maths or physics. The lunch break starts at half past twelve. Then Robert eats his sandwich. School finishes at 3.45. Robert goes home and prepares for the next day’s lessons. His parents work until six, and they usually arrive home at about seven. Robert watches TV or plays computer games in the evening. He often goes out with his friends. He usually comes home at ten in the evening.

Unit 6

A 1 rains
2 don’t drive
3 has
4 doesn’t earn
5 doesn’t happen
6 flies
7 leave
8 don’t do
9 reads
10 don’t listen
11 arrives
12 go

B 1 Does Carol work
2 do you play
3 Do you take
4 do the shops close
5 Do you go
6 does he drive

C 1 What time do you have dinner? ~ We have dinner at eight o’clock.
2 Where do you have breakfast? ~ We have breakfast in the kitchen.

D 1 cycles, goes
2 says, does, catches
3 buys, does
4 likes, gets
5 lives, works
6 leave, finishes
7 rides, carries
8 eats

E 1 Do modern trains use coal? ~ No, they use electricity.
2 Do the Queen wear a crown? ~ No, she usually wears a hat.
3 Does wine come from oranges? ~ No, it comes from grapes.
4 Does Sri Lanka export coffee? ~ No, it exports tea.
5 Do potatoes grow on bushes? ~ No, they grow in the ground.

F 1 Modern trains don’t use coal.
2 The Queen doesn’t usually wear a crown.
3 Wine doesn’t come from oranges.
4 Sri Lanka doesn’t export coffee.
5 Potatoes don’t grow on bushes.

G 1 Ice floats on water.
2 Lions don’t live in the Arctic.
3 Winter doesn’t come after spring.
4 Austrians speak German.
5 Cotton doesn’t come from sheep.

H 1 eat
2 brush
3 go
4 arrive
5 drink
6 start
7 work
8 like
9 stop
10 have/drink
11 leave
12 watch

I 1 g
2 h
3 a
4 b
5 d
6 c
7 e

Unit 7

A 1 They’re carrying
2 She’s taking
3 They’re sitting

B 1 ‘m working
2 ‘m not living
3 ‘m staying
4 'm looking
5 'm studying
6 'm not learning
7 aren't sleeping/ 're not
8 's growing
C 1 's playing
  2 are dancing
  3 'm talking
  4 'm staying
  5 'm enjoying
  6 'm eating
  7 'm listening
  8 'm drinking
  9 're taking
 10 's coming
 11 are wearing
 12 're throwing
D 1 is shining
  2 are sitting
  3 am drinking
  4 are not swimming
  5 are watching
  6 are travelling
  7 is reading
  8 am writing

Unit 8
A 1 Is she having lunch?
  2 Are you feeling sick?
  3 Are they playing football?
  4 Is the cat sleeping?
  5 Are you relaxing?
  6 Is the sun shining?
  7 Is he coming to the cinema?
  8 Are they listening?
  9 Is she eating at the moment?
 10 Is it raining hard?
 11 Am I getting better at tennis?
 12 Are we winning the match?
B 1 i 5 b
  2 d 6 a
  3 h 7 e
  4 f 8 c
C 1 are living
  2 are working
  3 are having
  4 is increasing
  5 are smoking
  6 are driving
  7 are building
  8 are breathing
  9 is getting
 10 are going
D 1 Because she's always asking me for money.
  2 Because they're always arguing in public.

Unit 9
A 1 It's/It is running
  2 She's/She is painting
  3 He's/He is washing
  4 They're/They are eating
  5 They're/They are looking
B 1 's he/is he doing
  2 Are you listening
  3 are you going
  4 's he/is he cooking
  5 's she/is she staying
  6 Are you waiting
  7 Is it raining
  8 are you reading
C 1 I'm/I am shopping
  2 I'm/I am looking
  3 I'm/I am playing
  4 She's/She is working
  5 's she/is she doing
  6 She's/She is singing
  7 are they doing
  8 They're/They are studying
  9 We're/We are painting
 10 's/is helping
D 1 They aren't/They're not/They
  2 are not working.
  3 They're/They are sitting in the
  4 garden.
  5 I'm/I am not studying
  6 music.
  7 I'm/I am learning Japanese.
  8 He's/He is playing tennis.
  9 He isn't/He's not/He is not
  10 winning.
  11 We're/We are spending a day
  12 at the seaside.
  13 The sun isn't/is not shining.
C 1 More women are becoming
  2 Members of Parliament.
  3 More professional people are
  4 studying part-time.
  5 More young people are going
  6 to university.
  7 More people are working at
  8 home.
  9 More young people aren't
  10 eating meat.
  11 More British people are
  12 learning foreign languages.
  13 More small British companies
  14 are using computers.
F 1 I'm staying
  2 Elaine's selling

Unit 10
A 1 does your sister travel, takes
  2 are you eating, love
  3 's/is snowing, snows
B 1 are getting up get up
  2 ✔
  3 ✔
  4 am-finishing finish
  5 ✔
  6 work 'm/am working
  7 eat 'm/am eating
  8 drink 's/is drinking
  9 ✔
  10 am-playing play
  11 ✔
  12 am-watching watch
  13 'm not understanding
  14 don't/does not understand
  15 Are you liking Do you like
C 1 You aren't/You're not/You
  2 are not eating very much at the
  3 moment. Are you ill?
2 She knows three words in Italian.
3 I'm/I am taking the bus to work this week, but usually I walk.
4 I'm/I am studying Japanese this year. It's very difficult.
5 Are you watching the television at the moment?
6 I don't/do not remember the name of the hotel.
7 She speaks three languages.
8 The sun's/The sun is shining. It's a beautiful day.

D 1 I don't know. I'm/I am waiting for the 6.15 to Brussels. And you?
2 Yes, me too. Do you live in Brussels?
3 No. I come from Brussels, but I'm/I am studying at university in Paris at the moment.
4 Oh yes? What course are you doing?
5 I'm/I am doing a two-year course in business management.
6 So why are you going to Brussels?
7 All my friends live there, and I often go there at weekends.
8 I don't know many people in Paris. What about you? Do you often go to Brussels?
9 Yes, on business. I'm/I am going to a meeting there today.
10 Oh yes. What kind of job do you do?
11 I work in the Marketing Department of a small company, and I often travel to different towns and cities for meetings.
12 What does your company sell?
13 It makes clocks.
14 Oh look! The train's/The train is coming.

E 1 works, 's/is doing
2 washes
3 tries, plays
4 're/are sitting
5 Do you listen
6 'm/am writing
7 do they drive
8 doesn't/does not get
9 rains, isn't'/s not/is not raining
10 'm/am baking, are you smiling, Am I doing

F 1 Are you sitting
2 know
3 do you live
4 live
5 remembers
6 has
7 wants
8 ask
9 do you say
10 tell
11 see
12 're/are staying
13 Do you like
14 Do you want
15 'm/am staying
16 love
17 don't/do not like
18 's/is always raining
19 's/is shining
20 doesn't/does not shine
21 don't/do not want
22 're/are doing
23 're/are studying
24 speak
25 understand
26 Does your brother
27 doesn't/does not speak
28 's/is he doing
29 Do you know
30 's/is sitting
31 're/are listening

Unit 12
A 1 they were
2 it was
3 were
4 they were
5 there were
6 there was
7 it was

B 1 Was your room comfortable?
2 Was the weather nice?
3 Were the streets full of people?
4 Were the shops expensive?
5 Was the city exciting at night?
6 Were the museums interesting?
7 Were the people friendly?
8 Was your flight OK?

C 1 wasn't small, it was big.
2 weren't French, they were Italian.
3 wasn't red, it was green.
4 weren't expensive, they were cheap.
5 wasn't old, it was new.
6 weren't good, they were bad.

D 1 wasn't
2 Were
3 was
4 were
5 weren't

Unit 11
A 1 Don't touch the lamp!
2 Take an umbrella with you.
3 Sit down for a moment.
4 Don't stop now!
5 Please don't forget about the books.
6 Listen to this new CD.
7 Open the window, please.
8 Put the bag on the table, please.
9 Write your name here.
10 Don't close the door!

B 1 Don't forget
2 turn
3 Be
4 make
5 Bring
6 don't wait
7 Open
8 Have

C 1 Look out!
2 Come in.
3 Don't touch it!
4 Have an orange juice.
5 Don't forget your umbrella.
6 Turn right.
7 Listen to me!
8 Pass the milk, please.

Unit 13
A 1 studied
2
3 met
4
5
6 discovered
7
8 travelled
9
10

B 1 arrived
2 drove
3 decided
4 didn't like
5 visited
6 saw
7 went
8 listened
9 took
10 met

C 1 drove
2 arrived
3 opened
4 Did you find
5 didn't eat
6 heard
7 Did you go
8 didn't see
9 didn't sleep
10 Did you stay

Unit 14
A 1 didn't live
2 lived
3 were you
3 When Jane and Michael were at school, they didn't do much homework.
4 When Anna was a teenager, she wore very long skirts.

E 1 What did Marie Curie discover in 1898? ~ She discovered radium.
2 Where did Michelangelo live? ~ He lived in Florence.
3 When did Thatcher become Prime Minister? ~ She became Prime Minister in 1979.
4 What did Alexander Bell invent? ~ He invented the telephone.
5 How many books did Agatha Christie write? ~ She wrote over a hundred books.
6 When did Neil Armstrong walk on the moon? ~ He walked on the moon in 1969.

F 1 I made friends with a man called István.
2 Sometimes we talked about our ideas for a holiday.
3 We decided to go together to Sopron.
4 We went by train, of course.
5 The journey lasted over 12 hours.
6 Of course, we saw all the famous buildings in Sopron. They were fascinating.
7 But most of all, we enjoyed the delicious Hungarian food.
8 In particular, we ate some mushrooms that were as big as plates.
9 We told everyone about the size of the mushrooms when we got back home.
10 But nobody believed us.

Unit 15
A 1 was writing
2 was Jack doing
3 He was typing
4 were they doing
5 were using
6 was doing
7 was preparing
8 weren't playing
9 was John working
10 was having

B 1 was eating
2 were playing
3 was watching
4 was sitting
5 was writing
6 was brushing
7 was listening
8 was painting

C 1 was living
2 was studying
3 was doing
4 left, was working
5 met, was working
6 was working, met
7 was running
8 was running, married

Unit 16
A 1 The storm started while they were driving home.
2 I saw an accident while I was waiting for the bus.
3 Mary went to several concerts while she was staying in London.
4 My father was cooking the dinner when he burnt his fingers.
5 The soldiers were preparing to leave when the bomb exploded.

B 1 made, was making, arrived, helped
2 designed, started, was working, died
3 escaped, were taking, caught, locked
4 were losing, won
5 sang, played, recorded, was preparing, shot
6 were coming, were hurrying, was standing, grabbed

C 1 did you do
2 you were reading
3 rang
4 were you doing
5 was drinking
6 drank  
7 went  
8 did you put  
9 was raining

D 1 I was sitting in the garden when I heard the news.  
2 I was driving my car when I heard the news.  
3 I was cooking dinner when I heard the news.  
4 I was painting the living-room when I heard the news.  
5 We were eating spaghetti when we heard the news.  
6 We were playing tennis when we heard the news.

E  1 ✔  
   2 was phoning phoned  
   3 ✔  
   4  
   5 ✔  
   6 was  
   7 worked working  
   8 were coming came  
   9 ✔  
   10 were saying said  
   11 ✔  
   12 were arriving arrived  
   13 ✔  
   14 ✔  
   15 ✔  
   16 was stopping stopped  
   17 ✔  
   18 ✔  
   19 were meeting met  
   20 ✔  
   21 were liking liked  
   22 were talking talking  
   23 ✔  
   24 ✔  
   25 were deciding decided  
   26 ✔  
   27 ✔  
   28 ✔  
   29 was rained raining  
   30 were  
   31 ✔  
   32 ✔  
   33 ✔  
   34 were making made  
   35 ✔

F I left my office at ten yesterday morning, and I went to Mary Harlow's hotel. While I was waiting near the hotel, I had a cup of coffee and I bought a newspaper. I saw Mary at eleven. She left the hotel and (she) turned right. She was walking fast and she was smoking (a cigarette). I followed her for ten minutes. She was going into Central Park when she saw me. She looked at me for a moment, but (she) didn't stop. She bought a cup of coffee and (she) sat down. It was a beautiful day. Some people were eating hamburgers under the trees, others were listening to music. After ten minutes, a man sat down next to Mary and (he) began a conversation with her. While they were talking, she smoked three cigarettes. The man was not her husband.

3 How many times has Melanie played for the tennis team? – She's played twelve times for the tennis team.

4 How many times has Connie played for the tennis team? – She's never played for the tennis team.

Unit 17

A 1 've/have eaten some sandwiches  
   2 's/has repaired her bike  
   3 's/has given me some money  
   4 have done their homework  
   5 's/has broken the camera  
   6 's/has started to rain  
   7 's/has passed his driving test  
   8 have arrived  
   9 've/have closed the doors  
   10 've/have drunk all the Coca-Cola

B 1 done  
   2 travelled  
   3 visited  
   4 driven  
   5 flown  
   6 worked  
   7 stayed  
   8 swum  
   9 written  
   10 eaten  

Unit 18

C 1 hasn't/has not flown  
   2 has stayed  
   3 hasn't/has not swum  
   4 has eaten  
   5 hasn't/has not made  
   6 has had

Unit 20

A 1 I've/ have just come  
   2 I've/ have just sold  
   3 She's/ She's has just finished  
   4 I've/ have just had

   5 they've/ they have just moved
   6 I've/ I have just bought
I've/I have just had

gone 4 been
2 gone 5 been
3 been 6 gone

Somebody has opened the garage door.
2 Somebody has eaten all the biscuits.
3 Somebody has broken the kitchen window.
4 Somebody has stolen Mary's watch.

He's/He has already made copies of the letter.
2 He hasn't/He has not put the copies in the envelopes yet.
3 He's/He has already written the text of the advertisement.
4 He hasn't/He has not sent the advertisement to the paper yet.

never, been 4 ever, never
2 yet 5 yet, just
3 gone

ve/have lost
2 's/has bought
3 've/have made
4 hasn't/has not happened

and Péter have walked along Hadrian's Wall.
2 and Péter haven't visited York.
3 and Péter have seen the Beatles Museum.
4 hasn't taken a boat trip on the River Thames, but Péter has.
5 and Péter have been to Shakespeare's birthplace.
6 has visited Canterbury Cathedral, but Péter hasn't.

A: How many times has Mary seen that film?
B: ✔
2 A: What has Ron done today?
B: ✔
3 A: ✔
B: Yes, she has.
4 A: Have you ever been to Paris?
B: No, I've never travelled outside Hungary.
5 A: Has it stopped raining yet?
B: Yes, it has already stopped.

JENNY: Have you ever been to Jupiter?

Diana: No, I haven't been there yet. Have you?
JENNY: No, but my friend Dan was there in February.
Diana: Has he told you anything about it?
JENNY: Yes, he says that Jupiter is boring.
Diana: I've just returned from Mars. It was fantastic.
JENNY: I've never worked on Mars.
Diana: Really? It's a beautiful planet. I've already been there six times.
JENNY: I like Saturn.
Diana: I haven't been that far away yet. Why do you like it?
JENNY: I love the rings! Steve is so lucky. He's been there three times.
Diana: Where else would you like to travel?
JENNY: To Pluto.
Diana: Oh dear, I think I need a strong drink.

B: I've sold/have sold/have sold my ticket.
A: When did you sell it?

Have you changed your hair?
2 It was blonde when I was at school.
3 You didn't wear glasses at school, did you?
4 You've forgotten.
5 You danced all night long!
6 you asked me to dance!
7 you said, 'No.'
8 I've travelled all over the world.
9 I've met interesting people.
10 I've learnt five languages!
11 I went to Italy two years ago.
12 I learnt to type last year.
13 I stopped dancing after school.
14 Have you eaten in that new Japanese restaurant?

When did you visit your sister?
2 Where did you go on holiday last year?
3 What have you made?
4 Why did you leave the restaurant?
5 Who did you write to?
6 How long have you been here?

Happened
2 saw
3 took
4 thought
5 was
6 decided
7 Have you enjoyed
8 has been
9 has been
10 got
11 was
12 attracted
13 Have you had
14 've/have met
15 've/have said

Unit 21

A 1 won 4 died
2 transmitted 5 divorced
3 went

B 1 I met Brian
2 I was in the garden
3 she loved swimming.
4 I bought these shoes
5 he had very long hair.
6 he smiled.

C 1 Don't know. 5 Yes.
2 Yes. 6 Don't know.
3 Yes. 7 Don't know.
4 Don't know. 8 Yes.

D 1 B: his wife's had/has had a baby boy.
A: When did she have the baby?
2 B: Alison's broken/has broken my camera.
A: How did she break it?
3 B: My bicycle's disappeared/has disappeared.
A: Where did you leave it?
4 B: He's lost/has lost his jacket.
A: When did he lose it?
5 B: I've passed/have passed my exam.
A: What mark did you get?
6 B: I've bought/have bought a new car.
A: Where did you get it?

Unit 22

A 1 won, 've/have won
2 's/has made, did not make
3 was, 's/has been
4 did not work, 's/has worked
5 've/have earned, earned
6 did not rain, has not rained
7 wrote, has not written
8 has not visited, visited
9 has not snowed, snowed
1. studied, wrote
2. has developed, has made
3. worked, spent
4. has won, has earned
5. has worked, has arrested
6. played, sang

C 1. Ben stopped smoking five years ago.
2. Jane has lived in Bristol since last year.
3. Anna got married three weeks ago.
4. Mary has had a car for six months.
5. Pat has been ill for 24 hours.
6. Charles started this job a one month ago.
7. Kate has had a driving licence since last year.
8. Tom has been unemployed for two months.

D 1. ago 5. since
2. since 6. ago
3. for 7. since
4. since 8. for

E 1. met
2. took
3. 've/have never seen
4. got
5. saw
6. had
7. was
8. saw
9. haven't/have not met
10. broke
11. 've/have said
12. arrived
13. 've/have already started

F 1. Jane Austen was born in 1775. She wrote novels, and lived in London and Bath. Her books, for example Sense and Sensibility, have also influenced today's literature.
2. Most English people have read books by Charles Dickens, for example David Copperfield. This novel describes life in London in the nineteenth century.
3. George Orwell wrote Animal Farm and 1984. He died in 1950. His books have changed people's ideas about society.
4. Sean Connery is an actor. He has made hundreds of films. He became famous as James Bond in the films of the 1960s.

5. Margaret Thatcher was Prime Minister from 1979 to 1990. She was the first British woman Prime Minister. When she left politics, she wrote her autobiography.
6. Andrew Lloyd Webber has written some very popular musicals, for example Cats and Phantom of the Opera. His first successful show was Jesus Christ Superstar.

Unit 23

A 1. I went
2. Did you like
3. I enjoyed
4. did you do
5. I visited
6. Have you been
7. I've booked

B 1. I didn't/didn't recognize
2. you came
3. I've/have grown
4. you knew
5. you've/have grown
6. I grew
7. did we meet
8. It was
9. We talked
10. I stopped
11. What happened
12. We had
13. He wasn't/was not
14. Have you seen
15. I haven't/have not kept
16. I've/have seen
17. They got
18. I didn't/did not know
19. they kept
20. I asked
21. she said

C 1. started
2. built
3. went
4. pulled
5. have opened
6. opened
7. went
8. opened
9. began
10. have built

D 1. did you finish
2. came
3. have you lived
4. moved
5. 've/have been
6. left
7. Have you seen
8. haven't/have not seen

E 1. How many shows have you done?
2. Which cities have you played in?
3. How many shows did you do in Atlanta?
4. How many people came to your Saturday night show in Atlanta?
5. Have you met any American singers since you arrived?
6. Where did you see Joe? In Chicago?
7. Did you play some music with Joe in Chicago?
8. How long have you been here in New York?

F 1. Monica has arrived in New York three days ago. She has played in cities all over America. 20,000 people have attended her Saturday night show in Atlanta. She has spent time with several American singers. She has visited Joe Satino in Chicago two weeks ago. She has played and recorded music with him. Last week she sold 10,000 copies of her new record. But she looks tired. She has had a busy time in New York. Today she has already talked to ten journalists, and it's only 4 p.m.!

C 1. 've/have phoned
2. had
3. didn't you leave
4. 've/have done
5. 've/have been
6. 've/have never been
7. 've/have done
8. Have you met?
9. Did you play
10. recorded
11. saw
12. 've/have just bought

Unit 24

A 1. Louise has been studying
2. She's been/has been sitting
3. she's been/has been complaining
4. William's been/has been trying
5. He's been/has been looking
6. he's been/has been going
7. Mike's been/has been spending
8. he's been/he has been getting
9. I've been/have been getting
10. I've been/have been reading
I’ve been/have been buying
I’ve been/have been saving

1. has been tidying
2. has been washing
3. has been digging
4. have been watching
5. have been making
6. has been reading
7. have been using
8. have been working

It’s/has been raining since three o’clock.
He’s/has been playing chess since he was ten.
I’ve/have been working since eight o’clock.
Helen’s/has been looking for another job for two months.
We’ve/have been waiting (here) for two hours.

have been making a cake.
has been wrapping presents.
has been decorating the tree.
has been shopping for food.
has been writing cards.

British women have been voting in general elections since 1928.
People have been using the London Underground since 1863.
People have been watching TV for 50 years.
Scientists have been exploring space since 1957.
Audiences have been enjoying Shakespeare’s plays for 300 years.
People have been listening to rock and roll since the 1950s.
People have been playing rugby for over 150 years.
The British Royal Family have been living at Buckingham Palace since Victorian times.
People have been paying by credit card since the 1970s.
Oxford University has been educating students since the thirteenth century.

Why have you been running?
What have you been eating?
Where have you been sleeping?
How long have you been studying physics?
Have you been waiting long?
What have you been reading?

Who have you been talking to?
Where have you been shopping?

Unit 25

1. have replied
2. have said
3. I’ve/have been thinking
4. I’ve/have decided
5. I haven’t/have not seen
6. I’ve/have been doing
7. I’ve/have heard
8. I have changed
9. I’ve/have moved
10. I’ve/have been decorating
11. I haven’t/have not finished
12. I’ve/has lost

I’ve/have been doing the washing-up.
I’ve/has peeled
I’ve/have been cutting the grass.
I’ve/has swept
I’ve/have been peeling the onions.
I’ve/has done the washing-up.

Unit 26

hadn’t/had not booked
had spent
had got up
hadn’t/had not done
had won
had forgotten
had left
hadn’t/had not heard
had disappeared
hadn’t/had not brought
hadn’t/had not rained

He had cleaned the flat.
He hadn’t/he had not bought anything to drink.
He had had a shower.

He had changed his clothes.
He had started making dinner.
He hadn’t/he had not finished making dinner.

I had done the course, I was able to speak the language well.
he had done all his work, he went home.
everyone had left, I went to bed.
she had had a glass of water, she felt better.
he had done the washing-up, he listened to some music.
Steve had saved enough money, he bought a new motorbike.
I had discussed the problem with a friend.
she had finished speaking.
the guests had left.

had never ridden a horse
had already run in five marathons
had never written a poem
had never appeared on TV
had already played tennis at Wimbledon four times
had already written two novels

When the firemen arrived, we had already put the fire out.
When the manager came back, Jim had already finished the work.
When Philip telephoned, I had already gone to bed.
When their children came home, Alice and Jack had already had lunch.
When his wife got home from work, Ian had already made dinner.
The thieves had already spent the money, when the police caught them.

had just gone out.
had been to Cambridge.
had made some sandwiches.
had met her in Amsterdam.
had ever been to Japan.
had finished the job.
had already found the problem.
had sold.
Unit 28
A 1 used to eat, he eats
2 used to drink, she drinks
3 eats, she used to eat
4 eats, she used to eat
5 Did Robert use to eat
6 Did Mary use to eat
7 Did Pamela use to drink
8 didn’t use to eat
9 didn’t use to eat
10 didn’t use to drink

B 1 ✓
2 ✓
3 Paul used to go to the cinema almost every weekend.
4 Did Pamela used to go to the concert last night?
5 ✓
6 John used to spend a lot of money on that new jacket he bought last week.
7 Kate didn’t use to come to school yesterday because she was sick.
8 ✓
9 ✓
10 ✓

C 1 Dan used to play the violin, but now he plays the guitar.
2 Anna used to be best friends with Angela, but now she’s/ she is best friends with Cathy.
3 Susan used to have dancing lessons, but now she has riding lessons.

Unit 29
A 1 The children had cleaned the flat before their parents came home.
2 Two young men had caught the thief before the police car appeared.
3 Some volunteers had moved the car before the rescue truck arrived.

B 1 They’d been saving up to buy a flat for a year.
2 They’d been planning the wedding day since January.
3 Ian had been working as a teacher since 2003.
4 Rosemarie had been running her own business for six months.
5 They’d been organizing their honeymoon since April.
6 They’d been talking about the wedding for ages!

C 1 I’d had been singing in public for over ten years.
2 How long had you been recording songs when you had your first hit?
3 I’d been had been recording songs for five years.
4 How many records had you made?
5 I’d had made three CDs but none of them had sold very well.
6 Had you given up hope that you would succeed?
7 Well, I’d been had been working hard for years and years but I hadn’t had not earned much money.
8 So, I’d had been thinking of giving up when I finally had a hit record.

Unit 30
A 1 didn’t did not go, was
2 haven’t have not had
3 was talking, rang
4 Have you decided
5 Did you see, did he say
6 ’ve been have been trying

B 1 Where were you going when you met Jenny?
2 Did our players play well?
3 How long have you lived here?
4 When did Einstein die?
5 How long have you been waiting?
6 What time did you go to bed last night?

C 1 Sally stopped eating meat five years ago.
2 Mary has lived in Canada since 2000.
3 They got married six years ago.
4 My sister has had a driving licence for nine months.
5 Peter has had flu for a week.
6 Colin came to live here in 1999.

D 1 has been digging
2 have you smoked
3 Has he finished, has been writing
4 have been mending
5 has been eating
6 have collected
My grandfather was only thirteen when he started to work. Our team didn't play very well last year but this year we've already won five matches. What were the children doing when you got home? The children have been at Lake Balaton since the beginning of the summer. The workers are very tired because they've been working hard all day. Susie phoned last night and she said she had passed the exam. My mother was a simple shop-assistant but she's been the shop manager since 1999. Sheila used to play tennis a lot, but she hasn't played for years.

Unit 31

A
1. I'm going to travel
2. I'm not going to work
3. I'm going to marry
4. I'm going to have
5. I'm going to become
6. I'm going to win
7. I'm going to play
8. I'm not going/aren't going to cook
9. I'm going to eat

B
1. I'm going to travel
2. I'm going to buy
3. I'm going to visit
4. Are you going to go
5. I'm going to start
6. I'm going to travel
7. Are you going to see
8. I'm not going to go
9. I'm going to stop
10. Are you going to stay
11. I'm not going to stay
12. I'm not going to have

C
1. They're going to watch a film.
2. She's going to have a swim.
3. He's going to play the piano.
4. They're going to eat a pizza.
5. She's not going/She isn't going to win the race.
6. It's going to rain.
7. They're not going/They aren't going to play tennis.

Unit 32

A
1. shall
2. won't
3. Let's
4. will
5. will, won't
6. Let's
7. Shall we

B
1. I'll open a window.
2. I'll give you some money.
3. I'll make you a sandwich.
4. I'll phone for a taxi.
5. I'll ask her to phone you tonight.
6. I'll go with you.

C
1. Shall I
2. Let's, shall we
3. Shall we
4. Shall I

D
1. Will you help me to wash the car? ~ Yes, I'll help you.
2. Let's have a game of chess.
3. What shall I wear? Shall I wear my black dress?
4. Don't worry. I'll phone grandfather this afternoon.
5. Péter won't answer this question.
6. I'm tired. Let's go to bed.

Unit 33

A
1. I'm eating in a new restaurant tonight.
2. I'm going to a concert next Tuesday.
3. I'm going to the doctor tomorrow.
4. I'm flying to Florida in August.
5. I'm seeing Mary this weekend.
B 1 She’s/She is going
2 She’s/She is playing
3 She’s/She is going
4 She’s/She is having
5 She’s/She is meeting
6 She’s/She is seeing
7 are going/coming
8 She isn’t/’s not/is not doing

C 1 it takes place
2 does it start
3 the doors open
4 Who’s/Who is playing
5 They’re/They are singing
6 She’s/She is playing
7 They’re/They are singing
8 Is anyone else performing
9 They’re/They are dancing
10 am I doing
11 You’re/You are collecting
12 you’re/you are introducing

Unit 34
A 1 ’s/is going to land
2 ’s/is going to take
3 ’s/is going to jump
4 ’s/is going to knock
5 ’s/is going to catch

B 1 I’ll give you a lift.
2 I’ll phone you tonight, I promise.
3 I’ll buy the tickets for both of us, and I’ll meet you at the concert hall.
4 I’ll lend you my umbrella.

C 1 I’m/i am going to watch
2 are you going to eat, I’ll cook
3 I’m/i am going to buy, are you going to get, I’m/i am going to look, I’ll come
4 I’m/i am going to leave, I’ll see
5 I’m/i am going to phone
6 I’m/i am going to travel

D 1 a You look hot, I’ll open a window.
2 f Thursday is no good for me, I’m afraid. I’m going to meet the new manager of our Tokyo office.
3 b Next year, we’re going to enter the Japanese market.
4 c Thanks, I’ll have an orange juice.
5 d Have a rest, I’ll do the photocopying.

E 1 Nothing much but I’m going to start a new job soon.
2 Thanks, I’ll have a sandwich.
3 I’m going to do some shopping tomorrow and I’m going to go for a swim on Sunday.
4 She’s going to sing, I’m afraid.
5 No, but I’m sure you’ll enjoy it.
6 David is going to give me a lift.

F 1 ✔ 6 I’m going to write
2 ✔ I’m going to 7 ✔
3 ✔ I’m going to 8 ✔
4 ✔ 9 ✔
5 ✔ 10 ✔

G 1 is going to buy, is going to write
2 is taking
3 is going to tidy
4 is going to buy, is playing
5 is going to do
6 is going to wash, is meeting

Unit 35
A 1 will beat 4 will beat
2 will lose to 5 will lose to
3 will draw with

B 1 I’m/i am going
2 are you catching
3 I’m/i am meeting
4 are you meeting
5 we’re/we are meeting
6 we’re/we are going
7 I’m/i am having
8 are you doing
9 I’m/i am helping
10 are you coming
11 I’m/i am catching

C 1 A: Are you going to see the new James Bond film?
   B: I’m going to buy a ticket this afternoon.
2 A: Are you going to clean the car?
   B: Mum is going to take it to the car wash.
3 A: It’s going to rain this afternoon.
   B: I’m going to take my umbrella.
4 A: What are you going to study at university next year?
   B: I’m going to study medicine.

D 1 I’m going to see her
2 I’ll go to the hairdresser’s
3 ’s going to have a shower
4 I’ll take it to the car wash

E 1 ✔
2 Shall we go
3 ✔
4 shall I come
5 Are you going (to go)
6 ✔ (VAGY I’m going to go)
7 does the train leave
8 ✔ I’ll give
9 ✔
10 ✔
11 ✔
12 I’m going
13 ✔
14 I’ll meet

F 1 Mark is going to climb Mount Everest in March.
2 Mark is going to drive across the Sahara in May.
3 Mark is going to sail across the Pacific in July.
4 Mark is going to fly over the Amazon in September.
5 Mark is going to walk across the Antarctic in November.

G 1 We’re/We are flying
2 We’re/We are staying
3 We’re/We are visiting
4 We’re/We are taking
5 We’re/We are having
6 We’re/We are seeing
7 We’re/We are leaving

H 1 there won’t/will not be any shops.
2 they’ll/will speak the language!
3 people won’t/will not have to go abroad.
4 Will people get sick?
5 We won’t/will not eat normal food

I Dear Carol,

I’m going to take a short holiday next week. I’m going to stay in a little hotel near Lake Wondermire. Of course, I haven’t really got enough money to have a holiday but I’m going to take the train - it’ll be cheaper than the car - and I’m sure they’ll accept my credit card at the hotel. (But I won’t have enough money to eat in restaurants.)
There's an important meeting on Monday, but of course, I won't be at work. I don't think anybody will miss me.
I'm coming back on Saturday, I think the train gets in at about five. I'll give you a ring then.
With best wishes/From/Love from etc.
Philip

Unit 36
A 1 until
2 when
3 When
4 after/when
5 until
6 until
7 when
8 As soon as/When
B 1 'll wait, arrive
2 'll see, go
3 'll phone, know
4 'll do, have
5 'll enjoy, get
6 'll tell, see
7 'll wait, come
8 'll book, go

Unit 38
A 1 The film is going to start.
2 She's going to have a shower.
3 The sun is going to come out.
4 They're going to order a meal.
5 They're not going to get home quickly.
6 He's going to make an omelette.
7 She's not going to talk to him.
B 1 I'm going / I go
2 I'm staying / I stay
3 I hire / I'm going to hire
4 I drive / I'm going to drive
5 does your flight leave / will your flight have left
6 I'm going to get / I'll get
7 The plane lands / The plane will land
8 is your trip ending / does your trip end
9 I arrive / I'll arrive
10 I'm not doing / I won't do

Unit 37
A 1 I will have been coming to this college for a year.
2 I will have been going out with my girlfriend for six months.
3 I will have been doing my part-time job for two weeks.
4 My brother will have been living in my flat for six months.
5 We will have been sitting here for three hours!
B 1 will have done
2 will have eaten
3 will have washed
4 will have doubled
5 will have installed
6 will have sold
C 1 will have been waiting
2 will have been working
3 will have been making
4 will have been doing
5 will have been standing
6 will have been dancing

D 1 were going to clean
2 was going to buy
3 was going to go
4 were going to watch
5 was going to visit
6 was going to have

E 1 I'm having supper with Ted on Friday evening. I'm going to make some cakes on Saturday afternoon.
2 I'm playing tennis with Sara on Saturday evening. I'm going to clean the flat on Sunday morning.
3 I'm having a piano lesson with Bob on Sunday afternoon. I'm going to go to bed early on Sunday evening.

F 1 'll be working
2 'll be having
3 'll be lying
4 'll be doing
5 'll be getting

G 1 will have installed
2 will have competed
3 will have taken
4 will you have finished, won't have finished

H 1 I will have been teaching for ten years.
2 I will have been lifting boxes all day.
3 She will have been working for the firm for forty years.
4 will have been sitting in front of the government building for two weeks.

I 1 was going to call
2 was going to have
3 were going to arrange
4 was going to suggest
5 was going to be
6 was going to tell
7 was going to invite

J 1 am going to work
2 am going to come
3 will be
4 will have been performing
5 will have heard
6 am going to study
7 is going to open
8 will be performing
9 will be
10 will study
Unit 39

A 1 find, on
2 I, beautiful
3 badly, match
4 You, must
5 pass, easily
6 carefully, in
7 Saturday, Do
8 sick, at

B 1 The children were not awake.
2 Where have all the flowers gone?
3 We did not see the film.
4 What are those boys doing?
5 Insects do not eat meat.
6 Where do elephants live?
7 Terry can play the piano.
8 Does your sister study chemistry?

C 1 Cats are not good swimmers.
2 Where can (VAGY did) we sit?
3 The weather has not been good.
4 When did they send the letter?
5 ✔
6 What is Philip watching?
7 What time did you have lunch?
8 ✔
9 Which films have you seen?
10 ✔

D 1 A: Will you eat the meat?
   B: Yes, but I wouldn't like the eggs.
2 A: Is your sister a teacher?
   B: No, she works in an office.
3 A: Where does Tibor live?
   B: I don't know where he lives.
4 A: Have you seen Marika?
   B: No, I haven't seen her.
5 A: What did that man say?
   B: He didn't say a word.

C 1 Where does she live?
2 Who is the boy in the photo?
3 Why is John going out?
4 What does Jack drink in the morning?
5 When are they going to the cinema?
6 How did they cut the paper?
7 Whose bicycle is it? (VAGY Whose is this bicycle?)
8 Where do elephants live?
9 When (VAGY What time) does Sara go to bed?
10 What are they playing?

D 1 Here is an apple and a peach. Which would you like?
2 Whose is this coat on the chair?
3 Who is your favourite singer?
4 Which picture do you prefer, this modern one or the old one?

Unit 40

A 1 ✔
2 The film was brilliant.
3 Michael has not come.
4 ✔
5 Does Jack play the trombone?
6 What languages can Margaret speak?
7 ✔
8 When did Alice go to Paris?

B 1 When did you arrive?
2 Who did you come with?
3 Who is/Who's that man over there?
4 How did you get here?
5 Who invited you?
6 What would you like to eat?
7 Which wine/drink do you prefer?
8 Whose glass is this?/Which glass is yours?
9 When are you leaving?
10 How are you going home?

C 1 How often
2 How old
3 How big
4 How much
5 How long

D 1 How often do you travel abroad?
2 How long have you been working for that company?
3 How far is it to your office from your home?
4 How much do you earn?
5 How many people work in your department?
6 How successful is your company?
Unit 43

A 1 Who wants some more coffee?
2 What happened at the end of the story?
3 Who is going to pay the bill?
4 What did he have for breakfast?
5 What did their letter say?
6 Who knows the answer to my question?
7 What did they see?
8 Who is she phoning?

B 1 Who went on the trip?
2 What's happening in this film?
3 Who are you going to phone?
4 What did you watch on TV last night?
5 Who sent these flowers?
6 What did you buy in that shop?

C 1 What happened?
2 Who took his driving test?
3 What did Robert fail?
4 What did Robert say to Philip?
5 Who met Linda for coffee?

D 1 won the Nobel Prize
2 did Marconi invent
3 climbed Everest
4 did Prince Charles marry
5 destroyed Hiroshima
6 did Churchill smoke
7 did France beat

Unit 45

A 1 Which of these books is Sally reading?
2 What does Jane have for breakfast?
3 Who did you see at the station?
4 Which does Mary prefer, tea or coffee?
5 What are you studying at university?
6 Which of these two books are you buying?
7 Who are they inviting to their party?

B 1 when are we going to go?
2 What do we need to do next?
3 Which hotel do you prefer?
4 Why have you chosen that one?
5 Who's/Who is going to make the booking?

C 1 g
2 a
3 e
4 b

D 1 Where is Jack going (by car)?
2 How is Jack going to Portsmouth?
3 How is Jill's father?
4 What did Ann buy?
5 Why did Ann buy the small picture?
6 Whose daughter is working in America?
7 Where is Mary's daughter working?
8 Who brought the drinks?
9 What did Mary and Tom bring?

E 1 How did you find out about this job?
2 Which paper was it?
3 How often do you read the Guardian?
4 When did you finish secondary school?
5 What did you study at university?
6 Why would you like to work for us?
7 How many countries have you visited?

F 1 When's/When is Lucy going to come?
2 Whose car did they borrow?
3 How long did they live here (for)?
4 How many compact discs has Michael got?
5 How does Pam go to work?
6 Why did they stop working?
7 How far is the coast (from here)?

G 1 a Who's/Who is Jack going to help?
2 b Who's/Who is going to help Susan?
3 a How many prizes did John win?
4 b Who won three prizes?
5 a Which machine makes the boxes?
6 b What does the machine in the corner make?

H 1 a purse is this?
2 b lost this/a purse?
3 a car is this?
4 b parked their car in my space?
5 a ten pound note is this?
6 b dropped a ten pound note?

I 1 What does Martin look like?
He's small and muscular, and he has short dark hair. What sport does he like?
He likes football.
2 What does Sarah look like?
She's tall and slim/athletic, and she has short blonde hair. What sport does she like?
She likes swimming.
3 What does Tom look like?
He's tall and slim/athletic, and he has long dark hair. What sport does he like?
He likes basketball.
Unit 47

A 1 didn’t you? 4 didn’t it?
   2 don’t you? 5 wasn’t it?
   3 aren’t you? 6 did they?
   4 isn’t it? 7 is there?
   5 does it? 8 is it?

B 1 can’t I 4 did I
   2 will it 5 wasn’t it
   3 was he 6 didn’t they
   4 isn’t it? 7 don’t they?
   5 haven’t you? 8 won’t I?
   3 can you?

C 1 speak French (very well), can’t you?
   2 heard this story, have you?
   3 to Frank’s party, didn’t you?
   4 very far from here, is it?
   5 be angry, will she?

Unit 49

A 1 A: Can he see the hills?
   B: Yes, he can.
   A: Can he see the sea?
   B: No, he can’t. He can see
   the hills, but he can’t see
   the sea.
   2 A: Can they speak
   Japanese?
   B: No, they can’t.
   A: Can they speak French?
   B: Yes, they can. They can’t
   speak Japanese, but they
   can speak French.
   3 A: Can he eat the chips?
   B: Yes, he can.
   A: Can he eat the fish?
   B: No, he can’t. He can eat
   the chips, but he can’t eat
   the fish.

B 1 couldn’t
   2 can’t
   3 can’t
   4 couldn’t
   5 can
   6 can’t
   8 couldn’t
   9 couldn’t, couldn’t
   10 couldn’t
   11 could
   12 can’t
   13 can’t
   14 could
   15 can
   16 can’t

C 1 were able to
   2 were able to
   3 was able to
ride a bicycle. Now she's having swimming lessons, and she can swim a little. Carol is teaching her to ride a bicycle. She can ride her bicycle around the garden, and soon she'll be able to ride it to the shops with Carol. Carol's grandfather is seventy. When he was young, he could run in marathons and play tennis. Now he can't run as much, but he can swim and he goes for long walks. He can exercise, too.

Unit 50

A 1 Can I have a glass of orange juice, please?
2 Can we listen to your new CD?
3 Can I use your phone, please?
4 May I borrow your camera tomorrow?
5 Could you pass the menu, please?
6 Can you post this letter for me?

B 1 Can I have two melons, please?
2 Can I have some fish and chips, please?
3 Could I have a single room, please?
4 Could I have a map of the town, please?

C 1 Can I borrow your pen?
2 Can I turn on the TV, please?
3 May I close the window?
4 May I use your photocopier, please?

D 1 Could you carry one of these cases?
2 Could you tell me the way to Buckingham Palace, please?
3 Can you tell me the time?

Unit 51

A 1 must 7 must
2 must 8 mustn't
3 mustn't 9 mustn't
4 mustn't 10 must
5 must 11 must
6 must 12 mustn't

B 1 You must not take
2 You must pay
3 You must vacate
4 You must not ask

C 1 I mustn't dance all night.
2 I must run every morning.
3 I mustn't sleep in the afternoon.
4 I mustn't watch TV all day.
5 I must visit my grandmother.
6 I must study in the evening.

Unit 52

A 1 don't have to deal with
2 don't have to work
3 have to work
4 have to work
5 have to work
6 don't have to work
7 have to wear
8 don't have to wear

B 1 I didn't have to work
2 Do I have to do
3 I had to run
4 I had to go
5 Did you have to show
6 Do/Will I have to pay
7 You don't/won't have to decide
8 I had to wait

C 1 You have to fill in an application form.
2 Do I have to give you a photograph?
3 No, you don't have to give me anything, except the money!
4 We had to do some English tests.
5 How many questions did you have to answer?
6 We had to answer about 40 grammar questions.
7 Did you have to speak in English?
8 No, but we'll have to/ we have to do that next week.
must have
mustn’t tell
must buy

1 You mustn’t take
2 You mustn’t make
3 You mustn’t write
4 You must arrive
5 You must bring

1 Does Jim have to go to the doctor’s? — Yes, he does.
2 Do we have to show our passports? — Yes, we do.
3 Does Linda have to pay? — No, she doesn’t.
4 Do they have to do all this work today? — Yes, they do.

1 has 5 must
2 Does she 6 does she
3 have to 7 mustn’t
4 she has

1 don’t have to
2 mustn’t
3 don’t have to
4 mustn’t
5 mustn’t
6 don’t have to
7 mustn’t
8 don’t have to
9 don’t have to
10 mustn’t

1 must, don’t have to
2 don’t have to, mustn’t
3 mustn’t, don’t have to
4 must

1 You have to be sixteen (years old) to buy cigarettes. True.
2 If you fail, if you don’t pass your school exams, you have to repeat the year. False.
3 When you go from London to Paris, you don’t have to take your passport. False.
4 You have to be eighteen (years old) to buy a lottery ticket. False. You have to be sixteen.
5 You have to get a licence if you want to keep a dog. False.
6 You mustn’t smoke in (any) pubs or restaurants. False. You mustn’t smoke in some, but you can in others.
7 If you ride a motorbike you have to wear a crash helmet. True.

1 must earn £60,000 a year

1 The tennis racket could be for James or Susan. It can’t be for anyone else.
2 The camera must be for Susan. It can’t be for anyone else.
3 The paints and brushes must be for James. They can’t be for anyone else.
4 The skiing clothes must be for Jill. They can’t be for anyone else.
5 The books could be for Peter or Jill. They can’t be for Susan or James.
6 The cricket bat must be for Peter. It can’t be for anyone else.

SERVANT: The prince says that I have to find the owner of this shoe. A beautiful girl lost it at the ball last night. If we find her, the prince will marry her. The lucky girl will be a princess. Do you want to try it on, ladies?
1ST STEPSISTER: It must be mine! Give it to me! Look! It’s exactly my size!
2ND STEPSISTER: You must be mad! It can’t be your shoe. Your feet are enormous, and this shoe is small, just like my feet. It must be my shoe. I’m sure I lost it at the ball.
SERVANT: Sorry, miss. This shoe can’t be yours. Your feet are too big. Is there another girl in this house, or shall I (go and) ask your neighbours?
1ST STEPSISTER: Well, there’s only Cinderella...
SERVANT: Cinderella? Where is she?
1ST STEPSISTER: Oh, I don’t know. She must be in the kitchen.
2ND STEPSISTER: She may be in the garden.
SERVANT: Call her immediately. She must try on this shoe. She may be the girl that the prince is looking for. She might be the new princess!
STEPSISTERS: Oh no! She can’t be the princess! There must be some mistake!

Unit 54

A 1 must like
2 can’t come
3 can’t belong
4 can’t live
5 must have
6 must remember
7 can’t want
8 must spend

B 1 might buy
2 might be
3 might go
4 mightn’t/might not go
5 mightn’t/might not come
6 might stay
7 might be, might be
8 mightn’t/might not be
9 mightn’t/might not be
10 might find

C 1 it can’t be, it could be
2 it can’t be, it could be
3 it can’t be, it could be
4 it could be, it can’t be
5 it must be Smith.

D 1 may not/might not come.
2 can’t live near here.
3 may/might be in the garage.
4 must take the train.
5 may/might pay for the concert tickets.
6 may not/might not be willing to help us.
7 may/might go abroad.

E 1 might go to Portugal
2 must cost a lot of money
3 may come this weekend
4 can’t be very interested
5 must work long hours
6 might be at the gym, might also be at the shops

Unit 55

A 1 can’t have been
2 must have bought
3 must have retired
Unit 57

A 1 ought to
2 shouldn't
3 had better not

B 1 shouldn't move the person yourself, should call an ambulance
2 should give you a new cup
3 shouldn't let him eat so much, should make him do lots of sport
4 shouldn't touch anything, should leave everything where it is
5 shouldn't drive home in her car, should ask someone to take her
6 shouldn't borrow money

C 1 they'd/they had better clear everything away
2 we'd/we had better take our umbrellas.
3 I'd/I had better go to bed early too.

Unit 59

A 1 didn't/did not have to, had to
2 did you have to, had to
3 Did you have to, had to
4 did you have to, had to, didn't/did not have to
5 Did they have to, didn't/did not have to, had to

B 1 should have got
2 shouldn't have started
3 shouldn't have got married
4 should have

C 1 Colin had to work on Sunday.
2 Joan didn't have to work on Sunday.
3 Derek should have worked on Sunday.
4 Mary didn't have to work on Saturday.
5 Brian should have worked on Saturday.
6 Daniel had to work on Saturday.
7 Joan should have worked on Saturday.
8 Derek didn't have to work on Saturday.

Unit 60

A 1 must he stay
2 does she have to leave
3 should he see
4 did he have to pay
5 house might he have been at
6 can she play the piano
7 (of white paint) does she need
8 should he have gone to the bank

B 1 can't, will be able to
2 could, can't
3 can, won't be able to
4 can't, will be able to
5 can, couldn't
6 could, can

C 1 d, f
2 a, g, h
3 c, d
4 d, i
5 b, e
6 a, g, h
7 b, e
8 d, f

D 1 must
2 don't have to
3 mustn't
4 mustn't
5 don’t have to
6 must
7 must
8 mustn’t
9 don’t have to
10 must
11 mustn’t
12 don’t have to

E 1 should have bought
2 had to get
3 had to go
4 should have taken
5 should have phoned
6 had to finish

F 1 can’t live
2 might have bought
3 must have taken
4 must know
5 might give
6 can’t have spoken

G 1 should 9 should have
2 could 10 couldn’t
3 might have 11 ought
4 had better 12 could
5 will have to 13 need
6 must have 14 can
7 have to 15 need
8 must

H 1 must be
2 might do
3 can we ask
4 should we wait
5 had better save
6 might forget
7 should be
8 can’t be
9 mustn’t be
10 must work
11 You can get
12 should write down
13 have to hand
14 won’t be able to

I 1 Anna has to work from eight a.m. to four p.m.
2 Could you open the door for me please?
3 You’d better not eat so much.
4 If you’re ill, you don’t have to do gymnastics.
5 You mustn’t park here, let’s take the other street.
6 I think you should tell your mother that you’ve broken the cup.
7 We needn’t have hurried because the concert started later.
8 Jack couldn’t speak to the manager because he had left.

9 I didn’t need to pay for anything: everything was free.
10 We needed more time to finish the work.

Unit 61
A 1 they’ve got
2 have they got
3 They’ve not got/They haven’t got
4 has the man got
5 He’s got
6 has the woman got
B 1 have
2 doesn’t have
3 have
4 don’t have
5 has
6 hasn’t
7 have
8 doesn’t have
C 1 she’s got a flat in Edinburgh.
2 Have you got a headache?
3 She hasn’t got blonde hair.
4 Do you have a holiday every year?
5 I haven’t got a car.
6 Do you have dinner at seven?

Unit 63
A 1 doesn’t let her
2 makes her
3 doesn’t let him
4 let her
5 don’t make him
6 doesn’t let her

B 1 let 7 let
2 makes 8 makes
3 lets, makes 9 let
4 made 10 made
5 makes 11 let, lets
6 lets 12 made

C 1 She made him go and apologize to Mrs Rowland.
2 She made him tidy his room.
3 She made him finish his science homework.
4 She made him do his music practice.
5 She didn’t let him watch any television.
6 She made him show her his homework.
7 She let him phone his friends.
8 She didn’t let him go out.
9 She made him spend the evening in his room.
10 She made him go to bed early.

Unit 64
A 1 gets 6 gets
2 have 7 make
3 do 8 make
4 made 9 had
5 did 10 got

B 1 had/made 6 had
2 had 7 did
3 got 8 did
4 did 9 had
5 had 10 did
C 1 do 5 made
   2 made 6 have
   3 got 7 do
   4 had

D 1 d 5 h
   2 f 6 e
   3 g 7 a
   4 b

E 1 Mary's got/has got a bad cough.
   2 Tom's got/has got two older sisters.
   3 Helen’s got/has got a new CD player.
   4 -
   5 I haven't got/have not got time to read the newspaper.
   6 -
   7 Sam's got/has got a holiday home in France.
   8 Have you got enough money for your train ticket?
   9 -
   10 -

F 1 did you get 8 did
   2 did you have 9 made
   3 made 10 didn't have
   4 did you have 11 had
   5 had 12 did
   6 let 13 let
   7 made 14 made

G 1 does 5 do
   2 do 6 makes
   3 make 7 does
   4 does 8 makes

H 1 Did Amy get any letters this morning?
   2 What time do you usually get to work?
   3 Will you do me a favour?
   4 When is Helen making a decision about moving to London?
   5 Can your daughter get undressed without help?
   6 Do you make a lot of international phone calls?
   7 What did Sue get for her birthday?
   8 Are Jill and Mick getting married soon?
   9 When do you do the shopping?

I 1 make 6 let
   2 lets 7 made
   3 let 8 let
   4 made 9 Make
   5 lets 10 let

J Eva: It isn't fair! My parents don’t let me do anything. They make me stay at home every evening and do homework. They don't let me go to discos, but they make me do ballet classes and extra French lessons. I hate it all! On Sundays they make me go to church and visit my aunt very often. They make me do housework, too. I have to do a lot of cleaning and cooking. It really makes me angry!
Roy: You're lucky! My parents never make me do anything. They let me stay out late, and they let me smoke and drink. I've got terrible parents! They don't worry about me at all!

C 1 Adam: Do you recognize the woman in this photo?
   Susan: Do you mean the woman who’s/ is looking straight at the camera?
   2 Mark: Hello, David. Why are you standing here? Are you waiting for me?
   David: Yes, I want to speak to you.
   3 James: Listen to the engine. Do you think it’s all right?
   Fiona: It sounds all right, but it smells of oil.

D 1 is thinking 4 tastes
   2 is lasting 5 thinks
   3 feels

Unit 67
A 1 coming round
   2 look after
   3 calling for
   4 go out
   5 put on
   6 get off
   7 join in
   8 get back

B 1 fill in
   2 Hold on!
   3 get at
   4 went off
   5 rubbed out
   6 look up
   7 brought back
   8 put away

C 1 broke into
   2 turn them off
   3 handed it in
   4 work it out
   5 goes with it
   6 looks after them

D 1 -
   2 -
   3 Shall I turn the heating down?
   4 Could you look 'trivial' up in your dictionary, please?
   5 -
   6 It's time to put your books away.
   7 I think you should put a scarf on.
   8 Rub that drawing out before the teacher comes in!
   9 -
   10 To open a bank account, you have to fill this form in.
Unit 68

A 1 it up 2 after her 3 for the nearest village 4 it out 5 them up 6 it away 7 it up 8 it on 9 laughed at 10 deals with

B 1 Look out 2 find out 3 stand for 4 took up 5 check in 6 put up with 7 pick up 8 give out

C 1 put it off 2 cleared up 3 set off 4 headed for 5 called on 6 put them up 7 laughed at 8 found out 9 run away 10 catch up on

D 1 d 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 d

Unit 69

A 1 people 2 bananas 3 mice 4 watches 5 cars 6 knives
B 1 knives ✓ tooth ✓ matches ✓ wish ✓ matches ✓ city ✓ cities ✓ men ✓ countries ✓ potato ✓ teeth ✓ family ✓ wishes ✓ tomato ✓ mouse ✓ wife ✓ wives ✓ potato ✓ country ✓ tomatoes ✓ man ✓ mice ✓ knife ✓ families ✓

C 1 Do you want one? 2 But the strawberry ones are nicer. 3 I like the one with the red door. 4 Emma has a green one in hers/in her room. 5 There isn’t an easy one. 6 Do you mean the ones of the wedding?

D 1 ones 2 others 3 one 4 one 5 one 6 one 7 one 8 one 9 ones 10 ones

Unit 70

A 1 a holiday 2 a cinema 3 some luggage 4 some socks 5 a school 6 some homework 7 some information 8 some toast 9 a bird 10 some grass 11 some trains 12 a musician 13 some spaghetti 14 some ideas 15 some warm water 16 a big city 17 some good news 18 some Indian tea 19 a boring film 20 a thick book 21 some good advice 22 a tall woman

B 1 – 2 – 3 a 4 some 5 the

C 1 slice, some 2 pieces 3 cup 4 bottle, some 5 two 6 some, the 7 a, the 8 cartons, the 9 cup, slice 10 two, the

D 1 My luggage is in the car. 2 Can you give me a piece of paper and a pencil? 3 I’d like lemon and two spoonfuls of sugar in my tea. 4 We must buy some eggs and some cheese. 5 This books contains information about pop music. 6 I have bad news for you. 7 Did you get (any) homework for tomorrow? 8 There isn’t much water on the table. 9 I won’t take milk in my coffee.
10 Sally often drinks cola while she's doing her homework.

Unit 71
A 1 an 5 an 2 a 6 a 3 a 7 an 4 an 8 a
B 1 a Japanese city. 2 an English airport. 3 an Indian river. 4 a university town. 5 a German car. 6 a European country.

C 1 a 10 the 2 a 11 a 3 a 12 a 4 the 13 a 5 a 14 The 6 an 15 the 7 a 16 an 8 the 17 the 9 the 18 the

D 1 ✓ 5 ✓ a 2 the, the 6 a 3 a 7 the 4 a, ✓

Unit 72
A 1 - 9 - 2 a 10 the 3 the 11 an 4 the 12 - 5 - 13 - 6 the 14 a 7 - 15 an 8 a

B 1 leave the airport 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 pasta 5 ✓ 6 have dinner 7 ✓ 8 Number sixteen 9 from Mexico 10 ✓

C 1 an 7 - 2 a 8 a 3 - 9 the 4 the 10 a 5 a 11 the 6 a 12 -

D 1 I've got a book about elephants. 2 Do they sell wine at the supermarket near the station? 3 Music is very important in the United States. 4 I'm afraid of dogs, especially big dogs. 5 They serve lunch in the dining room. 6 We have both fruit and vegetables in the garden; we eat the fruit but we sell the vegetables. 7 The film was fantastic, and the actors were wonderful. 8 Sally studies literature at university. 9 Hawaii is in the middle of the Pacific Ocean. 10 Paris, the capital of France, is on the River Seine.

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 a, an, a 3 An, an

F 1 a, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

B 1 the, a 4 a, the 2 the, a 5 the, a 3 a, The 6 The, a

C 1 - 2 a, the 6 - 3 a, the 7 an, the 2 a 8 - 3 a 9 - 4 an 10 - 5 -, the

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

Unit 73
A 1 some 10 a 2 no 11 a 3 some 12 no 4 some 13 a 5 a/some 14 any 6 a/some 15 some 7 some 16 any 8 none 17 a 9 a 18 a

B 1 I can't/cannot give you any advice. 2 There aren't/are not any good films at the cinema this week. 3 There isn't/is not any cake in the cupboard. 4 Miriam doesn't/does not have any heavy luggage to take to the airport. 5 There aren't/are not any letters for you today. 6 There isn't/is not any snow on the mountains this morning.

C 1 I'm thirsty. Give me some water, please. 2 Have you got any books on Africa? 3 There isn't any bread and there aren't any biscuits at home.

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

Unit 74
A 1 an, a 2 a, an, a 3 An, an

B 1 the, a 4 a, the 2 the, a 5 the, a 3 a, The 6 The, a

C 1 - 2 a, the 6 - 3 a, the 7 an, the 2 a 8 - 3 a 9 - 4 an 10 - 5 -, the

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

Unit 73
A 1 some 10 a 2 no 11 a 3 some 12 no 4 some 13 a 5 a/some 14 any 6 a/some 15 some 7 some 16 any 8 none 17 a 9 a 18 a

B 1 I can't/cannot give you any advice. 2 There aren't/are not any good films at the cinema this week. 3 There isn't/is not any cake in the cupboard. 4 Miriam doesn't/does not have any heavy luggage to take to the airport. 5 There aren't/are not any letters for you today. 6 There isn't/is not any snow on the mountains this morning.

C 1 I'm thirsty. Give me some water, please. 2 Have you got any books on Africa? 3 There isn't any bread and there aren't any biscuits at home.

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

Unit 74
A 1 an, a 2 a, an, a 3 An, an

B 1 the, a 4 a, the 2 the, a 5 the, a 3 a, The 6 The, a

C 1 - 2 a, the 6 - 3 a, the 7 an, the 2 a 8 - 3 a 9 - 4 an 10 - 5 -, the

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

Unit 73
A 1 some 10 a 2 no 11 a 3 some 12 no 4 some 13 a 5 a/some 14 any 6 a/some 15 some 7 some 16 any 8 none 17 a 9 a 18 a

B 1 I can't/cannot give you any advice. 2 There aren't/are not any good films at the cinema this week. 3 There isn't/is not any cake in the cupboard. 4 Miriam doesn't/does not have any heavy luggage to take to the airport. 5 There aren't/are not any letters for you today. 6 There isn't/is not any snow on the mountains this morning.

C 1 I'm thirsty. Give me some water, please. 2 Have you got any books on Africa? 3 There isn't any bread and there aren't any biscuits at home.

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

Unit 74
A 1 an, a 2 a, an, a 3 An, an

B 1 the, a 4 a, the 2 the, a 5 the, a 3 a, The 6 The, a

C 1 - 2 a, the 6 - 3 a, the 7 an, the 2 a 8 - 3 a 9 - 4 an 10 - 5 -, the

D 1 knives 2 countries 3 wishes 4 tomatoes, loaves 5 fish 6 teeth

E 1 a, - 4 a 2 - 5 a 3 -

F 1 an, the, the 2 a, a, the, the 3 a, the, a 4 the, the, the, the, the

397
4 We sometimes behave badly. The teacher sometimes gets angry with us.
5 It is quite hard. Some people won’t finish it.

B 1 I, her, she, me
2 She, it, it, her
3 We, you, you, us
4 They, him, he, them
5 It, them, they, it
6 You, us, we, you
7 I, you, you, me

C 1 I 9 them
2 I 10 it
3 They 11 It
4 She 12 me
5 He 13 they
6 it 14 us
7 him 15 we
8 me 16 them

Unit 76
A 1 your, yours
2 her, hers
3 their, theirs
4 our, ours
5 his, his
B 1 hers 7 theirs
2 mine 8 yours
3 their 9 his
4 ours 10 my
5 hers 11 your
6 our

C 1 These are Peter’s keys.
2 This is the boys’ football.
3 This is my teacher’s house.
4 These are my sisters’ bikes.
5 This is the children’s room.
6 This is the manager’s chair.
7 These are Mark’s suitcases.
8 These are the women’s bags.
9 This is Joan’s radio.

Unit 77
A 1 this 6 those
2 These 7 that
3 These 8 That
4 This 9 Those
5 These 10 That
B 1 How much are those pineapples?
2 How much are these pears?
3 How much are those lemons?
4 How much are these cabbages?

Unit 78
A 1 much 12 many
2 many 13 much
3 many 14 many
4 much 15 much
5 much 16 much
6 many 17 much
7 much 18 many
8 many 19 much
9 many 20 many
10 much 21 many
11 many
B 1 much, many
2 How much, much, more
3 much, many
4 How much, many, more
5 much, many
6 How much, How many, much
7 How many, much
8 many, much

C 1 much 7 more
2 more 8 much
3 many 9 many
4 much 10 more
5 many 11 many
6 many 12 more
D 1  x  5  x
2  ✓  6  ✓
3  x  7  ✓
4  ✓  8  x

Unit 79
A 1 Lots of things
2 a lot of messages
3 a few minutes
4 lots of jobs
5 a few days
6 a few problems
Unit 80
A 1 Some of the, some of
2 some of the, all of
3 Most of the, some of
4 most of the, some of
B 1 all the
2 All the (VAGY Some of the)
3 Some
4 None of the
5 all
6 None of the
7 all
8 all
9 none of the
10 All the
11 Some
12 some of the
C 1 Most of the
2 Most of it
3 All of the
4 none of them
5 Most of them
6 none of it
7 all of it
8 none of the
9 all of them

Unit 82
A 1 She offered Jim a cigarette.
2 He showed Mary his holiday photographs.
3 Did you send them an invitation?
4 Did you buy her a birthday present?
B 1 She offered a cigarette to Jim.
2 He showed his holiday photographs to Mary.
3 Did you send an invitation to them?
4 Did you buy a birthday present for her?
C 1 They sent us an invitation.
2 Sheila gave a present to Mike.
3 I made her a sandwich.
4 Tom bought a newspaper for Sally.
5 My uncle sold me his camera.
6 She left a message for you.
7 Mary sent them some flowers.
8 Did you take the money to the bank?

Unit 83
A 1 herself
2 myself
3 ourselves
4 themselves
5 yourself
6 himself
B 1 enjoyed ourselves very much.
2 burnt myself
3 He taught himself.
4 I think I'm going to buy I'll buy myself a new coat tomorrow.
5 She made herself a sandwich
C 1 myself
2 herself
3 him
4 ourselves
5 himself
6 themselves
D 1 You'll have to post it yourself.
2 we carried all our luggage ourselves.
3 Did you take it yourself?
4 she (had) made herself.
5 I chose it myself.
6 I invented the recipe myself.
E 1 each other
2 each other
3 yourself/yourselves
4 ourselves
5 each other
6 each other
Unit 84

A 1 There's, it's
2 There are, they are
3 There are, they are
4 There's, it's
B 1 There are six of them.
2 There are twenty of us.
3 There are twelve of them.
C 1 It rains a lot in April.
2 There's fog on the motorway this morning.
3 It's very cloudy in the mountains.
4 There's a lot of wind on the west coast.
D 1 Is there
2 there are
3 They're
4 does it take
5 There are
6 they're
7 it will be
8 There's
9 it takes
10 is there
11 there's
12 It's
13 It's
14 there are
15 Is it
16 there are
17 It's
18 it takes
19 It's
20 There are
E 1 there was
2 there will be
3 there used to be
4 there have been
5 There may be

Unit 85

A This modern picture is strange. It is like the old picture next to it, but in the new painting the sky is green and the trees are blue. It seems frightening. My favourite picture is one of a large, square room by a Dutch artist. An elegant man sits on a wooden bench in a corner. He has a small black dog at his feet. The dog looks sleepy. Through the open window you can see bright sunshine. When I look at this picture I feel warm and happy.
B 1 British
2 enjoyable
3 long
4 tall
5 old
6 free
7 careful
8 busy
9 valuable
10 good
11 late
C 1 sounds
2 look
3 smell
4 looks
5 feel
6 feel
7 looks
8 sounds

Unit 86

A 1 forty-nine forty-nine
2 six hundred six hundred
3 fourth fourth
4 twelfth twelfth
5 two thousand dollars two thousand dollars
6 twenty-three twenty-third
7 eighty-seven seventy-eight
8 eighth eighth
9 seventeen Seventeenth
10 fifth fifth
11 seven million seven million
12 ninth
13 thirtieth
14 three hundred and ninety-five three hundred and ninety-five
B 1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 twentieth
3 first
4 twentieth
5 nine million
6 three hundred and ten
7 eighth
8 a hundred and eleven
9 fourteen
10 second
11 five thousand
12 sixty-eight
13 thirty-fourth
14 a hundred and fifty
15 third
16 twenty-fifth
17 nineteenth
C 1 lives in flat twenty-three on the second floor.
2 lives in flat eleven on the first floor.
3 lives in flat thirty-seven on the third floor.
4 lives in flat fifty-four on the fifth floor.
5 lives in flat seventy-two on the seventh floor.
6 lives in flat twenty-five on the second floor.
7 lives in flat fifty-nine on the fifth floor.
8 lives in flat sixty-one on the sixth floor.
D 1 nineteen eighty-one
2 the sixteenth of June the sixteenth, nineteen eighty-eight
3 the twenty-ninth of September the twenty-ninth
4 nineteen ninety-two
Unit 87

A 1 quite 6 quite
2 quite 7 really
3 really 8 quite
4 really 9 really
5 quite 10 quite

B 1 Alaska is colder than Spain.
2 Steve is hungrier than Jane.
3 Washington is smaller than New York.
4 Mary is happier than Mike.
5 I am younger than my brother.
6 Film stars are richer than teachers.
7 Peter is friendlier than Chris.

C 1 cheaper than
2 much/a lot smaller than
3 much/a lot faster than
4 much/a lot more expensive than
5 much/a lot bigger than
6 slower than
7 more expensive than
8 smaller than

D 1 absolutely
2 absolutely
3 extremely
4 really
5 really

C 1 a coffee pot
2 a photograph album
3 a tennis court
4 a road sign
5 a door handle
6 an air hostess
7 a music system
8 a telephone book
9 a coat hanger
10 a paper cup
11 a soup bowl

D 1 ✔
2 ✔
3 ✔
4 ✔
5 There was a fairly terrible accident on the M3 motorway into last night.

Unit 88

A 1 bigger
2 more careful
3 more expensive
4 better
5 fatter
6 more famous
7 newer
8 more modern
9 younger
10 cheaper
11 more delicious
12 richer
13 longer
14 hungrier
15 nicer
16 happier
17 more difficult
18 older
19 more beautiful
20 friendlier

B 1 Alaska is colder than Spain.
2 Steve is hungrier than Jane.
3 Washington is smaller than New York.
4 Mary is happier than Mike.
5 I am younger than my brother.
6 Film stars are richer than teachers.
7 Peter is friendlier than Chris.

C 1 cheaper than
2 much/a lot smaller than
3 much/a lot faster than
4 much/a lot more expensive than
5 much/a lot bigger than
6 slower than
7 more expensive than
8 smaller than

D 1 absolutely
2 absolutely
3 extremely
4 really
5 really

C 1 a coffee pot
2 a photograph album
3 a tennis court
4 a road sign
5 a door handle
6 an air hostess
7 a music system
8 a telephone book
9 a coat hanger
10 a paper cup
11 a soup bowl

D 1 ✔
2 ✔
3 ✔
4 ✔
5 There was a fairly terrible accident on the M3 motorway into last night.

Unit 89

A 1 the most interesting
2 the biggest
3 the deepest
4 longest
5 the most spectacular
6 the most popular
7 the highest
8 the most famous
9 The lowest
10 driest

B 1 smaller than
2 the smallest
3 colder than
4 the hottest
5 more expensive than
6 the most expensive
7 shorter than
8 the longest

C 1 It's the biggest ship I've ever seen.
2 He's the richest man I've ever met.
3 It's the most difficult exam I've ever done.
4 It's the saddest film I've ever seen.
5 She's the happiest person I've ever met.
6 It's the most beautiful flat I've ever seen.
7 It's the hottest country I've ever visited.

D 1 absolutely
2 absolutely
3 extremely
4 really
5 really

C 1 a coffee pot
2 a photograph album
3 a tennis court
4 a road sign
5 a door handle
6 an air hostess
7 a music system
8 a telephone book
9 a coat hanger
10 a paper cup
11 a soup bowl

D 1 ✔
2 ✔
3 ✔
4 ✔
5 There was a fairly terrible accident on the M3 motorway into last night.

Unit 90

A 1 slowly
2 quickly
3 immediately
4 bad
5 badly

B 1 carefully
2 quietly
3 happily
4 angrily
5 hard
6 well
7 properly
8 easily

C 1 dangerously.
2 fast.
3 Martin cooks well.
4 I write slowly.
5 She plays chess brilliantly.
6 Sheila works hard.
7 They don't learn quickly.

D 1 faster
2 better
3 more cheaply
4 more confidently
5 harder
6 more comfortably
7 worse
8 more slowly

Unit 91

A 1 as quickly as
2 as angry as
3 as expensive as
4 as big as
5 as good as
6 as hard as

B 1 as fast as
2 as tall as
3 as long as
4 as clean as
5 as fresh as
6 as full as
7 as strong as
8 as wide as
9 as big as
### Unit 92

| A | 1. taller than  
|   | 2. older than  
|   | 3. richer than  
|   | 4. lower than  
|   | 5. bigger than  
|   | 6. smaller than  
| B | 1. easier than  
|   | 2. better than  
|   | 3. more successful than  
|   | 4. luckier than  
|   | 5. more powerful than  
|   | 6. more useful than  
| C | 1. the worst  
|   | 2. the funniest  
|   | 3. the tallest  
|   | 4. the best  
|   | 5. the most expensive  
|   | 6. the most beautiful  
| D | 1. the happiest  
|   | 2. more famous than  
|   | 3. worse than  
|   | 4. the best  
|   | 5. the most expensive  
|   | 6. more difficult than  
|   | 7. wetter than  
|   | 8. more comfortable than  
| E | 1. India is hotter than Scotland.  
|   | 2. Physics is more difficult than geography. (or the opposite)  
|   | 3. Living in a city is more stressful than living in the country.  
|   | 4. A mile is longer than a kilometre.  
|   | 5. London is bigger than Edinburgh.  
|   | 6. American films are better than Italian films. (or the opposite)  
|   | 7. Travelling by train is slower than travelling by plane.  
|   | 8. Michael Jackson is more famous than Madonna. (or the opposite)  
| F | 1. (the name of a band) the best  
|   | 2. (the name of an actor) the most beautiful  
|   | 3. (the title of a book) the worst  
| G | 1. the happiest  
|   | 2. fatter  
|   | 3. the smallest  
|   | 4. hungrier  
|   | 5. cheaper, more comfortable  
|   | 6. better  
|   | 7. more interesting  
|   | 8. the most expensive  
| H | 1. longer  
|   | 2. long  
|   | 3. longest  
|   | 4. big  
|   | 5. bigger  
|   | 6. smaller  
|   | 7. closer  
|   | 8. saltiest  
|   | 9. best  
| I | 1. harder  
|   | 2. better  
|   | 3. worse  
|   | 4. more carefully  
|   | 5. more slowly  
|   | 6. more beautifully  
|   | 7. later  
|   | 8. more easily  
| J | 1. as cold as  
|   | 2. as rich as  
|   | 3. as expensive as  
|   | 4. as hard as  
|   | 5. as amusing as  
|   | 6. as old as  
| K | 1. as much  
|   | 2. as much  
|   | 3. as many  
|   | 4. as many  
|   | 5. as many  
|   | 6. as many  

### Unit 94

| A | 1. too dark  
|   | 2. enough information  
|   | 3. too late  
|   | 4. enough food  
|   | 5. too nervous  
|   | 6. too fast  
|   | 7. good enough  
|   | 8. enough clothes  
| B | 1. I've got too many books to read.  
|   | 2. It isn't warm enough to go for a walk.  
|   | 3. There are too many people on those buses.  
|   | 4. I haven't got enough money to buy the CD.  
|   | 5. We haven't got enough players for the game.  
| C | 1. I'm too tired to do any more work.  
|   | 2. Judy hasn't worked hard enough to pass the exam.  
|   | 3. Clive is too short to play basketball. Clive isn't tall enough to play basketball.  
|   | 4. His girl-friend was too ill to go to the party. His girl-friend wasn't well enough to go to the party.  
|   | 5. David didn't have enough money to pay the bill.  
|   | 6. Is it hot enough to go to the beach?  
|   | 7. I'm too busy to see you tonight.  
|   | 8. It's too early to go home.  
|   | 9. Chris didn't have enough tools to repair the car.  
|   | 10. I didn't have enough time to visit all the museums.  

### Unit 93

| A | 1. excited  
|   | 2. surprised  
|   | 3. interesting  
|   | 4. tiring  
|   | 5. surprised  
|   | 6. bored  
|   | 7. exciting  
|   | 8. boring  
| B | 1. amusing  
|   | 2. boring  
|   | 3. interested  
|   | 4. confusing  
|   | 5. bored  
|   | 6. amused  
|   | 7. confused  
|   | 8. surprising  
|   | 9. surprised  

### Unit 95

| A | 1. You must always lock the front door when you leave.  
|   | 2. Steve and Jill play tennis  

twice a month.
3 I usually eat a sandwich for lunch.
4 I sometimes go to jazz concerts at the weekend.
5 My teacher gives me a lot of homework every day.
6 We hardly ever see our Mexican friends.
7 They often go to Morocco for their holidays.
8 Bill and Marie go to the theatre four times a year.
9 They are rarely at home in the evening.

B 1 Liz rarely gets up early. Ken always gets up early.
   2 Liz often watches TV. Ken sometimes watches TV.
   3 Liz rarely takes a taxi. Ken never takes a taxi.
   4 Liz usually has supper at home. Ken often has supper at home.

C 1 He buys a newspaper every day/once a day.
   2 He phones his mother three times a month.
   3 He has a shower twice a day/two times a day.
   4 He goes abroad once a year.
   5 He visits his sister three times a year.
   6 He plays tennis four times a week.

Unit 96
A 1 abroad 5 there
   2 there 6 at work
   3 back 7 off school
   4 here 8 to work
B 1 ✓ 5 ✓
   2 ✓ 6 ✓
   3 ✗ 7 ✗
   4 ✗
C 1 as far as
   2 on the left
   3 right
   4 on this road
   5 as far as
   6 right
   7 right
   8 as far as
   9 on the right
   10 on the right
   11 along
   12 on the left
   13 straight on
   14 as far as

Unit 97
A 1 definitely comes from
   2 was often in
   3 suddenly noticed that Timmy wasn’t
   4 is certainly very
   5 have recently changed
   6 will eventually understand
   7 are just
   8 never take the car
   9 almost won
   10 were already
B 1 have worked well all day.
   2 swam in the sea after lunch.
   3 rained heavily during the night.
   4 did my homework in my room before supper.
   5 played better last week.
   6 do things differently in Scotland.
   7 waited patiently outside the cinema.
   8 was in the bathroom for half an hour.
   9 never have breakfast in the dining room.
   10 almost missed the train yesterday.

Unit 98
A 1 such 4 such a
   2 so 5 Such an
   3 such 6 so
B 1 such 4 such
   2 such an 5 such a
   3 such a 6 such an
C 1 He’s such a creative cook
   2 Those people are making so much noise.
   3 He was/is so lucky.
   4 She wears such pretty clothes.
   5 They were so delicious.
   6 It’s such an unhealthy habit
D 1 so slowly that she didn’t finish the exam.
   2 so expensive that we didn’t buy it.
   3 so tired that he didn’t go out.
   4 so small that Peter couldn’t see them.
   5 so much food that I couldn’t finish it.
   6 so many people that she couldn’t interview everybody.

Unit 99
A 1 between
   2 above
   3 in
   4 in front of/outside
   5 under
   6 next to/beside
   7 behind
   8 in
   9 opposite
B 1 on
   2 above
   3 on
   4 at
   5 near
   6 at
   7 near
   8 above
   9 in
   10 near
C 1 in front of
   2 in
   3 near
   4 in
   5 behind
   6 above
   7 on
   8 in
Unit 100
A 1 at 6 at
 2 in 7 in
 3 on 8 on
 4 at 9 at
 5 in

B 1 winter 4 two o'clock
 2 weekend 5 1990
 3 Saturday 6 birthday

C 1 at 5 last
 2 ✔ 6 on
 3 this 7 ✔
 4 ✔ 8 ✔
 9 next

D 1 I'm meeting Steve on
 2 Wednesday morning.
 3 I'm going to the bank at
 4 10 a.m. on Friday.
 5 I'm going sailing at the
 6 weekend.
 7 I'm starting a new job next
 8 Monday.
 9 I'm visiting Egypt in
 10 December.
 11 I'm getting married on
 12 January 10th.
 13 I'm going to Mexico in the
 14 spring.
 15 I'm learning to ski in April.
 16 I'm buying a new boat next
 17 year.

E 1 from June to August
 2 from 10 o'clock
 3 from March
 4 from Monday to Friday
 5 from 1991 to 1994
 6 from January

Unit 101
A 1 across 6 over
 2 down 7 between
 3 up 8 through
 4 under 9 out of
 5 into 10 to

B 1 from 6 in front of
 2 across 7 down
 3 along 8 through
 4 past 9 under
 5 up

C 1 to 7 along
 2 on 8 past
 3 past 9 towards
 4 into 10 off
 5 through 11 round
 6 over

Unit 102
A 1 8 5 6
 2 4 6 7
 3 2 7 1
 4 5

B 1 on 4 in, on, in
 2 on, in 5 in, on
 3 at 6 in, in

C 1 into, out of, into
 2 onto, into, off, onto

D 1 on
 2 behind
 3 next to/beside
 4 in front of
 5 between

E 1 in front of
 2 under
 3 out of
 4 next to
 5 through

F 1 in April
 2 on 20th April
 3 on Monday
 4 in the morning
 5 at 10 a.m.
 6 in the spring.

G 1 Frank
 2 Jeff
 3 Nobody
 4 Jane

H 1 –
 2 at
 3 in
 4 opposite

I 1 Igaz
 2 Igaz
 3 Hamis
 4 Hamis
 5 Hamis

J 1 We can see some tables in
 2 front of the bar
 3 A child is jumping into the
 4 pool.
 5 A man is walking out of the
 6 hotel.
 7 A waiter is taking drinks to the
 8 table.

K 1 outside
 2 at
 3 ✔
 4 in, ✔
 5 ✔, in

Unit 103
A 1 with 8 in
 2 with 9 in
 3 in 10 with
 4 with 11 with
 5 in 12 in
 6 with 13 with
 7 with 14 in

B 1 with (l) 8 with (a)
 2 with (m) 9 by (h)
 3 with (k) 10 in (j)
 4 with (l) 11 with (o)
 5 with (d) 12 by (b)
 6 by (c) 13 without (n)
 7 in (f) 14 with (e)

C 1 He repaired the car by
 2 changing some of the parts.
 3 She answered the question
 4 without reading it carefully.
 5 He left without saying thank
 6 you.
 7 She got the money by selling
 8 her car.
 9 I threw the letter away without
 10 opening it.
 11 We worked all day without
 12 eating anything.
 13 He lost weight by going on a
 14 strict diet.
 15 I went out without locking the
 16 door.
Unit 104

A 1 for 7 –
 2 to 8 on
 3 for 9 –
 4 – 10 with
 5 – 11 for
 6 –

B 1 for 5 for
 2 – 6 about
 3 about 7 with
 4 –

C 1 What are they talking about?
 2 How much is she asking for?
 3 How many jobs has she applied for?
 4 What are you listening to?

D 1 at 5 for
 2 – 6 at
 3 for 7 –
 4 to 8 –

E 1 The officer is shouting at the soldiers.
 2 The tourists are listening to the guide.
 3 Laura is asking for a glass of water.
 4 The policeman is looking for two men.
 5 Connie is phoning Peter.
 6 Mrs Thomson is paying the electricity bill.

F 1 argue about (f)
 2 phone (e)
 3 look for (a)
 4 talk about (g)
 5 ask (b)
 6 believe in (d)

G 1 There are people who don’t believe in the theory of evolution.
 2 Which waiter did you complain about?
 3 I’m sorry for making a mistake.
 4 It was snowing when we arrived in Scotland.
 5 Who were you talking to when we met?
 6 I discussed the problem with the teacher.
 7 Jim asked something but nobody answered him.
 8 We reached the border at eight.
 9 Who’s going to pay the doctor?
 10 Fred is always thinking /always thinks about eating.

11 Tina asked her brother for some money.
12 What radio station do you listen to / are you listening to?

Unit 105

A 1 for 5 of
 2 with 6 at
 3 of 7 of
 4 in 8 on

B 1 A: Is their daughter good at school work?
   B: Yes, in fact she is brilliant at everything.
 2 A: Why is Mr Bell’s dog afraid of him?
   B: Because he is often cruel to it.
 3 A: Is Laura fond of classical music?
   B: Yes, she is very keen on Bach, for example.
 4 A: Are you pleased with Peter’s exam results?
   B: Yes, we are very proud of him.

C 1 famous for
 2 busy
 3 full of
 4 good at
 5 used to
 6 interested in
 7 sick of
 8 worried about
 9 no good
 10 worth

Unit 106

A 1 by, except, on 6 With, in
 2 in, by 7 in, on
 3 in, without 8 in, out of
 4 In, on 9 on, for
 5 by, out of 10 In, by

B 1 f 5 b
 2 a 6 d
 3 i 7 h
 4 g 8 c

C 1 at once
 2 For example
 3 in charge
 4 by mistake
 5 At first
 6 on holiday
 7 for ever

Unit 107

A 1 by, on 8 with, in
 2 –, for 9 on
 3 in 10 by
 4 by 11 –, –
 5 by 12 on
 6 On 13 in, with, by
 7 in

B 1 through 5 on
 2 at 6 in
 3 by 7 without
 4 at 8 across

C 1 on strike
 2 on their own
 3 busy with
 4 in pain
 5 afraid of, believe in
 6 grateful for
 7 out of order
 8 without delay
 9 on the contrary
 10 in fact
 11 in favour
 12 instead of

D 1 with dark hair
 2 in a beautiful dress
 3 in fashion
 4 At first
 5 full of
 6 talked to
 7 except me
 8 in the end
 9 in Africa
 10 asked about
 11 annoyed with
 12 proud of
 13 wait for
 14 talking about
 15 interested in
 16 At the end
 17 asked for
 18 by taxi
 19 on Sunday
 20 in love
 21 think about

E 1 shouted at, under some trees
 2 on holiday, on a tropical beach
 3 by herself, along a country road
 4 out of reach, the ladder
 5 out of control, in danger
 6 in the garage, with a cloth
 7 across the bridge, at over ninety kilometres an hour
 8 by cheque, in cash
 9 listening to, on the radio
 10 arrived at, in time
 11 in order, out of place
 12 in Italy, on business
1 on purpose  
2 in a hurry  
3 out of work  
4 lucky at  
5 used to  
6 apologize for  
7 for example  
8 in public  
9 in advance  
10 under age  
11 in my car  
12 at least  
13 bored with  
14 brilliant at  

C 1 Philip always talks about cars and I'm not interested in them.  
2 Jack (has) applied for a job in the local supermarket.  
3 There was a red letter box at the gate, with some letters in it.  
4 At dinner we decided who would pay the bill.  
5 I'm fed up with Peter. I'm not going to listen to his stupid stories.  

Unit 108  
A 1 are held  
2 is spoken  
3 was written  
4 are checked  
5 was built  
6 are sold  
7 were produced  
8 was founded  
B 1 are the Olympic Games held?  
2 is English spoken?  
3 was 'Yesterday' written by?  
4 are car speeds checked?  
5 was the Channel Tunnel built?  
6 are souvenirs sold?  
7 were the first Volkswagen Beetles produced?  
8 was the Times newspaper founded?  
C 1 The electric light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison.  
2 The office was painted last week.  
3 The accident was seen by several people.  
4 Where are these video recorders made?  
5 The agreement was signed by six countries.  
D 1 produced  
2 were exported  
3 started  
4 were tested  
5 launched  
6 was called  
7 exported  
8 are sold  

Unit 109  
A 1 are made  
2 was being built  
3 must be typed  
4 have been cleaned  
5 were broken  
6 has been stolen  
B 1 was Mary examined (by the doctor)?  
2 will the food be prepared?  
3 has this window been broken?  
C 1 was not examined (by the doctor) this morning.  
2 will not be prepared on Friday.  
3 has not been broken three times.  
D 1 has been won by the French team.  
2 were being trained by a woman.  
3 can be played by people of all ages.  
4 was sent by the secretary.  
5 have been marked by two different teachers.  
6 is being followed by a police car.  
E 1 be finished  
2 has been ... taken  
3 be posted  
4 be made  
5 were being loaded  
6 are being typed  
7 had ... been sold  
8 have been taken  
9 be finished  
10 have been painted  
11 be delivered  
12 have ... been caught  
F 1 were appointed to carry out the work.  
2 was completed last week.  
3 were delivered last Monday.  
4 have been stored in Office 23.  
5 have been ordered.  
G 1 How many people were appointed to carry out the work?  
2 When was the first stage completed?  
3 When were the decorations delivered?  
4 Where have the boxes been stored?  
5 Who is the main speech being written by?  
6 When will the Sales Department be decorated?  
7 When must the dining room be prepared?  
8 What time will lunch be served?  
9 Who will lunch be served by?  
H 1 is being redesigned.  
2 is being turned  
3 are being planted  
4 are being installed  
5 is (also) being extended  
6 is being built  
I 1 The restoration of the museum has been finished.  
2 When was your car repaired?  
3 A lot of workers died while the Panama Canal was being constructed.  
4 These clothes mustn't be washed in hot water.  
5 Who were these poems written by?  
6 The books weren't / haven't been packed in boxes.  
7 I can't wear my black shoes because they are being repaired.  
8 Which architect was this building designed by?  
9 This door must be locked every evening.  
10 Were all these photos taken by your sister?  
11 Where were the exam results displayed?  
12 When the waiter came over, the bill had been paid by my uncle.
Unit 110

A 1 will be paid eight pounds an hour.
2 has been offered a better job.
3 will be asked ten questions.
4 were told their results.
5 were shown the house where Shakespeare was born.
6 was promised a rise in salary.

B 1 We were given life jackets.
2 We were shown how to raise the sail.
3 We were taught the basics of windsurfing.
4 We were told the rules of the game.
5 We were given rackets and balls.
6 We were shown how to serve correctly.
7 We were taught how to do a back-handed return.

C 1 Jane was advised to go to the dentist’s.
2 Mr Bridges was asked to come back later.
3 The pupils were allowed to do the exercise in pairs.
4 The boys were warned not to go near the dogs.
5 I was reminded to confirm my reservation.

D 1 got stolen at the airport.
2 glasses got broken so he couldn’t read.
3 got soaked in a rainstorm.
4 got stung by a bee.

Unit 112

A 1 The planet Pluto was discovered in 1930.
2 Two atomic bombs were dropped on Japan in 1945.
3 Slavery was abolished in the United States in 1863.
4 The first Apple computers were produced in the 1970s.
5 The Eiffel Tower was built a hundred years ago.
6 The first jet planes were made in Germany.
7 The Taj Mahal was built in the 17th century.
8 In 1957 millions of pounds were stolen from a train in England.
9 Queen Elizabeth was crowned in 1953.
10 In the old days, horses were used for transport.
11 The first books were printed in the 15th century.
12 London was destroyed by fire in 1666.

B 1 Penicillin was discovered by Alexander Fleming.
2 The detective Hercule Poirot was created by Agatha Christie.
3 La Traviata was composed by Verdi.
4 The James Bond books were written by Ian Fleming.
5 The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell.
6 The jet engine was designed by Frank Whittle.
7 Jurassic Park was directed by Stephen Spielberg.
8 The Mona Lisa was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.

C 1 was being swept
2 was being painted
3 were being tested
4 was being erected
5 was being put down
6 were being arranged

D 1 was given some flowers.
2 was offered a wonderful job.
3 will be given a present.
4 was sent a strange letter.
5 will be paid over five hundred pounds.
6 has been promised a bicycle for her birthday.
7 was given the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1938.
8 weren’t told the truth.

E 1 Four bridges have been destroyed in floods.
2 A discotheque has been closed by (the) police.
3 Three Picasso paintings have been sold for two million dollars.
4 A film star has been hurt in a car crash.
5 Some bones have been discovered in a London cellar.
6 A drug dealer has been sent to prison.
7 Two singers have been accused of stealing.
8 The Tower of Pisa has been struck by lightning.
9 A girl has been attacked by a savage dog.

F 1 am going to have them mended
2 had it made
3 am going to have it checked
4 had it painted
5 had it repaired
6 am going to have them tested

G 1 was given a cup of coffee
2 was interviewed by two managers.
3 was asked a lot of questions.
4 was made to do a test
5. was allowed to ask questions about the job and conditions.
6. was told that there were over 100 applicants for the job.
7. was offered the money for my travel expenses.

H. 1. was organized
2. are being searched
3. has been interviewed
4. were started, were finished
5. will be/is going to be published
6. can’t be opened
7. was broken/had been broken
8. were written
9. will be accompanied
10. will/might/may have been elected

I. 1. was designed
2. was intended
3. was not changed
4. were improved
5. were sold
6. was completely redesigned
7. was first seen
8. are now counted
9. is still considered
10. is in fact produced
11. is built

J. 1. How often are the animals fed on this farm?
2. These letters must be posted today.
3. The gun had been removed before the police arrived.
4. The winners’ names will be announced tomorrow.
5. You will be shown how to handle poisonous snakes.
6. Weren’t you told to bring your trainers?
7. (The) tourists are asked not to take photos in the museum.
8. Why was Peter fired from his job?
9. Was it expensive to have the invitations printed/made?
10. I had the clock repaired last week.

Unit 114

A. 1. to phone 6. to eat
2. be 7. reply
3. to break 8. go
4. enjoy 9. to save
5. to wait 10. receive

B. 1. come to the meeting on Friday.
2. to meet some friends tonight.
3. to be asleep.
4. to lock the door when you go out.
5. go out for a meal this evening.
6. to lend me the money.
7. to do a course in Art History.
8. to pay the bill.
9. to win (the) first prize.
10. to help me.
11. phone you tomorrow.
12. be angry with you.
13. listen to music

C. 1. do 6. to take
2. to go 7. to reach
3. to come 8. meet
4. to leave 9. be
5. to start

Unit 115

A. 1. to go
2. playing
3. to buy
4. to take
5. repairing/to repair
6. to visit

B. 1. to buy 8. washing
2. to open 9. to finish
3. to check 10. to feed
4. meeting 11. to invite
5. to phone 12. working
6. taking 13. to look
7. talking

C. 1. Mary likes working abroad.
2. We tried opening the windows, but the air didn’t get (any) fresher.
3. On warm evenings my parents prefer to sit in the garden.
4. Bill stopped smoking a year ago.
5. I’ll never forget travelling across the Sahara.
6. We haven’t got anything for supper. I forgot I didn’t remember to go shopping.
7. My brother would love to travel to Finland.
8. Try to come to the concert. It’ll be wonderful.
9. I haven’t got my key but I can’t remember leaving them anywhere.
10. Jim likes playing football but he doesn’t like watching other people play.
11. Don’t forget to write a letter to your uncle.
12. I love walking in the centre and looking at shop windows.

Unit 116

A. 1. taking the money.
2. to lend Jim five pounds.
3. meeting the King when he was young.
4. wearing glasses.
5. to accept the job.
6. to buy some butter.
7. smoking (a year ago).
8. arguing with his colleagues.
9. to move house.
10. to move all the furniture

B. 1. gave up studying
2. enjoy doing
3. deserve to pass
4. refuses to listen
5. keep studying
6. offered to help
7. promised to study
8. want to talk
1. Pam has suggested going to the theatre but I was hoping not to spend any money this weekend.

2. Saul keeps complaining about his cough but has he tried drinking hot lemon?

3. I'd rather not do the shopping today; I don't mind doing it tomorrow on my own.

4. Betty has arranged to see the doctor; she wants to ask about her headaches.

5. I plan to go alone because I don't like visiting museums with other people.

6. She admits telling him what had happened, but she didn't mean to hurt him.

7. Phil didn't deserve to pass the exam so he shouldn't complain.

8. When you've finished doing your homework, we'll go shopping.

9. Can you imagine living in the middle of the desert?

10. We'll be able to go skiing if we manage to save some money.

1. My parents keep telling me that I should go on to university.

2. Has your sister given up smoking?

3. Last summer we went swimming almost every day.

4. How old were you when you learnt to ski?

5. The doorman pretended to be asleep.

6. We mustn't forget to buy some bread.

7. Could you stop working for a moment, please?

8. If you can't fall asleep, try counting sheep.

9. I remember putting my passport somewhere, but I can't find it now.

10. We avoided speaking about his/her mother's illness.

On her sixteenth birthday Anna decided to leave school. She enjoyed studying; that wasn't the problem. She disliked asking her parents for money all the time. When she told them about her decision, at first they refused to listen. They said that they didn't have much money, but they lived relatively well, and they hoped that Anna would go on to university.

Then Anna's mother went on, 'You don't have to worry about our paying for your education. We have everything (that) we need.'

Anna said, 'I don't mean to be ungrateful, but I'd like to avoid depending on you for anything. I want to earn money. Don't worry. I'll find a job that will make it possible for me to study in the evenings. I want to go on studying.'

In the end Anna's parents realised why she wanted to leave school, they accepted her decision and promised to help her (to) find a suitable job.

---

A 1. A key is a thing for locking doors.

2. A thermometer is an instrument for measuring temperature.

3. A telescope is an instrument for looking at the stars.

4. A drill is a tool for making holes.

5. An answerphone is a machine for recording telephone messages.

6. A cashpoint is a machine for getting money.

B 1. A: What does Mary want the money for?

   B: She wants the money for a train ticket.

2. A: What does Philip want the flour for?

   B: He wants the flour for a cake.

3. A: What did Bill go to the butcher's for?

   B: He went to the butcher's for some sausages.

4. A: What does Helen want the polish for?

   B: She wants it for her shoes.

5. A: What did Alison go to the library for?

   B: She went to the library for a book on India.

6. A: What did Jane buy a newspaper for?

   B: She bought a newspaper for the football results.

C 1. wants the money to buy a train ticket.

2. wants the flour to make a cake.

3. went to the butcher's to buy some sausages.

4. wants the polish to clean her shoes.

5. went to the library to borrow a book.

6. bought a newspaper to see the football results.

D 1. What did he come for?

2. A bus is for carrying passengers.

3. She went to the post office to buy some stamps.

4. The mayor came to give the prizes.

5. The woman jumped into the river to save the child.

6. I'm training hard to get fit.

7. This is a computer program for making three-dimensional drawings.

8. Can I use your pen to sign this letter?
### Unit 118

| A | 1 I left him to think about the details.  
 |   | 2 I want them to work harder.  
 |   | 3 the terrible weather forced us to cancel it.  
 |   | 4 I'll get my mother to teach you.  
 |   | 5 but they persuaded me to take it.  
 | B | 1 taught us to play  
 |   | 2 needed someone to teach  
 |   | 3 wanted us to go  
 |   | 4 preferred a teacher to come  
 |   | 5 helped her to learn  
 |   | 6 expect us to practise  
 |   | 7 allow us to watch  
 |   | 8 encourage us to go  
 |   | 9 get us to play  
 |   | 10 loves people to say  
 |   | 11 bribe him to play  
 | C | 1 the leaves falling from the trees.  
 |   | 2 the ground shake once.  
 |   | 3 Tom sign his name.  
 |   | 4 the water running down the road.  
 |   | 5 the door open.  
 |   | 6 a policeman guarding the Prime Minister's house.  
 |   | 7 the lightening strike a tree.  
 |   | 8 the workers repairing the road.  

### Unit 120

| E | 1 unless you telephone first.  
 |   | 2 if they don't/do not invite you.  
 |   | 3 if you can't swim.  
 |   | 4 unless we win on Saturday.  
 | A | 1 she'd/she would go  
 |   | 2 she lived  
 |   | 3 he didn't/did not eat  
 |   | 4 he'd/he would have  
 |   | 5 she got  
 |   | 6 he wouldn't/wouldn't not smoke  
 | B | 1 they discovered oil in Ireland  
 |   | 2 doctors found a cure for cancer  
 |   | 3 young people stopped listening to pop music  
 |   | 4 astronauts visited Mars  
 | C | 1 were fewer cars  
 |   | 2 drove more slowly  
 |   | 3 would have more time for reading.  
 |   | 4 ate fewer sweets.  
 |   | 5 more people travelled by bus  
 | D | 1 d If chameleons couldn't change colour, they couldn't protect themselves.  
 |   | 2 f Life on earth would disappear if the sun didn't exist.  
 |   | 3 b People wouldn't use their cars so much if there was more public transport.  
 |   | 4 g If everybody lived a healthier life, we wouldn't need so many hospitals.  
 |   | 5 a The police wouldn't have much work if nobody committed any crimes.  

### Unit 119

| A | 1 If you're a vegetarian, you don't eat meat.  
 |   | 2 If you live in a hot country, you don't like cold weather.  
 |   | 3 If you're a teacher, you have to work very hard.  
 |   | 4 If you do a lot of exercise, you stay fit and healthy.  
 |   | 5 If you're a mechanic, you understand engines.  
 | B | 1 pass  
 |   | 2 will be  
 |   | 3 will get  
 |   | 4 will do  
 |   | 5 will be  
 | C | 1 I don't pass  
 |   | 2 won't be  
 |   | 3 won't get  
 |   | 4 don't go  
 |   | 5 don't get  
 | D | 1 I will  
 |   | 2 might  
 |   | 3 will  
 |   | 4 might, might  

### Unit 121

| A | 1 would  
 |   | 2 –  
 |   | 3 unless  
 |   | 4 would  
 |   | 5 were  
 |   | 6 was/were  
 |   | 7 unless  
 |   | 8 were  
 |   | 9 –  
 |   | 10 wouldn't  
 |   | 11 is  
 |   | 12 might  
 |   | 13 could  
 |   | 14 are  
 |   | 15 won't  
 |   | 16 didn’t  
 |   | 17 were  
 |   | 18 –  

| B | 1 will be able to come.  
 |   | 2 might be able to come.  
 |   | 3 won't/will not be able to come.  
 |   | 4 won't/will not be able to come.  
 |   | 5 might be able to come.  

| C | 1 I'll/ will buy, I go  
 |   | 2 he doesn't/does not phone, I'll/ will phone  
 |   | 3 you want, I'll/ will give  
 |   | 4 he'll/he will fall, he doesn't/does not work  
 |   | 5 you fill in, I'll/ will send  
 | D | 1 would you say  
 |   | 2 would think  
 |   | 3 would be  
 |   | 4 study  
 |   | 5 was/were  
 |   | 6 don't have  
 |   | 7 went  
 |   | 8 didn't have  
 |   | 9 would be  
 |   | 10 could  
 |   | 11 would help  
 |   | 12 will have  
 |   | 13 think  
 |   | 14 'll/will give  
 | E | 1 might see Peter.  
 |   | 2 might let you stay the night.  
 |   | 3 won't/will not let you into that club.  
 |   | 4 will give us a discount (on these books).  
 |   | 5 will (definitely) get into university.  
 | F | 1 If I met Tom Cruise, I'd ask him for his autograph.  
 |   | 2 If I became a film director, I'd live in Hollywood.  
 |   | 3 If I saw a UFO, I'd sell my story to a newspaper.  
 |   | 4 If I grew to be two metres tall, I'd be a basketball player.  
 |   | 5 If I was/were a famous film star, I'd like to make a film with Robert de Niro.  
 |   | 6 If I married somebody very rich, I'd give up my job.  
 | G | 1 will get stomach ache if you eat too many apples.  
 |   | 2 would fall off the earth if there was/were no gravity.  
 |   | 3 'll walk out if I don't like the concert this evening.  
 |   | 4 do a lot of exercise, you get hungry.  
 |   | 5 can't drive a taxi unless you have a special licence.  
 |   | 6 lived in the USA, I wouldn't have a flat in New York.  
 |   | 7 do the lottery this week, we might become millionaires.  
 |   | 8 were French, where would you like to live?  
 |   | 9 didn't live in Italy, where would you live?  

410
1 will solve, follows
2 accepts, will discover
3 will win, fights
4 investigates, will bring
5 finds, will return
6 will be, solves

1 England won't have enough water if it doesn't rain a lot next winter.
2 Jim can't come to the cinema with us unless we lend him some money / if we don't lend him some money.
3 Unless you apologize, I won't speak to you again.
4 My mum says that if I save, I might have enough money for a holiday.
5 If there were trips to the moon, I'd travel there, too.
6 If I were you, I wouldn't tell anyone/anybody what's happened/what happened.
7 We could have a picnic if the weather was/were better.
8 If you asked him nicely, Dad might lend you/ us his car.
9 If people didn't drive so fast, there wouldn't be so many accidents.

Unit 122

A 1 If she had spoken German very well, she'd have/she would have applied for the job.
2 If her friend hadn't/had not phoned, she wouldn't/had not have heard about the teaching jobs.
3 If she hadn't/had not contacted the company, they wouldn't/had not have asked her to go for an interview.
4 If the interview had gone badly, the director wouldn't/would not have offered Ellen a job.
5 If Ellen had known some Spanish, she'd have/she would have started at once.
6 If she hadn't/had not been good at languages, she wouldn't/she would not have made rapid progress.

B 1 hadn't/had not lost, would have phoned
2 hadn't/had not broken, would have gone
3 wouldn't/hadn't/hadn't have made, hadn't/hadn't been forgotten

C 1 would have gone to the concert (last night) if she hadn't/hadn't/hadn't have a lot of homework.
2 would have got some new trainers if the shop hadn't/hadn't been closed.
3 would have come home early if there hadn't/hadn't/hadn't been a bus strike.
4 would have had volleyball practice if the coach hadn't/hadn't been ill.
5 would have sent the letter if he'd had a stamp.
6 would have bought some new books if she hadn't/hadn't lent all her money to Terry.

D 1 she hadn't/hadn't/hadn't spent all her money.
2 listened to what I say.
3 she had a better job.
4 he hadn't/hadn't/hadn't eaten so much ice-cream.
5 had taken an umbrella.

Unit 123

A 1 I had good eyesight.
2 I could speak German.
3 I had a degree.
4 I was/were eighteen.

B 1 I wish you would listen more carefully.
2 I wish they would play more quietly.
3 I wish you would take it off.
4 I wish they would go to bed.

C 1 had told
2 could afford
3 didn't bite
4 hadn't stayed
5 didn't live
6 had bought
7 danced
8 hadn't invited

D 1 she hadn't/hadn't/hadn't spent all her money.
2 listened to what I say.
3 she had a better job.
4 he hadn't/hadn't/hadn't eaten so much ice-cream.
5 had taken an umbrella.

E 1 would complain
2 put
3 were
4 found
5 would have
6 had
7 would improve
8 bought
9 wouldn't/hadn't not have
10 would get
11 might find
12 asked
13 could find
14 found
15 would enjoy
16 didn't open
17 would care
18 would save
19 could open
20 would be
21 stayed

F 1 wouldn't see
2 stay
3 don't get
4 are
5 would have phoned
6 hadn't passed
7 have
8 won't get
9 has
10 will get
11 have
12 will always be
13 didn't go
14 had spoken
15 wouldn't have let
16 wouldn't have given
17 was/were
18 would ask
19 don't stop
20 will get

G 1 If you are in the countryside, you can see more stars in the sky.
2 Tom will help if you ask him.
3 If I were you, I'd take an aspirin.
4 Our rivers would be cleaner if we took more care of them.
5 If the weather had been better at the weekend, we would have gone to the beach.
6 If Sally could speak foreign languages, she could be a travel guide.
7 I wish my parents weren't so strict.
8 If only my brothers' sisters hadn't moved away.
9 If Peter had been more careful, he wouldn't have had an accident.
10 My sister would have given us money if we'd asked her.

Unit 126

A 1 us 10 I
2 he 11 him
3 me 12 me
4 he 13 she
5 I 14 me
6 he 15 I
7 me 16 her
8 he 17 she
9 me 18 she
B 1 they were leaving the next/following day
2 she couldn't marry him
3 he would write to her every day
4 she often went there.
5 her brother was going to visit her.
6 they'd/had arrived there the day before/previous day.
7 he'd/she had been there for a week and that he was staying at the Dickens Hotel.

Unit 127

A 1 cleaning / to clean
2 to break / breaking
3 to bring / bringing
4 to speak / speaking
5 letting / to let
6 to eat / eating
7 apologizing / to apologize

B 1 Yes, and I told him not to be late.
2 Yes, and she warned her not to go outside the house.
3 Yes, and I told him not to forget the stamps.
4 Yes, and he told them not to go near the windows.
C 1 I reminded John to phone Sally.

D 1 warned them not to touch
2 advised her to take
3 reminded him to bring
4 ordered them to leave
5 asked him to come
Unit 129

A 1 Ruth said (that) she went jogging every morning.
2 Anna said (that) Jenny wasn’t studying for her exams.
3 Jim said (that) he couldn’t swim.
4 Jane said (that) Mary worked in a bank.
5 Jim said (that) he was staying with some friends.
6 Mike said (that) he had never been to Russia.
7 Ella said (that) Tom couldn’t use a computer.
8 Jill said (that) everybody had to try to do their best.
9 Rachel said (that) Jane might move to a new flat.
10 Bill said (that) he would stay at home on Sunday.

B 1 I could rely on her.
2 you had been very kind.
3 you were staying with her.
4 we were making too much noise.
5 you might come to my party.

C 1 She told him (that) she liked his paintings.
2 You told me (that) you liked that film.
3 Tom told Ann (that) he felt ill.
4 She told Bill (that) she was leaving.
5 I told you (that) I couldn’t find it.
6 Mary told him (that) she would send the letter.
7 We told them (that) we would arrive at six.

D 1 advised, to leave
2 reminded, to collect
3 asked, to take
4 offered to drive
5 apologized for dropping
6 told, he lived
7 promised to send
8 warned, not to touch

E 1 asked, where he worked, he worked in Bradford.
2 asked, what she would do, him that she would go to the police.
3 asked, when he had written the letter, her that he couldn’t remember.
4 asked, what had happened to his hand, him that a dog had bitten him.

F 1 I wanted
2 (that) I had a friend who was going to be
3 to fill in
4 if I could speak
5 (that) I had studied it
6 if I had any
7 (that) I had done
8 (that) she would probably be able to get
9 couldn’t guarantee me
10 (that) she would phone me
11 to ask about
12 not to go to

G 1 Jim said (that) he couldn’t buy a new car.
2 Why did you tell the ticket inspector (that) you had no ticket?
3 The doctor advised my father not to work so much.
4 Pamela asked me to go to the bank.
5 The firemen said (that) everyone/Everybody had left the building.
6 Lit’s ask Tony to help.
7 Jack asked when I had sent the letter.
8 Some of my friends said they would come to see me the following week.
9 Kati asked if anybody had phoned.
10 I asked the policeman where the museum was.

Unit 131

A 1 either
2 Neither
3 Neither, either
4 either
5 neither
6 neither, either
7 either
8 neither
9 either
10 either
11 neither
12 either

B 1 Both of them
2 Neither of them
3 Both of them
4 neither of them
5 Both of them
6 Neither of them

C 1 either of them
2 both of them
3 neither of them
4 both of us
5 neither of us
6 neither of us
7 either of them
8 Both of us
9 both of them

Unit 132

A 1 from 1980 to 1989/for three years
2 from 1980 to 1989/for three years
3 for three years/since 1996/since the war
4 for three years/since 1996/since the war
5 for three years/since 1996/since the war
6 six months ago/in 1999
7 six months ago/in 1999

B 1 for 6 first
2 from 7 ago
3 to 8 for
4 first 9 ago
5 for
C  1 We haven’t spoken to Jane for two weeks.
    We last spoke to Jane two weeks ago.
  2 Helen hasn’t visited Rome for twenty years.
    Helen hasn’t visited Rome since she was a student.
  3 We last saw Mary two years ago.
    We haven’t seen Mary for two years.
    We haven’t seen her since she got married.

D  1 When did, first met
  2 How long, took, from
  3 did, last, met
  4 How long, has been, since

Unit 134

A  1 She spoke to the man who was standing next to her.
  2 I read the letters which came in the morning post.
  3 He likes the other people who work in his office.
  4 She’s that singer who was on television last night.
  5 Next week there is a festival which takes place in the village every summer.
B  1 who  4 who
  2 who  5 where
  3 who  6 who
C  1 The bus which goes to the airport leaves every twenty minutes.
  2 The picture which was hanging near the door was horrible.
  3 The instructor who taught me how to drive was very patient.
  4 The girl who was sitting next to me started talking to me.
  5 The children who sang in the choir were very good.
  6 The racing car which went over some oil on the track crashed.
B  1 in case she’s at home.
  2 because I want to lose weight.
  3 because his passport was out of date.
  4 so I’ll take a book to read.
  5 in case there is a power cut this weekend.

C  1 Because
  2 to
  3 so that
  4 so
  5 why
  6 Because of
  7 to
  8 because
  9 since
 10 so
11 in case

D  1 that
  2  ✔
  3  ✔ because
  4  ✔, for to, so

Unit 135

A  1 We ate the sandwiches which that Jack made.
  2 I’m doing some work which that I have to finish today.
  3 She’s an old woman who that I often see when I go to the shops.
  4 He’s an actor who that a lot of people like.
  5 It’s a magazine which that I read sometimes.
B  1 that I had seen on TV
  2 that Jane made.
  3 that I was waiting for
  4 that my sister wrote.
  5 that I was talking to
  6 that Mary sent me
C  1  5 that
  2  6 who/that
  3 who/that  7 –
  4 that
D  1 who  4 who
  2 who  5 who
  3 who

Unit 136

A  1 The sun, which is really a star, is 93 million miles from the earth.
  2 John F. Kennedy, who died in 1963, was one of the youngest American Presidents.
  3 Mel Gibson, who is from Australia, is a famous Hollywood actor.
  4 The 1996 Olympics were held in Atlanta, which is in the southern state of Georgia, USA.
B  1 Football, which first started in Britain, is now one of the most popular sports worldwide.
  2 Margaret Thatcher, who was the Prime Minister of Britain for 11 years, studied science at Oxford University.
  3 Michelangelo, who lived until he was ninety, was one of Italy’s greatest artists.
  4 Michael Jackson, whose brothers and sisters were also singers, is now one of the richest solo artists in the world.
  5 The Nile, which runs through several countries, is the longest river in Africa.
  6 Gandhi, who helped secure India’s independence, was assassinated in 1948.
  7 Elephants, which are found in Africa and India, are hunted for their ivory.
  8 Bill Clinton, whose wife is a brilliant lawyer, became president of the USA in 1993.

414
The Beatles, whose music is still popular, were probably the most famous pop group in the world.

Brands Hatch, which is not far from London, is famous for its motor races.

1 whose 4 which
2 who 5 which
3 whose 6 who

Unit 137

A
1 get the job he applied for
2 the girl who's talking to your brother?
3 like the joke the boys laughed at.
4 the man who was looking for his dog.
5 the stranger who paid for the drinks.
6 have the CD I asked for.

B
1 f which is used to make champagne.
2 h who had six wives.
3 b whose first name was Audrey.
4 a who started the famous prizes.
5 d which was made in black and white.
6 i who wrote The Three Musketeers.
7 g which is used for racing.
8 c who became a film star.

C
1 person who sells meat.
2 place where people eat.
3 place where you can see animals.
4 person who makes people laugh.
5 thing which you can use anywhere.
6 place where people go to dance.
7 thing which allows you to see distant objects.
8 person who writes newspaper articles.
9 place where you can buy almost anything.
10 thing which tells you the time.

D
1 whose whose
2 which where
3 it
4 him
5 it
6 his whose
7 them

E
1 whose 5 whose
2 where 6 who
3 who 7 which
4 which

F
1 Many Scots speak Gaelic, which is very different from English.
2 John Lennon, who was a pacifist, was killed when he was forty years old.
3 Joseph Conrad, whose first language was Polish, wrote dozens of novels in English.
4 The Atlantic and the Pacific are joined by the Panama Canal, which was opened in 1914.
5 The British Prime Minister in the 1980s was Margaret Thatcher, who was known as the Iron Lady.
6 Loch Ness, which is very deep, is famous for its monster.
7 Pelé, whose real name is Edson Arantes, was a famous Brazilian football player.
8 Mark Spitz, who won seven Olympic gold medals in 1972, acted in several films.
9 Jules Verne wrote Around the World in Eighty Days, which was made into a famous film.
10 Hillary Clinton, whose husband was the US President, became a US Senator in 2000.

G
1 They gave us a bedroom where Shakespeare had slept.
2 The house my grandmother was born in has been sold.
3 Lots of people visit the club where the Beatles sang.
4 What's the name of the road where they live?
5 Is Leicester one of the places the coach stops at?
6 This is the cupboard where we keep the glasses.

H
1 We had to call at the chemist's, which is opposite the bank.
2 My cousins didn't say thank you, which annoyed my father.

I
1 The shop where John worked is going to close.
2 The dog who won the prize died a week later.
3 The house where Napoleon was born doesn't exist any more.
4 The letter I sent arrived the following week.
5 The man whose wife died is going to remarry.
6 The woman I spoke to was very helpful.

J
1 At school I have a friend whose mother works for the BBC.
2 The people who live in the flat above don't know their neighbours yet.
3 Ibiza is a place where a lot of British people take their holidays.
4 Motorbikes that make a lot of noise are not allowed to drive down this street.
5 My brother, who is a car mechanic, doesn't like modern cars.
6 Terry failed the exam, which surprised everybody.
7 Kilimanjaro, which is in Tanzania, is the highest mountain in Africa.
8 The house where we live is on the beach.
9 People who drink and drive are very dangerous.
10 The man who is standing at the door has brought a letter.
11 What's the title of the book (that) you are looking for?
12 The girl (that) you met yesterday is my sister.
Unit 138

A 1 disorganized, incapable
2 underdeveloped, unfair
3 overbooked, impersonal
4 uncommon, undergraduates
5 unhappy, unpleasant
6 unable, overnight

B 1 undergraduate
2 overnight
3 underground
4 overslept
5 underline
6 overcharged
7 overtime

C 1 repeat
2 replace
3 repay
4 rebuilt

D 1 f overtake
2 e dishonest
3 g refreshing
4 b disappeared
5 a undercooked
6 c impatient

E 1 unpleasant
2 uncertain/unsure
3 impersonal
4 immature

Unit 139

A 1 Italian opera singer.
2 Indian pacifist.
3 Italian scientist.
4 South African politician.
5 Argentinian footballer.
6 Russian writer.

B 1 Pollution, development
2 baby-sitter, patience
3 observation, artist
4 worker, manager
5 translation, correspondence
6 Government, Declaration
7 discussion, insurance

C 1 dangerous b rainy
2 hungry e wonderful
3 lucky d successful
4 enjoyable a sandy
5 sensible f poisonous

D 1 careless 5 useful
2 cheerful 6 hopeless
3 harmless 7 helpful
4 successful 8 painless